



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

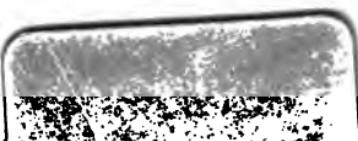
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



48.1236.







PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION.

HISTORICAL
AND
MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS,
FOR THE USE OF YOUNG PERSONS;
WITH A SELECTION OF
BRITISH AND GENERAL BIOGRAPHY, &c.

BY RICHMAL MANGNALL.

A New Edition,
CONSIDERABLY AUGMENTED AND IMPROVED:
INCLUDING AN
ORIGINAL OUTLINE OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY,
ECCLESIASTICAL AND MODERN HISTORY,
A COMPENDIUM OF THE ELEMENTS OF ASTRONOMY, &c.
ILLUSTRATED WITH
TWENTY-SEVEN MAPS AND SIXTY-FOUR ENGRAVINGS.

BY W. PINNOCK,
Author of "Pinnoch's Catechisms," Pinnoch's "Made Easy," &c.
LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR G. F. GIBBS, BY
PARTRIDGE AND OAKLEY, PATERNOSTER ROW,
(Publishers to the British Organization of the Evangelical Alliance.)

1848.



LONDON :
Printed by Maurice & Co. Howford-buildings,
Fenchurch-street.

P R E F A C E.

AMONG the number who, in public Seminaries, have opportunities of perusing the best English, Grecian, and Roman Histories, few will be found who retain even the leading facts, unless those who superintend their education have sufficient leisure to converse with each separately, and lead them to a habit of reflection and observance for themselves. This, however, where the attention is necessarily divided among many, cannot always be effected. To obviate therefore, in some degree, this inconvenience, the following Questions were compiled,—not as substitutes for, but as guides to history. They are intended to awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds, and, as they may again be divided and subdivided at pleasure, they will serve as Exercises for the ingenuity both of pupil and instructor. The Editor, having previously tried their utility in promoting these ends, submits them to the inspection of a discriminating, but ever generous public; and whatever be its final decision, (wishing neither to deprecate censure nor to court applause,) will remain satisfied with having meant well to the best interests of the rising generation.

CROFTON-HALL,
NEAR WAKEFIELD.

PREFACE TO PINNOCK'S EDITION.

IN preparing the present Edition for the press, no expense or trouble has been spared. The Introductory portion of the work is entirely new, and it is hoped will be regarded as a valuable addition. It contains a general outline of ancient Geography and History, together with biographical notices of some of the most celebrated characters of antiquity. After its perusal, the pupil's mind will be prepared for the Miscellaneous Questions that follow. These have been, in some of the chapters, re-arranged with greater attention to the chronological and general order of events and circumstances. To effect this, it was necessary, occasionally, to introduce new matter, and condense the old. All practical teachers will admit that judicious *repetition* is necessary in the instruction of youth, and therefore desirable in School-books. In conformity with this view, several of the leading incidents of history are mentioned more than once; but when repeated, each fact is uniformly presented under different associations. There is another novel feature in the present edition, which it is hoped will render it more useful than its predecessors, both to the pupil and the teacher: a new series of *Questions for Examination* has been appended to each chapter or section, by way of supplement to those incorporated with the text, which will not only serve to elicit a more

perfect knowledge of the subject, but secure a thorough examination of the pupil on the respective contents.

As Ecclesiastical History yields in importance to no other department of knowledge, it has been succinctly and impartially sketched, in connexion with those portions of general history, particularly that of the Middle Ages, with which it is associated. An entirely new chapter has also been devoted to the modern history of all the nations of Europe, and the whole has been brought down to the date of publication; thus completing an entire course of History, blended with Geography, &c., from the earliest periods to the present date.

The importance of Astronomy seemed to require that it should be treated of more fully; a clear and concise Epitome of its elements has therefore been given in a separate section, with several engravings, as being not only useful, but impressive.

The dates have been compared with the best authorities, and corrected. The accentuation of the more difficult classical and other proper names, together with glossaries of the less familiar words of the text, have been added, to obviate the necessity of frequent reference to a dictionary; and the whole has been enriched with numerous maps and illustrations.

The various additions and improvements above enumerated can only be appreciated by an examination of the work itself, which is sent forth in the confident expectation that it will secure the approval and patronage both of schools and private families.

Popular Works for Home and School Education,
By W. PINNOCK,
AUTHOR OF PINNOCK'S CATECHISMS, &c.

PINNOCK'S "MADE EASY" SERIES, 18mo., cloth.

"No one surpasses MR. PINNOCK in selecting, abridging, and arranging information for the young, on the various topics which form the course of an ordinary school education. To Parents and Teachers, therefore, who have any hesitation in the selection of books, either for class use, or for separate lessons, we would say, adopt Pinnock's 'Made Easy' series."

1.

PINNOCK'S GEOGRAPHY MADE EASY, with Forty-seven Maps. A New Edition (Thirty-fifth Thousand), Revised and Corrected. Price 1s. 6d.

—“really makes easy and delightful a science hitherto rugged to young persons, but one of increasing importance in these days.”

2.

PINNOCK'S ASTRONOMY MADE EASY, with Engravings and Diagrams. Twelfth Edition. Price 1s. 6d.

3.

PINNOCK'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND MADE EASY, with Fifty-three new Illustrative Engravings. New Edition, continued to the present time. Price 2s. 6d.

“By very short and easy steps does this little work conduct us over the chief events in the history of our country, and is full of pictures and of maps.”

4.

PINNOCK'S SCRIPTURE HISTORY MADE EASY, with Illustrations by G. F. Sargent. Revised and enlarged by the Rev. Ingram Cobbin, A. M., Editor of “The Portable Commentary,” “Domestic Bible,” “Bible Remembrancer,” “Bible Reader’s Hand Book,” &c. &c. Price 1s. 6d.

“This is a very valuable compendium for young persons and greatly improved by its present Editor. To Schools and Families we cordially recommend it.”

Also, recently Published, 12mo., cloth, price 2s..

PINNOCK'S INTRODUCTION TO ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY, with Biographical Notices of some of the most celebrated Characters of Antiquity. Illustrated with Twenty-three Maps and Engravings, and a Portrait of the Author on steel by Finden.

“An examination of this Book has given us a high opinion of its merits; it contains explanations of all the terms used; it breaks the information into small portions, and thus facilitates the learner’s progress; it appends to each chapter a series of useful questions on the contents; it gives biographical notices of the chief characters introduced; it illustrates its subjects by maps and engravings; and thus, as by a rapid and powerful wing, carries us over all the ancient kingdoms, and through long centuries of time. Where historical and geographical history is wanted, especially in its combination with religion, we can speak of this work with all authority and confidence.”

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

| | |
|--|--------|
| Geography and History of the Ancient World | page 1 |
|--|--------|

Babylonia—Assyria—Egypt—Canaan, or Palestine—Persian Empire—Media—Parthia—Phoenicia—Syria—Arabia, and the Saracen Empire—Turkey—Asia Minor—Greece, and the Macedonian Empire—Rome—Minor Kingdoms and States—Ancient Africa and Carthage.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Ancient Biography | 108 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

Alexander the Great—Cresus—Cyrus the Great—Cambyses—Darius Hystaspes—Xerxes—Dionysius the Elder—Hannibal—the Scipios.

MANGNALL'S QUESTIONS.

CHAP. I.—*Preliminary View of General History.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| From the Deluge to the building of Rome | 141 |
| From the foundation of Rome to the destruction of Carthage | 144 |
| From the destruction of Carthage to the birth of Christ . | 147 |
| Historical Events from the first Century to the present time | 149 |

CHAP. II.—*Old Testament History.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| Moses the first Sacred Historian | 158 |
| From the Creation to the destruction of Sodom | 160 |
| From the birth of Isaac to the destruction of Pharaoh's Host | 164 |
| From the departure out of Egypt to the death of Joshua . | 168 |
| From the death of Joshua to the reign of Saul | 174 |
| From the death of Saul to the reign of Rehoboam . . . | 178 |
| From the Captivity to the reign of the Ptolemies | 184 |
| From the time of the Maccabees to the birth of Christ . . | 187 |

CHAP. III.—*Grecian History.*

| | |
|---|-----|
| From its commencement to the battle of Marathon | 189 |
| — to the Peloponnesian War | 195 |
| — to the time of Alexander the Great | 198 |
| — to the conquest of Greece by Rome | 202 |

CHAP. IV.—*Roman History.*

| | |
|---|-----|
| From its foundation to the appointment of the Decemviri . | 204 |
| From the Punic Wars to the death of Julius Cæsar | 208 |
| The period of the Roman Emperors | 212 |
| Eminent Characters, &c. | 216 |

CHAP. V.—*Ecclesiastical and General History.*

| | | |
|--|-------------|-----|
| Christianity in the early Ages | <i>page</i> | 218 |
| The Jews: destruction of their kingdom by the Romans | | 221 |
| From the third Century to the present Era | | 224 |

CHAP. VI.—*British History.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| English History, from the earliest period to the present reign | 248 |
| Eminent Characters, &c. | 276 |
| Scottish History | 277 |
| Irish History | 281 |

CHAP. VII.—*British Constitution.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| Of the Prerogative of the Crown—Distinctions and Privileges of the Nobility—Great Offices of State—Powers and Constitution of Parliament—Rights of the People, &c. | 286 |
|--|-----|

CHAP. VIII.—*European Continental States.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| Germany—Prussia—Poland | 303 |
| Russia—Sweden—Norway—Denmark | 311 |
| Holland—Belgium—Netherlands | 319 |
| France—Switzerland—Italy | 321 |
| Spain—Portugal | 328 |
| Turkey—Greece | 335 |

CHAP. IX.—*English, Scottish, and French Sovereigns.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| English reigns, from the Heptarchy to Queen Victoria | 340 |
| Scottish reigns, Duncan to the Union | 350 |
| French reigns, Pharamond to Louis Philippe | 354 |

CHAP. X.—*Classical and Historical Characters.*

| | |
|--|-----|
| Roman Kings and distinguished Heroes | 370 |
| Celebrated Greeks | 372 |
| Eminent Historical Characters | 374 |

CHAP. IX.—*Biography.*

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| British Biography | 378 |
| General Biography | 402 |

CHAP. XII.—*Scientific Subjects.*

| | |
|---|-----|
| Science and Natural Philosophy | 429 |
| Elements of Astronomy | 435 |
| Questions on Familiar Subjects | 455 |
| OUTLINE OF HEATHEN MYTHOLOGY | 463 |
| Latin Terms and Phrases in frequent use | 471 |



INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. Concatena'tion, <i>s.</i> a series of links; succession of causes and effects. | 19. Illu'sion, <i>s.</i> false appearance; error. |
| 10. Grada'tion, <i>s.</i> regular progress; step by step. | 20. Fic'tion, <i>s.</i> a thing feigned or invented; a falsehood. |
| 15. Revolu'tion, <i>s.</i> change in the state or government of a country. | 22. Adula'tion, <i>s.</i> flattery. |
| Convul'sions, <i>s.</i> irregular and violent motions. | 23. Phenom'ena, <i>s.</i> extraordinary appearances in the works of Nature. |
| Inves'tigate, <i>v.</i> to search out. | 24. Misapplica'tion, <i>s.</i> putting to a wrong use or purpose. |
| 18. Ines'timable, <i>a.</i> very valuable; beyond all price. | 25. Illustra'tion, <i>s.</i> making manifest. Devel'opement, <i>s.</i> unfolding, fully explaining. |

1. AMONG the various branches of learning which excite curiosity, and advantageously store the memory with useful knowledge, GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, and ASTRONOMY obtain the most distinguished rank.

2. Experience every day convinces us that no part of learning affords us so much wisdom upon such easy terms as the study of these sciences; every step we take only serves to increase our ardour: we here profit by the experience of others without sharing their anxiety and toil; and

in a very short period these studies, in a more particular manner, are cultivated with pleasure, and become an agreeable relaxation.

3. One of the most distinctive characters of History is, that let us turn to any part, we shall find a rich field of pleasure and instruction. But if particular histories afford such valuable fruits, what must be the advantages accruing from general history!

4. Particular history gives us the picture of one country, one nation, one individual; general history paints all nations, all ages, all mankind.

5. As in Geography we can have no just idea of the situation of one country without knowing that of others, so in History it is in some measure necessary to be acquainted with the whole, thoroughly to comprehend a part.

6. There is, though sometimes concealed, a constant concatenation in events by which they produce each other, and without a knowledge of all the circumstances, they cannot be comprehended separately and singly.

7. The rise of one kingdom is often brought about by the political defects of some other; thus the arts and learning of succeeding states take a tincture from those countries from whence they were originally derived.

8. Some nations have been applauded for plans of government, which an acquaintance with general history would have shown were not their own; while others have been reproached for barbarities that were not natural to them, but the result of erroneous imitation.

9. Thus, no one part of the general picture can be thoroughly conceived alone; but by taking in the whole at one view, we can trace every cause to its remotest source, observe how far every nation was indebted to its own efforts for its rise or decline, how far to accident or the particular circumstances of the adjacent countries.

10. We may here trace the gradations of its improvement or decay, mark in what degree conquerors introduced refinement among those they subdued, or how far they conformed to the soil and put on barbarity.

11. By such reflections as these, and by applying the transactions of past times to our own, we may become more capable of regulating our own private conduct, or directing that of others in society.

12. Hence it will be observed, that it is far preferable to acquire a knowledge of general History rather than a part; so, in like manner, the study of Geography should comprise the whole world rather than a particular country or province.

13. What an interesting object must it be, to behold men in their first solitary and divided state, naked, and living upon the wild roots and fruits of the woods; thence gradually approaching to familiar intercourse by the mutual ties

of pleasure and necessity; and after a time, into little societies:

14. To see societies extend and grow up into considerable states, empires rise and flourish, and after having reached the summit of power and greatness, and threatened destruction to one half of the world, sink into decay, in order to rise again in a variety of states, which, in their turn, blaze awhile, and then are extinguished!

15. Through those numberless revolutions and perpetual convulsions which strike the spectator's eyes, the statesman examines the several springs of governments, their imperfections and advantages, their power and weakness; he investigates the progress of empires, the principles by which they were raised, and the remote causes of their declension and fall.

16. The legislator considers the infinite variety of laws which are presented to his view, the motives that introduced them, and the advantages and misfortunes which they produced: the good man cherishes and strengthens his mind by the bright examples set before him; he sees virtue rewarded in glory and honour, and vice severely punished in the infamy with which the name of every tyrant is branded.

17. The scholar and artist follow the footsteps of genius, trace her efforts and discoveries, her errors and progress, the reason why arts flourished in one country and deserted others. But the philosopher finds an advantage still more estimable and universal.

18. In whatsoever sphere of life we are placed, nothing is more necessary than a good and happy judgment; it is this inestimable blessing which alone enables us to discern the genuine face of truth among the many delusive images of fiction.

19. The citizen, who reads only the history of his own times and nation, is too apt to imagine that the sentiments which he sees adopted there, are alone just and rational. He is blind to the causes that strengthen this illusion; self-love, prejudice in favour of his country and the age he lives in, the numberless testimonies which flatter and approve of public opinions, habit and custom,—all, in short, persuade him that the manners and notions where he resides must prevail every where, and have been respected and esteemed in all ages.

20. GENERAL HISTORY, by laying open to view every age and country, shows objects in a very different light: it unfolds a multitude of fictions, which time has at length exposed; it exhibits the most absurd fables, that had been respected as truths by the wisest nations; it shows him sentiments more rational and sublime, more worthy of attention, faith, and credit, which after flourishing long in one part of the world, at length are buried in silent contempt, but again revive in another.

INTRODUCTION.

21. It is by this clear light that a rational being discovers the vanity of those absurd fictions by which he has been deceived ; and by shaking off these false acquisitions he attaches himself to truths, which he sees floating on the wide ocean of error and illusion. Universal History presents an infinite variety of the most useful, striking, and instructive information.

22. Nothing can be more conducive either to our improvement or pleasures, than to review the vast theatre where we ourselves are performers,—to converse with those who have been great and famous,—to condemn the vices of men without fearing their resentment, and praise their virtues without conscious adulation.

23. By GEOGRAPHY we acquire a knowledge of the formation and structure of the earth, its figure and size, its several parts, together with all meteors, and various other phenomena, as earthquakes, volcanoes, &c. By this study we may traverse, in idea, the whole world, and without removing from our home ; and

24. By ASTRONOMY we acquire a knowledge of the heavenly bodies, the sun, moon, and stars ; and by which, also, we are taught to know how to calculate the duration of times and of seasons.

25. But of all historical information, the history of Man affords, in a supreme degree, the union of instruction and amusement. Hence this subject has been always considered as one of the most valuable studies to which youth in particular can be directed ; it also further points out the rewards of diligence and application, and the misery and disgrace which generally accompany idleness, and the misapplication of time and talents.

26. The many advantages to be derived from the study of BIOGRAPHY are so obvious and well known, that it requires little illustration. Its chief object is the development of personal character ; and, consequently, is a good companion to History. It sets before us the advantages of temperance, sobriety, and truth ; of honour, honesty, and justice ; and excites in us a desire to imitate the actions of all virtuous and good men ; at the same time it warns us against the approach of evil.

Questions for Examination.

1. What subjects are said to claim the most distinguished rank ?
2. Of what does experience convince us ? In what do we profit by studying History ? 3. What is one of the most distinguishing characters of History ? 4. What does particular History give us ? What general ?
5. In what manner is History similar to Geography ? 6. What is sometimes concealed ? 7. What takes a tincture from other

countries ? 8. In what manner have nations been erroneously applauded ? 9. In what manner must a general picture be viewed ? History ? Geography ? 10. How can we trace the gradations of improvement or decay ? 11. What may we attain by such reflections as these ? 12. What do you observe further by these reflections ?

13, 14. What becomes an interesting object in the study of History ? 15, 16. What do statesmen learn by studying History ? legislators ? 17. What do the scholar and artist follow ? 18. What qualification is of great importance in life ? 19. What does a good judgment enable us to observe ? to perform ? 20. What does general History open to view ? 21. How do we discover the absurdities of fiction ?

23. What do we learn by Geography ? 24. Astronomy ? 26. What is the object of Biography ? What does it set before us ? What does it excite ?

CHAPTER II.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Redemp'tion, <i>s.</i> ransom, release ; purchase of God's favour by the death of Christ. | 15. Mo'narchy, <i>s.</i> the government of a single person ; empire. |
| 12. Ar'b'itrary, <i>a.</i> depending on no rule ; capricious ; despotic. | 18. Transla'tion, <i>s.</i> removal ; change ; (in the Scriptural sense) passing from earth to heaven without suffering death. |
| 16. Pri'mitive, <i>a.</i> from the beginning. | |

1. WHAT is the first and most important of our duties ? To acquire a knowledge of ourselves, and the Great Author of our existence.

2. From what source may this knowledge be derived ? The BIBLE, which contains the history of the CREATION of the world, the FALL and REDEMPTION of mankind, and makes us acquainted with the attributes of GOD.

3. What is the world ? The globe or earth on which we dwell.

4. What is the first event in the history of the world ? Its creation by the Almighty.

5. How long is it from the creation of the world to the year of our Lord 1850 ? 5854 years. The 4004 years before the birth of Christ being added to the years since, will make the number required ; namely, 5854.

6. What are the several sciences that give us a description of the world ? History, Chronology, Geography, Biography, and Astronomy. History is a relation of past events ; Chronology points out the time they happened ; Geography marks the places where ; Biography is the history of the lives of men ; Astronomy describes the heavenly bodies,—the sun, moon, planets, and stars.

7. What have you to observe further of these sciences ? That they are among the most useful as well as the most interesting branches of all human knowledge, and that there is not a child of Adam but should learn them ; for by these we trace the origin of things and of nations, with

the progress of discovery, and the advances of mankind in arts, commerce, and civilization.

8. How is History divided? Into *ancient* and *modern*, *sacred* and *profane*. Ancient history is an account of the world before the birth of our Saviour; modern history is an account of the world since that time: some writers, however, make ancient history extend to the fall of the Roman empire. Sacred history is that which is contained in the Old and New Testaments; profane history gives us an account of the rise and fall of nations, and relates the actions of particular persons which are not noticed in the Bible.

9. Are there any other divisions of History? Yes; history may also be said to be divided into *civil* or *political*, which relates to wars, treaties, kingdoms, and states; *ecclesiastical*, to religion and the church; and *fabulous*, or that which is mixed up with fables.

10. What is Chronology? Chronology is a science which treats of the measuring and divisions of time, and enables us to ascertain the periods of events: it consists of two parts, the first treating of the measurement of time; the second fixing the dates of the various events recorded in history, and arranging them according to the order in which they happened.

11. What is an era? A fixed point of time, at or near which some remarkable event has happened, from whence a series of years is computed; as, from the CREATION, the DELUGE, the BIRTH OF CHRIST, &c.

12. How are those eras arranged or disposed? Their order is quite arbitrary. The principal are the following: 1. the Creation; 2. the Deluge; 3. the Call of Abraham; 4. the Departure or Ex'odus of the Israelites from Egypt; 5. the Building of the Temple; 6. the Destruction of Troy; 7. the first Olympiad; 8. the Building of Rome; 9. the beginning of the reign of Nabonas'sar, king of Babylon; 10. the Julian era; 11. the Hegi'ra, or flight of Mahomet; with many others that have been used or continue in use among different nations. The CHRISTIAN ERA, which commences at the birth of Christ, is in use among all Christian nations.

13. Mention the dates of these eras respectively, before and after the birth of Christ. The Creation, 4004 years B.C.; the Deluge, 2349 years B.C.; the Call of Abraham, 1921 years B.C.; the Exodus, 1491 years B.C.; the Building of the Temple, 1012 years B.C.; the Destruction of Troy, 1183 years B.C.; the first Olympiad, 776 years B.C.; the Building of Rome, 753 years B.C.; the Reign of Nabonassar, 747 years B.C.; the Hegi'ra, A.D. 622.

14. Into what periods is History commonly divided before the birth of Christ? The *first* period is from the Creation of the world to the Deluge, about 1655 years; the *second* is from the Deluge to the calling of Abraham, 428 years; the

third is from the calling of Abraham to the law given by Moses, 430 years; the *fourth* is from the law given by Moses to the taking of Troy, 308 years; the *fifth* is from the taking of Troy to the building of the temple of Jerusalem by Solomon, 171 years; the *sixth* is from the building of the temple of Jerusalem to the foundation of Rome, 259 years; the *seventh* is from the foundation of Rome to the beginning of the reign of Cyrus, the first king of Persia, 193 years; the *eighth* is from Cyrus to the birth of Christ, 560 years.

15. What were the four great monarchies of the antients? The Assyrian, the Persian, the Grecian, and the Roman.

16. Are these the only great nations of antiquity? No. History acquaints us with several others, which were of very considerable importance: namely, the Egyptian, a power of high rank; the Chinese, one of the most ancient; the Median; and the Parthian, which for a long time made head against the Romans.

17. Whence do we acquire a knowledge of the period from the creation of the world to the Deluge? The only account we have of the world before the flood is given by Moses in the book of Genesis.

18. What are the principal events there recorded relative to this period? The creation of the world, showing man in his primitive state; the fall of Adam and Eve; the murder of Abel by Cain, his brother; the translation of Enoch to heaven, on account of his piety; the corruption of mankind and the general deluge, announced to Noah one hundred and twenty-five years before it happened; the preservation of Noah and his family in the ark, and the destruction of all the rest of mankind.

For the better understanding of the several chapters, and the numerous historical questions of this work, it is not only necessary, but of importance, that the Geography of the several countries in which these events have happened should be well understood, without which, indeed, the greater portion will be very difficult of attainment, and in many parts not to be comprehended. The following Outline of the History and Geography of the Ancient World, compiled expressly by Mr. Pinnock for this Improved Edition, will form a suitable preparation for the questions propounded in Mangnall.

CHAPTER III.

Geography and History of the Ancient World.

18. *Past'oral*, *a.* rural; like shepherds. | 19. *En'terprise*, *s.* a great or arduous
24. *Appella'tion*, *s.* name; title. | undertaking.

1. THE principal countries of the world, as known to the antients, were Babylo'nia, Assy'ria, Mesopota'mia, Arme'nia, Me'dia, Persia, Par'thia, Canaan or the Holy Land, Egypt, Phœni'cia, Sy'ria, Asia Minor, Greece, Italy, and Carthage; all of which are represented in the light part of the map annexed; but the dark parts at this period were unknown.

2. The first kingdom in the world was Babylonia, followed by Assyria, which comprised Assyria Proper, Babylonia, Mesopotamia, Media, &c.

3. MESOPOTAMIA was that part now called Diarbekir, in Asiatic Turkey. It was so named from its being seated between the rivers Euphra'tes and Tigris, having Assyria Proper on the east; Armenia on the north; Syria on the west; and Babylonia on the south. The term Mesopota-mia signifies a country lying between two rivers; so that this name may be given to any country that has such a situation, whatever the rivers may be that inclose it. The name, in its most extensive sense, comprised the whole of the district between the rivers, including Babylon.

4. This country is much celebrated in Scripture from having been the original seat of mankind, both before and after the Deluge: and because it gave birth to Heber, Na-hor, Terah, Abraham, Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, Leah, and to the sons of Jacob, all of whom are prominent characters in Scripture.

5. Its more ancient name was Aram, or Pa'dan-Aram, (*Gen. xxviii. 2.*) so called because it was first peopled by Aram, the father of the Syrians. It includes the "Plains of Shinar," now Sinjar, and answers to the modern Alge-zira.

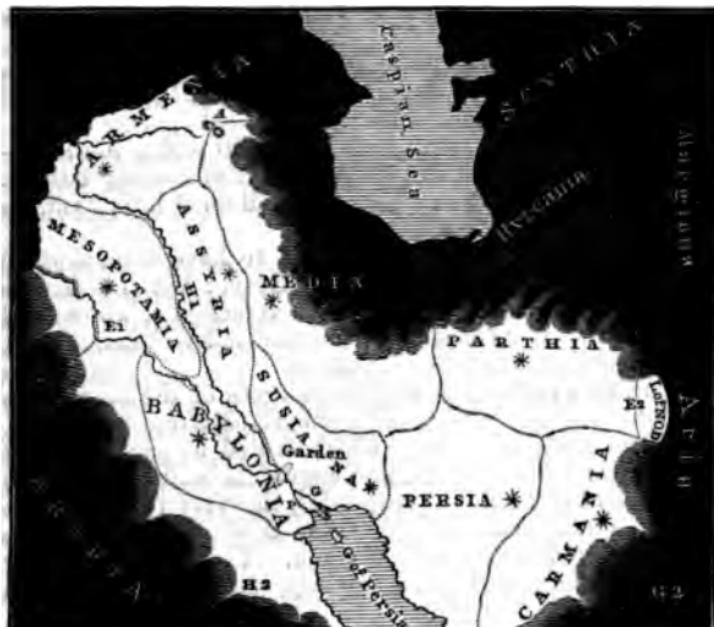
6. The original inhabitants of Syria and Mesopotamia were called Aramæans, from their progenitor—Aram. In the time of David, b. c. 1060, this country was divided into several petty kingdoms, the chief of which, as noticed in the Scriptures, are

1. Aram Naharaim,—Syria of the two rivers, or Me-sopotamia.

2. Aram Zobah,—supposed to be the territory of Nis'ibis, in Assyria.

3. Aram Hamath,—territory of Hamath, the Plain of the Orontes.
4. Aram Damesek,—Plain of Damascus.
5. Aram Maachah,—Canton of Abile'ne.
6. Aram Rehob,—Canton of Trachoni'tis.
7. Padan-Aram is supposed to have designated Mesopotamia.
7. It formerly contained the ancient cities, Ur, Haran, Babylon, and Nineveh. It was afterwards seized by the

THE ANTEDILUVIAN WORLD.



KEY TO THE MAP.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| H 1. the Hiddekel. | E 2. the city of Enoch, in the land of Nod. |
| E 1. the Euphrates. | H 2. the country of Havilah, now forming part of Arabia. |
| G. the Gihon. | P. the Pison. |
| P. the Pison. | A. Mount Ararat, seated in Armenia. |

The above Map represents the Antediluvian World, so far as we are made acquainted with it in Scripture. The term antediluvian is so named from the Latin words *ante*, before, and *diluvium*, a deluge. The names marked with a star, and those on the black ground, are countries since the Deluge.

How far the antediluvian world extended we are not informed. According to Moses, the *Garden of Eden* was situated between the four rivers, Euphrates, Hiddekel (now the Tigris), Pison, and Gihon, as denoted by the dotted ring over the letter N, in the word Babylon.

Babylonia, Assyria, Mesopotamia, and Armenia, including also Mount Ararat, form part of Asiatic Turkey; Media, Susiana, Parthia, Carmania, Hyrcania, Margiana, Aria, and Gedrosia (G 2), form part of Modern Persia.

Questions. Where was seated the garden of Eden? Between what rivers? Which of the countries marked on the Map form part of Asiatic Turkey? and which part of Modern Persia? Where is Mount Ararat? Where was the land of Nod? the city of Enoch? Havilah? the River Pison? the Gihon? Hiddekel? What now named?

Assyrians, to whom it belonged till the dissolution of their empire, when it was divided between the Medes and Babylonians. It subsequently formed part of the Medo-Persian, the second Syrian or Macedonian, the Parthian, and the Persian empires.

8. The chief cities of Mesopotamia were, in late ages. Nis'ibis on the river Mid'o'nus, which flows into the Tigris; Seleu'cia, now Bagdad, near the Tigris, built by Seleu'cus Ni'ca'tor, who, to people it, exhausted Babylon of its inhabitants; Carræ, famed for the defeat and death of Crassus, so named from the river Chabo'ras, near which it stood,—(*Pliny*); north of which were Batnæ and Edessa, near the foot of Mount Taurus.

9. It was from Mesopotamia that God called Abraham, from whom sprang the Jews, a great part of the Arabs, and amongst others the Ishmaelites.

10. ARMENIA is a name both in ancient and modern geography, and comprises the northern part of Asiatic Turkey. It is a country of large extent, and is divided into Armenia Major and Minor.

11. Its earliest name is supposed to have been derived from Aram, the original name of Syria; but the Greeks derived it from Armonus, one of the Argonauts, who settled in this country. Armenia Major is the modern Turcomania, but still retains the name of Armenia.

12. In this country are all the sources of the four rivers mentioned by Moses; namely, the Euphra'tes, the Tigris, the Pi'son, and the Gi'hon, which flowed by the garden of Eden. (See *Gen. ii. 10-14*, and map of Antediluvian world.)

13. There is no doubt respecting the first two; and the two latter are mentioned by those celebrated ancient historians, Herod'otus and Xen'ophon. The two rivers now called Arax'es and Phasis, are supposed to be the Gihon and Pison.

14. In this country also is Mount Ar'arat, upon which Noah's ark is said to have rested after the universal deluge.

15. Its boundaries have been different at different periods. According to Strabo, Armenia Proper was bounded on the north by Mount Cau'casus, and on the south by Mount Taurus, which divided it from Mesopotamia.

16. The natural features of Armenia are highly delightful, and very picturesque. It is very mountainous. Here the Euphrates and Tigris take their rise, as also the Cyrus (Kur), and other considerable streams.

17. The chief cities of ancient Armenia were Artaxa'ta, Sebas'tia, Colo'nia, Armosa'ta, &c. This country was long under the dominion of the Medes and Persians, till subdued by Alexander the Great, when it was transferred to the Greeks.

18. The ancient Armenians were, for the most part, a

pastoral people, living chiefly in open villages, or in caverns in the mountains, and maintaining themselves by the produce of their flocks and herds, as their successors, the Kurds, do at the present day.

19. The ancient inhabitants were greatly distinguished for their courage and enterprise; but the moderns, by whom a large portion of Asiatic Turkey is inhabited, are chiefly noted for trade and commerce. They also form the chief class of traders in the Persian empire.

20. Their government was patriarchal,—(*Xenophon*). They sent wine down the Euphrates to Babylon,—(*Herodotus*,) and likewise furnished Tyre and the trading towns in the Mediterranean with horses and mules.—(*Ezek. xxvii. 14.*)

21. MEDIA extended along the south of the Caspian Sea, and had Armenia on its west. This country was first settled by Madia, from whom descended the Medes, a people long famous in the East, who afterwards united themselves with the Persians.

22. The capital of Media was Ecbat'ana, now called Hamaden, near the Caspian Sea. Here Tobias, during his captivity, married Sarah.—(*Tobit vii. 13.*)

23. ASSYRIA, or rather ASSYRIA PROPER, now forms part of Persia, and was anciently bounded by Media on its east, Mesopotamia on its north, Arabia on its west, and the Persian Gulf on its south.

24. The appellation Assyria is frequently confounded with that of Syria, and Assyrians for that of Syrians; as by Virgil, Justin, &c. The Assyrian empire was one of the greatest in the world.

25. The boundary of SYRIA, like Assyria, has been very undefined, and had different limits at different periods.

26. Syria was anciently divided into Syria Proper, Phœnicia, and Palestine. In this country were situated Palmyre'ne, Celo-Syria, and some other provinces of less note.

27. In Palmyre'ne were Thap'sacus, and Palmy'rā or Tadmor, mentioned in 1 Kings, ix. 18, the noble ruins of which are still to be seen. The capital of Celo-Syria was Damascus.

28. Phœnicia, Canaan, Palestine, Persia, and some few others, will be described under their respective heads.



Questions for Examination.

1. What were the principal countries of the world, as known to the antients ? Point them out on your map.
2. What was the first kingdom of the world ? Who was its first king ? Where was this country situated ? How bounded ?
3. Where was Mesopotamia ? Where situated ? How bounded ? What now called ? What does the term signify ?

4. For what was Assyria celebrated? Babylon? By whom was Assyria founded? What distinguished characters were the natives of Mesopotamia? 5. What was its more ancient name? Why so called? What does it include? What now called? 6. Describe this country in the time of David. Name its several kingdoms of this period. 7. What cities did this country anciently contain? In what empires was it successively absorbed? 8. What were the chief cities of Mesopotamia? For what distinguished?

10. Describe Armenia. How is it divided? 11. What was its ancient? what its modern name? Whence derived? 12. What rivers take their rise in this country? What their ancient names? What their modern? What modern rivers are supposed to be the Gihon and Pison? Where is Mount Ararat? 15. How bounded? 16, 17. What are its natural features? What its chief cities? 18. What were the ancient Armenians? How did they live? Where reside? 19. What was their government? their commerce? 20. For what were they otherwise distinguished?

21. Where and what was Media? With whom did they, after a time, unite? 22. What was the capital of Media? What its modern name? 23. What was Assyria Proper? What in its extended sense? Where situated? How bounded? 24. With what is the name frequently confounded?

25. What is Syria? How bounded? 26. How anciently divided? Where was Thapsacus? Palmyra? What was the capital of Celo-Syria?

CHAPTER IV.

| | |
|--|---|
| 2. Disper'sion, <i>s.</i> the act of scattering. | 17. Di'adēm, <i>s.</i> a crown. |
| 5. Liter'a'ti, <i>s.</i> the learned. | 21. De'ified, <i>part.</i> made a god of. |
| 13. Fron'tier, <i>a.</i> bordering. | 23. Predic'tion, <i>s.</i> prophecy; declara- |
| 15. Sub'jugate, <i>v.</i> to conquer, to subdue. | tion of future events. |

BABYLONIA.

1. IN taking a general view of the history of the world, the first nations spoken of are those of Babylonia and Assyria. Of these, according to the Scriptures, which are our only guide, Babylonia was the more ancient.

2. The sacred writings inform us that the family of Noah established themselves in the "plain of Shinar," where they built the "tower of Babel," and that the confusion of their language caused their dispersion into the different nations of the earth. Babylonia is the Shinar of Scripture.

3. Babylonia comprised the country lying on both sides the Euphrates, of which Babylon was the capital; and extending southward as far as the Persian Gulf, northward to Mesopotamia, as far as Ur, which is called Ur of the Chaldeans; on the west to Arabia, and eastward to the river Tigris.

4. Babylonia is sometimes called Chalde'a; it received the name of Babylon from the tower of Babel, and that of Chaldea from the Chaldeans.

5. The Chaldeans, properly so called, were the *literati* of the country, and highly commended for their skill in the sciences, particularly astronomy.

6. Chaldea, in its most extended sense, means Babylonia, as in the prophecies of Jeremi'ah and Eze'kiel; but in its limited sense, it signifies a province of it, lying towards Arabia the Desert; which, in Scripture, is called the "land of the Chaldeans."

7. Babylon, the capital of this country, was seated on the banks of the Euphrates, and was begun to be built about the same time as was the tower of Babel, about 100 years after the Deluge.

8. This city was not only the most ancient in the world, but also one of the most celebrated, both for its magnificence and extent.

9. We hear nothing of Nineveh, the capital of Assyria, till some time after.

10. According to profane writers, these two kingdoms flourished separately for about 190 years, when Ninus, king of Assyria, made war upon Babylon, and added it to his empire, B.C. 2059.

11. Thus was formed the *great* Assyrian empire, which existed in unrivalled power more than 1200 years.

12. Ninus, a warlike and ambitious prince, is said to have added to his empire India, Bactria'na, Hyrcania, Carmania, Media, Persia, with part of Syria and Asia Minor.

13. Babylon is said to have been greatly enlarged and adorned by Semi'ramis, and afterwards, with still greater splendour, by the proud monarch Neb'uchadnez'zar, who invaded Judea, subdued Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt, and recovered some of the frontier provinces which that monarch had seized.

14. Neb'uchadnez'zar, upon his return to Babylon, united with Cyax'ares, king of Media, against the Assyrians, and put an end to that empire, which was divided between the two conquerors, B.C. 601.

15. In the mean time Jehoi'akim, king of Judah, attempted to throw off the Babylonian yoke, by which vain effort he lost his life, and his country was finally subjugated.

16. Neb'uchadnezzar soon after set up the golden image mentioned in Scripture; he next conquered the Tyrians, Sidonians, and other nations on the coast of Palestine, and overran Egypt, Ethiopia, and Lybia; but he could not retain these African conquests.

17. Towards the end of his reign, he was afflicted with madness, in which state he continued seven years; during this period the sovereign power was held by his son, but upon resuming the diadem, he imprisoned his son for misgovernment.

18. Nebuchadnezzar having been brought to a deep sense

of religion by his sufferings, and having occupied the throne about a year longer, died, B.C. 562, after a reign of forty-three years.

19. His son and successor, E'vil-Mero'dach, was murdered by the usurper Neriglissar, who was soon after killed in an engagement with Cyrus, king of Media.

20. Besides the Babylonians and Assyrians, the Egyptians are the only nation of whom profane history, at this early period, makes any mention; but the commencement of their history is as uncertain as that of the Babylonians and Assyrians.

21. Me'nes is supposed to have been the first king of Egypt, and according to the most probable account, he is believed to be the same person with Miz'raim, the grandson of Noah, whom there are also good grounds for supposing to be the deified personage the Egyptians venerated under the name Os'iris. Osiris is said to have been the inventor of arts, and the civilizer of a great part of the world.

22. About this time the Phœnicians also rose very rapidly into power. They were descended from Sidon, the grandson of Ham, and dwelt in the north of Palestine. The foundation of their greatness was Commerce.



• 23. The last king of Babylonia was Nabona'dius, called in Scripture Belshazzar. Agreeably to Daniel's prediction, this monarch was slain on the evening in which he saw the hand-writing on the wall, and Cyrus obtained his dominion.

24. This kingdom afterwards underwent all the revolu-

tions of the Persian empire, till the death of Alexander the Great; after which it was allotted to Seleucus, one of Alexander's generals, whose successors had it for many centuries.

25. Sharing the fortunes of the Syrian states, Babylonia was at length seized by the Parthians, B.C. 141; it was afterwards successively reduced by the Persians and the Saracens.

26. Babylonia, now called Irak Arabi, is a province of Asiatic Turkey. It is watered both by the Euphrates and Tigris, and has Bagdad for its capital.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were the first two nations of the world? Which of these had the precedence? 2. What book gives this account? Where was the land of Shinar? 3. Babylonia? 4. What is Babylonia sometimes called? 5. Who were the Chaldeans? 6. What was Chaldea in its most extended sense?

7. What is the capital of Babylonia? What was the most ancient city of the world? 10. How long did these kingdoms flourish separately? By whom were they united? When? What subsequently form? 12. Who was Ninus? What countries did he conquer? 13. By whom was Babylon greatly enlarged and adorned? 14. Give me an account of the life and exploits of Nebuchadnezzar. 19. By whom was he succeeded?

21. What other nations were of importance about this period? Who was the founder of Egypt? Who its first king? 22. Who were the Phoenicians? For what distinguished? 23. Who was the last king of Babylon? What other name was given to him? When was he slain? Who obtained his dominions? 24. What revolutions did it afterwards undergo? Till what period? To whom was it afterwards allotted? How long was it held by the successors of Seleucus? 25. By whom was it at last seized? When? Who then subdued it? 26. By what name is it now known? What is it? Where situated? Its capital?

CHAPTER V.

| | |
|---|--|
| 6. Comprehend'ed, <i>part.</i> included. | 20. Tri'butary, <i>a.</i> paying tribute. |
| 8. Me'morable, <i>a.</i> worthy of memory. | 34. Compe'titors, <i>s.</i> rivals; opponents. |
| 15. Coe'val, <i>a.</i> existing at the same time. | 35. Ex'tant, <i>a.</i> still existing. |

ASSYRIA.

1. ASSYRIA, anciently famous as one of the great empires of Asia, is said to have been founded by Asshur, the son of Ham, and grandson of Noah.

2. It is generally believed that Asshur originally dwelt in Babylon, and that he was driven thence by Nimrod.

3. In its original and limited extent, it comprised that district now called Curdistan, which name is derived from

the Curdu'chi, who, from the earliest ages, occupied the mountainous tracts on the borders of Armenia: hence the name of Curds, so generally diffused throughout Asiatic

ASSYRIAN EMPIRE.



KEY TO THE MAP.

ASSYRIA.

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| A 1. Assyria Proper. | E 2. Ethiopia. | S 2. Sogdiana. |
| B 1. Babylonia. | P 2. Parthia. | G 2. Gedrosia. |
| M 1. Media. | M 2. Mesopotamia. | C. Carmania. |
| P 1. Persia. | P 3. Phoenicia. | H. Hyrcania. |
| S 1. Syria. | A 4. Aria. | G. Greece, in Europe. |
| E 1. Egypt. | B 2. Bactria. | |

SYRIA.

- a 1. Antioch, where the disciples of our Saviour were first called Christians.
- d 2. Damascus, a celebrated city both in ancient and modern times.
- P 3. Palmyra, or Tadmor, the residence of Queen Zenobia, said to have been founded by Solomon.
- A 4. Heliópolis, now Balbec, celebrated for the ruins of a magnificent temple of the Sun.

PHœNICIA, CANAAN, &c.

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| L. Laodicéa. | B 4. Berytus, now T 2. Tripolis. | S 5. Sidon. | S 7. Sarepta. |
| | | T 6. Tyre. | A 3. Aradus. |

Questions.—What district constituted Assyria Proper? What the Great Assyrian empire?—Assyria Proper was the district marked A 1;—the Assyrian empire comprised all the countries delineated on the white ground.

What district constituted Babylonia Proper? What Chaldea?—Babylonia Proper comprised the country marked B 1, and extended to the Tigris river; Chaldea comprised the southern part, bordering on the Persian Gulf. All the countries to the east of Assyria now constitute Modern Persia.

Turkey. Like most other countries, it has had different boundaries at different periods.

4. Assyria Proper was but of small extent ; and, according to Ptol'emy, it was bounded on the north by Armenia, on the east by Media, on the south by Babylonia, and on the west by the Tigris.

5. Assyria, in its greatest extent, comprised
 Assyria Proper, Persia, Egypt,
 Babylonia, Asia Minor, Lybia, and part of
 Media, Syria, Ethiopia.

6. According to the description of the Greek and Roman writers, the boundaries of Assyria comprehended all the countries and nations between the Mediterranean Sea on the west, and the river Indus on the east ; and between the deserts of Scythia on the north, and the Indian Ocean.—*(Ctesias.)*

7. In the earliest ages of the world, Babylonia was in a state of friendship with Assyria ; but nothing is known of either, beyond what is mentioned in Scripture.

8. The chief cities of Assyria were Nineveh, the capital, on the Tigris, opposite to the present town of Mousel ; Arbel'a, memorable for the final overthrow of Darius by Alexander the Great ; and Ctesiphon, opposite to Seleucia, now Bagdad.

9. In order to make this part of history as explicit as possible, it is well to copy our authority, which indeed is the only one we possess, or rather, on which we can rely.

10. "And Cush begat Nimrod ; he began to be a mighty one in the earth. He was a mighty hunter before the LORD ; wherefore it is said, even as Nimrod the mighty hunter before the LORD.

11. "And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar."—*Gen. x. 8-10.*

12. By this part of Scripture it is plain that Babylon, or Babylonia, was the first kingdom on the earth, and that Nimrod was its first sovereign.

13. "Out of that land (meaning Babylon) went forth Assh'ur, and builded Nineveh, and the city Reho'both, and Calah, and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah : the same is a great city."—*Gen. x. 11, 12.*

14. Thus is shown that Babylonia was the first kingdom ; and that from Asshur arose the Assyrian, or what is usually called the "great Assyrian empire."

15. Nearly coeval with Babylon and Nineveh, Mizraim founded the kingdom of Egypt ; and the Canaanites took possession of that part of Syria which comprehended Phœnicia and Palestine.

16. From this period, the posterity of Noah gradually dispersed themselves into the different quarters of the world.

17. Nineveh, the capital of Assyria, was a very large city, being sixty miles, or in the language of Scripture, "three days' journey," in compass. It stood on the eastern bank of the Tigris, and was totally destroyed by the united armies of the Medes and Babylonians.

18. The last of the ancient Assyrian kings was Sardanapalus, whose life terminated B. C. 820; or, according to others, B. C. 747. From the ruins of the first arose another Assyrian empire, but its history is involved in obscurity.

19. After the death of Sardanapalus, the Assyrian empire was divided into three kingdoms; namely, the Median, Assyrian, and Babylonian.

20. Arba'ces retained the supreme authority, and nominated governors in Assyria and Babylon, who were honoured with the title of kings, while they remained subject and tributary to the Median monarch.

21. Bel'esis, a Chaldean priest, who assisted Arba'ces in the conquest of Sardanapalus, received the government of Babylon as the reward of his services; and Phul was intrusted with that of Assyria.

22. The Assyrian governor gradually enlarged the boundaries of his kingdom, and was successively succeeded on the throne by his son Tiglath-Pile'ser,* Shalmane'sar, and Sennache'rib, who asserted and maintained their independence.

23. Tiglath-Pileser made war against the kings of Israel and Syria, when he took Damascus, and slew Rezin, its king, and subdued the Syrians.

24. He then entered Israel, subdued many cities, and carried away captive many thousands, principally of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh.

• This account we find in the 2nd Kings,[†] and 1st of the Chronicles, by which the prophecy of Amos was fulfilled, and from which it appears the empire of the Assyrians was now become great and powerful.

25. Tiglath-Pile'ser was succeeded by Shalmane'sar, B. C. 729, who invaded Phoenicia, and the kingdom of Israel; and after three years' siege, he took Samaria, and carried away all that remained of the ten tribes, and placed them in Halah and Habor, by the river Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.[‡]

26. These tribes are no more heard of in the land of Canaan, which has been a subject of great inquiry. Thus ended the kingdom of Israel. The kingdom of Judah continued about 130 years longer.

27. Shalmaneser was succeeded by Sennache'rib, B. C. 719;

* At the same time Phul gave Babylon to his younger son Nabonassar, B. C. 747.

† 2 Kings xv. 29-37; xvi. 5-9. 1 Chr. v. 26.

‡ 2 Ki. xvii. 6.

and in the year B. C. 714, he was put to flight with great slaughter by the Ethiopians and Egyptians.

28. In the year B. C. 711, the Medes revolted from the Assyrians; Sennacherib was slain, and he was succeeded by his son E'sar-Had'don.

29. Esar-Haddon began his reign at Nineveh in the year of Nabonassar * 42; and in the year 68 extended it over Babylon.

30. He then marched against Israel, and carried the remainder of the Samaritans into captivity, and peopled Samaria with captives brought from several parts of his kingdom; and in the year of Nabonassar 77 or 78, he appears to have put an end to the reign of the Ethiopians in Egypt.

31. "In the reigns of Sennache'rib and E'sar-Had'don," says Sir Isaac Newton, "the Assyrian empire seems to have arrived at its greatness; being united under one monarch, and containing Assyria, Media, Susiana, Chaldea, Mesopotamia, Cilicia, Syria, Phœnicia, Egypt, Ethiopia, and part of Arabia, and extending eastward as far as Elyma'is, in Persia, whose capital is of the same name, and Paræstacene, a province of the Medes; and to these are also to be added Armenia, Pontus, and Cappadocia, together with Colchis and Iberia, supposed to be the provinces of Halah and Ha-bor of Scripture."

32. After the death of Esar-Haddon, the son of Sennacherib, the kingdom of Assyria was divided, and annexed to the kingdoms of Media and Babylon.

33. Several tributary princes afterwards reigned in Nineveh; but we hear no more of the kings of Assyria, but only those of Babylon; and the city of Nineveh having been taken and destroyed by the Medes and Babylonians, the only capital heard of after was Babylon.

34. The Assyrians were competitors with the Egyptians for the honour of having invented alphabetic writing.

35. It appears, from the few remains now extant of the writings of these ancient nations, that their letters had a great affinity to each other. They much resembled one another in shape; and they arranged them in the same manner, from right to left.

36. From the downfall of the Assyrian monarchy in 606, we have to refer the reader to the history of Babylon, now governed by Nabopolas'sar, who was the father of the great Nebuchadnezzar, the destroyer of Jerusalem.

* This is the Nabonassar from whose reign began the famous astronomical epoch at Babylon, called from him the era of Nabonassar. In the sacred writings he is called Baladan, and his son, who succeeded him, Bero'dach-Bal'adan. This is the prince who sent ambassadors to Hezeki'ah, to congratulate him on the recovery of his health.—2 Kings xx. 12.

37. Nebuchadnezzar was successively succeeded by Evil-Mero'dach and Belshazzar, whose kingdom was subverted by "Cyrus the Great."

38. On the subversion of the second Assyrian empire by the conquest of Babylon, Cyrus founded the Persian empire, which became, under his successors, one of the greatest kingdoms of the earth, extending from the Mediterranean to the Indus, and from Scythia to the Indian Ocean.

39. Some of the inhabitants of this country (now Curdis-tan) live in towns and villages, but the greater part lead a wandering life on the plains, and subsist upon the produce of their flocks, or by plunder.

40. They are nearly independent of the Turks, whom they despise. They are, in general, without faith, rude, and uncivilized, and have no regard for truth.

41. They are the same people through whom Xenophon so hardly fought his way, when conducting the famous retreat of the "Ten Thousand." They are still the boldest and the rudest people in all Asia.

42. Egypt, a nation of the remotest antiquity, next claims our notice. So early as the days of Abraham, Lower Egypt was the seat of a great and powerful monarchy, and a regular government. The Egyptians are celebrated also, both in sacred and profane history, for their early attainments in science and the arts.

43. Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and to them the Greeks were perhaps chiefly indebted for their civilization and refinement.

Questions for Examination.

1. Describe Assyria. For what distinguished? By whom founded? 2. Where did he originally dwell? 3. What was its original extent? What now called? Whence derived? 4. What countries did Assyria comprise, according to Ptolemy? 5. What in its greatest extent? 6. How bounded, according to the Greeks?

7. In what state were Babylonia and Assyria in the earliest ages of the world? 8. What were the chief cities of Assyria? Where situated? 9. Whence do we derive our knowledge of these countries? 10. Who and what was Nimrod? What kingdom did he found? What was the first kingdom on the earth? and who was its first king? Where do we get this information? In *Genesis*, ch. x. 13. Out of what land went Asshur? What did he build or found? What were the chief cities of Assyria? Of Babylonia?

14. What is shown by the preceding paragraph? 15. What kingdom was nearly coeval with those of Babylon and Nineveh, or Assyria? What other people flourished about the same time? Where? 16. What immediately followed this period? 17. Describe Nineveh. Where was it seated? By whom destroyed? 18. Who was the last king of the first Assyrian monarchy? 19. How was Assyria divided upon the death of Sardanapalus?

20. Who was Arbaces ? Arbaces was governor of Media, who revolted with Belesis against Sardanapalus, and founded the empire of Media, upon the ruins of the Assyrian power, 820 years b.c. How long did he reign ? He reigned upwards of fifty years, and was famous for the greatness of his undertakings, as well as for valour.—Justin.

21. Who was Belesis ? Belesis was a priest and governor of Babylon, who conspired with Arbaces to dethrone the king, Sardanapalus. For this purpose they led a great army towards Nineveh, and defeated Sardanapalus in battle, and reduced him to such despair, that he retired to his palace, where, having erected a great funeral pile, he burnt himself and all his effects to an incredible amount ; having in this alone, says Justin, displayed the courage of a man. Thus the Assyrian empire was transferred to the Medes. Who now became king of Assyria ? By whom was he successively succeeded ? What did Phul give to his younger son ?

23. What were the conquests of Tiglath-Pileser ? 25. What were the conquests of Shalmanesar ? What befell the Jews about this period ? 27. What were the chief events in the life of Sennacherib ? 28. What have you to observe of the Medes ? Of Nabolassar ? 29. By what name is Nabolassar known in Scripture ? What are the chief events in the reign of Esar-Haddon ?

31. What says Sir Isaac Newton as to the height of the Assyrian power ? What countries did the Assyrian empire at this period comprise ? 32. What befell Assyria upon the death of Esar-Haddon ? And what became of its power and name ? 34. With what people were the Assyrians competitors for the honour of having invented the letters of the alphabet ? 35. Were the letters of these nations similar, or otherwise ? In what were they similar ? 36. What have you to observe upon the downfall of the Assyrian empire ? Who was now governor of Babylon ?

37. By whom was Nebuchadnezzar successively succeeded ? 38. What empire rose upon the downfall of the Assyrian ? What was the extent of the Persian empire ? 39. How do the inhabitants now live ? How subsist ? 40. Of whom nearly independent ? What is their character ? 41. What general fought his way through them in making his retreat ? 42. What nation next deserves our attention ? 43. To what people were the Greeks indebted for their learning ?

CHAPTER VI.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Hereditary, <i>a.</i> passing from one to another by right of succession. | 12. Incorporate, <i>v.</i> to form into one body; to unite. |
| 8. Sepulchral, <i>a.</i> belonging to a tomb. | 17. Oriental, <i>a.</i> eastern. |

EGYPT.

1. EGYPT is a celebrated country in the north-east part of Africa, at the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

2. The Hebrews called it Miz'rāim, from one of the sons of Ham. In profane history, Menes is considered the founder; Menes and Miz'rāim are supposed to be one and the same person. The Greeks and Romans named it Egyp-tus ; hence we call it Egypt.

3. Egypt is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea, on the east by the Red Sea, on the south by Nubia, and on the west by the Libyan desert.

4. The antiquity of Egypt must be allowed to be very great. The Mosaic writings represent Egypt as being a flourishing, well-regulated kingdom about 430 years after the flood.

5. The government of Egypt was an hereditary monarchy. The manners of the Egyptians were very early formed.

6. The Egyptians preceded most of the ancient nations in the knowledge of the useful arts, and in the cultivation of the sciences. Architecture was early brought to perfection.

7. The whole of Egypt abounds with the remains of ancient magnificence. Thebes, in Upper Egypt, was one of the most splendid cities in the world.

8. The pyramids are said by some writers to have been erected about 900 years B. C. They are supposed to have been the sepulchral monuments of the sovereigns.

9. The Egyptians possessed considerable knowledge of geometry, mechanics, and astronomy. They had divided the zodiac into twelve signs: they calculated eclipses, and seem to have had an idea of the notion of the earth.

10. The early history of ancient Egypt is involved in great obscurity. The common name of the more ancient kings was *Pharaoh*, which signifies sovereign power. Egypt was conquered by Camby'ses, and became a province of the Persian empire, about B.C. 525. Thus it continued until conquered by Alexander the Great, B.C. 332, after whose death it formed, along with Syria, Palestine, Lybia, &c., the kingdom of the Ptolemies.

11. After the battle of Actium, B.C. 31, it became a Roman province.

12. Since that time it has ceased to be an independent state, and its history is incorporated with that of its different conquerors and possessors.

13. In A.D. 640, it was conquered by the Arabs; and in later periods has passed from the hands of the Caliphs under the power of the Turks, Arabs, Kurds, and Mamelukes; and since 1517 has been governed as a province of the Turkish empire.

14. The most extraordinary monuments of Egyptian power and industry are the pyramids, which still subsist to excite the wonder and admiration of the world.

15. The only river of Egypt is the Nile, which pervades the whole length of the country from south to north.

16. This river has been famed from the remotest antiquity for its crocodiles. These tremendous monsters, however, seem to be less frequent than formerly.

17. Previous to the discovery of the passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope, the Oriental commerce of Cairo

was very extensive; but since that time it has greatly declined, and is now restricted to a few articles, chiefly coffee and drugs from Arabia, muslins and cottons from India, shawls from Cashmere, and spices from Ceylon.

18. Cairo is the centre of trade for Eastern Africa. The caravan from Morocco comes at uncertain intervals, and frequently employs 5000 camels. The population of Cairo is computed at about 300,000.

19. Of these the Arabs are the most numerous. The rest of the inhabitants are Christians, Greeks, Syrians, Armenians, Turks, and Jews.

20. The castle of Cairo, and the ruinous palace of Saladin, command a noble view of the city, the river, and the distant pyramids, which raise their venerable heads above the wreck of monarchies, and the revolutions of ages.

21. Alexandria, a celebrated city of Egypt, is situated on the borders of the Mediterranean Sea; and anciently it was long the emporium of Eastern commerce.

22. It was founded by Alexander the Great, B. C. 332, and peopled by colonies of Greeks and Jews. Alexandria rose rapidly into a state of prosperity, and in process of time was, both in point of magnitude and wealth, second only to Rome.

23. The ancient city was about fifteen miles in circuit, and possessed a population of about 600,000.

24. Upon the death of Alexander, whose body was deposited in this new city, Alexandria became the regal capital of Egypt, under the Ptolemies, and rose to its highest splendour.

25. During the reign of the three first princes of this name, its glory was at the highest. The most celebrated philosophers from the East, as well as from Greece and Rome, resorted thither for instruction; and eminent men, in every department of knowledge, were found within its walls.

26. Ptolemy Soter, the first of that line of kings, formed the museum, the library of 700,000 volumes, and several other splendid works.

27. At the death of Cleopatra, B. C. 30, Alexandria passed into the hands of the Romans; and, after having enjoyed the highest fame for upwards of a thousand years, it submitted to the arms of Omar, A. D. 640.

28. The present Alexandria occupies only about the eighth part of the site of the ancient city. The splendid temples have been exchanged for wretched mosques and miserable churches, and the magnificent palaces for mean and ill-built dwellings.

29. The city, which of old was so celebrated for its commerce and navigation, is now merely the port of Cairo, a place where ships may touch, and wares may be exchanged. The modern city is built with the ruins of the ancient.

30. The Greek version of the Scriptures was made here by learned Jews, seventy-two in number; and hence it is called the Septuagint, or version of the seventy.

31. That part of Egypt comprised within the several branches of the Nile, having the form of the Greek letter Δ, *delta*, received the name of *Delta*, which it has ever since retained.

Questions for Examination.

1-3. Describe the situation of Egypt. What were its different names, and its boundaries? 4. How is it represented in the Mosaic writings? 5-6. What was the ancient form of its government, and the state of its acquaintance with the arts and sciences, as compared with other nations? 7. What city of Egypt surpassed all others in the world? 8. When were the pyramids erected? 9. In what sciences did the Egyptians excel?

10-13. What is the meaning of the word *Pharaoh*? What do we know of the early history of Egypt? 14. What are the monuments of Egyptian industry and power still subsisting? 15. What great river pervades this country? 16. What monster has the Nile been famed for? 17-18. What is the present state of the commerce of Cairo, and its population? 19. Of what nations are its inhabitants composed? 20. Describe the view from the castle of Cairo.

22-24. Where is Alexandria? Who was its founder? and what its ancient circumference and population? Who made it the capital of Egypt? 25. Under whom and for what was it most distinguished? 26. Who formed the great library, and how many volumes did it contain? 27. At what periods did it fall into the hands of foreign powers? 28-29. Describe modern Alexandria. 30. What is meant by the Septuagint? Where and by whom was this work produced? 31. What is the Delta of Egypt, and why so called?

CHAPTER VII.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. Sanc'tified, <i>part.</i> made holy. | 30. Cotem'porary, <i>a.</i> living at the same time or age. |
| 8. Circumscri'bed, bounded, limited. | 50. Intox'icate, <i>v.</i> to make drunk. |
| 28. Com'mentaries, <i>s.</i> explanatory notes or remarks. | Ener'vetating, <i>part.</i> weakening. |
| 29. Achi'evement, <i>s.</i> a deed, an exploit. | 64. Men'dicant, <i>s.</i> a beggar. |

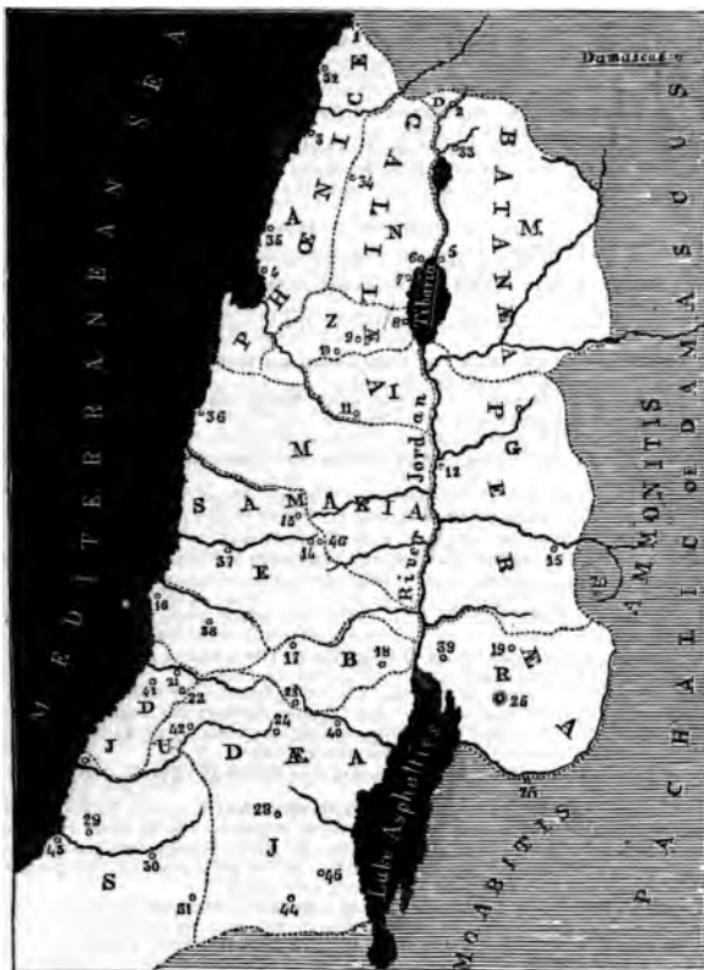
CANAAN, OR THE HOLY LAND.

1. THIS once-populous country, the peculiar object of Divine Providence, was first called the "land of Canaan" from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.

2. On many accounts this country is entitled to our particular consideration; but chiefly because it was the residence of the chosen seed, and the theatre of our redemption.

3. When the Almighty, at the confusion of tongues, appointed to the several nations of the earth their inheritance, the country now called the Holy Land fell to the lot of Canaan.

CANAAN, OR PALESTINE.



KEY TO THE MAP.

TRIBES.

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| A. Ashur. | Z. Zebulon. | R. Reuben. | J. Judah. |
| N. Naphtali. | I. Issachar. | E. Ephraim. | D. Dan. |
| M. Manasseh. | G. Gad. | B. Benjamin. | S. Simeon. |

TOWNS.

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Sidon. | 14. Shechem. | 25. Mount Nebo. | 36. Cæsarea. |
| 2. Laish. | 15. Ramoth Gilead. | 26. Rabbath Moab. | 37. Antipatris. |
| 3. Tyre. | 16. Joppa. | 27. Askalon. | 38. Diopolis, or Lydda. |
| 4. Ptolemais. | 17. Bethel. | 28. Hebron. | 39. Mechærus. |
| 5. Chorazin. | 18. Jericho. | 29. Gaza. | 40. Herodium. |
| 6. Capernaum. | 19. Heshbon. | 30. Gerar. | 41. Azotus. |
| 7. Bethsaida. | 20. Rabbath Am- | 31. Beersheba. | 42. Eleutheropolis. |
| 8. Tiberias. | mon. | 32. Sarepta. | 43. Anthedon. |
| 9. Cana. | 21. Ekron. | 33. Cæsarea Philippi | 44. Holon. |
| 10. Nazareth. | 22. Gath. | or Paneas. | 45. Juttah. |
| 11. Jezreel. | 23. Jebus, or | 34. Gabara, or | 46. Neapolis. |
| 12. Bethabara. | Jerusalem. | Gamara. | |
| 13. Samaria. | 24. Bethlehem. | 35. Eodippa. | |

Observations on the Map of Canaan, or the Holy Land.

1. The following were the several divisions and situations of the tribes of Israel, as settled under Joshua :—
 2. The TRIBE OF JUDAH, the largest territory, was seated along the western side of the Lake Asphaltus, or Dead Sea.
 3. The TRIBE OF SIMEON was situated on the west of Judah, bordering on the Philistines, who possessed the western coast.
 4. The TRIBE OF BENJAMIN was situated to the north of Judah, and its chief city was Jerusalem.
 5. The TRIBE OF DAN was seated on the sea coast, west of Benjamin, and north of the Philistines.
 6. The TRIBE OF EPHRAIM and HALF-TRIBE OF MANASSEH, comprised a considerable district north of Dan and Benjamin, extending from the sea coast to the river Jordan.
 7. The TRIBE OF ASSHUR was seated along the Syro-Phoenician coast, rather inland.
 8. The TRIBE OF ISSACHAR was seated between that of Manasseh and the northern extremity of the sea of Tiberias.
 9. The TRIBE OF NAPHTALI extended along the whole western coast of the sea of Tiberias, and north of it as far as Dan.
 10. The TRIBE OF ZABULON was seated between Naphtali, Issachar, and Asshur.
 11. The OTHER HALF-TRIBE OF MANASSEH was situated on the eastern side of the Jordan.
 12. The TRIBE OF GAD was situated on the south side of Manasseh.
REUBEN was seated below Gad, and extending to the plains of Moab.
 13. The principal cities and places were the following :—
 14. Jerusalem, the capital of Judea, and of modern Palestine. Not a vestige remains of its ancient greatness, and only a part of its site is now occupied.
 15. Bethlehem, the birth-place of our Saviour. Gaza is fifteen miles south of Askalon, near the Mediterranean Sea. This city was taken and nearly destroyed by Alexander the Great.
 16. Samaria, a city and country of Palestine, to the north of Judea.
Hebron, the burial-place of Abraham and his family.
 17. Ptolemais, now Acre, or St. Jean d'Acre, is famous for the recent bombardment by Admiral Stopford and Sir Charles Napier; the exploits of our King Richard the First; and for Bonaparte's signal defeat by Sir Sidney Smith.
 18. Nazareth is noted as the residence of our Saviour.
 19. Bethel, where Jacob had his dream; and where the golden calf was set up by Jeroboam.
 20. Midian is the name of a district near Mount Sinai, in Arabia Petraea. Its inhabitants were called Midianites, which name appears to have been synonymous with Ishmaelites. This is the country in which Moses dwelt when he left the court of Pharaoh, "choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter."
 21. Mount Horeb was where the Lord appeared to Moses, and promised that he would deliver the children of Israel out of Egypt, near which is Mount Sinai.
 22. Mount Hor was where Aaron died; and Mount Pisgah whence Moses had a view of the Promised Land.
 23. Egypt was the country into which Joseph was carried by the Midianites, and where the people of Israel afterwards lived in bondage.
 24. The sea of Tiberias was also called the sea of Genessareth, and the sea of Galilee. [Batanea, the territory of Og, king of Basan.]
 25. Gibeon, a mountain about five miles north of Jerusalem; Ajalon, a valley near it.
 26. Galilee, a celebrated portion of the Holy Land, comprising the northern part; according to Josephus very populous, containing 204 cities and towns.
 27. Samaria, a city and country of the Holy Land, on the north of Judea.
 28. Cana, where our Saviour performed his first miracle of turning water into wine.
 29. Decapolis, a country in the land of Canaan, in which were ten cities, some on this side the Jordan, and some on the other. That part of the Holy Land which was next to the Mediterranean Sea, was said to be on this side the Jordan.
- Questions.—1. How was Canaan divided in the time of Joshua? Name them. How were they respectively situated? The tribe of Judah? Simeon? Benjamin? Dan? Ephraim? Asshur? Issachar? Naphtali? Zabulon? Manasseh? Gad? Reuben? 13. What were the chief cities of the Holy Land? For what distinguished? 21. Mountains, and for what noted?*

4. It lies between the Mediterranean Sea and the mountains of Arabia, and extends from Egypt to Phœnicia. It is about 200 miles in length, and 80 in breadth.

5. It has also been distinguished by the several names of the "Land of Promise," the "Land of Israel," "The Holy Land," "Judea," and "Palestine."

6. It received the name of Palestine* from the Philistines, or Palestines,† who possessed a great part of it; it had the name of the Land of Promise from the promise God made Abraham of giving it to him; that of the Land of Israel from the Israelites having made themselves master of it; that of Judah from the tribe of Judah, which was the largest of the twelve; and that of the Holy Land from its having been sanctified by the presence, actions, miracles, and death of our Saviour, which name it retains to this day.

7. The posterity of Canaan was numerous. His eldest son Sidon founded the city of Sidon, and was father to the Sidonians and Phœnicians. Canaan had ten other sons, who were the fathers of as many tribes dwelling in Palestine and Syria; namely, the Hittites, the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Gergesites, the Hivites, the Arkites, the Siuites, the Arvadites, the Zemanites, and the Hamathites.

8. Canaan in the map presents the appearance of a very narrow slip of land, bordering on the Mediterranean Sea. Within this circumscribed district, such were the advantages of the soil and climate, that there existed in the happiest periods of the Jewish nation an immense population.

9. It is stated, that in the reigns of David and Solomon the kingdom of Israel was greatly extended, reaching as far east as Thapsacus‡ on the Euphrates, and to Gaza on the west, and comprising a very considerable portion of Syria to the north.

10. At this time the people of Israel exceeded five millions, besides the tributary Canaanites and other conquered nations.

11. There can be no doubt that this country, poor and miserable as it now is, must have been capable of sustaining animal life to a very great extent in the time of the Israelites, and even down to a comparatively late period of their history.

12. The Philistines held but a small portion of the Holy Land. It consisted of a narrow slip, extending from the 31st degree of latitude sixty miles northwardly, by ten miles in breadth.

13. A little north of Philistia were seated the celebrated cities of Tyre and Sidon, neither of which cities ever belonged to the Israelites. A small district, extending a little way inland to a short distance north of Sidon or south of

* So named by the Hebrews. † So called by the Greeks.

‡ In latitude 35° 20'.

Tyre, comprised the ancient kingdom of Phœnicia; which though so small, makes a very considerable figure in history. Its limits at different periods have been considerably extended, but chiefly along the coast.

14. The original inhabitants were the descendants of Canaan, the son of Ham, and grandson of Noah. The name Phœnicians was given to them by the Greeks, and under that name they are celebrated for commerce, for distant discoveries, for inventions, and for high attainments in the arts. It is generally thought that they had the knowledge of letters from Egypt, but this is uncertain.

15. About seventy miles nearly east of Sidon is the ancient and famous city of Damascus, being the capital of a kingdom; but little is known of the events or history of the world previous to the time of Moses, being a period of about 900 years, namely, from the Deluge to the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt.

16. But in that space of time it is well known that numbers and riches had greatly increased; and numerous and great cities had arisen on the banks of the Euphrates and the Tigris.

17. There seem also to have been many cities, or small kingdoms, in and about the territory which the Israelites were to possess: at that period a city, with a small district around it, appears to have constituted a kingdom; but of their history we know but little.

18. For the better understanding of the relative positions and distance of places in and near the Holy Land, let us suppose ourselves standing at Jerusalem: directly west is the Mediterranean Sea, distant 40 miles; directly south, distant 45 miles, is the 31st degree of north latitude, the most southern part of Palestine; directly east is the north end of the Dead Sea, distant 20 miles.

19. Nearly north from Jerusalem is Nazareth, distant 60 miles; nearly north-east is Damascus, distant 150 miles. A little to the north of the east point was Babylon, distant 500 miles.

20. Along the line of the 31st degree of latitude runs the northern boundary of the land of Edom, or Idumea.

21. The land of Canaan has been variously divided. Under Joshua it was portioned out to the twelve tribes; under Solomon it was distributed into twelve provinces; * and upon the accession of Rehoboam to the throne, it was divided into the two kingdoms of ISRAEL and JUDAH.

22. After this period it fell into the hands of the Babylonians, the Greeks, the Syrians, and the Romans.

23. During the time of our Saviour it was under the dominion of the Romans; and was divided into five pro-

vinces; namely, Galilee, Samaria, Judea, Persea, and Idumea.

24. The fortunes of the Israelites appear to have been very disastrous and afflictive during the most of their time. They fell into the idolatrous worship of their neighbours, and were repeatedly and severely punished for this offence.

25. They were rarely at peace among themselves, and almost invariably engaged in wars with surrounding nations. During 120 years of the 470 years, they appear to have been held in servitude, at seven different times, by conquerors.

26. They suffered greatly in the wars with the Philistines, who took from them the ark of the covenant, and kept it many years. The Philistines were subsequently defeated by Samson, who greatly checked their pride. Samson was judge of the Israelites twenty years.

27. The life of this extraordinary man ended A.M. 2884, by prostrating the pillars of the temple, dedicated to the god Dagon, of the Philistines, by which he and 3000 of that people were killed.

28. This event occurred at the city of Gaza, on the shore of the Mediterranean. There have been many commentaries on the life and exploits of Samson, who lived but thirty-eight years. Considering that he was for many years a judge in Israel, his life indicates a degraded state of morals among his countrymen.

29. Samson was the son of Manoah, of the tribe of Dan. He was born B.C. 1161. His extraordinary achievements are particularly recorded in *Judges* xiv.-xvi.

30. Samuel, the most able and righteous man who appeared among them in all these 470 years, was cotemporary with Samson. He was the seventeenth and last judge of Israel. He was an eminent prophet and historian.

31. The Israelites at length demanded of Samuel a king, who reluctantly consented, and gave them Saul, of the tribe of Benjamin. Samuel died in the 98th year of his age, two years before Saul, A.M. 2944.—1 *Sam.* xxv.

32. To Samuel are ascribed the book of *Judges*, that of *Ruth*, and the first book of *Samuel*. He began the order of the prophets, which was never discontinued till the death of Zachariah and Malachi.—*Acts* iii. 24.

33. From early youth to hoary years, the character of Samuel is one on which the mind rests with veneration and delight. The two books of *Samuel* comprise the history of Samuel, Saul, and David.

34. Upon the death of Saul he was succeeded by David, shortly after which commenced the most brilliant period in the history of the Israelites, and that to which the most frequent reference is made. The reign of Saul was very turbulent and disastrous.

35. David was one of the most remarkable men in either

sacred or profane history. His first appearance is as a shepherd youth, who alone, of all Israel, ventures to accept the challenge of the proud giant Goliath, and vanquishes him in mortal combat.

36. Afterwards God led him on to become a mighty warrior, the ruler and king over all Israel, and the founder of a royal family, which continued to the downfall of the Jewish state.

37. But notwithstanding his external pomp and power, David is best known and honoured for his piety, and as being "*the man after God's own heart.*"

38. He indeed was guilty of great sins; but he humbled himself in the dust on account of them, and God forgave him.

39. His royal race was spiritually revived in the person of our Saviour, who was descended from him after the flesh, and who is therefore called "*the son of David,*" and is said to sit upon his throne.

40. His history is chiefly found in the two books of *Samuel*, and the first book of *Chronicles*. A very large portion of the book of *Psalms* is composed by him.

41. He was distinguished as the "*sweet singer of Israel;*" and his psalms are full of the expression of deep devotional feeling.

42. David was the youngest son of Jesse, of the tribe of Judah, and was born, B. C. 1085, at Bethlehem. He was a great musician and warrior. He subdued the enemies of his country, never lost a battle, nor failed to take any city which he besieged, and became sovereign from the Mediterranean to the Euphrates.

43. He was held in high esteem and respect by all the surrounding nations. He enlarged and fortified Jerusalem as the city of the Lord.

44. David had severe afflictions; but those arose from the disobedience and ambitious views of the members of his own family.

45. He was succeeded by Solomon, his son, who married the daughter of the king of Egypt. Solomon was considered the greatest merchant of his time, or perhaps of any other.

46. He had many ships, which were conducted by the skilful mariners of Tyre and Sidon. It is generally considered that his ships went to India, for it required three years to make a voyage. He brought gold from Ophir, but where that place was is unknown.

47. The celebrated temple built by him is considered to have been one of the richest, most extensive, and magnificent in the world. It was seven years in building.

48. The writings of Solomon, like those of his father, are found in the Scriptures. It is to be regretted, that in the decline of life so many of the truths on human frailty, set forth by him, were applicable to himself.

49. His riches, his renown, his wisdom, and the splendour of his court, drew around him illustrious visitors; among them was the queen of Sheba, who came from Abyssinia, down the Nile.

50. He became at length intoxicated by his own glory, and was seduced from the paths which the wisdom he had sought pointed out. He abandoned himself to enervating luxuries, and finally to idolatry; till, in the midst of unexampled prosperity, he was driven to exclaim that "all is vanity and vexation of spirit."

51. The writings of Solomon are generally understood to include the books of *Proverbs*, *Ecclesiastes*, and *Canticles*, though it is by no means certain that he was the author of them all.

52. Immediately after the death of Solomon arose two kingdoms, namely Israel and Judea. The kingdom of Israel comprised ten tribes; that of Judea, two—Judah and Benjamin.

53. The capital of Judea was Jerusalem, in the south of Canaan; that of Israel was Samaria, situated about thirty miles north of Jerusalem.

54. The kingdom of Israel fell before the Assyrian conqueror in the year B.C. 721, after it had subsisted about 250 years.

55. That of Judah survived about 130 years, Judea being finally subdued and laid waste by Nebuchadnezzar, and the temple burnt B.C. 588. From this period till the era of Alexander the Great, Palestine remained subject to the Babylonian, Median, and Persian dynasties.

56. At the death of Alexander, Judea fell under the dominion of the kings of Syria, and with some short and troubled intervals remained subject either to the kings of Syria or of Egypt, till John Hyrcanus shook off the Syrian yoke, and assumed the diadem B.C. 130.

57. Here follows the reign of the Maccabees, till Judea was subdued by the Romans, and the kingdom was given by Antony to Herod the Great, an Arabian, B.C. 40.

58. The reign of Herod will ever be memorable, as being the period in which the birth of our Saviour took place.

59. Thus continued the government of the Jews for upwards of a hundred years, when the Jews considering themselves restrained and oppressed by the Romans, the great council of Jerusalem took the desperate resolution of entering on a war with that power, which had conquered the whole civilized world. The issue was not less disastrous than the measure was desperate.

60. After suffering all the horrors of foreign and civil war, Judea was at length finally subdued, Jerusalem was taken by storm, the city was totally demolished; its superb temple, which had been rebuilt by Herod the Great in an extra-

ordinary style of magnificence, was levelled with the ground, and the loss of lives exceeded every thing recorded on similar occasions in ancient or modern history.

61. According to Josephus, no fewer than 1,100,000 of the Jewish nation were destroyed in this war; of whom the greater part appear to have perished in the siege of Jerusalem.

62. This city, so long celebrated in ancient history, and distinguished as the cradle of Christianity, and the theatre of the most important transactions that mark the history of the world, is now a place of mean appearance, and is supposed not to contain more than about 39,000 inhabitants.

63. It is situated in a rocky country, amidst an amphitheatre of hills, and although it stands on eminences, it is almost surrounded by others of superior height.

64. This city, so famed for wealth and splendour in the days of Solomon, is now chiefly supported by the piety of pilgrims, and swarms with mendicants, who resort thither to share in their alms.

65. Bethlehem, the birth-place of Jesus Christ, is six miles from Jerusalem. It is seated on a hill, and is a town of considerable extent.

66. Acre, a noted sea-port of Palestine, was formerly called Ptolemais. It has a mean appearance. It was taken by the victorious Saladin, the sultan of Turkey, in 1187.

67. During nearly two centuries this place was the principal theatre of the Crusades; and there are still left the remains of an edifice, which the English call "King Richard's palace." The Crusaders, under Richard I., took this place in 1191. It was again captured by Sir Charles Napier in 1840.

68. It is also distinguished for the noble resistance it made against the attacks of the French in 1799; when Bonaparte, after all his repeated assaults during sixty days, was compelled to abandon the enterprise and return to Egypt, having sustained a prodigious loss. He was opposed and signally defeated by the gallant Sir Sidney Smith.

69. Nazareth, a small town to the east of Acre, is famous for having been the residence of our Saviour in the early part of his life. Near Nazareth is Cana of Galilee, celebrated on account of the miraculous change of water into wine.

70. Jaffa, a small town, is the nearest port to Jerusalem, and is forty miles north of Gaza.

71. This place was formerly called Joppa, and was once a place of grandeur, but is now fallen into decay.

72. It was taken by the French in 1799, when 3800 prisoners were massacred by the order of Bonaparte.

73. Gaza is an ancient and celebrated town of Palestine, three miles from the sea. It was taken by Alexander the Great, B. C. 332, when he put 10,000 of its inhabitants to

the sword, and sold the women and children as slaves. Gaza is frequently mentioned in Scripture. Samson being confined here by the Philistines, carried away the gates in the night.

74. About forty miles north of Jaffa are the extensive ruins of Caesarea. This place was so named in honour of Augustus Caesar, and for a long time it was a place of great splendour, but is now in ruins.

75. Here lived Philip the Evangelist;* and here Peter converted Cornelius and his kinsmen.† Here, also, Herod Agrippa was smitten to death, A.D. 44.

76. Here Paul remained two years a prisoner, after his defence against the Jews;‡ and here he delivered his inimitable defence of Christianity, which almost persuaded king Agrippa to become a Christian.

* Acts xxi. 8.

† Acts x.

‡ Acts xxiv.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was this populous country formerly called? 2. Why is it chiefly deserving of our consideration? 3. When did the Holy Land fall to the lot of Canaan? 4. How is it situated? 5. By what names has it been distinguished? 6. From whom did it receive the name of Palestine? Why was it called the Land of Promise? Why the Land of Israel? of Judah? and the Holy Land? 7. Who was the eldest son of Canaan? Did he found any city? How many sons had Canaan? Give the names of the people. 8. What appearance does Canaan present in the map?

9. What was the extent of the kingdom of Israel under David and Solomon? 10. What was the population of Israel at this time? 11. Have we reason to suppose the land to have been fruitful, notwithstanding its present poor and miserable condition? 12. What portion did the Philistines hold?

13. Where were the cities of Tyre and Sidon situated? What district comprised the ancient kingdom of Phoenicia? 14. From whom were the ancient inhabitants of Phoenicia descended? Who gave them that name? For what are they celebrated? Whence is it supposed they derived their knowledge of letters?

15. Where was the city of Damascus? What do we know of its history? 16. What do we know to have occurred during that period? On what rivers were the cities situated? 17. Where were their other cities built? 18. Describe the country, supposing yourself to be at Jerusalem.

19. What city is seated nearly north of Jerusalem? North-east? Where was Babylon? Give their respective distances. 20. Where was the boundary of Edom? 21. How has the land of Canaan been divided? How divided under Joshua? under Solomon? upon the accession of Rehoboam? 22. Into whose hands did it afterwards fall? 23. Under whose dominion was it at the time of our Saviour? How divided? Give the names.

24. Why were the Israelites so severely punished? 25. What was their character in general? How long were they in slavery? 26.

From whom did they suffer most? What did they lose? Who defended them for twenty years? 27. When did he die? How was his death caused? How many Philistines were killed with him? 28. Where did this event occur? How long did he live? What was the condition of his countrymen at this time? 29, 30. Whose son was he? Where born? Where are his achievements recorded? With whom was he cotemporary? What was he?

31. What did the Israelites demand of Samuel? Whom did he appoint? When die? How old? 32. What books are ascribed to Samuel? What order did he commence? How long did it continue? 34. Who succeeded Saul? What was the reign of Saul?

35, 36. When did David first appear? What great exploit did he perform? What did God afterwards for him? 37. How is David best known? 38. When he had sinned, what did David? 39. In whom was his race spiritually revived? 40. Where is his history found? What book did he write? 41. For what was he distinguished? 42. Whose son was he? Of what tribe? When born? How far did his sovereignty extend? 43. By whom was he held in respect? 44. Whence arose his afflictions?

45. Who succeeded David? Whom did he marry? What was Solomon considered to be? 46. What did he possess? Where did they sail? 47. What is said of the temple he built? How long was it in building? 48. Where are his writings found? What have we to regret concerning Solomon? 49. How were visitors attracted to him? Who was one of them? 50, 51. Did he continue in the paths of wisdom? To what did he abandon himself? What are understood to be his writings? 52. What kingdoms arose immediately after his death? How many tribes belonged to the kingdom of Israel? of Judah? 53. What was the capital of Judea? of Israel? Where situated?

54. Before whom did the kingdom of Israel fall? When? How long had it subsisted? 55. How long did that of Judea survive? By whom subdued? To whom did Palestine become subject? Till what period? 56. Who had the dominion of Judea after Alexander? Till when? 57. What reigns followed? Till what period? To whom then given?

58. For what will the reign of Herod be memorable? 59. How long did this government continue? What resolution did the council of Jerusalem adopt? 60. What befell Judea? 61. How many lives were lost in the war? 62. What is the present appearance of Jerusalem? 63. Where situated? 64. How is it now supported? 65. Where was the Messiah born? How far from Jerusalem?

66. What was the ancient name of Acre? Who took it? When? 67. What was this place the theatre of? What is to be seen there? By whom taken? When? 68. For what is it distinguished? Who assaulted it? Whither did he retire? By whom was he opposed?

69. For what is Nazareth famous? What place is near Nazareth? For what celebrated? 70, 71. Where is Jaffa situated? What was its ancient name? 72. By whom was it taken? 73. Where is Gaza situated? By whom taken? When? How many persons did he put to death? What surprising feat did Samson perform? 74. What ruins lie about forty miles from Jaffa? In honour of whom was it so named? 75. Who lived here? Who was converted here? Who was smitten to death here? 76. Who was imprisoned here? Whom did he almost persuade to become a Christian?

CHAPTER VIII.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. Trib'utary, <i>a.</i> subject to. 8. Subver'sion, <i>s.</i> overthrow; ruin. 10. Degen'eracy, <i>s.</i> a forsaking of that which is good; meanness. 12. Dispens'a'tion, <i>s.</i> a dealing of God with his creatures. | 13. Imper'venious, <i>a.</i> not to be penetrated; impassable. 29. Precipita'tion, <i>s.</i> great haste; tumultuous hurry. 30. Ammuni'tion, <i>s.</i> military stores. 38. Mer'cenary, <i>s.</i> one serving for pay. |
|---|---|

PERSIAN EMPIRE.

1. PERSIA is a large country lying between Turkey and Hindostan. In Hebrew it is called Phars, which appears to have been the ancient Persia, and is still called Pharistan, or Fars.

2. The Persians, who became so famous after Cyrus, the founder of their more extended monarchy, were anciently called Elamites; and in later times, in the time of the Roman emperors, Parthians. They were so denominated from the Parthians having subdued them, and changed the dynasty.

3. The early history of Persia, like that of most of the Eastern nations, is involved in great obscurity.

4. The chief towns of Persia are Ispahan, Teheran, Shiraz, Tauriz, Erivan. The capital is Teheran.

5. Erivan, on the Turkish frontier, is the capital of Persian Armenia. About thirty miles to the south of Erivan, in Turkey, is Mount Ararat.

6. Persia is early noticed in sacred history, under the name of Elam. But from the reign of Chedorlaomer, contemporary with Abraham, to that of Cyrus the Great, we have no accounts of its history.

7. For some time previous to the reign of Cyrus, although the Persian throne was possessed by its native princes, they appear to have been tributary to the powerful empires of Assyria and Babylonia.

8. The whole of this dark period is lost in oblivion; and the subversion of the Babylonian empire is the event which first gave importance to Persian history.

9. The conquest of Babylon, and the foundation of the Persian empire by Cyrus, whose name history, both sacred and profane, has immortalized, in the greatest revolution that marks the annals of remote antiquity.

10. He was the greatest of the Persian monarchs, and he established his throne on so firm a basis, that it stood more than 200 years, notwithstanding the degeneracy of his successors.

INTRODUCTION.

11. The Persian empire, as he left it to his posterity, extended from the Indus to the Grecian Archipelago, and from the Euxine and Caspian seas to the Indian Ocean.

PERSIAN EMPIRE.



KEY TO THE MAP.

TOWNS.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Troy. | 8. Antioch. | 15. Nineveh. | 22. Carmania. |
| 2. Smyrna. | 9. Jerusalem. | 16. Artaxata. | 23. Persepolis. |
| 3. Ephesus. | 10. Palmyra. | 17. Zebracartia. | 24. Susa. |
| 4. Halicarnassus. | 11. Damascus. | 18. Hecatompylon. | 25. Arsinoe. |
| 5. Tarsus. | 12. Babylon. | 19. Aria, or Artacoana. | 26. Alexandria. |
| 6. Sinope. | 13. Ctesiphon. | 20. Alexandria. | 27. Memphis. |
| 7. Ises. | 14. Ecbatana. | 21. Pura. | 28. Thebes. |

COUNTRIES.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| A. Asia Minor. | G. Gedrosia. | S 1. Susiana. |
| A 1. Armenia. | H. Hyrcania. | S 2. Sogdiana. |
| A 2. Assyria. | M. Mesopotamia. | S 3. Sace. |
| A 3. Aria. | M 1. Media. | S 4. Scythia intra Imaun. |
| B. Babylonia. | M 2. Margiana. | S 5. Scythia extra Imaun. |
| B 1. Bactriana. | P. Persia. | E. Egypt. |
| C. Colchis. | P 1. Parthia. | E 1. Ethiopia. |
| C 1. Carmania. | S. Syria. | |

Questions.—What was Persia Proper? What comprised the Persian empire? Persia Proper was the district marked P;—the Persian empire comprised all the countries delineated on the white ground, excepting Italy and Greece,—although the Persians frequently overrun the latter country, they never could subdue it; and finally, the Greeks, under the command of Alexander the Great, conquered the Persians, overthrown their empire, and raised up that of the great Macedonian, as described in a separate chapter.

12. The general name by which this country is designated by the natives is Iran, as contradistinguished from Touran, or Scythia; but by the Turks and Arabs it is called Adjam. Three-fourths of this country consists of sandy deserts.

13. All the literary monuments of the Chaldeans, the Egyptians, the Persians, and other nations of antiquity, have long since perished; but by a singular dispensation of Providence those of the Hebrews remain, and throw a gleam of light into the obscure recesses of the primeval ages, which were impervious to the Grecian curiosity.

14. Persia has had different boundaries at different periods; at the time of its greatest extent, B.C. 522, it comprehended the whole region from the Indus to the Mediterranean Sea, and from the Caspian to the Indian Ocean; comprising,

| | | |
|------------|-------------|------------------|
| Persia, | Assyria, | Cholchis, |
| Susiana, | Babylonia, | Egypt, |
| Media, | Armenia, | Ethiopia, |
| Bactriana, | Asia, | Scythia, &c. &c. |
| Parthia, | Asia Minor, | |

15. Modern Persia is now politically divided into two parts, Western Persia and Eastern Persia. The capital of Western Persia is Teheran; of Eastern Persia, Caubul. Its ancient capital was Persepolis.

16. Xenophon makes the younger Cyrus describe his father's empire as being so extensive, that at one extremity people perished with cold, while at the other the inhabitants were suffocated with heat. This description still applies to Modern Persia, which has three different climates, hot, temperate, and cold.

17. Ancient Persia, or Persia Proper, was bounded on the north by Media, on the west by Assyria, south by the Persian Gulf, and on the east by Gedrosia.

18. The Persians were for a long period under subjection to the Assyrians, Medes, and Babylonians, but after a time became their governors.

19. At the time of the intended expedition of Darius into Greece, the Persian empire was more extensive than it had been under Cyrus the Great. Besides the provinces above mentioned, Arabia was tributary, and Thrace and Macedonia submitted to the Persian yoke.

20. Greece, on the other hand, in its utmost extent, was only 380 miles in length, and 310 in breadth. Athens and Sparta were the cities that stood foremost on this occasion, and bore the chief burden of the war.

21. When the Persian monarch meditated the destruction of Greece, the Athenians saw and prepared for the impending danger, and this small corner of Europe opposed itself to the whole force of Asia.

22. On the one side were numbers, wealth, and extent of dominion ; on the other disciplined valour, the love of their country, and persevering spirit : such were the different situations of Persia and of Greece.

23. In Susiana was Susa, the winter residence of the Persian kings ; in Persia Proper, near Shiraz, was Persepolis, the royal palace of which was destroyed by Alexander the Great, when he subdued the Persians, B.C. 331.

24. Persia was first peopled by Elam, the son of Shem ; and Chedorla'omer, who conquered many Asiatic provinces, was its first king.

25. Afterwards, nothing remarkable occurs till the time of Cyrus, the founder of that great empire, which was the glory and terror of the East.

26. In the first year of his reign he published his famous edict, permitting the Jews to return to Jerusalem, and rebuild their temple ; and restoring to them all the sacred vessels which Nebuchadnezzar had brought from that city.

27. Cyrus lost his life in an expedition against the Scythians. He was succeeded by his son Camby'ses, who subdued Egypt.

28. Dari'u's, the next king, successfully invaded India, and afterwards sent 100,000 men to invade Greece ; but these were defeated at Mar'athon by 10,000 men, commanded by Milt'iades.

29. His son Xerxes continued the war, and invaded Greece with 2,100,000 men, which force was bravely met at Thermop'yæ, and afterwards at Salamis, where they received a most signal defeat, and again at Plataea, and were compelled to leave Europe with great precipitation.

30. In the engagement at Salamis the Grecian fleet consisted of 380 sail, the Persians of 2000. In this engagement, which is one of the most memorable on record, the Greeks lost 40 ships, and the Persians upwards of 200, together with all their men, ammunition, and other material.

31. The spoil taken by the Greeks at the battle of Plataea was immense, consisting of vast sums of money, of gold and silver cups, vessels, tables, bracelets, rich beds, and all sorts of furniture.

32. The Greeks were commanded by the celebrated Spartan general, Pausa'nias, who distinguished himself greatly, and to whom they gave one tenth of all the captured treasure ; the rest of the army were rewarded each according to his merit.

33. From the success of this engagement, the Greeks were delivered, not only from the present, but also from all future invasions of the Persians, who never afterwards appeared on this side the Hellespont.

34. On the same day that this battle was fought at Plataea, the Grecian fleet gained as memorable a victory at

Mycale, a promontory of Asia Minor, over the remainder of the Persian navy, B. C. 479.

35. Thus ended in disappointment the great design of Xerxes; a small number only of those millions of men, namely, 2,100,000, remained to return to Asia, with which, the year before, he so proudly marched over the Hellespont into Greece. Having been defeated every where, both by sea and land, and reduced to the utmost extremity, he was at last driven to make to Asia in a small fishing-boat, and was soon after assassinated, B. C. 464.

36. He was succeeded by his son Artaxerxes Longimanus, called in Scripture Ahasue'rus, who raised Esther to the throne, and greatly favoured the Jews. He was called Longimanus from the length of his hand.

37. After several reigns of minor importance, the throne descended to Artaxerxes Mnemon, whose brother Cyrus was made governor of Asia Minor. Artaxerxes was surnamed Mnemon by the Greeks, because of his wonderful memory.

38. Cyrus, wishing to dethrone his brother and make himself sovereign, raised an army of 113,000 men, including 13,000 Greek mercenaries; and on arriving in the plains of Curaxa, in Babylonia, he there met Artaxerxes with an army of 900,000 men.

39. A dreadful battle ensued, and Cyrus was slain by the hands of his own brother. Of the Greeks, 3,000 were killed; and the remainder, finding themselves beset with difficulties, made a rapid retreat: this is called the celebrated "RETREAT OF TEN THOUSAND GREEKS," who were under the command of Xenophon, as mentioned in the historical notice of Greece.

40. This was the longest march, and the most memorable retreat, that was ever made through an enemy's country. It was this retreat that convinced the Macedonians how easily the Persian empire might be conquered.

41. The last prince of this dynasty was Darius Codomannus, in whose reign Persia was invaded by Alexander the Great, B. C. 334. By a series of brilliant victories, and on the death of Darius, he succeeded to the empire, and abolished the Persian dynasty.

42. Upon the death of Alexander, the Seleuci'dæ obtained the government of these territories, and held them till they were seized by Mithrida'tes, king of Parthia, and annexed to his empire, B. C. 141. Persia afterwards underwent the revolutions of the Parthian states.

43. The Persians were never remarkable for learning and the arts. Like the other inhabitants of the East, they were fond of the sublime. Their architecture was grand and noble; their statues gigantic, yet proportion was often wanting; and the delicacy which the Greek sculptors afterwards gave to their works was unknown.

44. The religion of the Persians is Mahometanism, of the sect of Ali; on which account the Turks, who follow the succession of Omar, call them heretics.

45. The Persian court, in antiquity, was celebrated for its pomp and grandeur. The king reigned absolute, as also is the case in modern times.

46. The ancient Persians were carefully trained to be soldiers. The three great lessons the youth were taught, from five to twenty years of age, were, to ride, to shoot the arrow, and to speak the truth.—(*Herodotus.*)

47. In time of war, every one, if required, was obliged to attend the king in his expeditions, unless disabled by age or infirmity, on pain of death.

48. When Darius was about to set out against the Scythians, Ocbazus, a Persian nobleman, who had his three sons in the army, requested that one of them might be left to comfort him in his old age: Darius said he would leave them all, and immediately ordered them to be slain. In like manner did Xerxes behave to another Persian nobleman.—(*Herodotus.*)

49. About the time of the captivity of Israel, Persia was conquered by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon.

50. After this it was a province of Media, till the time of Cyrus, who added it to the Persian empire, which so continued until it was subdued by Alexander the Great.

51. In B. C. 125, the Persians revolted from the successors of Alexander, and founded a new empire under the name of the Parthians.

52. The Parthians, or Persians, had frequent wars with the Romans, but neither of them gained any permanent advantage over the other; and in A. D. 651, an end was put to this empire by the Saracens.

53. After this period the country underwent a variety of dreadful revolutions, and was conquered successively by Genghis Khan in 1218, and by Tamerlane in 1392.

54. Among the most distinguished of the conquerors of Persia was Kouli Khan, or Nadir Schah. In 1735 he gained the celebrated battle of Eriwan, in which the Turks lost 50,000 men. In the year following he took Candahar.

55. In 1739 he subdued the Mogul empire, making himself master of Delhi, where he acquired immense riches. From his great cruelties he excited a general hatred, and he was assassinated by conspirators in 1747.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where is Persia situated? What was it called in Hebrew? What at present?
2. What were the Persians anciently called?
- What in later times?
4. What are its chief towns?
5. Where is Eriwan? Mount Ararat?
- 6-8. What is the character of the early

history of this country ? 9, 10. Who was Cyrus ? and what great conquest did he achieve ? 11. What was the extent of the empire at his death ?

13. What fate has befallen the literary monuments of ancient nations ? What forms an exception to this remark ? 14. What countries did Persia comprehend at its greatest extent ? 15. How is Modern Persia divided ? its modern capitals ? its ancient ? 16. How did Cyrus the younger describe this empire ? 17. How was Persia Proper anciently bounded ? 19. When Darius invaded Greece, what additional provinces did Persia include ? 20. What was the extent of Greece at this period ? What states stood foremost on this occasion ? 22. By what were the Greeks and Persians contrasted in this war ?

24. Who first peopled Persia ? Who was its first king ? 25. Who first brought this empire into note ? 26. What famous edict did Cyrus publish on beginning his reign ? 27. How did Cyrus lose his life ? By whom succeeded ? 28. What were the chief undertakings of Darius, and their result ? 29-31. Briefly describe the expedition of Xerxes against Greece, and its results. 32. How were the spoils gained at Platæa disposed of ? 33. How did the defeat of the Persians affect the future condition of Greece ? 34. What battle was fought on the same day as that of Platæa ? Who were victorious ? 35. What was the fate of Xerxes and his army ? 36. Who was Artaxerxes ? To whom married ? 37-40. What events led to the retreat of the Ten Thousand ? and to what did this ultimately lead ? 41. In whose reign, and by whom, was the Persian empire overthrown ? 42. What dynasty succeeded that of Alexander, and by whom supplanted ?

43. What was the literary character of the Persians ? 44. What is their religion at present ? 45. For what was the Persian court famed ? 46. What the nature of their education ? 47. What were their obligations in time of war ? 48. What anecdote is told of Darius, when about to invade Scythia, illustrative of the severe discipline of the Persians ?

49. By whom was Persia subdued at the time of the Jewish captivity ? 50. When did it become a province of Media ? How long remain so ? 51. When did the Persians revolt from the successors of Alexander ? 52. With whom did they have frequent wars ? Who destroyed their empire ? 53. What became of this country afterwards ? 54. What was Nadir Schah ? 55. What occasioned his death ?

CHAPTER IX.

MEDIA.

1. THIS country, once the seat of a powerful empire, received its name from its founder, Madai, the third son of Japhet.

2. It was bounded on the north by the Caspian Sea, on the south by Persia and Assyria, on the east by Parthia, and on the west by Armenia.

3. It extends between 30 and 40 degrees of north latitude, and is something larger than Spain. This country was one

MEDIA, PERSIA, AND PARTHIA.



KEY TO THE MAP.

Ecbatana, capital of Media, long the summer residence of the Persian, and afterwards of the Parthian, kings, to avoid the excessive heat of Susa and Ctesiphon.

Susa, now Suster, a noted capital of Persia, and winter residence of its kings; and was also the capital of Parthia, and of Media.—*Pliny*.

Ctesiphon, a city of Assyria, east of the Tigris, opposite to Seleucia.—*Pliny*.

Seleucia, a famous city of Asia, built by Seleucus, one of Alexander's generals, on the western bank of the Euphrates.

Persepolis, a capital of Persia, was burnt to the ground by Alexander the Great; is greatly celebrated for its magnificent views.—*Pliny, Strabo*.

Arbela, a city of Assyria, near which, on a plain, was fought the celebrated battle between Alexander and Darius, which led to the downfall of the empire.

Pasargada, the ancient residence of the kings of Persia; also noted for the tomb of Cyrus.—*Strabo*. The people, called Pasargadae, were the nobles of the Persians, from whom descended the chief of their kings.—*Herodotus*.

Artacoana, capital of Aria, now Herat, in the province of Khorasan, subject to the Schah of Caubul. It is on the high-road from Persia to India, and on the western frontier of Caubul, or Afghanistan; sometimes called Eastern Persia.

Maracanda, capital of Sogdiana, now Samarcand, in Independent Tartary; the capital of Tamerlane the Great.

Bactra, capital of Bactriana, now Balk; at present in ruins. It was for a long time one of the most flourishing cities in the world, and on account of its antiquity was styled the mother of cities. Here Zoroaster, when compelled to flee from Media, found protection at the court of Hystaspes, and it was the capital of a great kingdom till the Mahometan conquest.

Ortespana, now Candahar, a strong fortified town of Afghanistan, giving its name to an extensive province of the empire of Caubul. Amed Schah, the founder of the present Afghan monarchy, made it his capital; but his son and successor, in 1774, removed his residence to Caubul. It stands on the high-road from India to Western Persia, and is a large and flourishing city. The country around is inhabited chiefly by nomadic tribes of Afghans.

Questions.—What constitutes ancient Persia? The district marked Persia in the map at the head of this chapter; but, like other countries in the same map, it has had different boundaries at different periods.

What constitute the great Persian empire? The several countries above named, and extending further from the river Indus to the Mediterranean Sea, and from Sarmatia and Scythia to the Indian Ocean. See Map, p. 26.

of the most fertile and earliest cultivated among the kingdoms of Asia.

4. Into this country the ten tribes who composed the kingdom of Israel were transplanted, in their captivity by the Assyrians, under Tiglath-Pile'ser and Shalmanes'ar.

5. Tiglath-Pileser carried away the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and half Manasseh, on the east side of the Jordan, to Halah, Habor, Hara, and to the river Gozan.

6. Shalmanes'ar carried away the remaining seven tribes and a half, to what are said to be "cities of the Medes by the river of Gozan."

7. Media is one of the most ancient independent kingdoms mentioned in history. After several centuries of subjugation under Assyria, the Medes rebelled under Sennache'rib, about B.C. 700, and continued an independent kingdom until under Cyrus, when Media became united with Persia. The first king of Media was Dej'oces, who built its capital, Ecbat'ana.

8. Hence arose the Medo-Persian kingdom; and "the laws of the Medes and Persians."—*Esther i. 19; Dan. vi. 8-12.*

9. From this time onward, the manners, customs, religion, and civilization of the Medes and Persians became more and more amalgamated. The Medes are often confounded by the poets with the Persians and Parthians.

10. The chief city of Media was Ecbat'ana, now Hamadan, which was the seat of both the Median and Persian kings.

11. The Medes were once a very warlike race, but in process of time they became one of the most effeminate nations of Asia.

12. In war they used armour similar to the Persians, whom they are said to have taught the art of war, especially to handle the bow with dexterity.

13. They are likewise said to have been the first who introduced luxury into Persia, which at last occasioned the downfall of that empire, as it had been before the ruin of the Median.

14. The laws and religion of the Medes were the same as those of the Persians, with this difference, that when a law was once enacted, it was not in the king's power to repeal it, or to reverse a decree he had once made. Whence, the laws of the Medes, in Scripture, are called unchangeable.

15. They honoured their sovereigns with the haughty and pompous title of "King of Kings;" which title was afterwards adopted by the Persian monarchs and their proud successors the Parthians, whose king, even in the time of Constantius, retained that title, writing himself in a letter, "Sapor, king of kings, allied to the stars, brother to the sun and moon," &c.

Questions for Examination.

1. From whom did Media derive its name ? 2. How bounded ?
 3. Where situate ? What the nature of its soil ? 4. For what is its history remarkable in connexion with the Israelites ? 5. What portion of this people did Tiglath-Pileser carry into captivity ? and where ? 6. What portion did Shalmaneser carry away ? How were they distributed ? 7-9. Briefly describe the history of Media ; and the effects of its union with the Persian empire.
 10. What was the capital of the Median and Persian kings ? 11. What was the character of the Medians at different periods ? 12. In what martial exercises did they instruct the Persians ? 13. How did they contribute to the downfall of the Persian empire ? 14. What was the grand characteristic of the laws of the Medes ? 15. What proud title did their monarchs assume ? By whom was it afterwards adopted ?
-

CHAPTER X.

PARTHIA.

1. PARTHIA was a small country on the east of Media, which was raised into a distinct kingdom by Arsaces, B.C. 250. It at one time formed a province of Persia.

2. It soon extended itself over a great part of the ancient Persian empire, and is frequently put for that empire in Scripture. The Parthians may be considered another name for the Persians.

3. To his newly acquired possessions Arsaces added the kingdom of the Hyrcani ; and Parthia, after a time, became the most powerful empire in the East.

4. Parthia maintained itself against all aggressors for nearly 500 years ; but, in A.D. 229, it became united to Persia by one of the descendants of the ancient Persian kings.

5. It now resumed its former name of Persia, and the olden dynasty again possessed the throne.

6. The Parthians were particularly noted for their dexterity in discharging their arrows while they were retreating. They always fought on horseback.

7. Parthia corresponds to the eastern part of Khorasan. The Parthians are supposed to have been of Scythian origin. They were certainly a distinct people from the southern Persians.

8. This empire was raised to the highest pitch of greatness by Mithridates I. It resumed its splendour under Mithridates the Great, but had greatly declined at the time of the Christian era.

9. What the antients called the Parthian empire was of vast extent, bounded on the east by the Indus, on the west by the Tigris, on the north by Scythia, and on the south by the Indian Ocean.

10. From a very small beginning it soon extended itself over a great portion of Asia, and was long the rival of Rome. It was the Parthians who proved so great a check to the Roman conquests in Asia. The Parthians may be considered one and the same people with the Persians, as the latter comprised by far the greater number of the inhabitants.

11. Parthia Proper is now called Irak Agemi, to distinguish it from Irak Arabi, the ancient Chaldea. The people were called Parthi, a Scythian term, signifying exiles.

12. When this country was overrun by Alexander the Great, it formed part of the Persian empire; but on his decease it was comprised in the territories of Seleucus, whose family held it till the year B.C. 250, when Parthia Proper was seized by Arsaces, a man of very obscure origin, who rebelled against the Seleuci'dæ, and thus laid the foundation of the Parthian empire.

13. Till this period Parthia was considered a very poor and inconsiderable country, and of no name or character; it was mountainous and woody.

14. Arsaces is said to have conquered all the countries between the Caspian and Arabian seas, comprehending eighteen kingdoms.—(*Pliny.*) The descendants of Arsaces are said to have possessed the throne 475 years, ending A.D. 229, when it was conquered by Artaxerxes, king of Persia. (*Justin.*) Parthia was subsequently invaded and subdued by the Saracens.

15. The early history of the Parthians is lost in obscurity. All that we know is that they were successively subject to the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians, and afterwards to Alexander the Great.

16. Among its chief cities were Gabæ, celebrated in Alexander's conquests; Maracanda, now Samarcand, rendered famous as the royal residence of Tamerlane the Great; and Carræ, a town in Mesopotamia, famous in Roman history, and a place of great strength. It is memorable for a great victory gained by the Parthians over the Romans, commanded by Crassus, who here lost his life and 20,000 of his army.—(*Pliny, Florus.*) Carræ was the frontier town of the Romans.

17. The Parthians are universally described by historians as a strong and warlike people; accustomed, from their infancy, to the exercises of horsemanship and archery, and constantly stimulated, both by precept and example, to seek reputation in the most perilous enterprises; but their morals were greatly depraved.

18. In martial discipline they were exceedingly strict, and in diet very abstemious; yet totally neglectful of agriculture, trade, and navigation.

19. Their government was an absolute monarchy ; and their religious principles were nearly the same with those of the Persians.

20. Arsaces, the founder of the empire, fixed his residence at Hecatopolis. He was considered a bold and brave man ; skilful, kind, and generous.

21. The empire he founded proved an impenetrable barrier against the Romans, in their attempts to extend their conquests eastward.

22. Arsaces, after death, was made a god of his nation, and all his successors were called, in honour of his name, Arsacidæ, whose power subsisted till the 229th year of the Christian era, when they were conquered by Artaxerxes, king of Persia.—(*Justin.*)

23. Seleucus Callinicus, king of Syria, made a vigorous effort for the recovery of Parthia; but his army was defeated, and himself taken prisoner by Arsaces.

24. Among the subsequent sovereigns of Parthia was the famous Mithridates, who was raised to the throne on account of his great merit.

25. He soon augmented his dominions by the reduction of Bactria, Persia, Media, Elymais, and several other countries, and carried his victorious arms into India, even beyond the boundaries of Alexander's conquests.

26. He afterwards made himself master of Mesopotamia and Babylon ; so that his empire now extended from the Euphrates to the Ganges, and from the Caspian Sea and Mount Caucasus to the Indian Ocean.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Parthia ? When was it first raised into a kingdom ? By whom ? 2. What was its extent ? 3. What kingdom did Arsaces subdue ? 6. For what were the Parthians particularly distinguished ? 7. To what country does Parthia Proper correspond ? What was the origin of the Parthians ? 8. Who raised this empire to its highest grandeur ? 9. What did the antients say of Parthia Proper ? How was it bounded ? How in its greatest extent ? 12. By whom was it subdued ?

14. How long was Parthia possessed by the descendants of Arsaces ? 15. What was its early history ? 16. What were its chief towns, and for what were they noted ? 17-19. What was the character of the Parthians ? What their government ? their religion ? 20. What was the character of Arsaces ? 24. For what was Mithridates distinguished ? 26. How far did his empire extend ?



PHœNICIANS TRADING.

CHAPTER XI.

PHœNICIA.

1. PHœNICIA is a country of Syria, of small extent, the limits of which have been different at different periods. It was long a place of great note, particularly for its commerce.

2. The Phœnicians, the Canaanites of Scripture, were among the most civilized nations of the globe. We are indebted to them for the invention of writing, and for the first attempts at commercial navigation, for which they were greatly distinguished in the days of Abraham; and in the time of the Hebrews they had begun to colonize.

3. The fragments of Sanchoniathon, a Phœnician historian and philosopher, are the most ancient monuments of writing after the books of Moses.

4. Sanchoniathon was a native of Berytus, now Beirut. He is supposed to have lived in the time of Joshua, about B. C. 1440.

5. He composed his history in the Phœnician language, partly from the records of cities, and partly from the registers and inscriptions preserved in the temples of Phœnicia and Egypt.

6. His several works were translated into Greek by Philo of Byblos, in the time of Adrian; and of this version some fragments are preserved in Porphyry, and some in Eusebius' "Evangelical Preparations." Eusebius was a native of Palestine, and is supposed to have been born at Cæsarea, about A. D. 267.

7. The Phœnicians were governed by kings, and their territories included the kingdoms of Sidon, Tyre, Aradus, Berytus, Byblos, Ptolemais, Sarepta, and Tripoli. Of these petty kingdoms, Sidon and Tyre are the most renowned.

8. The Phœnician language, which was common to the other Canaanites, was a dialect of the Hebrew. It was a Phœnician who first introduced into Greece the knowledge of letters.

9. In arts, sciences, and manufactures the Phœnicians greatly excelled. The Sidonians, under which name it was usual to comprehend all the Phœnicians, were considered to have been greatly advanced in knowledge. Arithmetic and astronomy either took their rise among them, or were brought by them towards a state of great perfection.

10. These noble sciences, as well as their letters, were afterwards introduced into Greece. In early ages they made philosophy their particular study.

11. Moschus of Sidon, and Abdomenus of Tyre, were greatly celebrated for their learning. The latter challenged Solomon, the wisest of men, to debate with him on the most abstruse questions on natural philosophy or metaphysics.

12. In later ages, also, both Sidon and Tyre produced their philosophers. Antip'ater and Apollonius were natives of Tyre, and Boethus and Dioda'tus of Sidon.

13. The Phœnicians long resisted the great power of the Assyrians and the Babylonians.

14. The siege of Tyre, B. C. 585, is one of the most memorable on record. For thirteen years the inhabitants defied the whole force of Nebuchadnezzar, and though that monarch was at length victorious, he acquired nothing but an empty city; the Tyrians having built a new city upon a small island near it, to which they conveyed all their treasures and effects.

15. The Phœnicians were greatly celebrated for their manufactures of glass, and purple and exceedingly fine linen, for which they were famous to a proverb.

16. For their great skill in working of metals, in hewing of stone and timber, and for their perfect knowledge of architecture, both solid and ornamental, they may be considered as the most celebrated architects of antiquity; and as a corroboration of which, we have only to consider the large share they had in erecting and decorating the temple of Jerusalem, under their king Hiram.

17. So remarkable were they for their proficiency in the arts, that whatever was elegant or pleasing in apparel, vessels, furniture, or otherwise, was distinguished, by way of eminence, with the epithet "Sidonian."

18. As merchants they may be considered the first and most distinguished of all the nations of the earth; and for a long time they preserved the commerce of the then known world.

19. As navigators they were also the first, the boldest, and long the most experienced; and in regard to discoveries, for a long period they had no rivals.

20. They were greatly distinguished for their numerous colonies ; and it is very surprising they could furnish so many supplies of people and not depopulate their small territory, which comprised but little more than the small slip of ground situated between Mount Libanus and the sea.

21. For a thousand years before the Christian era they traversed the Mediterranean, the Euxine, and the Arabian seas. The Carthaginians were of Phœnician origin : they planted settlements beyond the Straits of Gibraltar, and even visited Britain for the purpose of procuring tin. They are said to have carried on an extensive commerce at the time of the Trojan war.

22. When Alexander invaded Syria, he conquered the Tyrians after much opposition. After his death, Phœnicia fell under the dominion of the Ptolemies, until seized by Antiochus the Great. It underwent all the revolutions of the Syrian kingdoms for a long time.

23. Anti'ochus the Great, king of Syria, was the son of Seleucus Callinicus. He succeeded his brother Seleucus Ceraunus, B. C. 223.

24. So small and confined is Phœnicia, that it scarcely contains more land than one of our English counties; yet no country makes a greater figure in ancient history, and no country could boast of so many great and rich cities, so many and well-frequented ports, within so small a compass. Of these the most early was Sidon.

25. The Phœnicians are celebrated by the Greeks as the inventors, or at least the great improvers, of every art and science.

26. Carthage was amongst the number of the Phœnician colonies, being the daughter of Tyre, as Tyre was of Sidon. Several vestiges of this ancient land are still in existence.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where is Phœnicia ? For what was it long famous ? 2. What are the Phœnicians called in Scripture ? What was their state of civilization ? For what are we indebted to them ? When did they begin to colonize ? 3. What are the most ancient monuments of writing after the books of Moses ? 4. Where was Sanchoniathon born ? and when did he flourish ? 5. From what did he compose his history ? 6. By whom were his works translated ? In what authors are some fragments of them still extant ?

7. What was the Phœnician form of government ? What petty kingdoms did Phœnicia include ? 8. What was their language ? 9. In what did they greatly excel other nations ? 10-11. Into what part of Europe did they introduce their letters and sciences ? Who were their most eminent scholars ? What is related of the latter ? 12. What was the state of philosophy among them in later ages ? What eminent men did Tyre and Sidon produce ? 14. What is considered as one of the most memorable sieges of antiquity ? Relate some particulars concerning it ?

15. For what manufactures were the Phœnicians greatly celebrated ? 16. What proof have we of their superiority in literature, and the arts connected with it ? 17. What shows their high state of proficiency in the arts ? 18-19. How did they rank as merchants ? as navigators ? 20. What surprises us in the extent to which they carried colonization ? 21. What seas did their ships traverse ? How long before the birth of Christ ?

Whence sprung the Carthaginians ? How far did their commerce extend ? At what early period did it flourish ? 22. By whom were they at length conquered ? What befell Phœnicia after Alexander's death ? 23. Who was Antiochus ? 24. Of what extent was Phœnicia ? 25. For what were the Phœnicians distinguished ? 26. What was Carthage ?

CHAPTER XII.

SYRIA.

1. SYR'IA is that part of Asiatic Turkey which borders on the Mediterranean Sea, and extends to the deserts of Arabia, and the Euphrates. On its north it has Mount Taurus, which separates it from Cili'cia ; Palestine and Arabia on its south.

2. To define the limits of this country exactly is impossible, from its having had different boundaries at different periods, as its name was more or less famous, and its empire more or less extended. The kingdom of Syria, under the Seleucidæ, at its greatest extent, comprised Syria Proper, Phœnicia, Palestine, Asia Minor, Assyria, and Persia, extending from the Ægean and Mediterranean seas to the Indus.

3. Syria Proper was originally parcelled out into several petty kingdoms and jurisdictions ; but subsequently it seems to have been divided into four principal ones,—namely, Zo'bah, Damas'cus, Ha'math, and Ge'sher ; each of which was governed by its respective kings.

4. The name Syria was given to this country by the Greeks, and is an abridgment of Assyria.

5. Syria, without any other appellation, generally denotes the kingdom of Syria, of which An'tioch became the capital after the reign of the Selencidæ ; before this time it was seldom used.

6. This country was first subdued by the Assyrians, who embodied it with their empire. It was afterwards tributary to the Persians ; and subsequently to the Greeks or Macedonians, and Romans. The Roman province of Syria comprised the whole of Judæa, with Phœnicia and Syria Proper.

7. The Romans held it for some time after the death of our Saviour, and in the seventh century it was seized by the Saracens, under Ma'homet.

8. While this country was in the possession of the Saracens, it was invaded by the several powers of Europe, for the purpose of rescuing the Holy Land from the hands of the Infidels. This was the origin of the Crusades.

9. For a time the Christians were successful; but after a long series of terrible conflicts, they were expelled from the country. In the sixteenth century it was seized by the Turks, from whom it was wrested of late years by the Pacha of Egypt; but by the interference of England and Austria it has been restored to them.

10. The south-western part of this country was originally called Canaan, from Canaan the son of Ham, who first settled here. It was afterwards called Palestine, from the Palestines, or Philistines, who inhabited the sea-coast: this name was given to it by the Greeks and Romans.

11. It received the name of the Holy Land from its having been sanctified by the presence, actions, miracles, and death of our blessed Saviour.

12. Were this country under a wise government, and inhabited by an active race of people, it might be rendered one of the most flourishing and powerful countries in the world. It is now divided into five pachalics, or governments; viz. Alep'po, Damas'cus, A'cre, Trip'oli, and Pa'lestine.

13. Syro-Phœnicia, is Phœnicia properly so called: but having by conquest been united to the kingdom of Syria, its old name, Phœnicia, was added to that of Syria.

14. The Canaanitish woman is called (*Mark* vii. 26) a Syro-Phœnician, because she was of Phœnicia; which country was then considered a part of Syria.

15. Matthew, who is by some supposed to have written in Hebrew, calls her a *Canaanitish woman*, (*Mat.* xv. 22), because that country was really peopled by Canaanites, Sidon being the eldest son of Canaan. (*Gen.* x. 15).—See *Phœnicia*.

16. The principal antiquities of Syria are those of Balbeck and Pal'myra. The latter was the capital of Pal'myrene, a spacious and delightful province in the midst of a wild and frightful desert.

17. Although Palmyra rose to be a great, opulent, and powerful city, its origin is lost in obscurity.

18. It is generally supposed to have been founded by Solomon, and to be the city of Tad'mor in Scripture, which he is said to have built in the wilderness. This is, however, mere conjecture.

19. This city is rendered famous for having been the residence of the noble and high-minded Queen Zeno'bria, who long powerfully opposed the Romans, but at last was subdued by the Emperor Aurelian, when Zenobia was taken captive to Rome, A. D. 273.

20. It soon after sunk into obscurity and decay. The views of the ruins of this once-opulent and splendid city are among the most magnificent in the world. Palmyra is now occupied by about thirty Arab families, who live in wretched huts among the ruins of the temple.

21. The ruins of Balbeck, the ancient Heliop'olis, are



RUINS OF PALMYRA.

also very bold and truly magnificent. The most remarkable of these are the ruins of a temple, supposed to have been dedicated to the sun. The period when those edifices were erected is unknown. They are of very high antiquity.

22. The present population amounts to about 1,500, whose wretched huts form a striking contrast with its venerable and splendid remains.

23. Syria is much less populous now than it was in ancient times. The manners of the Syrians, and of the Eastern nations in general, are very different from ours. We wear close and short dresses, theirs are long and ample: we suffer our hair to grow, and shave the beard, they let the beard grow and shave the head.

24. With us to uncover the head is a mark of respect; with them a naked head is a sign of folly. We generally pass our lives erect, they are almost continually seated. They sit and eat upon the ground, we upon raised seats. We eat our meat with knives and forks, they with their fingers. We salute in an inclined posture, they upright.

25. After the death of Alexander the Great, Syria was divided into Comage'na, Seleu'cis, Cele-Syria, Phœnicia, and Judea. The metropolis of all Syria was Antioch, the usual residence of the Macedonian kings. Antioch was, at one period, considered the third city of the world for beauty, extent, and population. It is situated on the river Orontes. Here the disciples of Christ were first called Christians.

26. Under the Roman empire, Syria Proper was divided into Comage'na, or Euphratensis, Syria-Palmyrena, and Phœnicia-Liba'ni, or Libanesia. The Arabs include in Syria Palestine and Cilicia, and call it Sham.

27. Cele-Syria, properly so called, lay, according to Strabo, between two mountains, Libanus and Antilibanus, and was thence called Cele-Syria, or hollow Syria, the word *cele* signifying *hollow*.

28. The principal cities of this part were Heliopolis, Abila, Damascus, and Laodice'a. Heliopolis, or the "City of the Sun," was so called from the worship paid there to that luminary.

29. Of the stately remains of this city, now known by the name of Balbeck, an account is given above. From Abila, the neighbouring country took the name of Abilene.

30. The city of Laodicea gave name to the province called Laodicene; and Palmyra to that of the province called Palmyrene. The chief cities of this province are Palmyra and Thapsacus.

31. Thapsacus, in the time of the Macedonian kings, was known by the Greek name Amphipolis. Here Cyrus the younger, with his whole army, forded the Euphrates on foot, the water reaching no higher than their breasts.—(*Xenophon*).

32. Here Darius crossed the same river on a bridge, as he marched into Cilicia to meet Alexander the Great; and after his defeat at Arbela, he re-crossed it on his return as he fled before him.

33. Alexander, after having completed the conquest of the Persian empire, made Babylon his residence, and the capital of his dominions. The central position of that ancient city, almost equally distant from the Hellespont and the Indus, rendered it extremely suitable for that purpose.

34. The death of Alexander, and the division of his empire between his generals, gave rise to numerous revolutions in those countries.

35. All the northern provinces of Syria, with part of Babylonia and of Asia Minor, were taken possession of by Seleucus, one of Alexander's captains, surnamed Nicator, or Victorious. The era of the Seleucidæ begins by the taking of Babylon by Seleucus, B. C. 312; and ends at the conquest of Syria by Pompey, B. C. 65.

36. Seleucia, the capital, which was founded by Seleucus, stood about thirty-five miles north-east by north from Babylon; and from the era of its foundation, B. C. 293, may be dated the final decline of Babylon, which till that period was large and opulent.

37. For a long time after the overthrow of the Grecian kingdom, the city of Seleucia remained an independent Greek republic, although the Parthian dominions extended almost to its gates; and in the time of Plin'y, it contained about 600,000 inhabitants.—(*Pliny, Tacitus.*)

38. Seleucia was destroyed by the Romans, A. D. 165, during their wars with the Parthians, and its ruins undoubtedly contributed to furnish materials for the building of

Bagdad, in the same manner as the ruins of Babylon assisted in the building of Seleucia.

39. Ctesiphon,* famous in Roman history, stood on the east side of the Tigris, at the distance of about three miles from Seleucia.

40. Syria, for the most part, is a very delightful and fertile country, naturally abounding in palm-trees yielding the choicest dates, and producing, by culture, corn, wine, and oil. It is agreeably diversified with hills and valleys, and is refreshed with breezes from the Mediterranean Sea.

41. The language of the ancient Syrians, supposed to have been the mother of all the Oriental dialects, became a distinct tongue so early as the time of the patriarch Jacob.

42. It was spoken not only in Syria, but also in Mesopotamia, Chaldea, and Assyria; and after the Babylonish captivity, it was introduced into Palestine.

43. Modern authors consider it an easy and elegant language, but not copious, and it has a great number of Greek words, which were incorporated with it during the reigns of the Seleucidæ.

* Pronounced Tes-i-fon.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where is Syria situated? 2. Why is it difficult to define its limits? 3. How originally parcelled out? How subsequently? 4-5. By whom was it so called, and when? 6-7. Under whose rule did it successively fall?

8. What was the origin and scene of the Crusades? 9. What their termination? Who have been its modern possessors?

10. What is the origin of the name Canaan, applied to a part of this country? By whom was Canaan called Palestine, and why? 11. Why is Canaan called the Holy Land? 12. What might this country be rendered? How is it now divided?

13. Why is Phœnicia called also Syro-Phœnicia? 16. What are the principal antiquities of Syria? Where was Palmyra situate? 17-19. What do we know of its origin? For what is it famed? 20. What is its present state? 21-22. What spectacle does Balbeck now afford? 23-24. In what respects do our manners differ from those of Syria, and the eastern nations? 25-26. How was this country divided after the death of Alexander the Great? What was its capital? How divided under the Romans? 27. How was Cele-Syria situate? Why so called? 28. What were its principal cities?

31-32. For what is Thapsacus noted? 33. Where did Alexander fix his residence after the conquest of Persia? Why? 34. To what did his death give rise? 35. What countries fell to Seleucus? When does the era of the Seleucidæ commence and end? 36. What was the situation of Seleucia? Its effects on Babylon? 37. Its population in the time of Pliny? 38. By whom destroyed, and when? How were its ruins applied? 39. Where stood Ctesiphon?

40. What are the natural beauties and advantages of Syria? 41-43. What was the language of the ancient Syrians? and by whom spoken? What do modern authors say of it?



KEY TO THE MAP.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. Sinope. | 5. Brusa. | 9. Aleppo. | 13. Sidon. |
| 2. Amasia. | 6. Smyrna. | 10. Antioch. | 14. Tyre. |
| 3. Trebisond. | 7. Ephesus. | 11. Tripoli. | 15. Jerusalem. |
| 4. Nicæa. | 8. Issus. | 12. Damacus. | 16. Ur. |

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 17. Diarbekir. | 25. Tehran. | 33. Cabul. | 41. Calcutta. |
| 18. Erzeroum. | 26. Ispahan. | 34. Ghizni. | 42. Hyderabad. |
| 19. Nineveh. | 27. Persepolis. | 35. Cashmere. | 43. Poonah. |
| 20. Seleucia. | 28. Shiraz. | 36. Lahore. | 44. Bombay. |
| 21. Ctesiphon. | 29. Kerman. | 37. Delhi. | 45. Goa. |
| 22. Bagdad. | 30. Candahar. | 38. Agra. | 46. Seringapatam. |
| 23. Bussorah. | 31. Herat. | 39. Benares. | 47. Arcot. |
| 24. Ecbatana. | 32. Balk. | 40. Patna. | 48. Madras. |

The Saracen empire extended from the Atlantic to the Ganges, and from the Caspian Sea to the Indian Ocean; comprising

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| Arabia, | Mauritania, | Phoenicia, |
| Egypt, | Spain, | Syria, |
| Lybia, | Parts of France and Italy, | Asia Minor, |
| Carthage, | Parthia and Greece, | Persia, |
| Numidia, | Palestine, | Hindostan, |

and the chief of the isles in the Mediterranean Sea.

In AFRICA the Saracens possessed the whole of its northern parts, from the Red Sea to the Atlantic Ocean, and from the Mediterranean Sea to the Sandy Desert; when the Moors adopted their language, assumed their names, and have since become so intermingled, that the whole population of Northern Africa has ever since been considered Mahometan.

In EUROPE they subdued Spain, and governed it for a very considerable period; invaded France, and seized upon the islands of Crete and Sicily, and took possession of Italy, as far as Rome. Their ASIATIC POSSESSIONS comprised Arabia, Palestine, Syria, Asia Minor, Mesopotamia, Armenia, Persia, Hindostan, and part of Tartary.

All the countries subdued by the Saracens were compelled to embrace the Mahometan religion. Although they thrice besieged Constantinople, they never subdued it.

CHAPTER XIII.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Promul'gate, <i>v.</i> to publish, to make known. | 38. Rhap'sody, <i>s.</i> a wild imagination; any number of parts joined together without any necessary or natural connexion. |
| 11. Aborigi'nal, <i>s.</i> the earliest inhabitants of a country. | 39. Doc'trine, <i>s.</i> the principles of any sect; that which is taught. |
| 15. Al'gebra, <i>s.</i> a branch of arithmetic. | Fanat'i'cism, <i>s.</i> enthusiasm; religious frenzy. |
| 22. Pa'triarch, <i>s.</i> the father and ruler of a family or tribe. | 42. Ca'liph, <i>s.</i> a title assumed by the successors of Mahomet among the Saracens, who were vested with absolute power in affairs both religious and civil. |
| 23. Ju'daism, <i>s.</i> the religion of the Jews. | 48. Enthu'siasm, <i>s.</i> fanaticism, religious frenzy, elevation of fancy. |
| Ido'latry, <i>s.</i> the worship of idols or images; the worship of any thing as God, which is not God. | 49. Faith, <i>s.</i> a belief of the revealed truths of religion; an entire dependence upon the truth, power, justice, and mercy of God. |
| 27. Mar'tial, <i>a.</i> warlike, fighting, brave. | 53. Dyn'asty, <i>s.</i> a government. |
| 29. Pil'grim, <i>s.</i> a traveller, a wanderer; particularly one who travels on a religious account. | 56. Mus'u'man, <i>s.</i> Mahometan believer. |
| 33. Physiog'nomy, <i>s.</i> the face, the look, the countenance. | 59. Eulo'gium, <i>s.</i> the act of praising, or speaking well of. |
| 34. Pro'pagate, <i>v.</i> to promote; to extend; to increase. | 63. Supersti'tion, <i>s.</i> unnecessary fear or scruples in religion; false religion; full of idle fancies. |
| 37. Vo'tary, <i>s.</i> one devoted, as by a vow, to any particular service, worship, study, or state of life. | |
| 38. Incohe'rent, <i>a.</i> wanting proper union; not fixed or settled properly to each other; inconsistent. | |

ARABIA AND THE EMPIRE OF THE SARACENS.

1. ARA'BIA is a large country, comprising the south-west part of Asia; and is usually divided into Arabia Petræ'a, Arabia Deser'ta, and Arabia Fel'ix.

2. Arabia Petræa lies towards the north-west, in which part resided the E'domites and the Amal'ekites.

3. In Arabia Pet̄ræa are the two mountains of Si'nai and Ho'reb, so well known by the events which are recorded in the Bible.

4. Here it was that Moses received the law, and promulgated it to the Israelites; and in this part of Arabia was the wilderness, in which that people so long wandered before they were permitted to reach the Promised Land.

5. The chief towns of Arabia are Mecca and Medina. Mecca is noted as the birth-place of Mahomet, and Medina as his burial-place.

6. A conspiracy having been formed against Mahomet at Mecca, he fled to Medina, A. D. 622. This is called the *Hegira*, or *Flight*, and is the celebrated epoch used by the Arabs and Mahometans in reckoning events.

7. The towns are few. The houses for the most part are wretched, being built with mud, and thatched with grass. They have neither windows nor doors, a kind of mat made of grass being used as a substitute.

8. The Arabians have neither knives, forks, spoons, nor plates, but eat their food like the Turks.

9. The history of this country, before the time of Mahomet, is buried in obscurity.

10. The distinguishing features of Arabia are its extensive arid deserts, which have ever defied all foreign invasion.

11. Neither the Babylonian, the Persian, the Macedonian, the Roman, nor the Ottoman conquerors, have ever been able to penetrate into those sequestered retreats, where the aboriginal Arabians bid defiance to the united power of the whole world.

12. In the greater part of this country the heat is excessive; though for the most part barren, some districts towards the south are very fertile, producing coffee, drugs, grain, frankincense, and myrrh.

13. The horses, camels, and asses of Arabia are considered to be the finest in the world. The camel is as valuable to the Arabian, as the rein-deer is to the Laplander.

14. The religion of the Arabians is that of Mahomet: their population is about twelve millions.

15. The Arabians for a long time greatly encouraged literature, and to them we are indebted for the invention of Algebra, and also for the numerical figures, 1, 2, 3, 4, &c., which were first used in Europe A. D. 1259.

16. In travelling through the sandy deserts of this country, persons are obliged to direct their course by the stars, or by the mariner's compass, in like manner as navigators traverse the ocean.

17. One of the principal cities of Arabia was Thapsacus, on the Euphrates, where a bridge was built over it by Darius, when he marched against Alexander the Great, and hither he fled after his defeat.

18. Here also Cyrus the younger waded through with his army, which the inhabitants had never before seen done. This city is sometimes ranked in Palmyrene, in Syria, and sometimes in Arabia. The boundary of Arabia on the north has varied greatly at different periods.

19. On the Red Sea stood Berenice, anciently called Ezion-Geber, whence the ships of Solomon sailed to Ophir, (supposed to have been a port in Sofala, on the east coast of Africa); whence they returned in three years with rich cargoes.—(*1 Kings x. 11-13, 23.*)

20. Arabia Felix, in the southern part, is remarkable for its great fertility, but was very little known to the ancients. Among the different states, the Sabæ were the most distinguished.

21. Some time after the downfall of the Roman empire, a new power or dominion arose in the East, which was destined to produce a wonderful change over a great portion of the globe.

22. The people alluded to were the Saracens, a very rude nation, living chiefly in independent tribes, in Arabia, who traced their descent from the patriarch Abraham.

23. The Saracens at this time professed a mixed religion, compounded of Judaism and idolatry. Mecca, their holy city, rose to eminence from the donations of pilgrims to its temple, in which was reposed a black stone, an object of high veneration from the miracles which are reputed to have been performed from time immemorial. This stone is still to be seen in the *Caaba*, or temple of Mecca.

24. Of the history of Arabia, before the time of Mahomet, there are but few particulars. The Scriptures frequently mention the Arabians as a powerful people, who valued themselves on their wisdom.

25. Their riches consisted principally of cattle; and mention is made of their having paid to king Jehosaphat an annual tribute of 7,700 sheep, and as many goats.—(*2 Chr. xvii. 11.*)

26. The Arabians, like most other nations of Asia, are of a middle stature, thin, and of swarthy complexion, with black hair and black eyes.

27. They are swift of foot, excellent horsemen, and are said to be martial and a very brave people; but plunder is the chief object for which they have ever fought.

28. The inhabitants of the inland country live in tents, and remove from place to place with their flocks and herds, as they have ever done since they became a nation.

29. The Arabians, in general, are such thieves, that travellers and pilgrims, who are led thither from all nations through motives of devotion or curiosity, are struck with terror on their approach towards the deserts. The trade of Asiatic Turkey, Arabia, and Egypt, is usually carried on by

caravans of merchants and dealers, as represented in the engraving in page 67.

30. These robbers, headed by a chief, traverse the country in numerous troops on horseback, and assault and plunder the caravans; and so late as 1750, a body of 50,000 Arabians attacked a caravan of merchants and pilgrims returning from Mecca, killed about 60,000 persons, and plundered it of every thing valuable, though escorted by a Turkish army.

31. In the history of Arabia we meet with one of the greatest revolutions that ever happened in the world; namely, that occasioned by Mahomet, who gave birth to an empire, which in 80 years extended itself over more kingdoms and countries than the Romans did in 800 years.

32. Mahomet was the younger son of an indigent family, and was a long time employed in the service of a woman called Cadiga, a rich widow, who exercised the profession of a merchant in Mecca: he married his mistress, and lived in obscurity to the age of forty. It was not until then that he displayed those eminent talents which spoke him so much superior to all his fellow-citizens.

33. He is said to have possessed a warm and nervous eloquence, destitute of art and method, such as was necessary to harangue the Arabs; an air of authority and insinuation, animated by piercing eyes, and supported by a happy physiognomy; the intrepidity and liberality of an Alexander, and that sobriety which Alexander wanted to be completely great in every part of his character.

34. Travelling had taught him the weakness of neighbouring nations, and after having made himself acquainted with the character of his countrymen, their ignorance, incredulity, and aptitude to enthusiasm, he perceived that he could readily raise himself into celebrity; for which purpose he feigned a divine mission to propagate a new religion for the salvation of mankind.

35. Having formed the design of obtaining the sovereign power, he retired to a cave in the desert, where he employed himself in meditation and prayer, where he framed "the Koran," or the book which he pretended to have received at different times from heaven, by the hands of the "angel Gabriel."

36. At the age of forty he publicly assumed the prophetic character, calling himself the *prophet of God*. At the same time declaring that the ALMIGHTY had sent from time to time his prophets upon earth, Abraham, Moses, Jesus Christ, and Mahomet,—the last the greatest, to whom all the world should owe its conversion to the true religion.

37. This religion, while it adopted in part the morality of Christianity, retained many of the rites of Judaism, and some of the Arabian superstitions, as the pilgrimage to

Mecca; but owed to a certain spirit of Asiatic luxury and voluptuousness its chief recommendation to its votaries.

38. The Koran taught the belief of one God, whose will and power were constantly exerted towards the happiness of his creatures; that the duty of man was to love his neighbour, assist the poor, protect the injured, to be humane to inferior animals, and to pray seven times a-day; nevertheless it abounds with incoherent rhapsodies and absurdities; but the poetry is considered sublime, and this work is esteemed the master-piece and model of the Arabian language.

39. The more enlightened and leading men of Mecca strongly opposed both him and his doctrines, and endeavoured to bring him to an account as a cheat and impostor; but Mahomet, getting notice of their intention, fled to Medina, where his fanaticism spread with amazing rapidity.



40. His flight from Mecca, which is denominated the Hegira, became the era of his glory, and the foundation of his empire.

41. From a fugitive he started up a conqueror. He armed his disciples, besieged and took Mecca, and saw his persecutors humbled at his feet.

42. After subduing all Arabia, and part of the Eastern empire, he died, A. D. 632, leaving two branches of his race, both esteemed divine among their subjects. These were the caliphs of Persia and Egypt, under the last of which Arabia was included.

43. He was succeeded on the throne by his father-in-law, Abubeker, who united and published the books of the Koran, and prosecuted the conquests of Mahomet.

44. Upon the death of Abubeker, he was succeeded by Omar, who deprived the Greek empire of Syria, Phoenicia, Mesopotamia, and Babylonia, and in less than two years after destroyed the Persian empire; whilst Amrou, one of his generals, conquered Egypt, Lybia, and Numidia.

45. The conquest of Egypt by the Saracens was attended with one misfortune, which every lover of learning cannot but lament ; namely, the destruction of the library at Alexandria.

46. This famous library was founded by the elder Ptolemies, and was so much enlarged and improved by their successors, that it amounted to the number of 700,000 volumes.

47. Othman, the successor of Omar, completed the conquest of Persia, and possessed himself of the western part of Africa, desolated the islands in the Archipelago, seized upon Rhodes, passed into Sicily, and carried alarm into the very centre of Italy. Notwithstanding the great success of his arms, he was murdered by his own people.

48. Mahomet's more immediate successors were frequently engaged in war, in which they took great pleasure. The Arabians, disciples of poverty and toil, panting for war and eager for prey, surmounted every obstacle in the first transport of enthusiasm.

49. Warmed with a lively faith, persuaded that the MOST HIGH had given them the earth for a possession, but that they must merit it by their valour, they attacked their enemies with a fury nothing could resist.

50. Terror and desolation marched before them. In a battle with the Romans, seeing their general taken prisoner, they fled ; a captain stopped them, and cried, "Have you forgotten, that to turn your back upon the enemy is to offend God and his Prophet ?" Animated with these words, the Saracens returned to the charge, and cut the Romans to pieces.

51. Othman added to his dominions Bactriana and part of Turkey, and ravaged Rhodes and the Greek islands.

52. He was succeeded by Ali, the son-in-law of Mahomet, a name to this day revered by the Mahometans. He transferred the seat of empire from Mecca to Couffa, whence it was afterwards removed to Bagdad.

53. His reign was glorious, but of short duration, being only five years. In the space of half a century from the beginning of the conquests of Mahomet, the Saracens raised an empire more extensive than what remained of the Roman. Nineteen caliphs of the race of Omar reigned in succession ; after which began the dynasty of the Abassides, descended through the male line from Mahomet.

54. Almonza, the second caliph of this race, made his seat of empire at Bagdad, and introduced learning and the culture of the sciences, which his successors continued to promote with equal zeal and liberality.

55. Haroun-Alrascid, an accomplished scholar, flourished in the beginning of the ninth century, and is celebrated as a second Augustus, emperor of Rome, eminent as having been one of the most distinguished scholars of his age. He was

cotemporary with Charlemagne, and reigned twenty-three years.

56. The Mussulman empire was now at its highest pitch of glory. Haroun-Alraschid, to the magnificence of his illustrious predecessors, joined the social virtues, and a most amiable conduct.

57. He applied himself to polish the manners of his subjects, and by his own example and authority gave them a taste for the arts and sciences.

58. He invited learned men from every part of the world, cherished their genius by rewards, and caused the most valuable writings of antiquity to be translated into Arabic. He took the greatest delight in poetry, and was often seen to shed tears when reading the works of celebrated poets.

59. This illustrious caliph was no less brave than learned. The Arabians are lavish in their eulogiums upon his reign, which they call the reign of wonder and magnificence.

60. Bagdad, the metropolis of the Saracen empire, was the centre of knowledge, from whence it spread through his dominions.

61. The reign of Al-Amin, the son and successor of Haroun, was a scene of civil commotions between him and his brother Al-Mamon. Having been advised to change the succession, he was very early hurled from the throne; when he was succeeded by his brother Al-Mamon, who revived the lustre of his father's reign.

62. He made a successful war against the Greek emperor in Africa and Italy, and his fleet carried terror to the gates of Rome. He conquered Sicily and the island of Crete, which from that time took the name of Candia, from a city built there by the Saracens.

63. He was a great enemy to superstition, and the friend of truth, to which all his researches were directed. He employed his authority and wealth to protect, honour, and reward men of talent and genius, of every religion and country.

64. He spent a great part of his revenue in purchasing the most valuable works, upon every subject, that could be found in Europe and Greece.

65. He patronised literature, science, and the arts, particularly astronomy, philosophy, and medicine; indeed study was his delight, and no man who pursues those sciences by profession, could be more assiduous than was Al-Mamon.

66. After the death of Vatheck, one of the succeeding caliphs, the Saracen empire fell into decay, and shortly after suffered an eternal eclipse. From this period discord, civil wars, and repeated revolts tore in pieces the provinces of the Arabian empire.

67. Luxury and effeminacy found their way into the court of Bagdad. Taxes increased, and the people were offended.

A general discontent prevailed, and the governors of provinces seized the opportune moment to dismember the empire.

68. Thus fell this once-mighty power ; and in like manner fall all other nations—whenever luxury prevails. This ought to be a lesson to all the nations on the earth.

69. It is said that Al-Mamon, to ascertain the true magnitude and figure of the earth, ordered a degree of the meridian to be measured according to the exact rules of geometry. The same, says Voltaire, was done by the order of Louis XIV., king of France, near nine centuries after.

70. Though the Arabians, in former ages, were famous for their learning and skill in all the liberal arts, there is scarcely a country at present where the people are so universally ignorant.

71. The Saracens were a celebrated people from the deserts of Arabia, the term *sarra* in the Arabic language signifying a desert. They were the first disciples of Mahomet, and within forty years after his death, A.D. 632, they had conquered a great part of Asia, Africa, and Europe, as before mentioned.

72. They subjugated Spain A.D. 713. The empire of the Saracens closed by Bagdad being taken by the Tartars, A.D. 1258.

73. There are no people now known by the name of Saracens ; the descendants of those who subdued Spain are called Moors, so named from having originally entered Spain from Mauritania, in Africa, the country of the Moors.

74. Arabia is said never to have been conquered. Two miles from Mecca is the hill, where it is said that Abraham went to offer up his son Isaac, B.C. 1872.

Questions for Examination.

1. What portion of Asia is comprised in Arabia ? How is it divided ?
2. Where does Arabia Petrea lie ? Who formerly inhabited it ?
3. What two mountains are situated here ? Why so well known ?
4. Where did Moses receive the law ? What is the desert celebrated for ?
5. What are the chief towns of Arabia ? For what is Mecca noted ? Medina ?
6. Why did Mahomet fly from Mecca to Medina ? When ? What is it called ?
7. Are the towns numerous ? Describe the houses.
8. How do the Arabians eat their meat ?
9. Is any thing known of the history of the country previous to the time of Mahomet ?
10. What are the distinguishing features of Arabia ?
11. Have the aboriginal Arabians ever been subdued ?

12. What is the climate of this country ? What is the produce of the fertile districts ?
13. For what animals is Arabia celebrated ?
14. What is the religion of the people ? the population ?
15. What did the Arabians encourage ? For what are we indebted to them ?
16. How do travellers direct their course over the deserts ?
17. What is the name of one of the principal cities ? Where situated ?

Who fled hither? 18. What act did Cyrus the younger perform? Where is this city sometimes placed? 19. What city stood on the Red Sea? Give its ancient name. Whose ships sailed from this port? 20. Where is Arabia Felix situated? For what is it remarkable?

21. What occurred after the downfall of the Roman empire? 22. What people are alluded to? Describe them. From whom do they trace their descent? 23. What was their religion? How did Mecca rise to eminence? What was deposited in the temple? Why is this stone celebrated? 24. Are there any particulars of Arabia before the time of Mahomet? How do the Scriptures speak of the Arabians? 25. What constituted their principal wealth? 26. Describe the Arabians. 27. What further description do you give of them? 28. How do the inland inhabitants live? 29. What is their character for honesty? How behave towards travellers?

31. What great revolution do we read of connected with this history? Who was its author? 32. Who was Mahomet? How for a long time employed? When did he first display his great talents? 33. What is his general character? 34. What knowledge did he acquire by travelling? 35. How did he act when he had formed the design of obtaining the sovereignty? From whom did he pretend to have received the Koran? 36. What did he style himself? What were his declarations? 37. Describe the religion of the Koran. 38. What belief did it inculcate? What are the chief characteristics of the book? 39. Was Mahomet opposed by any portion of the men of Mecca? Whither did he fly? 40. What is his flight denominated? 41. Did he return to Mecca? How? 42. When did he die? 43. By whom was he succeeded?

44. Who succeeded Abubeker? What was the conduct of Omar? 45. What great monument was destroyed at the conquest of Egypt? 46. By whom was the library founded? 47. What did Othman complete? Describe his death. 48. Give the characters of the immediate successors of Mahomet. 49. What were their motives for attacking their enemies? 50. What circumstance occurred during one of their engagements with the Romans? 51. How did Othman extend his dominions? 52. Who succeeded him? 53. Describe the extent of the Saracen empire at this time. How many caliphs of the race of Omar reigned in succession? 54. Where did Almonza make his seat of empire?

55. When did Haroun-Alraschid flourish? In what was he distinguished? With whom cotemporary? 56. How did he increase the magnificence of his empire? 57. To what did he apply himself? 58. Whom did he invite to his court? 59. In what way do the Arabians illustrate his greatness? 60. For what was Bagdad celebrated? 61. Describe the character and reign of Al-Amin. 62. Against whom did Al-Mamon make a successful war? 63. Was he an enemy to superstition? 64. In what did he spend a large portion of his revenue? 65. What did he patronise?

66. What occurred after the death of Vatheck? 67. Describe the general condition of the court and people at this time. 68. How did this empire fall? 69. What great work did Al-Mamon achieve? Who performed a similar act? 70. What is the present character of the Arabians? 71. Who were the Saracens, and why so called? 72. When did they conquer Spain? 73. Whence did they receive the name of Moors? 74. Was Arabia ever subdued?

CHAPTER XIV.

3. Terres'trial, *a.* belonging to the earth; not celestial.
 Vicin'ity, *s.* nearness; the state of being near.
 6. Min'istry, *s.* office; service; administration.
 10. Car'avan, *s.* a body of travelling merchants, or pilgrims; a large carriage.
 23. Sali'ne, *a.* consisting of salt; a salt spring.
 24. Supi'neness, *s.* indolence.
 25. Odorif'eros, *a.* fragrant; sweet; perfumed.
 27. Quad'ruped, *s.* a four-footed animal.
 29. Con'secrate, *v.* to make sacred.
 Divi'ne, *a.* godlike; heavenly; not human. Divine, *s.* a minister of the gospel.
 35. Pea'silence, *s.* plague; a contagious distemper.
 Lo'custs, *s.* devouring insects.
 36. Scout, *s.* one who is sent privily to observe the motions of an enemy.
 42. Con'vert, *v.* to change from one religion to another; to turn from a bad to a good life: or it may be used in a bad sense, as to convert a thing to one improperly.
 43. Winding-sheet, *s.* a sheet in which the dead are enwrapped.
 48. Gen'tile, *s.* one who knows not the true God.
 52. San'guinary, *a.* cruel; murderous. Ty'rant, *s.* an absolute monarch governing cruelly; an oppressor.
 54. Es'tuary, *s.* an arm of the sea; a mouth of a river.
 61. Cent'ury, *s.* a hundred years; sometimes simply used for one hundred.
 63. Col'ony, *s.* a body of people drawn from the mother-country to inhabit some distant one.
 65. Migr'a'tion, *s.* change of residence; removal from one habitation to another.
 67. Khan, *s.* a sovereign prince of Tartary.
 71. Mosque, *s.* a Mahometan temple; place of worship.
 73. Asyl'um, *s.* a place of protection; a refuge.
 79. Extro'rt, *v.* to draw by force; to gain by violence or oppression.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

1. ASIATIC TURKEY is a country of vast extent. And no country in the world is more favoured by nature, or more marked by grand historical features than this.

2. Asiatic Turkey is one of the most important and interesting divisions of the world, as comprising within its limits the seat and nursery of the human race, whence they spread themselves over the rest of the globe; hence this country may be considered the most remarkable district on the earth.

3. Here was situated the terrestrial paradise possessed by our first parents, Adam and Eve. Indeed all the occurrences in the early history of mankind took place in Asiatic Turkey and its vicinity.

4. Here the ark was formed and rested; and from this country it was that the re-population of the world began.

5. As Turkey was the birth-place of society, so also it was in Turkey that the redemption of man was effected.

6. It was the scene of our blessed Saviour's ministry; and hence the light of the Gospel has been diffused, and will still further be diffused, throughout the most distant regions of the earth.

7. Babylonia, Chaldea, Assyria, Mesopotamia, Armenia, Lydia, Troy, Syria, Judæa, Palestine, and Phœnicia, all of

these once-renowned empires and kingdoms are included in Asiatic Turkey, which consists not so much of any one single country, as of several detached and dissimilar states, for the most part of different habits, customs, and interests.

8. The principal towns in Asiatic Turkey are Smyr'na, Brusa, and Ango'ra, in Asia Minor; Erz'eroum and Tre'bisond, in Armenia; Van and Bed'lis, in Kur'distan; Bagdad, Basso'ra, and Hil'lah, in I'rak-A'rabiā, the ancient Chaldea; Mo'sul in Diarbeck; Aleppo, Antioch, Palmyra, Balbeck, Damascus, Sidon, and Tyre, in Syria; Jerusalem, Acre, Jaffa, Jericho, and Gaza, in Palestine or the Holy Land.

9. To this country belong Georg'ia and part of Circas'sia. The Circassians are chiefly noted for the beauty of their women: the men are tall, and are considered handsome.

10. In Asiatic Turkey commerce is chiefly carried on by means of caravans. These consist of a great assemblage of merchants and travellers, who unite together for the purpose of mutual security; and the merchandise is conveyed, in large packages, on the backs of camels, horses, and asses.

TURKEY IN ASIA.



KEY TO THE MAP.

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. Brusa. | 8. Adona. | 14. Bagdad. | 20. Scalanova. |
| 2. Kutoya. | 9. Scanderoon. | 15. Damascus. | 21. Kasaria. |
| 3. Angora. | 10. Antioch. | 16. St. Jean d'Acre. | 22. Tchouruni. |
| 4. Koniah. | 11. Aleppo. | 17. Bassora. | 23. Amasserah. |
| 5. Erzeroum. | 12. Mosul. | 18. Lamsaki. | 24. Sillity. |
| 6. Van. | 13. Holwan. | 19. Adramyti. | 25. Boodroon. |
| 7. Diarbekir. | | | 26. Gaza. |

11. The most considerable of the caravans which travel the country of Syria are those of Mecca, each usually accomplishing a journey to Dainascus and back once a-year.

12. The caravans from Bagdad to Dainascus perform three or four journeys in the year. The journey from one place to the other generally occupies the caravan about thirty days; but a courier, upon a dromedary, usually performs it in about twelve days. Here is a picture of a caravan.



13. For the accommodation of caravans and other travellers, there are public buildings, called caravanseras, near almost all the towns and villages.

14. A caravansera is a large four-sided building, usually with towers at the angles, and is crowned with battlements like a fortress.

15. In the interior are generally two courts, surrounded with stables; and some have a mosque or chapel annexed, in which the travellers pray.

16. They are always open, and caravans and travellers enter and go away, without either asking permission or taking leave.

17. Every one may stay as long as he thinks proper, without paying the smallest contribution; but he is merely accommodated with shelter from the weather, for he does not find in them either furniture or provisions.

18. This country is diversified with vast chains of mountains, interspersed with plains of great extent.

19. The most remarkable mountains are Olympus, Taurus, Anti-Taurus, Caucasus, Ararat, Lebanon, and Hermon. Several of these have been celebrated from the earliest periods of history.

20. Mount Ararat, towards the east of Armenia, has two

summits, one of which is covered with perpetual snow, and is believed to have been that on which the ark rested after the Deluge.

21. Mount Taurus, and the adjacent ridges, are mentioned in the writings of several early historians. Mount Ida and Mount Olympus are well-known heights in Asia Minor; and Mount Lebanon, in Syria, is rendered familiar to us by the sacred writings.

22. There are also woods and forests of vast extent, containing an abundance of timber.

23. Its chief lakes are the Dead Sea, in Palestine; Gennesareth, or Sea of Galilee; and a remarkable saline lake in Asia Minor.

24. The principal rivers are the Euphrates, Tigris, and the Jordan. No countries contain more metals and minerals; but from the supineness of the inhabitants the mines remain unproductive.

25. The soil of this country, for the most part, is very rich and fertile, and capable of producing in great abundance all the necessaries and luxuries of life, odoriferous plants, and drugs.

26. The Turkish and Arabian horses are considered the most valuable of any in the world.

27. All quadrupeds are found here that are necessary for the use of mankind, together with wild-fowl and poultry in high perfection.

28. Palestine, in the south-west part of Syria, is the same as Canaan or the Holy Land, which was given by God to his peculiar and favoured people, the Jews.

29. It was consecrated by many marks of his divine favour throughout the whole period of Jewish history; and sanctified by the presence of our Lord and Saviour, being the theatre of the redemption of the human race.

30. Jerusalem, its capital, is now most remarkable for being the resort of pilgrims, who come to visit the holy places, and the church of the Sepulchre.

31. As the Holy Land constitutes so important a feature in the dominions of Turkey, a further account of it will be found in a separate chapter. Other important divisions will also be found under separate heads.

32. Aleppo is the capital of Syria, and contains a population of about 250,000. It is the chief city of all Asiatic Turkey. Many Europeans have factories here.

33. Aleppo is now what Palmyra once was,—the centre of Syrian commerce. It maintains a commercial intercourse with Constantinople, Damascus, Antioch, Bagdad, and Bassora.

34. Smyrna is a place of great commerce, and is the residence of many European merchants. It is a depository for much of the riches of the Eastern and Western world. Its population is about 150,000.

35. Smyrna is frequently visited by pestilence and locusts. The locusts pay an annual visit; they arrive in vast numbers about the middle of March, and always in the night.

36. They arrange their progress very systematically; sending forth their scouts, who make their appearance a day or two before the grand army, and then return to give in their report; after which the whole body advances.

37. Early in October they take their departure in the same manner; so that no one can tell whence they come, or whither they go.

38. Smyrna was taken by Tamerlane, the Tartar, A.D. 1402, after one of the most memorable sieges recorded in history.—*Bion.*

39. Bi'on was a native; and it is generally supposed that this city also gave birth to Homer, about the year 900 B.C.; who, like our illustrious poet, Milton, is said to have been blind.

40. Damascus is a city of considerable extent, and contains a population of about 100,000. From the earliest ages the existence of Damascus has been recorded, and always as a great capital. It is named in the history of Abraham; it is celebrated for its wars with the kings of Israel, and has survived all the variety of desolating revolutions which have passed over this part of Asia.

41. It is now chiefly noted for its manufacture of damask silk, cotton, and soap. It long held a high reputation for its manufacture of sword-blades, but this it has now lost.

42. Paul was converted on his way to this place; and Saladin, emperor of the Turks, who was by birth a Curd, died here, A.D. 1192.

43. It is memorable that, before he expired, he ordered his winding-sheet to be carried as a standard through every street of the city; while a crier went before, and proclaimed with a loud voice, "This is all that remains to the mighty Saladin, the emperor of the East."

44. This city was taken by Tamerlane, when he conquered Syria in 1400, when he put all the inhabitants to the sword.

45. Antioch, long the capital of the Grecian kingdom of Syria, afterwards one of the principal cities of the Roman empire, and inferior only to Rome, Constantinople, and Alexandria, is now gone greatly into decay.

46. The vast extent and strength of its walls, flanked with numerous towers, proclaim its ancient opulence and power of defence, but the houses are now chiefly confined to one corner.

47. In the camp of Tamerlane, near this city, Bajazet died, at the age of 58, A.D. 1403.

48. This city was visited by Paul and Barnabas; and here the former made an eloquent oration to the Jews, which the Gentiles entreated might be repeated to them.

49. Bagdad, once the magnificent capital of the caliphs, is seated on the eastern bank of the Tigris, not far to the north of ancient Babylon.

50. By a late traveller it is represented as a large and populous city, extending along the banks of the river three miles, by about two miles in breadth. Its circumference is about six miles.

51. This city has been an object of continual contention between the Turks and the Persians. It was taken by Soliman the Magnificent, and retaken by Shah Abbas the Great.

52. It stood a memorable siege against Sultan Muraud, at the head of an army of 300,000 men, but being reduced to the utmost extremity, was at last obliged to surrender to that sanguinary tyrant, A.D. 1638, when the greater part of the inhabitants, about 80,000, were put to the sword.

53. It supplies all Asia Minor, Syria, and part of Europe with Indian commodities, which are imported at Bassora, brought in boats up the Tigris, and then transported by caravans to Tocat, Constantinople, Aleppo, Damascus, and the western parts of Persia.

54. Bassora, although situated in Arabia, is comprised in the Turkish empire. It stands on the estuary of the Tigris and Euphrates, and is a large, populous, and commercial city. Mr. Jackson represents it as more extensive than Bagdad, being about four miles in length, and three in breadth. This is a place of great commercial resort, being frequented by numerous vessels from Europe and India.

55. Prusa, sometimes written Brusa, occupies a romantic and beautiful situation at the foot of Mount Olympus. Prusa was the capital of ancient Bithyn'ia, and was, for a considerable time, the seat of the Ottoman emperors, and contains many of their tombs.

56. Oth'man, the founder of the Otto'man or Turkish empire, was buried at Prusa in 1326. Baja'zet, who was conquered by Tam'erlane, was interred here in 1403, and Amu'rath the Great in 1450. Prusa contains about 70,000 inhabitants.

57. Next to Prusa may be ranked Ango'ra, which is one of the finest cities in Asia Minor, and contains a population of about 50,000.

58. This city is situated nearly in the centre of Asia Minor, and is known as the ancient Ancy'ra, capital of Gala'tia.

59. The most curious product of this region is the Angora goat, the hair of which rivals silk in fineness, from which are manufactured our beautiful camlets.

60. Angora derives great celebrity from memorable events of a remote period. This city, like Sebas'te, was built by a colony of Gauls from the neighbourhood of Toulouse in Gaul, now France.

61. It is probable, however, that the Gauls only rebuilt

the city, as Ancyra existed in the time of Alexander the Great, almost a century before their arrival.

62. This band of Gallic adventurers set out from the southern provinces of France, on the bold enterprise of making conquests in the Levant. They were under several commanders, and having ravaged Greece, plundered the temple of Del'phos of its immense riches, and subdued the country as far as Byzan'tium, crossed the Hel'lespont, passed into Asia, and spread terror as far as Mount Taurus.

63. They settled in Io'nia and Eto'lia, seized Ancyra, and regarded it as the capital of the whole colony; the country in which they established themselves received the name of Galatia, and it was to their posterity that St. Paul addressed his Epistle.

64. The Gauls established themselves in this country B.C. 240; and they long maintained their independence, till they were subdued by the Romans in the reign of Augustus, (who died A.D. 14) when the different states of Galatia were united, and reduced to a Roman province.

65. Such was the commencement and termination of the Gallic empire in Asia Minor, which may be ranked among the most singular migrations in ancient times.

66. Angora being situated near the centre of Asia Minor, has been frequently exposed to the calamities of war, and has undergone various revolutions.

67. But it is particularly remarkable on account of the great battle which was fought there in 1402, between Bajazet, emperor of the Turks, and Timour, or Tamerlane, the celebrated khan of the Moguls; when the Turks were defeated with terrible slaughter, and Bajazet was made prisoner.

68. Tamerlane was born at Sebz, now called Kesh, a village about forty miles from Samarcand, the capital of Sogdia'na, in the year 1335.

69. Diarbe'kir and Mosul are also places of considerable extent and population. Both these towns are within the limits of ancient Assyria, and both are situated on the banks of the Tigris.

70. Near Diarbekir is a chapel, in which Job is said to lie buried. Mosul is seated nearly opposite to the site of ancient Nineveh.

71. From the white cotton manufactories of Mosul the term *mousseline*, in French, and *muslin*, in English, is derived. At a mosque near Mosul, it is said that the prophet Jonah lies.

72. Tocat is a large and populous city, and the capital of Natolia. Erzeroum is the capital of Armenia.

73. Tre'bisond, on the coast of the Black Sea, a Grecian colony, is famous for having been the first friendly asylum which Xenophon, with his 10,000 Greeks, had the good for-

tune to reach ; and which, in after times, was raised into a Greek principality.

74. Sardis, the once-splendid capital of the kingdom of Lydia, and the royal residence of Croesus, its wealthy monarch, as also Ephesus, once so much famed for the magnificent temple of its goddess, are now dwindled down to a state of insignificance.

75. Sardis is now called Sardo, and is situated about sixty miles east of Smyrna, on the road to Aleppo. It was in the time of Croesus very populous, but now contains only a few wretched huts.

76. This city was taken by Cyrus, B.C. 548, who at the same time made the famous Croesus his prisoner : thus terminated the Lydian monarchy.

77. It was afterwards one of the seven churches of Asia, celebrated in the book of the Revelation ; but was destroyed by an earthquake in the reign of Tiberius, emperor of Rome, who died A.D. 37.

78. Herodotus relates, that a Persian soldier, at the storming of Sardis, was preparing to kill Croesus, whose person he did not know, and who, giving up all as lost, neglected to defend his own life. A son of the unfortunate monarch, who had been dumb from his infancy, but afterwards enjoyed the faculty of speech, found utterance at that trying moment, and preserved his father by exclaiming, “*O, kill not Croesus !*”

79. When Solon went to the court of Croesus, that monarch received him with great respect, and endeavoured, from the exhibition of his wealth and magnificence, to extort from the philosopher the declaration of his being the happiest of men.

80. Solon very wisely observed, that no man could be esteemed happy, but he whose happiness God continues to the end of his life.

“ I pass, while hastening to the Roman page,
The Pontick king, and Croesus, whom the sage
Wisely forbade in fortune to confide,
Or take the name of happy, till he died.”

Gifford's Juvenal.

81. *Aesop*, the author of the Fables, was at the court of Croesus with Solon, and said to him by way of advice, “Solon, we must either not come near princes at all, or speak things that are agreeable to them.” “Say, rather,” replied Solon, “that we should either never come near them at all, or else speak such things as may be for their good.” (*Herodotus, Rollin, Plutarch.*)

82. The Turkish empire was first formed under Othman, at Bithynia, in Asia Minor. The Turks themselves were originally a tribe of Tartars, but by reason of the number of people whom they conquered, and with whom they became

incorporated, the modern Turks must be regarded as a mixture of many races.

83. That portion of Turkey which constitutes modern Greece, was acknowledged independent by the Porte, April 25th, 1830. The Turkish fleet was destroyed at the battle of Navarino, October 20th, 1827.

Questions for Examination.

1. What renders Asiatic Turkey particularly worthy of notice ?
- 2-5. What are the remarkable events that render this country one of the most interesting divisions of the world ?
6. Of whose ministry was it the scene ? and what great benefit has been derived from it to mankind ?
7. What ancient kingdoms were comprehended within it ?
8. What are its principal towns ?
9. What modern nations does it include ? For what are the Circassians chiefly noted ?
10. How is commerce carried on ? What are caravans ?
11. What are the most considerable of the caravans ?
12. How often do the caravans travel annually from Bagdad to Damascus ?
- 13-17. What are caravanseras ? What advantages do they afford ?
18. What is the geographical characteristic of the country ?
19. Its most remarkable mountains ?
23. What are its chief lakes ?
24. Its principal rivers ?
25. The nature of its soil ?
27. In what animals useful to man does it abound ?
28. What is Palestine ?
29. How distinguished ?
30. For what is its capital now remarkable ?
32. What are its principal cities ?
33. What is the modern capital of Syria ? Its population ? Commerce ?
34. For what is Smyrna noted ? Its population ?
35. By what is Smyrna frequently visited ? How often infested with locusts ? When do they arrive ?
36. What is the order of their progress ?
37. What the time of their departure ?
38. When and by whom was Smyrna taken ? What celebrated men were born here ?

40. What is the population of Damascus ? For what is its early history remarkable ?
41. For what is it now noted ?
42. Where was Paul converted ? Who died here ?
43. What memorable incident is related of Saladin ?
44. When and by whom was Damascus taken ? How treated ?
45. Compare the ancient with the modern state of Antioch.
47. What renowned Eastern monarch died near this place, and when ?
48. What apostles visited this city ? How received ?
49. Where is Bagdad situate ?
50. How described by a late traveller ?
51. What nations have contended for its possession ? By whom taken ? By whom retaken ?
52. For what siege is it famous ? What was the event of this siege ?
53. What is the nature and direction of its commerce ?

54. Describe Bassora.
55. Describe Prusa.
56. What celebrated men were interred here ? What its present population ?
57. Describe Angora.
59. What is the most curious product of this region ?
60. By whom is Angora supposed to have been built ?
62. What was the object of the Gauls who set out from the south of France ? What conquests did they make ?
63. To what country did they give their name ?
64. When did they establish themselves here ? By whom were they at length subdued ?
66. To what has the situation of Angora frequently exposed it ?
67. For what is it more particularly remarkable ?
68. Where was Tamerlane born ?

69. Describe the situation of Diarbekir and Mosul. 70. What curious tradition is connected with Diarbekir? 71. What is the origin of the term *muslin*? 72. What are the capitals of Natolia and Armenia? 73. Where is Trebisond? For what famous? 74. What is the present state of Sardis and Ephesus? 75. What is the principal event in the early history of Sardis? 76. For what distinguished in church history? What great calamity befell it? When? 82. When was the Turkish empire first formed? and by whom? What is the origin of the Turks? 83. When was Greece made an independent kingdom? When was fought the battle of Navarino?

ASIA MINOR.



KEY TO THE MAP.

1. Nicæa, now Nice, in Bithynia, noted for the Nicene Creed. The Nicene Creed is a summary of the Christian faith, which was composed by the first general council held there, in the palace of Constantine the Great. In this celebrated council, which assembled A. D. 325, the Arians were condemned. It was attended by 318 bishops from diverse parts, who both settled the doctrine of the Trinity, and the time for observing Easter.

2. Sinope, in Paphlagonia, the birth-place of Diogenes, the cynic.

3. Gordium was a city of Galatia, where was preserved the Gordian knot, which Alexander cut with his sword, instead of fairly untying it.—(Eumenia.)

4. Amasia, in Pontus, birth-place of Strabo, the geographer.

5. Troy, or Ilium, in Mysia, immortalized by Homer. The history of this celebrated city is at best very obscure, and its site has long been the subject of much learned controversy.

6. Abydos, famous for the loves of Hero and Leander, north of Troy.

7. Granicus, in Mysia, where Alexander defeated the Persians.

8. Smyrna, in Lydia, one of the reputed birth-places of Homer.

9. Teos, in Lydia, birth-place of Anacreon.

10. Sardis, capital of Lydia; residence of Croesus.

11. Mycale, in Lydia, near which the Grecians destroyed the Persian fleet, September 22nd, A. D. 479, the same day that Mardonius was slain at Platæa.

12. Ephesus, a celebrated city of Ionia. It is famous for the temple of Diana, reckoned one of the seven wonders of the world.

13. Miletus, capital of Ionia, now Caria, birth-place of Thales.

14. Halicarnassus, in Caria, birth-place of Dionysius Halicarnassensis.

15. Tarsus, in Cilicia, birth-place of St. Paul.

16. Issus, in Cilicia, where Alexander defeated the Persians under Darius.

CHAPTER XV.

9. Con'secrate, *v.* to make sacred; to appropriate to sacred uses; to dedicate inviolably to some particular purpose, or person.
18. Or'thodox, *a.* sound in opinion and doctrine; not heretical.
Doc'trine, *s.* the principle of any sect or master; that which is taught.
- A'rius, *s.* the founder of the sect called Arians, after his name. He was born at Lybiez, a small village of Bithynia, where Hannibal was buried. He became very popular
- at Alexandria, and was orthodox till he was disappointed of church preferment, when he broached his opinions against the divinity of the Word, which occasioned such disputes that the emperor called the council at Nice, in 325, as elsewhere mentioned. For a considerable time Arius was exceedingly popular; but of his early life little is known.
31. Pathet'ic, *a.* moving or affecting the passions.
62. Cy'nic, *a.* snarling; currish.

ASIA MINOR.

1. ASIA MINOR, now called Natolia, comprises a considerable portion of Asiatic Turkey.

2. It is bounded on the north by the Euxine or Black Sea, and on the west by the Egean Sea; on the south by the Mediterranean, and on the east by the Euphrates and Syria.

3. The interesting transactions connected with Asia Minor have been numerous and very important. Its chief river of note is the Meander, which empties itself into the Egean Sea, or Archipelago.

4. It includes the ancient monarchies of Troy, Lydia, and Phrygia; the maritime countries of Pamphylia, Lycia, Caria, and the Grecian colony of Ionia; and the kingdoms of Bithynia, Pontus, Cilicia, Cappadocia, and Galatia.

5. During a long period Asia Minor flourished under the successive dominion of the Greeks and Romans. In the sixteenth century it was subjugated by the Turks, and it still continues in their possession.

6. So much has this country suffered from earthquakes, the plague, and from the wretched conduct of its government, that nearly all those cities, for which it was so justly celebrated in ancient history, have long since been destroyed.

7. The ruins of Troy, Sardis, Magnesia, Pergamos, and numerous other places, once admired for their magnitude, and for the splendour of their edifices, now lie scattered upon the plains. Smyrna alone exists, and this chiefly in consequence of its advantageous situation for commerce.

8. So that, from the coast of the Dardanelles to the banks of the Euphrates, little else is to be seen but the fragments of ancient castles, and mouldering walls, and miserable peasants, dispersed in hamlets and mean villages, which are destitute both of ornament and defence.

9. The western parts of Asia Minor present many moun-

tains of classical celebrity, particularly Olympus and Ida. Olympus is very lofty, and is always covered with snow. Mount Ida is principally celebrated from its proximity to ancient Troy, being consecrated to perpetual veneration by Homer's immortal verse.

10. Troy has also received the name Ilium. It was built by Tros, king of that country, who called it Troy from his own name, and Ilium from that of his son. This city was seated near Mount Ida, and about five miles from the shore, opposite the isle of Tenedos.

11. The site of ancient Troy has long been a favourite scene of investigation; but after every search, no one has been able to discover any of its remains.

12. This city is rendered famous from its ten years' siege by the Greeks, who took it B.C. 1184, when they razed it level with the ground; which event has been made immortal by the poems of Homer and Virgil.

13. This war was undertaken by the Greeks to recover Helen, whom Paris, the son of Priam, king of Troy, had taken away from the house of Menelaus, king of Sparta. All Greece united to avenge the cause of Menelaus, and every prince furnished a certain number of ships and troops.

14. According to the most generally received computation, no less than 100,000 men were engaged in this celebrated expedition. Agamemnon was chosen general of all the forces.

15. When Troy was taken, and reduced to ashes, the only distinguished parties who made their escape, were Æneas and Antenor. The following illustration represents Æneas taking his father on his back from the flames of Troy. The youth at his side is his son Ascanius.



16. *Aeneas* fled to Italy, where he married Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, the king of the country; which is the subject of the celebrated poem of Virgil, called the *Aeneid*.

17. If the Trojans had any kings of their own, after their city was destroyed by the Greeks, they must have been very insignificant, as they are not named in any history.

18. Nice, a town of Asia Minor, and for a short time the capital of Bithynia, is rendered famous for two councils held here to defend the orthodox faith; the first under Constantine, in A. D. 325, and the last in the reign of Irene, in 787, the object of which was to suppress the doctrines of Arius.

19. It is also noted for being the first town taken by the Crusaders, in 1097. Hipparchus, the first who made a catalogue of the stars, was a native of Nice. He died B. C. 125. Dion Cassius, a Roman historian, was also born here. It is now named Isnik.

20. Sugut, a small town lying south-east of Nice, is famous as the residence of Othman, the founder of the Turkish empire; hence the names of Ottoman Porte, Ottoman Empire.

21. Tarsus, the capital of Cilicia, now Carumadia, is seated on the Cydnus, six miles from the sea. It was once the literary rival of Athens and Alexandria.

22. It was visited by Alexander the Great, who was nearly killed here by bathing in the Cydnus. Julius Cæsar spent some days here during his expedition against Parthaea; and here it was that Mark Anthony had his first interview with Cleopatra.

23. Since the fall of the Roman empire, this city has been so often taken and sacked, that scarcely a vestige of its former magnificence remains.

24. It is also famous as the birth-place of Saul, better known by the name of Paul, or rather St. Paul.

25. Ak Shehr, (pronounced Ak-sher,) anciently called Antioch, in Pisidia, of which it was the metropolis, is repeatedly mentioned in the Turkish annals as the place where Bajazet was confined by Tamerlane, and where he expired A. D. 1403.

26. Nicomedia, a celebrated town of Asia Minor, is now called Isnicmid. It is famous as the birth-place of Arrian, the historian, who is styled the second Xenophon; and Mahomet II., the terror of Christendom, died here, as he was preparing an expedition against Rhodes, A. D. 1481.

27. This city flourished chiefly under the Roman emperors, after Bithynia became a Roman province; but its brightest degree of splendour was in the time of Dioclesian, who, by his bounty, made it peculiarly magnificent, and it was then inferior only to Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch, in extent and population.

28. Ephesus, a very celebrated city of Asia Minor, was situated about 40 miles south of Smyrna. It has many ruins, showing its ancient splendour.

29. It was chiefly celebrated for the worship and "Temple of Diana;" which last was considered one of the wonders of the world. This temple was burnt by Erostratus in the night that Alexander the Great was born, B.C. 356.

30. St. Paul first visited Ephesus about A.D. 54. Here he resided three years, and wrought many miracles.

31. A church was afterwards gathered here; to which Paul addressed an epistle during his imprisonment at Rome, full of the most pathetic and sublime feelings.

32. Timothy was bishop of this place; and the apostle John is said to have passed the greater part of his life at Ephesus, and to have died here.

33. Mary, the mother of Jesus, was buried here; and Mary Magdalen died here.

34. Ephesus was called one of the "seven churches," whose character and doom are recorded in the Revelation; and so truly has this prediction been accomplished, that from a magnificent city, it does not now contain more than a few Turkish families, residing in miserable huts, and without a single Christian amongst them.

35. Ephesus has produced many celebrated men; as Agathias, a statuary; Scopus, an architect and sculptor; Pharrasius, a painter; and Heraclitus, who has been styled the weeping philosopher. Democritus, of Abdera, was the laughing philosopher.

"One pitied, one contemn'd the woful times;
One laugh'd at follies, and one wept o'er crimes."

Dryden's Juvenal.

36. Miletus, a once noted city of Ionia, in Asia Minor, is about sixty-four miles south from Smyrna. It is famous as the birth-place of Thales, one of the seven wise men of Greece; and of Anaximander, the companion and disciple of Thales; and the beautiful and accomplished Aspasia, who taught Socrates rhetoric, and became the wife of Pericles.

37. Thales was descended from Cadmus. He thought that happiness consisted in health, a moderate fortune, an elegant mind, and a love of knowledge.

38. Amasia, once a noted town of Asia Minor, was destroyed by an earthquake in 1794. Strabo, the geographer, Mithridates the Great, and Selim I. emperor of the Turks, were born here. Selim was the second son of Bajazet II., whom he dethroned and poisoned in 1512. He also deprived his eldest and youngest brothers of life. He subdued Egypt, and died A.D. 1520, at Cluri, in Thrace.

39. Philadelphia, a city of Lydia, is noted for having possessed one of the seven churches of Asia. It derived its

name from Attalus Philadelphus, its founder; and was about twenty-five miles from Sardis, and seventy from Smyrna. It has suffered greatly by earthquakes.

40. Pergamos was famous for its library of 200,000 volumes, which was afterwards taken to Egypt by Antony and Cleopatra. It was one of the seven churches mentioned by St. John (*Rev. ii. 12*). Galen, the celebrated physician, was born here.

41. Thymbra, a town of Lydia, near Sardis, celebrated for a battle fought there between Cyrus and Croesus, in which the latter was defeated. The troops of Cyrus amounted to 196,000 men, besides chariots, and those of Croesus to twice that number. It was also famous for a temple of Apollo, in which Achilles was slain by Paris.

42. Among its chief rivers were the Granicus and the Scamander, called Xanthus according to Homer, which receives the Simois near its mouth. In the neighbourhood of these rivers were fought many battles during the Trojan war.

43. Near the Granicus commenced the victories of Alexander the Great over the Persians; and here, at the head of 30,000 Macedonians, he defeated 600,000 of Darius' forces, B.C. 334. The picture below represents Alexander and his army crossing the Granicus.



44. Among its chief mountains is Ida, in the vicinity of Troy, in which is the source of many rivers, and particularly that of the Granicus, Scamander, Simois, Æsopus, &c.

45. Opposite Troy is the small island of Tenedos, where the Greeks concealed themselves to make the Trojans be-

lieve that they had raised the siege, and returned to Greece.

46. Lydia was the celebrated kingdom of Croesus, so noted for his riches; and who was conquered by Cyrus, B.C. 548. His court was an asylum of learning; and Æsop, among others, lived under his patronage.

47. Among the chief cities of Lydia were Sardis, the royal residence of Croesus; Clazo'menæ, now Vourla, the birth-place of Anaxagoras, and other illustrious men; and Colophon, one of the cities that contended for the birth of Homer.

48. Teos was the birth-place of Anacreon; Thyatira, now Akisar, was one of the seven churches mentioned in the Revelation of St. John. The seven churches were, Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamos, Philadelphia, Thyatira, Sardis, and Laodicea; the last was in Phrygia.

49. Mycale, a city and promontory of Asia Minor, opposite Samos, is celebrated for a battle between the Greeks and the Persians, B.C. 479, the same day that Mardonius was defeated at Platæa.

50. At the battle of Mycale, the Persian army consisted of about 100,000 men, who were upon an unsuccessful expedition of Xerxes into Greece. The Greeks gained a complete victory, together with an immense booty, among which were 70 chests of money.

51. Mysia, usually divided into *Major* and *Minor*, was bounded on the north by the Propontis; on the east by Bithynia; on the west by the Egean Sea; and on the south by Lydia.

52. Mysia Major included the divisions of Troas and *Æolia*; Mysia Minor lay along the Hellespont.

53. Its chief cities were Abydos, which has been rendered famous for the loves of Hero and Leander, and for a bridge of boats, which Xerxes built there across the Hellespont, when he invaded Greece.

54. Cyzicus was celebrated for the siege of Mithridates, which was raised by Lucullus.

55. To the north of Troy was Dardania, so called from its demolished capital, Dardanus, which gave to the Hellespont the name of the Dardanelles.

56. Caria, a small country of Asia Minor, has had different boundaries at different periods. It has been called Phœnicia, from a Phœnician colony having first settled here; afterwards it received the name of Caria from Car, one of its kings.

57. Its chief town was Halicarnassus, the birth-place of Herodotus, and other great men. It long maintained a siege against Alexander the Great, opposed by Memnon, a general of Darius.

58. Here was erected the celebrated mausoleum or tomb of Mauso'lus, king of Caria, which was built by his queen

Artemisia, and was esteemed one of the wonders of the world.

59. **Bithynia** was chiefly inhabited by the Thyni or Bithyni, whence the name was given to the country. These people were originally Thracians.

60. Among its chief cities and most remarkable places were **Prusa** (now **Bursa**), **Nicæa** or **Nice**, **Nicomedia**, and **Lybissa**. **Prusa** is noted as the seat of the Bithynian kings, **Nicomedia** as having been for some time the residence of Constantine, and most of his successors, and **Lybissa** for **Hannibal's** tomb.

61. **Paphlagonia** was situated between **Pontus** and **Bithynia**. In the northern point were the **Hene'ti**, who after the Trojan war migrated and settled in Italy, where they were called the **Veneti**.

62. Its most memorable city was **Sino'pe**, the birth-place of **Diogenes**, the cynic philosopher. This city, at one time, was the capital of **Pontus**, under **Mithridates** the Great, who for a long time successfully opposed the Roman arms.

63. **Pontus**, situated east of **Paphlagonia** and **Galatia**, extended along the coast of the **Euxine** or **Black Sea**. The principal inhabitants of **Pontus** were the **Chalybes**, called by **Strabo** the **Chaldei**.

64. Among its chief cities and remarkable places were **Amasia**, already mentioned, and **Zela**, where **Cæsar** defeated **Phar'naces**, the son of **Mithridates**. The account of this victory was transmitted to the senate in those famous words, *Veni, vidi, vici*: "I came, I saw, I conquered." It now became a Roman province.

65. **Phrygia**, including **Lycaonia**, has **Bithynia** and **Galatia** on its north, and **Lydia** on the west.

66. Its chief cities were **Laodicea**, now **Ladik**; and **Iconium**, mentioned in the Acts of the Apostles, now **Koniech**.

67. **Galatia**, situated to the south-east of **Bithynia**, was so named from a colony of **Gauls**, who settled here under **Brennus**, B.C. 270, and mixing with the Grecian colonies, gave to this country the name of **Gallo-Græcia**, or **Galatia**. The Gauls continued to use the Gallic language for 600 years after their emigration.

68. Its most noted place was **Gordium**, on the confines of **Phrygia**, where **Alexander** the Great cut the **Gordian knot**. It was an ancient tradition, that the person who untied the Gordian knot should possess the empire of Asia.

69. **Ancyra**, now **Angora**, was noted for its beautiful shawls and hosiery, made of goats' hair; and for the defeat of **Bajazet** by **Tamerlane** the Great, A.D. 1402.

70. **Cappadocia** was bounded on the north by **Pontus**, on the east by the **Euphrates**, and on the west by **Phrygia**. In **Phrygia** was the **Plain of Ipsus**, where the great battle between Alexander's generals was fought.

71. Lycia was bounded on the north by Phrygia, and on the south by the Mediterranean Sea. Lycia received its name from Lycus, son of Pandion, king of Athens, who settled here.

72. The Lycians were greatly celebrated for their piety and justice, and also for their great dexterity in the management of the bow. They were conquered by Crœsus, king of Lydia, and afterwards by Cyrus.

73. Among its chief places was Glaucus, whose inhabitants were famed for magic. This city received its name from Glaucus, the Lycian hero mentioned in Homer.

74. Pamphylia and Pisidia were east of Caria; the former was on the coast, the latter inland; but their precise limits are unknown.

75. Isauria was situated to the north-east of Pisidia. Its inhabitants were very rapacious. They were conquered in the Mithridatic war by Servilius, who thence took the surname of Isauricus.

76. Cilicia was bounded on the west by Pamphylia and Pisidia; on the south by the Mediterranean; on the east by Syria; and on the north by Cappadocia.

77. Its chief towns and places were Selinus, where the emperor Trajan died—now called Selene; Cocyras, where was the cave in which Typhon, the monstrous Titan, dwelt; and Anchiale, where was the sepulchre of Sardanapalus, the king of Assyria, who burnt himself and his palace, B.C. 820.

78. Issus, a town on the confines of Syria, has been rendered famous by a battle fought on a small plain near it, between Alexander the Great and the Persians under Darius, B.C. 333.

79. In this battle the Persian army, according to Justin, consisted of 400,000 foot, and 100,000 horse; 61,000 of the former, and 10,000 of the latter, were left dead on the field, and 10,000 taken prisoners.

80. According to Diodorus Siculus, the Persians are said to have lost 100,000 foot and 10,000 horse; and the Macedonians only 300 foot and 150 horse. This spot is also famous for the defeat of Niger, who had been proclaimed emperor of Rome, after the death of Pertinax, by his more fortunate rival Sev'rus, who had also been invested with the imperial purple, A.D. 193.

81. Pontus is remarkable for having been the seat of the ancient Amazons, who dwelt near the river Thermo'don, on the borders of the Euxine, now the Black Sea.

82. These extraordinary females were constantly employed in wars and athletic exercises. Their daughters were educated in the labours of the field, in order that they might throw the javelin with greater force.

83. Themys'cyra was the capital of their towns. By some

authors they are said to have built the cities of Smyrna, Thyatira, Magnesia, and Ephesus.

84. Diodorus mentions a nation of Amazons in Africa more ancient than those in Asia; many of the actions of the former have been confounded with those of the latter: some authors, however, among whom is Strabo, deny their existence altogether.

Questions for Examination.

1. What is the present name of Asia Minor? What does it comprise? 2. How is it bounded? 3. Have there been any important transactions connected with Asia Minor? What is the name of its chief river? Where does it empty itself? 4. What does it include? 5. Under whose dominion did it flourish? In whose possession is it now? 6. To what visitation has it been subjected? 7. What cities are those whose ruins lie scattered over the plains of Asia Minor? Give the name of the principal city now remaining. 8. What is chiefly to be seen between the coast of the Dardanelles and the banks of the Euphrates? 9. Name the two celebrated mountains on the western parts of Asia Minor. For what is Mount Ida noted?

10. Has any other name been given to Troy? By whom was it built? Where was it seated? 11. Has the site of ancient Troy ever been discovered? 12. By what is Troy rendered famous? 13. By whom was the war undertaken? From what cause? 14. How many men are supposed to have been engaged in this most celebrated expedition? Who was their general? 15. Who made their escape from Troy upon the taking of the city? 16. Whither did Æneas fly? Whom did he marry? 17. What remark have you to make respecting their subsequent kings? 18. Where was the capital? For what is it celebrated? When were these councils held? What was the object of the last council? 19. For what besides is it noted? Who was Hipparchus? Give its present name.

21. What is Taurus the capital of? To what cities was it a rival in literature? 22. Who visited it? Who besides spent some time in it? Whom did Mark Anthony first meet here? 23. What has been its fate since the fall of the Romans? Who was born here? 24. Who attempted to flee to Tarshish instead of going to Nineveh? What became of him? Who was Jonah? 25. What have you to remark of Ak Shehr, the capital of Pisidia? 26. Give the present name of Nicomedia. For what is it famous? 27. When did this city flourish? Who contributed most to its magnificence? To what cities only was it then inferior? 28. Where was Ephesus situated? What marks of its former splendour does it now possess? 29. For what was it chiefly celebrated? By whom was this temple burnt? 30. When did Saint Paul first visit Ephesus? How long did he reside here? 31. Whence did Paul address an epistle to the church of Ephesus? 32. Who was bishop of that church? Who else is said to have spent the greater part of his time there? 33. Who was buried here? 34. Where is the character and doom of this church recorded? Was the prediction concerning it fulfilled? 35. What celebrated characters were produced at Ephesus? What was Herac-litus styled? Who was the laughing philosopher? Repeat the verse.

36. What was Miletus famous for? Where situated? Who was born here? 38. How and when was Amasia destroyed? What

great characters were born at Amasia ? Who was Selim ? What acts of cruelty did he perpetrate ? What country did he subdue ? When did he die ? 39. Where was Philadelphia situated ? For what is it noted ? Whence did it derive its name ? Where seated ? From what has it suffered ? 40. For what was Pergamos famous ? Whether was its library afterwards taken ? Who was born there ? 41. Where was Thymbra ? What battle was fought there ? What the amount of the forces engaged ? What temple was erected there ? 42. Which are considered its principal rivers ? 43. Where did the victories of Alexander commence ? Whom did he defeat ? 44. What mountain is the source of many rivers ? Name some of the principal of them. 45. What island is opposite Troy ?

46. Who was king of Lydia ? Who lived under his patronage ? 47. Which were the chief cities of Lydia ? Who was born at Sourla ? What city contended for the honour of having given birth to Homer ? 48. Who was born at Teos ? Name the seven churches mentioned in the Revelation of St. John. 49. What battle was fought at Mycale ? When did it occur ? 50. What was the number of the Persian army ? Who gained the victory ? 51. How is Mysia usually divided ? How bounded ? 52. What does Mysia Major include ? 53. For what is the city of Abydos celebrated ? 54. What siege took place at Cyzicus ? 55. Whence did Dardania derive its name ? 56. What is the present name of Caria ? Whence is that name derived ? 57. What was its chief town ? Who was born there ? Against whom did it maintain a siege ? 58. What monument was erected there ? 59. By whom was Bithynia inhabited ? 60. Name some of the chief cities and other remarkable places of Bithynia. Where was Hannibal's tomb ?

61. Where was Paphlagonia situated ? Who inhabited the northern part ? 62. What renders Sinope its most remarkable city ? Of what was it the capital ? 63. Where was Pontus situated ? Who were the principal inhabitants ? 64. Whom did Cæsar defeat at Zela ? In what words was the account of this victory transmitted to the senate ? 65. How is Phrygia bounded ? 66. Which were its chief cities ? 67. Whence did Galatia derive its name ? When did they settle there ? How long did the Gauls continue to use the Gothic language ? 68. Which was the most noted place ? What act did Alexander perform here ? What tradition existed respecting the Gordian knot ?

69. For what was Ancyra long noted ? 70. How was Cappadocia bounded ? Where was the battle between Alexander's generals fought ? 71. How is Lycia bounded ? Whence did it receive its name ? 72. Why were the Licians celebrated ? By whom were they conquered ? 73. For what were the inhabitants of Glaucus famed ? From whom did this city receive its name ? 74. How were Pamphylia and Pisidia situated ? 75. Where was Isauria situated ? What was the character of the inhabitants ? By whom were they conquered ? 76. How is Cilicia bounded ? 77. Where did the emperor Trajan die ? Give the names of some of the other principal towns, and the particulars connected with them. 78. Where was Issus situated ? For what is it remarkable ? 79. How many Persians were slain ? 80. What account does Diodorus Siculus give of the loss they sustained ? 81. Where did the Amazons dwell ? 82. What were their chief characteristics ? 83. What cities are they said to have founded ? 84. Was any other Amazonian nation said to have once existed ? What is Strabo's opinion on this subject ?



The Macedonian Empire extended from the Deserts of Lybia in Africa to the Ganges, and from Scythia to the Indian Ocean. It comprised Greece in Europe; Egypt and Lybia in Africa; Palestine, Phoenicia, Syria and Asia Minor, Mesopotamia, Armenia, now Asiatic Turkey; Assyria, Babylon, Media, Persia, and Bactria.

Chaldea, Persia, Media, Parthia, Hyrcania, Drangiana, Arachosia, Bactriana, Aria, and the country of the Paropamisus, Scythia, India,* Carmania, and Gedrosia.

KEY TO THE MAP.

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. Troy. | 8. Issus. | 14. Damascus. | 20. Seleucia. |
| 2. Gordium. | 9. Antioch. | 15. Jerusalem. | 21. Babylon. |
| 3. Granicus. | 10. Palmyra. | 16. Gaza. | 22. Susa. |
| 4. Sardis. | 11. Laodicea. | 17. Alexandria. | 23. Ecbatana. |
| 5. Ephesus. | 12. Sidon. | 18. Nineveh. | 24. Persepolis. |
| 6. Miletus. | 13. Tyre. | 19. Arbela. | 25. Maracanda. |
| 7. Tarsus. | | | |

CHAPTER XVI.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Prom'ontory, <i>s.</i> high land jutting into the sea. | 24. Nup'tials, <i>s.</i> marriage. |
| 14. Survi've, <i>v.</i> to live after; to outlive. | 25. Repudia'tion, <i>s.</i> casting away. |
| 17. Generalis'imō, <i>s.</i> the supreme com- mander. | 33. An'archy, <i>s.</i> disorder; confusion. |
| 18. Expedi'tion, <i>s.</i> haste; a march. | 37. Anni'hilate, <i>v.</i> to reduce to nothing. |
| | 39. Yoke, <i>s.</i> bondage; slavery. |
| | 40. Achi'eve, <i>v.</i> to perform; to finish. |

GREECE AND THE MACEDONIAN EMPIRE.

1. THE early history of Greece is lost in obscurity; nor have we any certain account of it till about B.C. 1556, when Cecrops took thither a colony from Egypt; sixty-three years after, Cadmus led a colony from Phœnicia, and introduced the letters of the alphabet, and civilization, among the first rude inhabitants, who are supposed to have been the Pelasgi and Hellenes.

2. Greece is situated in the south-eastern part of Europe, and is surrounded on three sides by the Adriat'ic, Io'nian, and *Æ*ge'an seas, being arms of the Mediterranean; and bounded on the north and north-east by Moesia and Thrace.

3. In its largest sense it comprised the Peloponne'sus, Greece Proper or Hellas, Epi'rūs, Thessa'lia, and Macedo'nia; extending about 400 miles from north to south, and 200 from east to west.

4. In Peloponnesus were the kingdoms of Sicyon, Argos, Corinth, Messenia, Achaia, Arcadia, and Laconia, of which Lacdæ'non or Spar'ta was the metropolis.

5. In Greece Proper were those of Attica, with its chief cities Athens and Eleusis, celebrated for the Eleusinian mysteries; Megaris, its chief city Mega'ra; Boeotia, its capital Thebes; Locris, its chief town Amphissa; Doris, whose capital was of the same name; Phocis, its capital the celebrated city Delphi; *Æ*tolia, chief city *Æ*nias; Locris-Ozolæa, capital Naupactus.

6. In Epirus were Molossis, where stood the sacred groves

* Ancient India is not to be understood to mean the whole of Hindostan; only a part of it. In the East it is known by the latter name, which signifies the country of the Hindoos, or swarthy people, *hindoo* meaning *swarthy* or *black*.

of Dodo'na; the Cassiopœ'i, Dryopes, Amphi'lochi, Cha'-ones, Ambraci'i, Threspotii, and Acarna'nia, where was seated the famous promontory of Actium, celebrated for the victory gained by Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra.

7. In Macedonia were Pæonia, Æmathia, Mygdonia, Pa-rraxis; Pieria, famous for its having been the region of the Muses; Amphaxitis, where stood Thessaloni'ca and Stagi'-ra; Edonia and Chalcid'ice.

8. In Thessaly were the countries of Thessaliotis, Pelas-giotis, Phthiotis, and Istiæotis.

9. All these countries were, at one time or another, sev-erally governed by kings of their own, whose names we find mentioned in the histories of the more considerable king-doms of Sicyon, Argos, and Mycene; Attica, Boëtia, Ar-cadia, Thessaly, Corinth, and Sparta; of the Argonautic expedition, and of the Trojan war.

10. Most of the different states of Greece were said to have been founded a few centuries after the Deluge, but their origin and extent are unknown. We, however, learn that at the siege of Troy, which happened about twelve hundred years before Christ, there were many independent kingdoms in Greece, which appear to have been founded some ages before that period: but our chief object here is, to ascertain and describe it in the height of its power and grandeur.

11. Greece has been celebrated, both in ancient and modern times, for the mildness of its climate and the fertility of its soil, and still more for the fame of its inhabitants.

12. The battles of Marathon, Thermopylæ, Salamis, and Platæa, are glorious proofs of their heroism and love of liberty; so also the names of Homer, Demosthenes, So-crates, Herodotus, Euripides, Phidias, and Apelles, are illustrious examples of their genius and learning.

13. Of the Grecian capitals, Athens, Sparta, Corinth, Argos, and Thebes were the most distinguished in arts, as well as in arms.

14. Among the most important events in the history of Greece were the Argonautic expedition and the Trojan war, which had a very powerful influence on the national character of the Greeks; whose language has in some degree sur-vived the ravages of time, and can still boast of retaining a portion of its native purity and dignity.

15. Of all the wars carried on among the antients, that of Troy was the most famous, whether we regard the celebrity of the chiefs engaged on both sides, or the deeds of arms which it called forth.

16. According to Homer and Virgil, the siege of Troy was undertaken by the Greeks to recover Helen, the wife of Menela'us king of Sparta, whom Paris, son of Priam king of Troy, had carried away.

17. All Greece united to avenge the cause of Menelaus ; every prince furnished a number of ships and soldiers—upwards of 100,000 men, and chose Agamemnon generalissimo of their forces ; and after a siege of ten years, Troy was taken and burnt to the ground, B. C. 1184. Among the most distinguished of the Trojan chiefs was Hector, who is represented in the following picture as parting from his wife, Andromache, when about to join his companions in arms on the field of battle.



18. The Argonautic expedition to Colchis, B. C. 1263, is considered by many to have been less a military than a commercial enterprise : a principal object appears to have been to open an intercourse with the countries bordering on the Euxine Sea, by establishing settlements on its shores ; but by many authors this story is considered fabulous.

19. Not long after the siege of Troy, the western shores of Asia Minor, comprising Æolia, Ionia, and Caria, were successively peopled with Grecian colonies ; as were also, at a later period, the south-eastern parts of Italy, which, in consequence, received the name of *Magna Græcia*.

20. Greece, powerful while its states were united for the general interest only, and its arms directed against the common enemy—the Persians, long rivalled the greatest nations of antiquity ; but what the Persians could not attain by open force they effected by corrupting the Greeks, whom they set at variance with each other, and thus endeavoured to secure their own country from invasion.

21. These disputes between the different states soon brought about the Peloponnesian war, which so undermined the strength of the Greeks, that it rendered them an easy prey to Philip ; who about this period began to reign in

Macedon, and whose power increased so rapidly, that he became master of nearly all Greece.

22. Among the most distinguished of his victories was that of *Chærone'a*, by which the independence of Greece was destroyed.

23. Philip having conquered Greece, and being unable to find new enemies in Europe, meditated fresh conquests in Asia : hence he was chosen general of the Greeks against the Persians, and called on to revenge the injuries Greece had suffered from the invasions of Darius and Xerxes.

24. But in the midst of his warlike preparations he was stabbed by Pausanias, as he entered the theatre at the celebration of the nuptials of his daughter Cleopatra.

25. The repudiation of his wife Olympias, and the resentment of Alexander, have led many to believe that the causes of his downfall existed in his own family. He was murdered in the forty-seventh year of his age, and twenty-fourth of his reign, B. C. 336.

26. Philip was succeeded by his son Alexander the Great, who soon after commenced his invasion of Persia. Alexander entered Asia 334 years before the birth of our Saviour ; defeated the Persians at the battle of the Granicus, and effected the conquest of Asia Minor.

27. He again encountered Darius at the battle of Issus, when the wife and family of that monarch became his prisoners.

28. The conquest of Syria, Tyre, and Egypt soon followed ; and Alexander, not satisfied with his success, visited the temple of Jupiter Ammon, in Lybia, in order to be declared son of that deity.

29. On his return from this expedition, he again followed and encountered Darius ; and the celebrated battle which was fought near Arbe'la, gave Alexander entire possession of the Persian dominions.

30. After pursuing Darius, Alexander conquered several kingdoms beyond the Caspian Sea ; conducted his troops across the Indus, and entered India, where he was powerfully opposed by Perus, one of the monarchs of that country, who was at length subdued.

31. The conqueror then marched to the Ganges, where his troops refusing to proceed, he was obliged to return ; when, following the course of the Indus, he arrived at the ocean and embarked some of his troops, who were conducted to the Persian Gulf by Near'chus.

32. Soon after this, Alexander returned to Babylon, where his brilliant career was terminated by an untimely death, in the flower of his age, B. C. 323. His great empire, so rapidly raised, fell with its founder.

33. Upon the death of Alexander, his dominions remained long in a state of anarchy ; when a partition of them was

made between four of his generals: Ptol'emy took possession of Egypt; Lysim'achus of Thrace; Cassan'der had Macedon; and to Seleu'cus was allotted Syria.

34. Egypt remained in the possession of the family of Ptolemy nearly 300 years; when, at the death of Cleopatra, it became a Roman province.

35. The kingdom of Thrace was dismembered after the death of Lysimachus. The kings of Macedon continued to maintain their power till subdued by the Romans.

36. The family of Seleucus did not regularly succeed to the throne of Syria; when kings of that country they abused their power, particularly over the Jews. They treated the latter so tyrannically, that they were induced to revolt under the Mac'cabees, who at last set up an independent kingdom.

37. Several changes took place, and new kingdoms arose, till the immense power of the Romans annihilated that of almost every other nation of the then known world.

38. At the division of the Roman empire, A. D. 364, Greece fell to the share of the emperors of the East; during the fourth and fifth centuries it was overrun by the Goths and Huns, and several centuries later by the Saracens and the Turks.

39. Mahomet II., by the capture of Constantinople, A. D. 1453, made himself master of the whole of Greece, which continued nearly four centuries under the Turkish yoke.

40. After remaining enslaved ever since the battle of Pydna, B. C. 168, a period of 2,000 years, Greece has at last burst her chains, and nobly achieved her deliverance; and we hope is once more destined to rank among the independent nations of Europe.

41. Pydna, a town of Macedonia, was originally called Citron. The famous battle of Pydna was fought between the Romans under Paulus Æmilius, and the Macedonians under king Perseus, in which the latter were conquered, and Macedonia was soon after reduced to a Roman province.

42. It was in this city that Cassander put to death Olympias, the mother of Alexander the Great, his wife Roxana, and his son Alexander.

Questions for Examination.

1. What is the state of the early history of Greece? When did it emerge from obscurity? Who took thither a colony from Egypt? from Phœnicia? What did Cadmus introduce? Who were the first inhabitants supposed to have been?
2. Where is Greece situated? How surrounded? How bounded on the north and northeast?
3. What in its largest extent did it comprehend?
4. What kingdoms were situated in Peloponnesus?
5. In Greece Proper? What was the chief city of Attica? Megaris? Boeotia? Locris? Doris? Phocis? Ætolia? Locris-Ozolæa?

6. What was comprehended in Epirus? Where was the sacred grove of Dodona? Where was the promontory of Actium? For what is Actium celebrated? 7. What provinces were situated in Macedonia? For what is Pieria famous? 8. What provinces were in Thessaly? 9. How have these countries been severally governed? Where are their names mentioned? 10. When were the major portion of the states of Greece founded? What do we learn in connexion with the siege of Troy? When did it happen?

11. For what has Greece been celebrated? Chiefly for what? 12. What proofs have you of their heroism? What examples of their genius and learning? 13. Which of their capitals were most distinguished? 14. Which are among the most important events of Greece? What remark have you to make respecting their language? 15. Which was the most famous of the wars carried on by the antients? 16. Why was the siege of Troy undertaken? 17. How was it conducted? Who was their leader? How long did the siege last? When destroyed? 18. What remark have you to make concerning the Argonautic expedition? State its apparent object. 19. By whom were the western shores of Æolia, Ionia, and Caria peopled? What other country was peopled by them? What name was given to it? 20. What rendered Greece powerful? How did the Persians corrupt the Greeks? For what object? 21. What war arose from these disputes? Who finally subdued them, and obtained the mastery over the greater part of Greece? 22. Which was the most distinguished of his victories?

23. What new design did Philip form? Against whom was he chosen general? Whose injuries was he called upon to revenge? 24. By whom was he stabbed? On what occasion? 25. In whom do we discover the causes of his downfall? When was he murdered? 26. Who succeeded him? When did Alexander enter Asia? At what battle did he defeat the Persians? What followed? 27. Where did Alexander again encounter Darius? Who became his prisoners? 28. What conquests followed? Why did he visit the temple of Jupiter Ammon? 29. Where did he again encounter Darius? Did he acquire possession of Persia? 30. What kingdoms did he next conquer? Who opposed him on his entering India? 31. To what river did he march? How did he find his way to the ocean? Who conveyed him to the Persian Gulf? 32. To what city did he return? When did he die?

33. What followed upon the death of Alexander? Who took possession of Egypt? of Thrace? Macedon? Syria? 34. How long did Egypt remain in the family of Ptolemy? What did it become on the death of Cleopatra? 35. When was the kingdom of Thrace dismembered? How long did the kings of Macedon maintain their power? 36. What was the conduct of the Syrian kings who succeeded Seleucus? Whom did they persecute? What ensued? 37. What was the general condition of these states?

38. When was the Roman empire divided? Who had the Grecian states? When was Greece overrun? 39. Who made himself master of the whole of Greece? How long did it remain under the Turkish yoke? 40. How long was Greece enslaved? What is her present condition? What may we hope?

41. When did Macedonia become a Roman province? By whom was it subdued? 42. What persons of distinction were put to death at the city of Pydna?



KEY TO THE MAP.

- | KEY TO THE MAP. | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--|--|
| V. Vindelicia. | M 1. Macedonia. | P 2. Phrygia. | L. Lycia. | | |
| R. Rhetia. | I. Illyria. | P 3. Pontus. | C 2. Caria. | | |
| N. Noricum. | D 1. Dalmatia. | C. Cappadocia. | L 1. Lydia or Mœonia. | | |
| P. Pannonia. | M 2. Mysia. | G. Galatia. | M 3. Mesopotamia. | | |
| D. Dacia. | B. Bithynia. | C 1. Cilicia. | P 5. Phœnicia. | | |
| M. Moesia. | P 1. Paphlagonia. | P 4. Pisidia. | P 6. Palestine. | | |
| T. Thracia. | | | | | |

TOWNS.

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Cologne. | 17. Milan. | 33. Rhegium. | 49. Ephesus. |
| 2. Mayence. | 18. Verona. | 34. Syracuse. | 50. Miletus. |
| 3. Alise. | 19. Mantua. | 35. Panormus. | 51. Sinope. |
| 4. Lyons. | 20. Patavium. | 36. Agrigentum. | 52. Edessa. |
| 5. Bordeaux. | 21. Venice. | 37. Corinth. | 53. Nisibis. |
| 6. Toulouse. | 22. Ravenna. | 38. Athens. | 54. Sidon. |
| 7. Narbonne. | 23. Florence. | 39. Adrianople. | 55. Tyre. |
| 8. Nimes. | 24. Leghorn. | 40. Constantinople. | 56. Damascus. |
| 9. Marseilles. | 25. Lacus Trasimenus. | 41. Nicomedia. | 57. Jerusalem. |
| 10. Gadea. | 26. Sulmo. | 42. Prusa. | 58. Alexandria. |
| 11. Carthago Novo. | 27. Rome. | 43. Troy. | 59. Cyrene. |
| 12. Segantum. | 28. Lavinium. | 44. Cyzicus. | 60. Carthage. |
| 13. Geneva. | 29. Capua. | 45. Pergamos. | 61. Utica. |
| 14. Vienna. | 30. Canne. | 46. Smyrna. | 62. Cirta. |
| 15. Comum. | 31. Tarentum. | 47. Sardis. | 63. Cesarea. |
| 16. Turin. | 32. Crotona. | 48. Laodicea. | 64. Tingis. |

CHAPTER XVII.

| | |
|--|--|
| 1. Conspic'uous, <i>a.</i> eminent. | 15. Revolu'tion, <i>s.</i> turn or great change in a government. |
| 4. Celeb'rity, <i>s.</i> praise; distinction. | 16. Lice'ntious, <i>a.</i> unrestrained by law or morality. |
| 10. Rhet'oric, <i>s.</i> the science of oratory. | 24. Accel'erate, <i>v.</i> to hasten. |
| 12. Inves'tigation, <i>s.</i> a searching out. | 25. Inunda'tion, <i>s.</i> overflowing. |
| Dissemina'tion, <i>s.</i> the act of spreading all ways. | 26. Prow'ess, <i>s.</i> bravery. |
| 15. Subver'sion, <i>s.</i> overthrowing from the foundation. | 30. Ves'tiges, <i>s.</i> footsteps; traces. |

ROME.

1. AMONG the various nations of the world, either in ancient or modern times, none deserves our attention more than the Roman, whose empire presents the most conspicuous objects of power, grandeur, and magnificence in the whole annals of mankind.

2. The early history of Rome, like that of Greece, is involved in great obscurity; there is, however, reason to believe, that Italy was inhabited, at a remote period, by various tribes, of whom the two most distinguished were the Etru'rians and the Latins: it is from the latter that the Roman language received the name of Latin.

3. The Etrurians are supposed to have migrated from Lydia, in Asia Minor, long before the Roman name was known; and the Latins rose into importance when Romulus had founded the city of Rome.

4. Rome, from very small beginnings, became the "Mistress of the World," rivalling, both in extent and splendour, the greatest cities of antiquity, and still contains many interesting monuments of its former celebrity.

5. A few causes contributed to advance the Romans to universal dominion; they possessed an ambition of being the first power in the world: this ambition nothing could check; and they seized every opportunity to gratify it. After their conquest of Greece, and the destruction of Carthage, they rose rapidly to universal power, and became the governors of the world.

6. The Romans paid an exact and ready obedience to the laws, and there is no nation so powerful as that wherein the laws are obeyed.

7. The ancient Romans were, for a long time, a rustic and ignorant people, unacquainted with those improvements which promote the conveniences and comforts of life.

8. The city of Rome was not paved until 575 years after it was founded. Rome was founded in 753 B. C. The Romans, for more than 500 years, had no means by which they could measure time, when Scipio Nasica invented a water-clock, by which they counted the hours.

9. Their first historians were Ennius and Naevius, who wrote in verse, which we may readily suppose was barbarous and uninteresting.

10. The Romans became enlightened by their intercourse with the Greeks; at the same time they became acquainted with their philosophers. Polybius showed them how to write history. Cato the elder, called also the Censor, opposed all improvement in learning, and hence got a law enacted, by which philosophers and teachers of rhetoric were banished from Rome.

11. But in this he was certainly mistaken, for learning is as beneficial to a nation as to individuals; nor can men be called wise and happy as long as they are ignorant. The writings of Cicero, Virgil, and Horace; of Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus, do more honour to the Roman name than all the wars and conquests of ancient Rome.

12. Learning, like religion, may be abused; but learning, when directed to its proper end, namely, the investigation of truth, and dissemination of useful knowledge, is one of the greatest blessings of human life.

13. The difference between a man of learning and the ignorant man, may be said to be as great as that between a person endowed with reason and an idiot.

14. Rome possessed a very extensive dominion in Europe, Asia, and Africa, but the riches of all her provinces centred in that city: her great wealth produced luxury, and the most dissipated manners; these extinguished that love of liberty which actuated her citizens in the purer times of her power.

15. The subversion of the Roman empire by the rude barbarians of the North; the glory and strength of ancient Rome laid in the dust; the monuments of her greatness and learning destroyed,—claim our particular attention, as events unparalleled in the revolutions of empires: causes, however, existed to produce effects so surprising.

16. It is impossible to enslave a virtuous nation. Rome did not lose her liberty till she had lost her virtue. The Romans having subjugated all the nations in the West, carried their arms into the East; there they acquired the vices of the luxurious and effeminate Asiatics.

17. These vices they imported into Rome, which so changed their manners, that from being virtuous they became licentious, vicious, and enslaved to luxury and effeminity, which occasioned their downfall.

18. The Roman empire comprised, in the height of its glory, the following countries. In EUROPE, Italia, Hispania, Gallia, Illyria, Thracia, Macedonia, and Greece:

19. In ASIA they possessed all the kingdoms of Asia Minor, Syria, and Judea, or, as it was afterwards denominated, Palestine or the Holy Land; and

20. In AFRICA they possessed Egypt, Lybia, Africa Propria, and Numidia, which was the greater part of the then known world.

21. Italia was divided into the provinces of Gallia Cisalpina, Liguria, Etruria, Campania, Apulia, and Lucania. Hispania contained three provinces; namely, Baetica, Lusitania, and Terraconensis.

22. Gallia was divided into Narbonensis, Aquitanica, Belgica, Lugdinensis, and part of Germania.

23. Illyria contained the provinces of Rhœtia, Noricum, Pannonia, and Dalmatia.

24. The chief cause of the decline and downfall of the Roman empire was doubtless the corruption of its inhabitants; this event, however, may be said to have been accelerated by Constantine, the first Christian emperor, having removed the seat of empire from Rome to Byzantium, now Constantinople.

25. However that may be, it was in the time of Honori-us, the son of Theodo'sius, who began his reign in the West A. D. 395, that the barbarians broke, like an inundation, into Italy.

26. Issuing from the forests of the North, they, with wonderful rapidity, overspread the fertile southern provinces of Europe. Every thing gave way to their prowess; the most beautiful countries, and populous cities were pillaged, burnt, and laid waste.

27. The tyrants and scourges of the human race fell beneath their sword; the strength and magnificence of the Roman empire, the work and wonder of ages, was over-turned, and out of its ashes arose the modern nations of Europe.

28. Revenge, and a thirst of conquest, animated those savage warriors: before them resistance gave way; all was plundered, desolated, and tinged with blood.

29. These emigrations, which were under Radagesus with his Goths; Alaric with his Visigoths; Attila with his Huns; Genseric with his Vandals; Odoacer with his Heruli; and Theodoric with his Ostrogoths, lasted a whole century, and succeeded one another with amazing rapidity.

30. The North at last ceased to pour out its myriads,

but the possessions of the ancient Romans were no more. Scarcely any vestiges of their laws, manners, learning, or arts remain.

31. The Visigoths possessed themselves of Spain ; the Franks of Gaul ; the Saxons of Britain ; the Huns of Pannonia ; the Ostrogoths of Italy.

32. From this period, new forms of government, new laws, languages, manners, customs, and dresses were introduced into Europe. Countries and their inhabitants received new names, and the face of Europe was completely changed.

33. Thus we have shown the causes that led to the downfall of the Roman empire, after it had continued, in more or less splendour, twelve hundred years.

34. Europe may now be considered as one immense family, divided into many branches, but all sprung from the same root. The ancestors of the English, French, Spaniards, Italians, and Germans, were Goths, Visigoths, Saxons, Franks, Vandals, Huns, &c. : all these people came from the same storehouse.

35. The northern parts of Europe brought them forth, and their ancestors came, in all probability, from ancient Scythia, now Asiatic Tartary.

36. After having almost annihilated the weak and effeminate Romans, after having destroyed the monuments of their ancient grandeur, their rage abated, and they settled in the countries they had subjugated.

37. Rome, the capital of the Roman empire, was situated on the banks of the river Tiber, at the distance of about sixteen miles from the sea. According to Pliny, Rome was twenty miles in circumference, and according to others, more.

38. There is the same uncertainty about the number of its inhabitants. Some authors make them amount to nearly four millions. The number of inhabitants at present is about 154,000.

39. The most powerful rivals of the Romans were the Carthaginians, a celebrated republic in the northern part of Africa, which had been founded by a colony of Tyrians, some time before Rome, namely, B. C. 869.

40. Modern Rome covers nearly the same space of ground as the ancient city. The suburbs of ancient Rome are supposed to have been of great extent, but inhabited only by people of inferior rank.

41. Although the writers of the Old Testament have nowhere mentioned the city of Rome, yet we frequently find it noticed in the New.

42. The foundations of this renowned city, which, for a long series of ages, sustained the proud title of the "Mistress of the World," were originally laid on the Palatine Hill, B. C. 753.

43. The Roman empire in the west was overturned by the Gothic and other barbarous nations from the North, A.D. 476. The Eastern empire, sometimes called the Greek, at others the Roman, was first subdued by the Saracens, and finally by the Turks, A.D. 1453, who still retain possession of their conquests.

Questions for Examination.

1. What empire deserves most our attention to its history ? What conspicuous objects does it present ? 2. At what time is it supposed Italy was inhabited ? Which were the most distinguished tribes ? From whom is the Roman language derived ? 3. Whence did the Etrurians migrate ? When did the Latins rise into importance ? 4. What did Rome become ? Do any monuments of its former greatness still exist ? 5. What causes contributed to the advancement of the Romans ? What nations did they conquer ? 6. Did they obey the laws ? What reflection presents itself on this point ?

7. Describe the character of the ancient Romans. 8. When was Rome first paved ? When founded ? For how long a period were they unable to measure time ? What machine was then invented ? By whom ? 9. Who were the first historians ? How did they write ? 10. How did they become enlightened ? Who showed them how to write history ? What did Cato procure ? 11. Was he mistaken in his views ? Whose writings do honour to the Roman name ?

12. When is learning one of the blessings of human life ? 13. What may be said of the difference between the man of learning and the ignorant man ? 14. Where did Rome possess dominions ? Where did the riches of her provinces centre ? What did her great wealth produce ? What effect resulted therefrom ? 15. What particulars claim our special attention ? 16. Can a virtuous nation be enslaved ? When did Rome lose her liberty ? Where did the Romans acquire the vices of luxuriousness and effeminacy ? 17. What consequences followed ? 18. What European countries were comprised in the empire of Rome ? 19. In Asia ? 20. In Africa ? 21. What three provinces did Hispania contain ? 22. How was Gallia divided ? 23. What provinces did Illyria contain ? State the cause of the downfall of the Roman empire. By whom was it accelerated ?

25. When did the barbarians enter Italy ? During whose reign ? 26. Whence did they proceed ? What parts of Europe overspread ? Describe the results. 29. Under whom did these emigrations take place ? 31. Of what territory did the Visigoths possess themselves ? the Franks ? the Saxons ? the Huns ? the Ostrogoths ? 32. What followed from this period ? 34. What may Europe be considered ? Who were the ancestors of the English ? French ? Spaniards ? Italians ? and Germans ? 35. From whom were the inhabitants of the northern parts of Europe descended ? 36. What followed the subjugation of the Romans ?

37. How was Rome situated ? What was its extent ? On what authority stated ? 38. What number of inhabitants did it contain ? 39. What people were the most potent rivals of the Romans ? What was their origin ? 41. In what part of Scripture is Rome mentioned ? 42. What distinction did its renown obtain for it ? 43. By what people was that mighty empire overthrown ?

CHAPTER XVIII.

MINOR KINGDOMS AND STATES.

COLCHIS, SCYTHIA, SARMATIA, ETC.

1. COL'CHIS, now called Mingre'lia, was bounded on the north by Asiatic Sarma'tia, on the south by Arme'nia, on the east by Ibe'ria, on the west by the Euxine or Black Sea.

2. It has been rendered famous for the expedition of the Argonauts in search of the golden fleece; this story is generally considered a fable, as there is no record in history to prove it otherwise.

3. Ibe'ria, now forming part of Georgia, was situated between Colchis and Alba'nia, and bounded on the north by the Cau'casus. Its principal cities were Zalissa, Harmozica, and Seumara, the precise situations of which are unknown.

4. In this country was the strong pass "Pylæ Caucasiæ," or "the Gates of Caucasus," which was strongly fortified by the fortress of Cumania against the inroads of the northern barbarians. The Iberians were anciently called Huns.

5. Alba'nia was situated between the Caspian Sea and Iberia. From its bordering on the Caspian Sea, the latter was formerly called Albanum.—(*Pliny*)

6. The country beyond Caucasus, between Palus Mæotis (now the sea of Asoph) and the Caspian Sea, was called Sarma'tia Asiatica, and is inhabited to this day by barbarous and unsettled tribes.

7. Hyrca'nia was situated along the south-east coast of the Caspian Sea, and had Media and Aria on its south. Its capital was Hyrca'nia, now Corcan. This was the original country of the Parthians, who became so greatly celebrated in the time of the Romans. The chief city of Parthia was Nissæ'a.

8. A'ria, now called Khorasan, was bounded on the north by Hyrcania and Parthia, on the east by Bactria, on the south by Gedrosia and Carmania, and on the west by Media.

9. Its capital was Aria, now Herat. Its ancient river, Aricus, is now called Heri. Its chief mountain, Paropamisus, in compliment to Alexander the Great, was called Caucasus.

10. Aria contained the provinces of Drangia'na, Aracha'sia, Margia'na, and that of the Paropamisadæ. Aria is sometimes written Ariana.

11. Bactria'na, sometimes written Bactria, was long a kingdom of considerable extent and importance. It had

Aria on its west, and Sogdia'na on its south ; but on the north and east it was bounded by mountains.

12. Its capital was Bactra, now Balk. This city has long been the key of Central Asia, and the great emporium of the trade carried on between India and China on the one side, and Western Asia on the other.

13. Balk at present belongs to the kingdom of Caubul ; it is situated in a fertile plain, but is now in ruins. It was, for a long time, one of the most flourishing cities in the world, and on account of its great antiquity was styled the mother of cities.

14. This city appears to have been the cradle of the Persian monarchy. Here Zoroas'ter, when compelled to flee from Media, found protection at the court of Hystas'pes : it continued to be the seat of empire till subdued by the Mahometans, when it was transferred to Kerman.

15. Balk was the capital of a Greek kingdom B. C. 250. It was chiefly ruined by the irruption of the Mogul Tartars. Its trade has been principally transferred to Samarcand.

16. Next to Bactra was Maracan'da, now Samarcand, the seat of Tamerlane the Great, and was the most important of all the cities of the Bactrian kingdom.

17. Sogdia'na is divided from Bactriana by the river Oxus, or Gihon. Its ancient capital was Maracan'da, now Samarcand, in the territory of Bokhara, the ancient Sogdiana, the capital of the empire of Tamerlane, in the fourteenth century. This city has since fallen greatly into decay.

18. The early history of these countries is uninteresting and unknown ; for a long time they formed part of the Persian empire, and afterwards that of Alexander the Great, who subdued them B. C. 329.

19. This country continued in the possession of Alexander the Great and his successors till the reign of Anti'ochus Theos : the governor of these districts raised the standard of revolt, and founded the kingdom of Bactria.

20. This country was subsequently subdued by the Scythians or Tartars, which put an end to the kingdom of the Greeks, B. C. 126 ; from which time it was little known, till conquered in the beginning of the eighth century by the Saracens. It is now subject to the Afghans, and forms part of Eastern Persia.

21. Carma'nia, now Kerman, was bounded on the east by Gedrosia, on the south by the Persian Gulf, on the west by Persia, and on the north by Aria. The capital of Carmania was Carmana ; the modern city Kerman.

22. Gedro'sia, a province of Persia, is now called Mekran. Gedrosia was bounded on the east by the Indus, on the south by the Arabian Sea, and on the west by Carmania.

23. In passing through Gedrosia. Alexander's army suf-

fered great hardships for want of water and provisions, and from columns of moving sand, which had before destroyed the troops of Cyrus, and also those of Semiramis.

24. Scyth'ia comprised all the northern parts of Asia, including Tartary and Siberia, and also European Russia and Poland. In this division were included the two Sarmatias, the European and Asiatic.

25. The principal tribes of Scythia were the Massag'etæ, on the north of Bactriana; and the Sa'cæ, on the east of Sogdiana. The boundaries of Scythia and the Sarmatias are unknown.

26. The Scythians were divided into several nations or tribes; they had no cities, but continually changed their habitations, like the Tartars of the present day.

27. Serica was situated to the north-east of Scythia: to the east of Serica, now part of China, was a people called the Sinæ. Of these countries, at the period here spoken of, very little was known.

28. Sarmatia in Asia comprehended Albania, Iberia, and Colchis, now called Circassian Tartary and Georgia. Its chief rivers are the Wolga, Obi, and Lena.

29. Sarmatia in Europe extended from the Vistula to the Euxine or Black Sea, and the river Tan'aïs, now Don. This extensive tract of land comprehended the present Livonia, Lithuania, and Crim Tartary.—(*Ptolemy, Diodorus.*)

30. The Sarmatians were a savage uncivilized people, and generally lived on the mountains without any habitations.—(*Strabo.*)

31. India is a vast extent of territory, lying between the 69th and 90th degrees of E. longitude, and the 8th and 36th degrees of N. latitude, extending from Mount Imaus, or Himmaleh, to Cape Comorin.

32. This country, in a remote period the seat of science, was little known in the western parts of the world before the expedition of Alexander the Great: in some very early geographical treatises, the descriptions of Colchis, *Aethiopia*, and India—regions very far distant from one another—are confounded.

33. In ancient geography, India was usually divided by the river Ganges into two parts; the one was called India within the Ganges, the other beyond the Ganges.

34. India within the Ganges, now Hindostan, was bounded on the north by the Mount Imaus, on the south by the Indian Ocean, on the west by the river Indus, and on the east by the Ganges and Bay of Bengal. In this part of India was the city Tax'ila, famous in the wars of Alexander the Great.

35. India beyond the Ganges was bounded on the west by the river Ganges, on the north by Scythia, on the east by

the country of the Sinae, now part of China, and on the south by the Indian Ocean.

36. The principal countries of India beyond the Ganges are the Birman Empire, Siam, Pegu, Cambodia, Cochin China, and Malacca. The last is supposed, by some, to be the Ophir of Scripture.

37. The principal rivers are the Indus, the Burrampooter, and the Ganges: from the former (sometimes called by the antients Sindus or Sinthus, by the natives Sinde,) the country has received the name of India.

38. The Ganges was the boundary of Alexander's victories in the east: it runs 2,000 miles before it reaches the sea, receiving in its progress a number of rivers, eleven of which are superior to the Thames.

Questions for Examination.

1. What is the present name of Colchis? How is it bounded? 2. For what has it been rendered famous? Are there any proofs of its truth? 3. Where was Iberia situated? Name its principal cities. Are their situations known? 4. What celebrated Pass is situated in this country? By what name were the Iberians anciently known?

5. Where was Albania situated? Give its ancient name. 6. Give the former name of the country beyond the Caucasus. 7. Where was Hyrcania? Who originally inhabited this country? 8. How was Aria bounded? 9. Name its capital. Its chief mountain. Why did it change its name? 10. What provinces did Aria contain? 11. What sort of kingdom was Bactriana, or Bactria? How was it bounded? 12. What is the present capital? Describe the importance of the present capital.

13. To whom does Balk now belong? Describe its former character. 14. What does it appear to have been? Who found protection here? How long did it continue to be the seat of empire? 15. When was it the capital of a Greek kingdom? Who contributed to its ruin? To what place has its trade been transferred? 17. How is Sogdiana divided from Bactriana? Name its ancient capital. Where situated. What is its present condition?

18. What is the character of the early history of these countries? When did Alexander subjugate them? 19. How long did they continue in the possession of Alexander and his successors? Who raised the standard of revolt, and founded the kingdom of Bactria? 20. By whom was it subsequently subdued? When? To whom is it now subject?

21. How was Carmania bounded? Name its capital. 22. Of what kingdom was Gedrosia a province? How bounded? 23. From what cause did the armies of Alexander suffer? 24. What did Scythia comprise? What two countries were included in this division? 25. Which were the principal tribes of Scythia? Give its boundaries. 26. How were the Scythians divided? Give a general description of them. 27. Where was Serica? What people lay to the east of Serica. Is any thing known of these countries? 28. What did Sarmatia in Asia include? 29. How did Sarmatia in Europe extend? What did it comprehend? 30. Describe the Sarmatians.

31. Describe the situation of India. 32. Was India long unknown to the inhabitants of the west? 33. How was it formerly divided? 34. How was India within the Ganges bounded? Give its present name. What famous city was seated in this part of India? 35. How was India beyond the Ganges bounded? 36. Name the principal countries of this part of India. 37. Its principal rivers. What was the Indus called by the antients? 38. How far did Alexander carry his victories in the east? How many rivers larger than the Thames does the Ganges receive in its course?

AFRICA PROPRIA.



KEY TO THE MAP.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Alexandria. | 9. Thebes. | 17. Cæa. | 25. Thapsus. |
| 2. Sais. | 10. Barce. | 18. Leptis Magna. | 26. Hadrumetum. |
| 3. Heroopolis. | 11. Cyrene. | 19. Gerisa. | 27. Capsa. |
| 4. Pelusium. | 12. Berenice. | 20. Carthage. | 28. Cirta. |
| 5. Arsinoe. | 13. Ptolemais. | 21. Utica. | 29. Hippo Regius. |
| 6. Heliopolis. | 14. Darnis. | 22. Vacca. | 30. Tingis. |
| 7. Memphis. | 15. Garanna. | 23. Tunis. | 31. Sala. |
| 8. Abydos. | 16. Sabrata. | 24. Zama. | |

CHAPTER XIX.

2. Rug'ged, *a.* rough; uneven.
6. Stupen'dous, *a.* wonderful; amazing.
8. Commem'orate, *v.* to celebrate openly | 11. Assu'me, *v.* to take; to arrogate.
12. Irrup'tion, *s.* a burst of invaders.
19. Furnish, *v.* to supply; provide.

ANCIENT AFRICA.

1. THE parts of Africa known to the antients comprised Ægyptus, Libya, including Cyrenaica and Marmarica, Tripolis, Africa Proper, Numidia, Mauritania, and Æthiopia.

2. *Ægyptus*, called Chemia from Ham, the land of Mizraim from the grandson of Noah, and Coptos from its ancient metropolis, now Egypt, is a large country in the north-east part of Africa; it is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean, on the east by the Red Sea, and on the west by the Desert of Libya. It consisted of a narrow valley, extending from north to south, watered by the Nile, and a rugged, mountainous, barren country to the eastward.

3. Egypt was anciently divided into three parts; namely, Upper Egypt, or Thebais, called in Scripture Path'ros;

Middle Egypt, or Heptanomis ; and Lower Egypt, the best part of which was the Delta.

4. In Upper Egypt stood the great city of Thebes, reckoned one of the finest cities in the world. At one period, before it was ruined by Cambyses, it was said to have been fifty-two miles in length.

5. Here stood the famous statue of Memnon, the same that was sent to England by Belzoni in 1818, and now in the British Museum.

6. In Middle Egypt flourished the ancient city of Memphis, once the metropolis of all Egypt, near which stand the pyramids, those stupendous structures that are deservedly reckoned among the wonders of the world.

7. In Lower Egypt was seated the famous city of Alexandria, founded by Alexander the Great. This city was the capital of Egypt under the Ptolemies. It was greatly celebrated for its extensive library, which was burnt by the Saracens under the caliph Omar, A. D. 642.

8. Among its other chief cities were Nicop'olis, now Aboukir, built by Augustus to commemorate his victory over Antony ; Tan'is, in Scripture Zo'an, now Sau ; Heroopolis, the residence of the shepherd kings ;

9. Heliop'olis, or On, "the city of the sun," north of Old Cairo ; Babylon, supposed to have been built by the Persians, now Old Cairo ; Arsin'oe, afterwards called Cleopatris, now Suez.

10. The principal river of Egypt is the Nile ; on the annual overflow of which the fertility of Egypt mainly depends, owing to the fattening of the earth by the mud and slime deposited.

11. It is supposed that Egypt was first peopled by Ham, the son of Noah ; and that Mizraim, or Menes, was the first person who assumed the regal title.

12. The earliest event in its authentic history is the irruption of the shepherd kings, who came from Arabia, and treated the Egyptians with great cruelty.

13. Ancient Libya contained the two countries of Cyrenaica and Marmarica. It was also called Pentap'olis, from its containing five principal cities ; namely, Barce, now Barca ; Cyrene, now Kurin ; Berenice, now Bernic ; Ptolemais, now Tolometta ; Darnis, now Derne.

14. Tripolis, which still retains its name, was so called from the three cities Sab'rata, Cœ'a, and Lep'tis Magna. It was bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea ; on the south by Phazia'na, now Fezzain ; on the east by Africa Proper, of which it occasionally formed a part ; and on the west by Cyrenaica.

15. Its chief towns were Sabrata, now Sabrat ; Cœa, now Tripoli ; Leptis Magna, now Lebida ; Gerisa, now Gherze.

16. The Syrtis Major and Syrtis Minor are now called the Gulf of Sidra, and the Gulf of Gabes.

17. South of Phaziana were seated the Garamantes, a nation little known to the Romans, who derived their name from the chief city Gar'ama, the modern Germah: their country is now called the Desert of Zaara.

18. Africa Propria, or Africa properly so called, now Tunis, was bounded on the east and north by the Mediterranean Sea; on the south by Gætu'lia and Tripolis; and on the west by Numidia.

19. Its chief cities were Car'thage, built by queen Dido, near the Bay of Tunis; Utica, where Cato stabbed himself, near the modern city of Tunis; Vac'ca, a city of note in the Jugurthine war, now Vegja; Trinc'tum, now Tunis; Hadrumetum, a considerable city in the province of Byza'cium, which furnished Rome with much corn, comprising the fertile country near the Syrtis Minor; Za'ma, near the centre of Africa Proper, where Scipio Africanus defeated Hannibal; Thap'sus, where Cæsar defeated Metellus Scipio, now Demsas; Tagaste, the birth-place of St. Augustine, now Tajelt; Capsa, where Jugurtha kept his treasures, now Casfa.

20. Numid'ia corresponds nearly to Algiers. It was bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea; on the east by Africa Proper, or Carthage; on the south by Gætu'lia; and on the west by Mauritania. Its chief cities were Cir'ta, now Constantina; Hip'po Regius, of which St. Augustine was bishop, near the present Bona; Maurita'nia, now the empire of Morocco and Fez.

21. Maurita'nia was bounded by the Straits of Gibraltar and the Mediterranean Sea on the north; by the Atlantic Ocean on the west; by Gætulia on the south; and Numidia on the east. It was more anciently called Tingitana, from its chief city Tingis, the ancient metropolis, now Tangier. Sala, now Sallee, was famous for pirates.

22. Æthio'pia, an extensive region in the interior of Africa, comprehended Nubia, Abyssinia, and many unknown countries; the antients, however, sometimes applied the term Æthiopia to Phœnicia, Chaldea, and other eastern countries.

Questions for Examination.

1. What parts of Africa were known to the antients? 2. Describe Egypt. 3. How was it formerly divided? 4. What city flourished in Upper Egypt? Who destroyed it? What is said to have been its length? 5. What statue was placed there? Who sent it to England? 6. Where was Memphis? What celebrated structures stand near it? 7. Where was Alexandria seated? By whom founded? Who made this the capital of Egypt? For what was it celebrated? By whom destroyed? 8. Give the names of the chief cities. Who built Nicopolis? Why? Its present name? What was the ancient name of Tanis? Who resided at Heroopolis?

9. Where is Heliopolis situated ? Who are supposed to have built Babylon ? 10. Name the principal river of Egypt. What effects are produced by the overflowing of this river ? 11. Who is supposed to have first peopled Egypt ? 12. Name the earliest event recorded in its history. 13. What countries did ancient Libya contain ? What other name was given to it ? Name the ancient and modern cities. 14. What three cities does Tripolis contain ? How bounded ? 15. Name its chief towns, both ancient and modern. 16. What are the present names of the gulfs of Syrtis Major and Minor ? 17. What people were seated south of Phaziana ?
 18. What is the present name of Africa Proper ? How is it bounded ? 19. Name its chief cities. What principal events occurred ? 20. How is Numidia bounded ? Name its chief cities. 21. How is Mauritania bounded ? What was its more ancient name ? 22. What did *Aethiopia* comprehend ?
-
-

CHAPTER XX.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ri'val, <i>s.</i> opponent; competitor. | 7. Op'ulence, <i>s.</i> wealth; affluence. |
| 3. Penin'sula, <i>s.</i> land almost surrounded by the sea. | 8. Predict'ed, <i>v.</i> foretold. |
| Isth'mus, <i>s.</i> the land joining a peninsula to the continent. | 13. Lit'erature, <i>s.</i> learning. |
| 5. Mar'itime, <i>a.</i> relating to the sea. | 17. Mer'cenary, <i>a.</i> hired for money. |
| | 18. Antip'athy, <i>s.</i> natural contrariety. Exag'gerate, <i>v.</i> to heighten. |

CARTHAGE.

1. CAR'THAGE, a celebrated republic of Africa, was long the rival of Rome. Its capital was Carthage, which was rich and populous, and at one period contained upwards of 700,000 inhabitants.

2. Carthage is said, by some authors, to have been built sixty-five years before Rome ; Appian says fifty before the taking of Troy by the Greeks. According to most authors it was founded by queen Dido, about 869 years before the Christian era.

3. It was built on a peninsula, upwards of thirty miles in circuit, and attached to the main land by an isthmus three miles in breadth, which was defended by a triple wall thirty cubits high. It occupied half the peninsula. By the Greeks it was called Carche'don.

4. The Carthaginian republic flourished for 737 years, and the time of its greatest glory was under Han'nibal and Hamil'car. When its power was at its highest, it possessed the whole coast of Africa, from Cyrenaica and the Desert of Libya to the Straits of Gibraltar, besides a great part of Spain and Sicily ; also Sardinia, and some other small islands.

5. The Carthaginians applied themselves chiefly to maritime affairs and commerce, and soon became a very powerful people. They had colonies in Spain and Sicily, and possessed the islands of Corsica and Sardinia.

6. The connexion of the Carthaginians with Sicily involved them in a dispute with the Romans, which gave rise to the first Punic war, B.C. 264.

7. We may readily judge of the power and opulence of Carthage from its efforts against Rome, with which it maintained three wars, called the Punic wars. It was at last taken and razed to the ground by Scipio Africanus, B.C. 147.

8. Scipio, seeing the destruction of so great a city, is said to have shed tears. Reflecting on the fate of Troy, of the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians, and on the recent overthrow of the Macedonians, he repeated two verses of Homer, in which the fall of Ilium and Priam is predicted.—(*Iliad* iv. 164.)

9. It was partially rebuilt by Gracchus. Augustus Cæsar founded a city at a small distance, which he called by the same name; and Strabo mentions that in his time it was equal in size to the largest in Africa. It was sacked by Mezen'tius A.D. 312; taken by Gen'seric, king of the Vandals, A.D. 439; retaken by Belisa'rius A.D. 525, and annexed to the Roman empire; and so completely destroyed by the Saracens A.D. 698, that few vestiges of it were left, and the very site of its ports is now doubtful.

10. The Carthaginians owed their power to commerce: hence they were called a nation of merchants. In their character they were industrious, ingenious, and enterprising; but false, deceitful, and cruel.

11. They knew but little of learning, yet Carthage produced some writers of note. Ma'go wrote 28 books on husbandry, which, after the Romans had taken Carthage, by order of the senate were translated into Latin.

12. Terence was born at Carthage, but educated at Rome, having been brought thither as a slave by Terentius Lucanus, a senator, who gave him his liberty, and from whom he derived his name.

13. To these may be added the great Hannibal, sometimes also written Annibal, who, though from his earliest years almost always engaged in war, yet found leisure to attend to literature.

14. The constitution of the Carthaginian republic is celebrated by Aristotle as one of the most perfect of the governments of antiquity; but we know little more than its general nature from ancient writers. At first it was monarchical, but soon assumed the republican form, in which, however, the chief power was in the hands of the aristocracy. Two persons were annually chosen among them, and invested with regal authority.

15. The Carthaginians were very superstitious, like their ancestors the Phœnicians; their religious rites were polluted by the sacrifice of human victims. Their principal deities were Melcart, Moloch or Bel, and Astarte or Venus.

16. The first settlements made by the Carthaginians were entirely in the way of commerce. Trading to the coast of Spain for gold, they built Carthagena and Ga'des; and sailing along the western shore of Africa, they formed establishments for the same purpose as far as the 25th degree of north latitude.

17. Desirous of extending a limited territory, they made war against the Mauritanians, Numidians, and all the neighbouring nations. The Libyans formed the chief part of their forces; they had slingers from the Balea'ric islands, their light cavalry was furnished by the wandering tribes of Northern Africa, and they levied mercenary troops not only in Africa, but in Spain, Gaul, Greece, and even in Italy.

18. The history of the Carthaginians is but little known till their wars with the Romans; and we derive our information concerning them chiefly from the Roman writers, whose national antipathies led them to represent the character and conduct of their enemies in the most unfavourable light, to deprecate their virtues and exaggerate their vices.

Questions for Examination.

1. What was Carthage? Its capital? 2. By whom was it founded? When? 3. Describe its situation. What was it called by the Greeks? 4. How long did the republic of Carthage flourish? Under whom at its height of glory? What was the extent of its possessions? 5. Whither did the Carthaginians send colonies? 6. What gave rise to the first Punic war? 7. How do we judge of the power and opulence of Carthage? When and by whom was Carthage destroyed?

8. What did Scipio do on this occasion? 9. By whom was it rebuilt? What did Cæsar plant near the ruins of Carthage? What vicissitudes did it encounter? When was it taken from the Romans by Genseric? How long in the hands of the Vandals? 10. To what did the Carthaginians owe their power? What was their character?

11. What did they know of learning?

12. Who and what was Terence? Why so named? 13. Who was Hannibal? 14. What says Aristotle of the constitution of Carthage? 15. What barbarous custom attended their religious rites? What deities did they worship? 16. In what manner originated the colonies of the Carthaginians? 18. From whom do we derive a knowledge of these people? Were the Roman authors impartial in their statements respecting them?

ANCIENT BIOGRAPHY.

SECTION I.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Olym'piad, <i>s.</i> a space of four years, so called from the Olympic games, celebrated every fourth year. | 9. Vault'ed, <i>v.</i> leaped. |
| 2. Contem'porary, <i>a.</i> living at the same time. | 11. Divor'ce, <i>s.</i> separation. |
| 5. Refugees, <i>s.</i> banished persons. | 12. Propen'sity, <i>s.</i> natural tendency. |
| 7. Athlet'ic, <i>a.</i> vigorous; lusty. Antag'onists, <i>s.</i> opponents; adver- saries. | 13. Assail'ants, <i>s.</i> those that attack. |
| | 14. Assass'inated, <i>v.</i> killed. |
| | 16. Matu're, <i>a.</i> ripe; perfected by time. Eman'cipating, <i>part.</i> freeing. |
| | 18. Invet'erate, <i>a.</i> long-established; ob- stinate from long continuance. |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

1. ALEXANDER THE GREAT was the son of Philip king of Macedon, and born at Pella in the first year of the 106th Olympiad, or 356 years B. C. : his mother's name was Olympias, daughter of Neoptol'emos, king of Epi'rus.

2. This celebrated monarch was contemporary with some of the greatest sages and philosophers that the world ever produced; and Philip was wise enough to avail himself of the assistance of some of them in the education of his son.

3. Leon'idas, a relation of his mother, and a man of the brightest moral character, was appointed his governor. Under him, first Lysim'achus, an Acarnanian, and afterwards the great Aristotle, were entrusted with the cultivation of his youthful mind, and appointed to instruct him in philosophy, and every thing that could render him worthy of the high station he was one day to fill.

4. Alexander's passion for military glory discovered itself at a very early age, and is supposed to have been greatly increased by a frequent perusal of the Iliad of Homer. This poem was so highly prized by him, that he kept it inclosed in a casket, as a jewel of inestimable value.

5. A conversation which, at seven years of age, he is said to have held with some Persian refugees, exhibits characteristic traits of a strong and elevated mind, destined to undertake great actions.

6. Among other questions he asked them, "What was the military strength of Persia? In what manner the soldiers were armed? Whether they were courageous men? Whether their horses were swift? What were the manners and character of the king? and, How many days' march it was from Macedonia to Susa, the Persian capital?"

7. Alexander likewise excelled in athletic exercises. On being one day praised for his swiftness in running, and

advised to contend at the Olympic games, he replied, "So I would, could I have kings for my antagonists."

8. Of his skill in horsemanship we have a remarkable instance on record. Pholonicus, a Thessalian, brought a famous horse to Philip's court, for which he asked the enormous price of thirteen talents; but the animal appearing so wild and unmanageable that none of the grooms would venture to mount him, the king refused to become the purchaser.



9. But Alexander, who regretted that so noble a creature should be returned, requested permission to try his skill, which, with some difficulty, was granted. On this, he placed the horse in such a position, that he could not see his own shadow, which had before alarmed him; then soothing him with his voice and hand, he nimbly vaulted upon his back, and by his judicious conduct soon rendered him as gentle and obedient as he was before furious and ungovernable.

10. This instance of heroic courage so delighted his father, that, embracing him, he exclaimed, "My son! seek a kingdom more worthy of thee, for Macedonia is below thy merit."

11. Nor were these the only qualities for which his youth was remarkable. He was temperate, chaste, and possessed of self-command. Nor was his filial duty the least praiseworthy of his virtues, for he was much attached to his mother; and when the differences between her and his father arose to such a height as to occasion a divorce, his love and respect for her were rather increased than diminished.

12. Alexander, when no more than sixteen years of age,

found an opportunity to indulge that warlike propensity for which he was always so remarkable : having been intrusted with the reins of government during his father's absence, he marched against the Medari, a people of Thrace, who had revolted, and reduced them again to obedience.

13. Not long after, when in a mutiny of his troops Philip's life was in danger, Alexander flew to his rescue, covered him with his shield, and succeeded in driving back the assailants, and delivering his father from the danger that threatened him.

14. Philip, having made mighty preparations for the invasion of Persia, and caused himself to be declared supreme commander of the Grecian forces destined for that expedition, was assassinated just as he was on the point of entering on his undertaking, by a noble youth named Pausanias.

15. The first act of Alexander, on his accession to the Macedonian throne, was to execute justice on the murderer of his father. He then made preparations for the same expedition which Philip had contemplated, but did not live to commence.

16. But the states of Greece, though they had submitted to the mature age of Philip, entertained hopes of emancipating themselves from the Macedonian yoke, now the throne was occupied by an inexperienced youth. However, Alexander disappointed their expectations, and obtained the post of generalissimo, which his father had enjoyed.

17. His first expedition, after his succession to regal authority, was against the Tribal'li, or Bulgarians, whom he defeated and drove beyond the Is'ter, or Danube. He then attacked the Ge'tæ, and after gaining more honour and military skill in this expedition than solid advantages, he returned into Macedonia.

18. During Alexander's absence, a report of his death had been industriously propagated among the states of Greece. Demos'thenes, who had always shown himself the inveterate enemy of Philip, now endeavoured to render this incident injurious to the interests of his son. By his instigation the Thebans openly revolted, put to death part of the Macedonian garrison, and prepared to besiege the citadel.

19. On receiving intelligence of this revolt, Alexander marched with such expedition, that he entered Boeotia before the Thebans were apprized of his motions, besieged their city, and having taken it, put to death great numbers of the inhabitants, sold the remainder for slaves, razed the city to its foundation, and divided the lands amongst his soldiers.

20. With great generosity Alexander spared Athens, on its sending a deputation to solicit his clemency ; and though at first he demanded ten of their orators, whom he considered as the chief instigators of the revolt, to be delivered

up to his vengeance, yet afterwards, at the intercession of his friend Dem'ades, he relinquished this claim, and exercised no farther severity on the occasion.

21. Having now quieted the disturbances in Greece, and obtained a confirmation of his authority as chief commander, he gave splendid entertainments and munificent gifts to his principal officers, previous to the commencement of his Asiatic expedition,—an expedition attended with astonishing and almost incredible success, by which one of the greatest revolutions ever experienced in the political world was effected.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who was Alexander the Great ? 2. What advantages did he possess in his youth ? 3. Who were his preceptors ? 4. What character did he display in early youth ? and to what was it in some measure owing ? 5. What instance of his early sagacity is on record ? 6. What was the subject of this conversation ? 7. For what was he remarkable besides ? 8. What instance of his skill is recorded ? 9. What followed ? 10. Was his father pleased with his intrepidity ?

11. Were his moral virtues equal to his bodily prowess ? 12. What was his first military exploit ? 13. What happened next ? 14. Did Philip long survive this event ? 15. What was Alexander's first regal act ? 16. Had he the same ascendancy over the states of Greece as his father enjoyed ? 17. What was his next military expedition ? 18. What happened during his absence ? 19. How did he suppress this rebellion ? 21. What followed these successes ?

SECTION II.

| | |
|---|--|
| 1. Scop'tre, <i>s.</i> a royal staff. | 11. Prod'igies, <i>s.</i> wonders. |
| 2. Effem'inate, <i>a.</i> weak; voluptuous. | 13. Rev'enu'e, <i>s.</i> income; tribute. |
| 4. Vig'ilance, <i>s.</i> watchfulness. | 15. Pil'lage, <i>s.</i> plunder; robbery. |
| 7. Dive'rt, <i>v.</i> to turn aside. | 17. Len'ity, <i>s.</i> mildness; mercy. |
| 8. Sup'plicant, <i>s.</i> petitioner. | 8a'traps, <i>s.</i> Persian noblemen. |
| 9. Ma'nus, <i>s.</i> spirits; ghosts. | 18. Ingra'tiate, <i>v.</i> to gain favour. |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, (*continued.*)

1. THE monarch who now swayed the Persian sceptre was Dari'u's Codom'anus, a prince who had displayed considerable bravery in a war with the Cardusians.

2. Yet his personal valour could avail but little, when seconded by forces rendered effeminate by pride and luxury; and by mercenaries who, however brave, had no interest in the country they were hired to defend.

3. At first, the only sentiment Darius entertained for Alexander, was that of contempt for his youth; but his successes soon occasioned him to alter his opinion, and to take measures for preventing the threatened danger.

4. For this purpose Mem'non, the Rhodian, a commander of great reputation, was sent with an army of Greeks to

occupy Cyzicus, but the vigilance of Alexander prevented his success.

5. At length every preparation being complete, Alexander crossed the Hellespont into Asia, with an army of about thirty thousand foot and five thousand horse,—so inconsiderable were the forces with which he hoped to overturn the mightiest monarchy of the age.

6. The Persians having unaccountably neglected to dispute his passage over this narrow sea, where their powerful fleet might have been of infinite service, Alexander marched to Lampsacus with an intent to destroy it.

7. To divert him from this dreadful resolution, the inhabitants deputed Anaximenes, a celebrated historian known to Alexander, to intercede for them.

8. But the king no sooner saw him, than, suspecting the purport of his errand, he swore that he would deny whatever request the suppliant might make. On this, Anaximenes begged that he would destroy Lampsacus; and by this witty device saved the city.

9. From thence he marched to Troy, the scene of those actions recorded in his favourite poem: here he sacrificed to the manes of the heroes buried in that celebrated spot, and instituted games in honour of Achil'les, whom he professed to envy for having such a friend as Patroclus to share his joys and sorrows while living, and such a poet as Homer to record his actions when dead.

10. The first place where the troops of Alexander encountered a Persian army, was on the banks of the Granicus. Favoured by their advantageous situation, the Persians made a spirited resistance to their invaders; but the Macedonians having gained the opposite side of the river, they were soon routed with great slaughter.

11. The loss of the Macedonians was trifling: of the king's own guards twenty-five were killed, whose statues, cast in brass, were set up in a city of Macedon, called Dium. Alexander in this engagement performed prodigies of valour, and among others killed Mithridates, a son-in-law of Darius, with his own hand; while he himself was saved from destruction by Clitus, one of his intimate friends.

12. This terrible defeat so discouraged the Persians, that for some time they were afraid to meet Alexander in battle; he therefore found no difficulty in possessing himself of the country southwards as far as Hermus. Sardis, the capital of Lydia, was easily reduced, its inhabitants taken under his protection, and permitted to live under their own laws.

13. Ephesus was his next conquest: to this city he restored its ancient government, and assigned to the temple of Diana the revenue hitherto paid to the Persian kings.

14. At Mile'tus and Halicarnas'sus he experienced great resistance, as both these towns were defended by Memnon

with such skill and resolution, as to occasion much blood to be shed and time to be spent in the siege.

15. The inhabitants of Miletus were treated by the conqueror with great humanity, and their city preserved from pillage; but Halicarnassus was razed to the ground.

16. He next subdued Tralles, and restored A'da queen of Ca'ria to her dominions, of which she had been lately dispossessed. When, impelled by gratitude, she sent him exquisite meats and excellent cooks, he declined her presents, assuring her that his best cooks were temperance and exercise.

17. The lenity thus shown by Alexander to his conquered enemies, induced many of the petty princes and satraps of Lesser Asia to submit voluntarily to his dominion. Among the most illustrious of these was Mithridates, king of Pontus, an ancestor of that Mithridates who so long opposed the armies of Rome. This prince adhered to him with unshaken fidelity, and accompanied him in his expedition.

18. It being Alexander's interest to ingratiate himself with his soldiers, he permitted such as asked the favour to return, on the approach of winter, into Macedonia, on the condition that they should rejoin the army early in the ensuing spring.

Questions for Examination.

1. Who sat on the Persian throne at this time ? and what was his character ? 2. Why was his valour of so little avail ? 3. What opinion did Darius entertain of Alexander ? 4. What was his first measure to put a stop to Alexander's progress ? 5. With what forces did Alexander invade Asia ? 6. Did he meet with powerful opposition ? How did the inhabitants avoid this dreadful fate ? 9. Whither did he next proceed ? and how did he employ himself there ?

10. What was the scene of the first battle ? 11. What did this victory cost the Macedonians ? 12. Did the Persians attempt to retrieve this disaster ? 13. What city of note did Alexander next conquer ? What were his subsequent conquests ? 15. What was the fate of these cities ? 16. What were his next movements ? 17. What effects did this lenient conduct produce ? 18. How did he gain the affections of his soldiers ?

SECTION III.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Invest'ing, <i>part.</i> besieging. | 13. Sculp'tures, <i>s.</i> statues ; engravings. |
| 3. In'ticate, <i>a.</i> involved. | 14. Sump'tuousness, <i>s.</i> richness. |
| O'racle, <i>s.</i> a prediction ; prophecy. | Vest'ments, <i>s.</i> garments. |
| 4. Evac'uating, <i>part.</i> forsaking. | 17. Scim'itar, <i>s.</i> a kind of sword. |
| 5. Magnanim'iety, <i>s.</i> greatness of soul. | 19. Con'sort, <i>s.</i> wife. |
| 6. In'timated, <i>v.</i> hinted. | 20. Sut'lers, <i>s.</i> persons who sell necessities to the soldiers. |
| 9. Appa'rent, <i>a.</i> plainly to be seen. | 21. Pa'geant, <i>a.</i> showy. |
| 12. Equer'ries, <i>s.</i> grooms. | |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, (*continued.*)

1. ALEXANDER, having recruited his army and settled the plan of the campaign, which was rather to subdue the

remaining maritime provinces than march in quest of Darius, began his operations by investing Cele'ne, a city of Phrygia.

2. This place made, at first, some show of resistance; but no succours arriving, and the garrison despairing of withstanding the skilful and vigorous attacks of the Macedonians, the city was surrendered at discretion.

3. From Celene, Alexander proceeded to Gor'dium. In this city was preserved the chariot of Gor'dius, who had fastened the yoke to the beam with so intricate a knot, that the empire of Asia was promised to him who could untie it. Alexander, attempting this exploit in vain, cut it with his sword, and the priest declared that the oracle was fulfilled.

4. After this he reduced the province of Cappado'cia, and took possession of Tar'sus, in Cilicia; at which place he arrived just in time to save it from destruction, the Persians, on evacuating it, having set it on fire, to prevent the treasures that it contained falling into the hands of the Macedonians.

5. Here an opportunity was afforded Alexander of displaying that magnanimity for which he had always been celebrated. Bathing in the river Cydnus, remarkable for the coldness of its waters, he was seized with a violent shivering, by which his life seemed in serious danger.

6. It happened that his favourite physician, Philip, brought him a powerful medicine, suited to the urgency of the case, at the instant he was reading a letter, in which his general, Parme'nio, intimated his suspicions that Philip was bribed by Darius to poison him.

7. Alexander took the cup, and after handing the letter to the physician, drank off the draught without exhibiting any symptoms of distrust.

8. The astonishment and distress of Philip, on perusing this serious accusation, may be better imagined than described; and though Alexander believed his protestations of innocence, yet many of the attendants, on seeing the violent effects of the medicine, could not repress their suspicions until the perfect recovery of the king entirely removed every doubt, when the skill and fidelity of Philip were amply rewarded.

9. In the mean time Darius had assembled an immense force to oppose the invader. But though we may be induced to allow this prince personal bravery, yet his want of military skill was in this instance apparent; for he drew up his numerous host, consisting of six hundred thousand men, of whom thirty thousand were Greeks, in a narrow and confined space, where their numbers, instead of being serviceable, were of the most serious disadvantage; the cavalry, in particular, were by this measure rendered nearly useless.

10. Though not essential to the history, it may not be uninteresting to describe the splendid march of this monarch, which resembled rather a triumphant procession than a martial expedition.

11. First, they carried before him silver altars, on which lay fire, called by them sacred and eternal; and those were followed by the Magi, singing hymns after the manner of their country: they were accompanied by three hundred and sixty-five youths (equalling the number of days in a year) clothed in purple robes.

12. After these came a chariot consecrated to Jupiter, drawn by white horses, and followed by coursers of prodigious size; to these they gave the name of the sun's horses: the equeeries were dressed in white, each having a golden rod in his hand.

13. Ten chariots, adorned with sculptures in gold and silver, followed. Then marched a body of horse composed of twelve nations, whose manners and customs were various, and all armed in a different manner.

14. Next advanced those whom the Persians called the Immortals, amounting to ten thousand, who surpassed the rest of the barbarians in the sumptuousness of their apparel. They all wore golden collars, and were clothed in robes of gold tissue, with vestments the sleeves of which were quite covered with precious stones.

15. Thirty paces from them followed those called the king's relations, to the number of fifteen thousand, in habits very much resembling those of women, and more remarkable for the vain pomp of their dress than the glitter of their arms.

16. Those called the Doriphori came after: they carried the king's cloak, and walked before his chariot, in which he seemed to sit as on a high throne. This chariot was enriched on both sides with images of the gods in gold and silver; and from the middle of the yoke, which was covered with jewels, rose two statues, a cubit in height, the one representing war, the other peace, having a golden eagle with wings extended, as if ready to take flight.

17. But nothing could equal the magnificence of the king: he was clothed in a vest of purple striped with silver, and over it a long robe glittering with precious stones, that represented two falcons rushing from the clouds and pecking at each other. Around his waist he wore a golden girdle, after the manner of women, whence his scimitar hung, the scabbard of which flamed all over with gems: on his head he wore a tiara, or mitre, round which was a fillet of blue mixed with white.

18. On each side of him walked two hundred of his nearest relations, followed by two thousand pikemen, whose pikes were adorned with silver and tipped with gold; and

lastly, thirty thousand infantry, who composed the rear-guard. These were followed by the king's horses, four hundred in number, all which were led.

19. About one hundred, or a hundred and twenty, paces from thence came Sysigam'bis, Darius's mother, seated on a throne, and his consort on another, with the several female attendants of both queens riding on horseback. Afterwards came fifteen long chariots, in which were the king's children, and those who had the care of their education, with a band of eunuchs.

20. Then marched the concubines, to the number of three hundred and sixty, in the equipage of queens, followed by six hundred mules and three hundred camels, which carried the king's treasure, and guarded by a great body of archers. After these came the wives of the crown officers and of the greatest lords of the court, seated also in chariots; and then the sutlers, servants, and other followers of the army. In the rear were a body of light armed troops, with their commanders, who closed the whole march.

21. Such was the splendour of this pageant monarch, who, while he excited the admiration of his own barbarian subjects, inspired the Macedonians with contempt for his military skill, and a strong desire to make themselves masters of those riches, of which he had made so vain and pompous a display.

Questions for Examination.

1. What were Alexander's first movements ? 2. Was this an easy conquest ? 3. Whither did he then march ? 4. What were his next conquests ? 5. What remarkable event happened at Tarsus ? 6. What followed ? 7. Did Alexander refuse the medicine ? 8. What effect had this on Philip ? 9. What farther resistance did Darius make ? 10. Was this army remarkable for its splendour ? 11. What was the first part of the procession ? 12. What the next ? 13. What followed ? 14. What came then ? 15. Who followed next in this procession ? 16. Who next ? 17. How was the king attired ? 18. Who were immediately about his person ? 19. In what manner was Darius's family conveyed ? 20. How was the procession closed ? 21. What was the effect of this splendour ?

SECTION IV.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. Ensued. <i>v.</i> followed. Va'cant, <i>a.</i> empty. | 9. Out'rage, <i>s.</i> violence. Ra'zed, <i>v.</i> destroyed. |
| 5. Pre'ven'tous, <i>ad.</i> before. | 13. Protrac'ted, <i>v.</i> lengthened. |
| 6. Incen'sed, <i>v.</i> enraged. | 14. Sul'lied, <i>v.</i> injured ; disgraced. |
| 7. Ten'der, <i>s.</i> an offer. Alle'giance, <i>s.</i> duty of subjects. | 17. Pontif'icals, <i>s.</i> priestly garments. 18. Atti'red, <i>v.</i> dressed. |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, (*continued.*)

1. BOTH kings being equally eager to decide the fate of the empire by the sword, their armies met near Is'sus, in a

plain of moderate extent, bounded on one side by mountains, and on the other by the sea.

2. The engagement that ensued was for some time obstinately disputed, during which Alexander, eagerly desirous of completing his conquest by the death of Darius, furiously attacked that monarch; but by the interposition of Oxathres, his brother, his life was saved, though the battle, in consequence, was lost; for the horses that drew the chariot of Darius taking fright at the shock, he was obliged to mount another: the army, seeing his throne vacant, supposed that he was slain, and instantly fled. In this engagement Alexander was wounded in the thigh.

3. But though the Persians afforded an easy conquest, the case was different in that quarter where the Greek mercenaries fought. These for some time defended themselves vigorously; but being attacked in their flank by the troops returned from the pursuit of Darius, they sustained a total and complete overthrow.

4. Sysigambis, the mother of Darius, his wife and daughters, were among the captives, and the politeness with which they were treated, redounded much to the honour of Alexander: the scrupulous care with which he avoided visiting the consort of that monarch, after the first interview, lest he should bring an imputation on her virtue, does equal honour to his delicacy.



5. Notwithstanding the splendour with which Darius took the field, not more than three thousand talents were found in the camp, the rest having been removed to Damascus previous to the engagement. But on the surrender of that city to Parmenio by the treachery of the governor, immense treasures, consisting of money and plate, fell into the vi-

tors' hands, besides three hundred and twenty-nine of the wives of Darius, and a considerable number of his domestics.

6. The victory at Issus was followed by the submission of the whole of Phœnicia, except Tyre its capital. This city refused to receive a Macedonian within its walls, which so incensed Alexander, that he immediately determined to lay siege to it, however difficult the undertaking might appear.

7. In the mean time the Sidonians made him a tender of their allegiance, though their king had declared in favour of Darius. Alexander, therefore deposed him, and raised Abdaloni^mus, a descendant, though in a remote degree, from the royal family, to the vacant throne. Hephaestion, one of the king's favourites, being sent to announce this event, found him weeding in his garden.

8. Previous to the attack which Alexander meditated on Tyre, he attempted to gain possession of the place by treaty: for this purpose he sent ambassadors to propose a surrender; but the Tyrians, trusting to the strength of their fortifications, killed his messengers, and threw their bodies from the walls into the sea.

9. This shocking outrage so exasperated Alexander, that he vowed never to desist till he had razed the city to its foundations.

10. Tyre being situated on an island at a small distance from the continent, and possessed of too powerful a fleet to fear an attack by sea, there appeared no other effectual mode of investing it than by erecting an extensive causeway from the shore to the walls.

11. This vast undertaking was twice destroyed,—first by the besieged, and next by a tempest; but at length it was completed, and the siege pressed with the utmost vigour.

12. The Tyrians who, if conquered, expected no mercy, exerted themselves astonishingly in the defence of the place. They turned aside the darts that were discharged from engines against them by means of wheels, which either broke them in pieces, or carried them another way. They prevented the effects of the stones hurled at them by setting up sails, curtains, and other soft substances, which deadened their force; and they repeatedly cast burning sand upon the assailants, which, penetrating to their bodies between the joints of their armour, caused the most excruciating pain.

13. Wearied at length by the tediousness of the siege, which the bravery of the Tyrians had protracted much beyond his expectations, Alexander resolved on a general assault both by sea and land; this was accordingly made, and after every means of offence and defence that could suggest itself had been resorted to, the fortune of Alexander prevailed, and Tyre was taken.

14. Had Alexander manifested his usual lenity to a peo-

ple, whose chief aim was a brave defence of their city, this exploit would have added greatly to his fame; but it was sullied by a cruelty which will for ever be a stain on his character, and which no provocation could completely justify.

15. Besides the almost incredible slaughter that ensued on his gaining possession of the city, no less than two thousand suffered the dreadful punishment of the cross, and thirty thousand were sold as slaves; the city itself was razed, as he had threatened, and from being one of the most flourishing places in the world, now became a heap of ruins.

16. Having rejected proposals of peace made to him by Darius, he marched to Jerusalem to punish the Jews, who had supplied the Tyrians with provisions during the siege, but refused to do the same for his army.

17. He was diverted, however, from this resolution by a deputation of the citizens coming forth to meet him, with their High Priest, Jaddua, at their head, arrayed in his pontificals.

18. Alexander, on their approach, bowed himself before the High Priest with the greatest respect; and on being asked the reason of this humility, he replied, "I adore the God whose minister he is; for at Dium, in Macedonia, this very man, thus attired, appeared to me in a dream, and assured me of victory in the name of his God."

19. Alexander next besieged Gaza, which he took by storm, after an obstinate resistance. Here his cruelty was again displayed, for he cut the whole garrison, consisting of ten thousand men, to pieces; and having bored holes through the feet of Betis, the brave governor, he tied him to his chariot and dragged him round the walls of the city, in imitation of Achilles.

Questions for Examination.

1. Where did the two armies meet? 2. What was the result of the engagement? 3. Did no part of Darius's army make a spirited resistance? 4. What illustrious captives were taken? and how were they treated? 5. Did the conquerors find a rich booty? 6. What was the result of the victory at Issus? 7. What nation next submitted to him? and whom did he appoint their king? 8. Did Alexander determine immediately to attack Tyre? 9. What was the consequence of the barbarity of the Tyrians? 10. What was the peculiar situation of Tyre? 11. Was this a difficult undertaking?

12. Did the Tyrians defend themselves bravely? 13. How was it at last taken? 14. What was Alexander's conduct towards the vanquished? 15. What particular cruelties are recorded? 16. Whither did he next proceed? Did he inflict the punishment he intended on the Jews? 18. What was his conduct on this occasion? 19. What was his next conquest? and how did he treat the conquered?

SECTION V.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tour, <i>s.</i> an excursion; a journey. Ver'dant, <i>a.</i> green. | 13. Transpi'red, <i>v.</i> become known. Crim'inated, <i>v.</i> accused of a crime. |
| 3. Ob'sequies, <i>s.</i> funeral rites. | 15. Ar'rogant, <i>a.</i> haughty; proud. |
| 7. Depos'ited, <i>v.</i> laid up. | 16. Mit'igated, <i>v.</i> softened. |
| 9. Wel'tering, <i>part</i> lying; wallowing. | 18. Fi'nally, <i>ad.</i> at last. Prodig'ious, <i>a.</i> very great. |
| 11. Inter'red, <i>v.</i> buried. | Re'instanted, <i>v.</i> replaced. |
| 13. Relaxa'tion, <i>s.</i> abatement of rigour. | |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, (*continued.*)

1. LEAVING Gaza, Alexander marched to Egypt, which he took possession of without opposition. After making a tour through it, and founding the city of Alexandria, which afterwards became one of the most capital towns in the world, he commenced a romantic expedition to the temple of Jupiter Ammon, which was situated on a verdant and beautiful spot, surrounded by vast deserts of sand.

2. After a difficult and dangerous march he reached this terrestrial paradise, when he was complimented by the priests with the title of son of Jupiter, and assured that he should become monarch of the world.

3. Rejoining the troops that he had left at Tyre, he resumed his career of conquest; yet however determined an enemy he was to Darius, his conduct towards the captive family of that monarch was generous and noble, for Stati'ra, his consort, dying about this time, her obsequies were celebrated with a magnificence and solemnity worthy of her high rank.

4. Darius was so deeply affected with this magnanimity, that, though he was now at the head of a mightier army than ever, he again sent the most advantageous proposals of peace, but they were rejected.

5. With this vast force, therefore, the Persian king attempted, without success, to hinder Alexander's passage of the Tigris. A decisive battle was then fought near the city of Arbe'la, in which near eight hundred thousand Persians were completely routed by about fifty thousand Macedonians, and Darius himself was on the point of falling into the hands of the victors.

6. This dreadful defeat seems to have completed the ruin of Darius. Alexander now took possession both of Babylon and Susa, without striking a blow. In both these cities he found immense treasures.

7. Having received intelligence that the inhabitants of Persep'olis had formed the design of seizing the immense riches deposited there by Darius, he hastened thither to prevent them. On his arrival, this devoted city was given up to be plundered by the soldiery, and the imperial palace, renowned throughout the East for its splendour, was wantonly set on fire by Alexander himself, in a fit of madness and intoxication.

8. In the mean time Darius had taken shelter at Ecbatana, the capital of Media, whither he was pursued by Alexander, who arrived there soon after the unhappy monarch had quitted it.

9. In this desperate state of his affairs, two of his officers, Nabazanes and Bes'sus, seized his person; and on his refusing to accompany them voluntarily in their flight, the traitors stabbed, and left him weltering in his blood.

10. When the victorious Macedonians came up to the place where he lay, they found him still alive, and sufficiently collected to send a message to Alexander, thanking him for the kindness he had shown towards his mother, wife, and children: soon after he expired.

11. Alexander's enmity to Darius being now at an end, he caused his dead body to be embalmed, and enclosed in a magnificent coffin: it was then sent to Sysigambis, to be interred with all due honours.

12. Alexander's next care was to punish the traitors who had thus basely assassinated their master. Bessus, therefore, being soon after taken prisoner, was first deprived of his nose and ears; then four trees being bent towards each other by main force, one of the traitor's limbs was fastened to each, which, on the trees being let go, were torn from his body.

13. The rapid successes of Alexander had so enriched his troops, that a universal relaxation of discipline was the consequence. In hopes, therefore, to end their toils, and enjoy their newly acquired treasures, they conspired the death of the king; but their design having by some means transpired, many were put to death. Among others, Philo'tas, the son of Parmenio, having criminated himself while under the torture, both he and his father were sacrificed to the awakened suspicions of the king.

14. This domestic danger being removed, Alexander next subdued Bactria, crossed the river Oxus, marched to Maracanda, the capital of Sogdiana, and fought against the Scythians with doubtful success.

15. As his dominions became by his conquests daily more extensive, he grew arrogant, boastful, and fond of flattery. Having been rather rudely treated by his friend Clitus at an entertainment, when they were both intoxicated, he struck him dead with a spear, but afterwards bitterly repented the hasty action.

16. Time having mitigated his remorse, he set out on new enterprises, in which his usual good fortune attended him. In one of these he took Roxana, daughter of a Sogdian prince, captive, whom he afterwards publicly married.

17. Having subdued the Persian provinces, he now determined to carry his arms into India, which was considered at that time the richest country in the world. Its inhabitants

were then, as they are at this day, divided into classes or castes, which did not intermarry with each other.

18. Alexander experienced little opposition in his progress through this country at first; but one of its princes, named Porus, disdaining to surrender his independence without a struggle, raised a great army, furnished with two hundred war elephants. But though Porus did every thing that a valiant man and great commander could do, he was finally defeated with prodigious loss. His gallant conduct, however, so pleased Alexander, that he reinstated him in his dominions, and added to them some of the conquered provinces.

Questions for Examination.

1. What expeditions now engaged Alexander's attention ? 2. What was his reception at the temple ? 3. What was his behaviour towards his illustrious captives ? 4. What effect had this conduct on Darius ? 5. What was the event of the battle of Arbela ? 6. Was it decisive ? 7. What was his next exploit ? 8. Whither did Darius betake himself ? 9. Did he find unshaken fidelity among his officers ? 10. Did he immediately expire ? 11. What was Alexander's conduct on the occasion ? 12. Did the traitors escape with impunity ? 13. What were the consequences of these victories ?
14. What were Alexander's next expeditions ? 15. What effect had continued prosperity on Alexander ? 16. What happened after this ? 17. Did he extend his views beyond the conquest of Persia ? 18. Was this a difficult conquest ? and from whom did he experience serious opposition ?

SECTION VI.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Inte'rior, <i>s.</i> the innermost part. | 9. Participa'tion, <i>s.</i> a sharing. |
| 4. Inev'itable, <i>a.</i> unavoidable. | Bacchana'lian, <i>a.</i> drunken. |
| Junc'ture, <i>s.</i> a critical point of time. | 14. Por'traiture, <i>s.</i> a resemblance. |

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, (continued.)

1. AFTER this great victory Alexander proceeded into the interior of India, receiving the submission of the countries through which he passed; but at length his soldiers, tired of this toil without end, and desirous of enjoying the riches which they had with so much danger acquired, absolutely refused to accompany him any further, nor could all his threats, promises, or entreaties prevail on them to alter their resolution.

2. Obliged thus to stop in his career of conquest, Alexander embarked on board his fleet with the light troops, and sailed down the Indus; while the rest of his forces marched along the banks.

3. After proceeding thus for some time, Alexander landed and made an expedition against the Malli, who had

taken up arms against him. When storming their principal city he boldly mounted a scaling-ladder, and leaped into the place with only three attendants.

4. This little band were instantly beset by a host of enemies, but for a considerable time they kept them at bay; till at length, Alexander having received a wound, and one of his guards being killed, their destruction appeared inevitable, when, at this critical juncture, the Macedonian soldiers burst the gates, and hastened to the rescue of their sovereign. The wretched inhabitants were all put to the sword.

5. Having rested a few days to recover of his wound, he pursued his voyage, reducing some Indian tribes as he passed along. At length reaching the ocean, he is said to have wept at the idea that there were no more worlds for him to conquer.

6. After this, pursuing his journey by land, he arrived in Persia, when he visited the tomb of Cyrus. Here he commanded Orsinis, a Persian prince, to be crucified, though innocent of the crime of which he was accused.

7. He next proceeded to Susa, where he married Stati'ra, the daughter of Darius, and gave other Persian ladies of high rank to his principal officers. At the same time he munificently rewarded his army for their services, and distributed promotions with the strictest impartiality.

8. Soon after Alexander published a declaration, by which all the Macedonians who were rendered incapable of sustaining the fatigues of war, were ordered to return to their native country. This gave rise to a serious mutiny, which was with difficulty quelled by the king's firmness and presence of mind. To punish them, he immediately dismissed his Macedonian guards, and filled their places with Persians; nor were they reinstated till they had made the most abject submission.

9. At Ecbatana, the capital of Media, he sustained the loss of his beloved Hephaestion, whose death was supposed to have been hastened by his participation in the bacchanalian entertainments given by the king. Alexander grieved so immoderately for this loss, that for a considerable time he refused all consolation.

10. On his arrival at Babylon he celebrated the funeral rites of his deceased favourite with extraordinary munificence. After which he began to beautify and adorn the city, intending to make it the capital of his empire.

11. But the recollection of his cruelties, the murder of Clitus, the barbarities exercised on Parmenio and his son, with the recent loss of Hephaestion, preyed upon his mind in the midst of all his power and grandeur, and rendered him unhappy, though surrounded with all the pleasures that the world could afford.

12. To stifle these distressing remembrances, Alexander

had recourse to excessive drinking, which brought on a fever that proved fatal to him at the early age of thirty-two years and eight months, of which he had reigned twelve.

13. In this inglorious manner terminated the career of a man, whose life, though short, had been brilliant beyond that of any of his predecessors. Yet was this brilliance, like the flame of a volcano, terribly destructive as well as awfully splendid. Happy would it have been for mankind, had conquerors merely for fame and dominion always experienced the detestation, instead of the admiration of mankind.

14. In person, Alexander was of a middle size, with a fierce majestic countenance. Either through taste or vanity, he would not suffer any portraiture to be formed of him except by the three greatest artists of the age; namely, Praxit'les in sculpture, Lysip'pus in cast-metal, and Apel'les in painting.

15. He was a lover and favourer of the arts and literature, and carried with him in his train poets, orators, and philosophers, though the selection did not always honour his judgment. He rendered a great service to science by his munificent presents to Aristotle, in order to enable him to pursue his inquiries in natural history.

16. He employed men of talents of every description, and while he profited by their labours, rewarded them liberally, —an easy road to reputation; which, however, not many monarchs have had enlargement of mind enough to follow.

Questions for Examination.

1. Did Alexander's troops uniformly second his thirst of conquest?
2. What followed?
4. What narrow escape did he experience?
5. Of what weakness was he guilty?
6. Was he not likewise guilty of great cruelty?
7. What was his conduct at Susa?
8. Did not his troops mutiny?
9. What heavy loss did he sustain?
10. How did he evince his regard for the deceased?
11. Was he happy?
12. How did he attempt to stifle these reproaches of conscience?
13. What reflections may be made on this event?
14. What was the character of Alexander?
15. What did Alexander love and favour?
16. Whom did he employ?

SECTION VII.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. Accu'mulated, <i>v.</i> hoarded; laid up. Prover'bial, <i>a.</i> common as a proverb. Munif'cent, <i>a.</i> bountiful. | 6. Instabil'ity, <i>s.</i> want of firmness. 7. Ambig'uous, <i>a.</i> dubious; uncertain. 8. Indeci'sive, <i>a.</i> without result. |
| 4. Fab'u list, <i>s.</i> a writer of fables. | 12. Ex'tirpate, <i>v.</i> to root out. |
| 5. Exem'plified, <i>v.</i> shown; proved. | 13. Dis'solute, <i>a.</i> debauched. |

CRŒSUS.

1. CRŒSUS, the fifth and last king of Lydia, was the son of Alyat'tes, and born about 592 years before Christ. He was thirty-five years old when he ascended the throne.

2. The expeditions undertaken by this prince were eminently successful; for he not only subdued the effeminate states of Lesser Asia, but compelled some of the most warlike Grecian states to pay him tribute, and obtained a signal victory over the hardy Scythians.

3. By these astonishing successes he accumulated vast wealth, so that the expression "as rich as Croesus" became proverbial; yet he was liberal in his donations to the temples of the gods, and a munificent patron of learned men.

4. Among those who visited his court were *Aesop*, the celebrated fabulist, and *Solon*, the Athenian law-giver. Having displayed before the latter his magnificence and treasures, he asked Solon whom he thought to be the most fortunate man he had ever known, expecting, no doubt, to hear himself named.

5. But when Solon first mentioned *Tel'lus*, an Athenian, who died gloriously fighting for his country, and next *Cle'obis* and *Bit'on*, who suddenly expired while in an act of filial duty, the disappointed monarch peevishly inquired, "What do you think of me, then?" To this Solon answered, "I pronounce no man fortunate before his death." The wisdom of this reply was fully exemplified some time after.

6. The first misfortune that taught Croesus the instability of human happiness, was the loss of his favourite son *A'tys*, who was killed in hunting the wild boar.

7. Encouraged by an ambiguous oracle, which assured him that if he crossed the river *Ha'lys* he would put an end to a great empire, Croesus raised a numerous army, and marched against *Cyrus*, king of Persia, whose conquests he viewed with a jealous eye.

8. He was met by Cyrus with a numerous host, and a general engagement ensued, which appears to have been indecisive, though it is reasonable to suppose that the Lydians were worsted, as Croesus the next day retreated into his own country.

9. Thither he was pursued by Cyrus, and besieged in *Sardis*, his capital city. After a brave but ineffectual defence, it was taken by storm, 548 years B.C., in which Croesus was in imminent danger of his life.

10. With a degree of barbarity not unusual in ancient times, the conqueror condemned Croesus to be burnt alive. As he was ascending the pile, a conviction of the propriety of Solon's remark flashed on his mind, and he called thrice aloud on that philosopher's name.

11. On hearing this, Cyrus demanded the meaning of the exclamation, when he was so struck with the proof of Solon's wisdom now before his eyes, that he pardoned Croesus, and received him to favour.

12. From this time Cyrus treated his royal captive with peculiar distinction, making him his companion and friend;



and such was his interest with his conqueror, that when on a revolt of his former subjects Cyrus had resolved to extirpate the whole nation, he obtained their pardon.

13. It cannot be considered as wise or praiseworthy in Croesus, that he advised Cyrus to compel the Lydians to wear long garments, and to encourage every species of luxury among them, that thus their martial spirit might be by degrees subdued. It appears to have been effectual, for the Lydians were soon after considered the most dissolute and effeminate people of the East.

14. On the death of Cyrus, Croesus appears to have lost his best friend, for Camby'sees treated him extremely ill, and even attempted his life. The time and manner of his death are not known; it is therefore probable that it was not a violent one.

15. The kingdom of Lydia became extinct in his person, and the power, on the conquest by Cyrus, was transferred to Persia.

~~~~~

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Croesus? and when did he flourish?
2. Was he prosperous in his military undertakings?
3. Was he rich? and how did he employ his wealth?
4. Who are particularly mentioned? and what was the reply of Croesus?
5. Was Solon's reply agreeable to the monarch?
6. What first taught Croesus the truth of this observation?
7. What was his most celebrated military expedition?
8. Was he victorious?
9. Did he retire unmolested?
10. How was he treated by Cyrus?
11. Was the sentence executed?
12. What was his treatment afterwards?
13. What advice did he give to Cyrus?
14. What is related of him afterwards?

## SECTION VIII.

- |                                                                 |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 2. As'certain, <i>v.</i> to become certain of.                  | 7. Ty'ranny, <i>s.</i> arbitrary rule; severity. |
| 3. Supersti'tious, <i>a.</i> relying on dreams, idle omens, &c. | Foment'ed, <i>v.</i> encouraged.                 |
| Expo'sed, <i>v.</i> cast out to chance.                         | 8. Insurrec'tion, <i>s.</i> rebellion.           |
| 4. Suppress'ed, <i>v.</i> kept under.                           | 9. E'dict, <i>s.</i> proclamation.               |
| 5. Indig'nity, <i>s.</i> disgrace.                              | 12. Strat'agem, <i>s.</i> artifice.              |
| 6. Mar'tial, <i>a.</i> warlike.                                 | 13. Decap'itated, <i>v.</i> beheaded.            |
|                                                                 | Sa'tiate, <i>v.</i> to fill; to satisfy.         |

## CYRUS THE GREAT.

1. CYRUS THE GREAT, king of Persia, born about 599 years before Christ, was the son of Camby'ses, a man in comparatively humble circumstances, by Manda'ne, daughter of king Asty'ages, who was induced to marry her to a person of such low rank, because he had dreamed that her son would one day dispossess him of the crown.

2. Ancient writers have related the circumstances of this prince's life so differently, that it is difficult to ascertain the truth. We shall therefore follow that relation which bears the greatest marks of probability.

3. On the birth of Cyrus, Astyages, who appears to have been a man of a weak and superstitious mind, ordered him to be exposed, in consequence of another dream; but he was preserved by a shepherdess, and brought up as her own son.

4. His lofty spirit, however, could not be wholly suppressed even in the lowly situation in which he was now placed; for having been elected king by his playmates, he, in virtue of his authority, commanded one of them to be severely scourged for disobedience.

5. The father of the boy, who was a nobleman, complained to the king of this indignity. On this Astyages ordered Cyrus before him, and to his astonishment and terror discovered that he was Mandane's son, whom he so much dreaded.

6. On this discovery, Cyrus was sent to be educated among his relations in Persia, where he soon learned to excel in manly exercises, and acquired a bold and martial character: it is probable, likewise, that he was sometimes employed in military expeditions.

7. In the mean time, the tyranny of Astyages having rendered him hated by his subjects, a rebellion was secretly fomented by Har'pagus, a Persian nobleman, whose son had been wantonly murdered by the king.

8. Cyrus being invited to take the lead in the proposed insurrection, readily accepted the proposal, and putting himself at the head of some troops which he had raised for the occasion, he marched into Media, defeated the generals of Astyages, and in a second battle took the king himself prisoner.

9. From this time he exercised the sovereignty over both Persia and Media; and pursuing his military career, he

subdued Lydia, as has been related in the life of Croesus, took the city of Babylon after a siege of two years, and soon after issued an edict, permitting the Jews to return and rebuild their city and temple.

10. Babylon was a city of considerable extent and strength. It had 100 brazen gates, and its walls, 50 cubits in thickness and 200 in length, were cemented with bitumen. Cyrus subdued it by draining the Euphrates into a new channel, and then marching his troops by night into the town through the dried bed.

11. The last expedition of this celebrated warrior was against the Mas'sagetae, a Scythian nation, at that time under the dominion of a queen named Tom'yris.

12. The first army that was sent against him was defeated with great slaughter, and the queen's son slain, though this is said to have been effected more by stratagem than by force; but in the next engagement Cyrus sustained a complete overthrow, himself and the greatest part of his forces being cut in pieces.

13. Tomyris, not satisfied with the death of her enemy, extended her revenge even to his lifeless body. Causing it to be decapitated, she cast the head into a vessel filled with human blood, reproachfully exclaiming, "Satiate thyself with that blood, for which thou hast so ardently thirsted!"

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Cyrus the Great?
2. Do authors agree respecting this renowned prince?
3. To what dangers was he exposed at his birth?
4. What proofs did he give of his royal extraction?
5. How was the discovery of his birth brought about?
6. What followed this discovery?
7. What contributed to his advancement?
8. What did Cyrus do on this occasion?
9. What actions are recorded of him after this success?
11. What was his last expedition?
12. What was the fate of this enterprise?
13. Was the anger of Tomyris for the death of her son appeased by this event? What indignity was offered to the lifeless body of Cyrus?

### SECTION IX.

- |                                                                                |                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Fero'city, <i>s.</i> fierceness; cruelty.<br>Insan'iety, <i>s.</i> madness. | 11. Supplant'ed, <i>v.</i> usurped.                                   |
| 2. Explo'it, <i>s.</i> a gallant enterprise.                                   | 12. Enu'merate, <i>v.</i> to relate.                                  |
| 3. Inva'sion, <i>s.</i> attack of a country.                                   | 13. Intem'perance, <i>s.</i> drunkenness.                             |
| 7. Trav'ersing, <i>part.</i> crossing.                                         | 14. Flay'ed, <i>v.</i> skinned.                                       |
| 9. Ar'id, <i>a.</i> dry; sandy.                                                | 15. Mal-admin'istration, <i>s.</i> evil government of public affairs. |
| 10. Ir'ritated, <i>v.</i> made angry.                                          | 16. Scab'bard, <i>s.</i> sheath.                                      |

### CAMBYES.

1. CAMBYSES, the son of the before-mentioned Cyrus, succeeded his father as king of Persia about 529 years before Christ, and almost immediately began to display a ferocity bordering on insanity.

2. His first remarkable exploit was an expedition into Egypt, to revenge a disappointment which he had experienced; for Ama'sis, the king, had promised him his daughter in marriage, and afterwards deceived him.

3. While preparations were making for this invasion, Amasis died, and was succeeded by his son Psammeni'tus, but this event did not satisfy the revenge of Cambyses; he therefore proceeded in his design, overthrew the army of Psammenitus, and took him prisoner.

4. After exercising the greatest cruelties on his illustrious captives, Cambyses put the unfortunate monarch to death, treated the dead body of Amasis with every barbarous indignity, and reduced Egypt to the state of a province.

5. He next determined to chastise the king of Ethiopia, who had set him at defiance. For this purpose, leaving a sufficient force to secure his conquests, he marched with a vast army into Upper Egypt.

6. Detaching a force of fifty thousand men against the temple of Jupiter Ammon, which he wished to destroy, he proceeded with the rest towards Ethiopia; but, destitute of that prudent foresight which constitutes one of the chief excellencies of a great general, he neglected to furnish his troops with the provisions necessary for such an enterprise.

7. The consequences were such as might have been expected; for in traversing the vast deserts which lay in their way, they were reduced to the most dreadful extremities: they first devoured their horses, camels, and other beasts of burthen; then every herb that could be found; and at length one another.

8. Notwithstanding these dreadful obstacles, the king persisted in his mad design, till the greater part of his numerous host was destroyed, and himself in imminent danger. He then returned to Thebes, in Upper Egypt.

9. The detachment sent against the temple of Ammon was never heard of; and the most probable conjecture is, that it was overwhelmed by one of the tempests of sand, which are so common in those arid regions.

10. Irritated at the ill success of his enterprises, Cambyses set no bounds to his cruelty; and not content with this, he insulted the religious prejudices of the Egyptians, killed the sacred bull, A'pis, with his own hand, and destroyed their temples.

11. Having dreamed that his brother Smer'dis had supplanted him in the kingdom, he gave orders to put him to death. He next married his own sister, and afterwards killed her by a kick.

12. It would be endless to enumerate his cruelties: one or two instances, therefore, will suffice.

13. Hearing that one of his nobles had censured his intemperance, he placed the son of this unhappy man against

the wall of a room, and shot him to the heart with an arrow. Then triumphantly demanding, "Have I not a steady hand?" the wretched parent replied, "A god could not shoot better!"

14. The next barbarous action had some colourable pretence, for one of his judges having been convicted of partiality, Cambyses commanded him to be flayed alive, and the seat of judgment to be covered with his skin. Then giving the vacant office to his son, he advised him to remember the place whereon he sat.

15. His mal-administration, and long absence from his dominions, gave an opportunity to Oro'pastes, one of the Magi, to assume the name of Smerdis, who he pretended had not been put to death, as Cambyses commanded. Under this name, therefore, he mounted the throne.

16. Cambyses was in Syria when he heard this news, and he lost not a moment in preparing to chastise the rebel; but as he was mounting his horse for that purpose, his sword, slipping out of its scabbard, pierced his thigh. Of this wound he died, in the eighth year of his reign.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Cambyses? and what was his character? 2. What was his first military exploit, and the occasion of it? 4. Did Cambyses make a moderate use of his victory? 5. Against whom was his next expedition directed? 7. What were the consequences of his imprudence? 8. Did the king easily relinquish his designs?

9. What became of the troops sent against the temple of Ammon? 10. What was the conduct of Cambyses on his return? 11. What other atrocities was he guilty of? 13. In what manner did he punish freedom of remark? 14. How did he punish an unjust judge? 15. What ill consequence followed his barbarity and absence? 16. How did he act in this emergency, and what was the result?

#### SECTION X.

|                                                             |                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Usurp'er, <i>s.</i> one who takes what is not his right. | 9. Car'nage, <i>s.</i> slaughter.                                              |
| 3. Hom'age, <i>s.</i> submission.                           | Impaled, <i>v.</i> a stake driven through the body.                            |
| 4. Assu'med, <i>v.</i> took.                                | Inauspi'cious, <i>a.</i> unfavourable.                                         |
| 7. Gar'rison, <i>s.</i> defenders of a town.                | 18. Repub'lic, <i>s.</i> a state governed by magistrates chosen by the people. |
| 8. Sal'ties, <i>s.</i> attacks of the besiegers.            |                                                                                |

#### DARIUS HYSTASPES.

1. DARI'US I., king of Persia, was the son of Hystas'-pes, a satrap of high rank, and governor of the province of Persia.

2. When Oropastes, one of the Magi, assumed the royal title under the pretence of being Smerdis, brother to Cambyses, Darius conspired with six other noblemen to put the usurper to death.

3. Having accomplished their design, they agreed to elect a king from their own number. For this purpose they were to assemble on horseback in a plain without the city, and he whose horse first neighed, was to be saluted king. By a particular device on the part of Darius, he was the fortunate person on whom the lot fell, when he immediately received the homage of his companions, and took quiet possession of the throne.

4. Darius was twenty-nine years old when he assumed the regal authority, and was a prince of an active disposition. He divided the whole empire into twenty satrapies, or governments, and regulated the tribute to be paid to each.

5. Under pretence of an outrage committed at the palace gates, he put Intapher'nes, one of the conspirators against Smerdis, to death; but it is probable that the true cause was jealousy of his extensive influence.

6. Babylon having revolted in consequence of the oppression of his government, Darius besieged it ineffectually for a year and eight months. At length it was taken by the following stratagem:—

7. Zopyrus, one of his principal officers, voluntarily disfigured himself by cutting off his nose and ears: in this mangled condition he went over to the enemy, and pretending that he had deserted in consequence of being thus treated by the king, obtained an honourable command in the garrison.

8. To preserve appearances, he headed the troops in several sallies, and obtained some petty successes; but an opportunity at length offering, he betrayed one of the gates to the king, who entered and took the city.

9. The cruelties exercised on both sides during, and at the close of, this siege, sufficiently show the ferocious manners of the times; for the Babylonians massacred a vast number of their own women, to lessen the consumption of provisions. Darius, likewise, in addition to the carnage usually attendant on the taking of a city, impaled three thousand of the most active in the revolt.

10. His next expedition was against the Scythians, a hardy race inhabiting the southern parts of Germany and Russia. On his march he subdued Thrace, and crossing the Ister, or Danube, by a bridge of boats, entered Scythia without opposition.

11. This conduct on the part of the enemy arose from policy, not fear, for they considered it a much safer plan to destroy the Persians by famine and fatigue, than by the sword; they therefore continually retired, laying waste the country as they passed.

12. This plan had the desired effect, for Darius was compelled, by want of provisions, to retire with such haste as to leave his sick behind him. He found the bridge of boats

entire, though the keepers of it had been strongly solicited by the enemy to destroy it.

13. Darius having repassed the river, and left a part of his army in Thrace to secure its allegiance, returned with disgrace into his own dominions.

14. His next expedition was against India, which he is said to have subdued; but the relation of this event is so imperfect, that the extent of his conquests in that country is unknown.

15. A war soon broke out between Persia and Greece, and the conduct of it, on Darius's part, was committed to Mardonius; but his fleet having been shattered in a storm, and his land forces much diminished by an attack of the Thracians, he was obliged to return.

16. Undismayed by this inauspicious beginning, Darius assembled a more powerful fleet and army under Da'tis and Artapher'nes, whom he sent with orders to raze the cities of Athens and Eretria, and to bring the inhabitants before him in fetters.

17. Their first attempts were encouraging; for the isle of Naxos submitted to their arms, and the city of Eretria, though gallantly defended by its inhabitants, was taken by storm, after a siege of seven days, reduced to ashes, and the captives sent to Persia in chains, as the first fruits of their victories.

18. But it too often happens that a short-lived prosperity is succeeded by the deepest adversity. Thus it proved with the Persian army; for on their arrival on the plains of Marathon, about ten miles from Athens, they were met by the forces of that republic, consisting of ten thousand men under the command of Milti'ades.

19. The disproportion was so immense between this handful of men and the vast host of the Persians, that the latter were under no apprehensions for the result; but they soon found the difference between a well-disciplined army, animated with the love of liberty, and fighting for their country and all they held dear, and an irregular crowd of mercenary slaves, who had no interest in the issue of the combat further than related to their own personal safety; for they were routed with great slaughter, and the survivors fled to their ships for shelter.

20. These successive disappointments did not discourage Darius; he therefore made great levies for carrying on the war in person, but death surprised him in the midst of his preparations, in the sixty-fifth year of his age, and the thirty-sixth of his reign, 485 years B.C.

21. Darius is represented by historians as brave, just, and humane. This is not a little praise, when applied to one whom flattery and unbounded power contributed to corrupt.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Darius Hystaspes ? 2. What led to his elevation ?
  3. In what manner was Darius elected ? 4. What was the age of Darius ? 5. What measures of severity did he adopt ? 6. What military enterprise did he now undertake ? 9. What cruelties were exercised on this occasion ? 10. What was the next expedition of Darius ?
  11. What were the motives of the Scythians for this apparent cowardice ? 13. In what manner did he return ? 14. What new enterprise did he undertake ? 15. With whom did he next commence hostilities ? 16. Was the attempt abandoned ? 17. Was this army successful ? 19. What was the result of this meeting ? 20. Did Darius make any further attempts ? 21. What was his character ?
- 

## SECTION XI.

- |                                              |                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 3. Dissua'ded, <i>v.</i> persuaded against.  | 16. Des'perate, <i>a.</i> almost hopeless. |
| 5. Ren'dezvous, <i>v.</i> to meet; assemble. | 18. Am'ple, <i>a.</i> full.                |
| 15. Pavil'ion, <i>s.</i> a tent.             | 24. Co'meliness, <i>s.</i> grace; beauty.  |

## XERXES.

1. XERX'ES, king of Persia, was the second son of Darius Hystaspes, and succeeded his father 485 years before Christ. He was preferred to the elder brother, Artaba'zanes, because he was born after his father became king, which was not the case with the other.

2. Xerxes seemed to inherit the warlike disposition of his father. His first military attempt was against the revolted kingdom of Egypt, which he subdued, and added to his extensive dominions.

3. Flushed with this success, he next determined to attempt the reduction of Greece, though dissuaded from the enterprise by his uncle Artaba'nus.

4. Preparations were now made on so extensive a scale, as plainly to show the high idea that was entertained of the enemy. His army, composed of the men of every nation under his dominion, amounted to two millions; on board his numerous fleet were six hundred thousand; if to these we add the women, slaves, and sutlers that accompanied the camp, the amount would not be less than five million souls.

5. The land forces were commanded to rendezvous at Sardis; the fleet near the straits of the Hellespont. On his march the cruelty of Xerxes was eminently conspicuous; for Pythias, a Lydian prince, having offered him all his treasures, amounting to four millions sterling, to excuse his eldest son from attending him, Xerxes, instead of complying with his request, commanded the youth to be put to death before his father's eyes, and his mangled limbs to be placed on each side of the road through which his army was to pass.

6. A bridge of boats, constructed for the passage of his army across the Hellespont, having been carried away by

the violence of the waves, Xerxes, with a mixture of cruelty and madness, commanded the heads of the workmen to be struck off, the sea to be chastised with stripes, and fetters thrown into it.

7. A stronger bridge having been built, the whole army passed over; but such was its immense number, that seven days were consumed in the passage.

8. Xerxes having at length arrived in Europe, received the submission of many of the Grecian states. Athens and Sparta alone determined boldly to face the danger, and rather to perish in the cause of liberty than submit to a foreign yoke.

9. The place chosen to be the first scene of their opposition, was the strait of Thermop'yłæ, so called from the hot-baths in its vicinity. This strait was only twenty-five feet broad, and was fortified by a gate and an old wall.

10. This place was defended by Leonidas, king of Sparta, with six thousand men only, three hundred of whom were Spartans, the rest being Boeotians, Corinthians, Phocians, and other allies.

11. Xerxes, in the mean time advancing, was struck with astonishment that such a little band should dare to defend the pass against so immense an army: he therefore sent them a summons to deliver up their arms; to which Leonidas replied, "Let him come and take them."

12. Irritated by this contemptuous message, Xerxes commanded an assault to be made, but the assailants were driven back with great slaughter. The attack was renewed by a body of ten thousand Persians, called the "immortal band," but without success.

13. This unequal combat was sustained for three days, and might have continued much longer, had not a traitor Greek gone over to the Persians, and offered to conduct them through a by-path to fall on the rear of the Greeks.

14. No sooner was this known to Leonidas, than he perceived at once the impossibility of maintaining his post. He therefore sent away all his army, except his 300 Spartans, and a few Thespians and Thebans.

15. This little band, on the approach of night, boldly entered the Persian camp, and bearing down all before them, attempted to reach the royal pavilion. The darkness aided their enterprise; for the Persians, unable to distinguish friend from foe, frequently destroyed each other.

16. But before they could accomplish their desperate undertaking, day dawned and discovered the smallness of their number. Being surrounded by the enemy they were at length slain, after having caused a loss to the Persians of twenty thousand men.

17. On the same day an engagement took place between the Grecian and Persian fleets, in which the former were

victorious, taking or destroying thirty of the enemy's ships, and forcing a hundred and seventy to sea, where they perished in a tempest.

18. Xerxes now proceeded unopposed through the open country, and directed his march towards Athens, on which city he determined to take ample revenge. The oracle, however, having commanded the Athenians to defend themselves with wooden walls, they, by the advice of Themistocles, took shelter on board their ships.

19. In consequence of this, Xerxes, on his arrival, found only a few aged persons, and some who put a different interpretation on the oracle. These, retiring into the citadel, fortified it with boards; but found this defence was not meant by Apollo, for the place was taken by storm, and every one it contained put to the sword.

20. In the mean time the Grecian fleet, under the command of Eurybiades and Themistocles, engaged the Persian fleet near Salamis, and completely defeated it in sight of their sovereign, who viewed the combat from an eminence on the shore.

21. This fatal blow so alarmed Xerxes, that, leaving three hundred thousand of his choicest troops under Mardonius, to prevent his retreat being molested, he himself, with the remains of his immense army, hastened to return into Asia, famine and death following his steps.

22. On his arrival at the Hellespont, finding the bridge of boats destroyed, this proud monarch was obliged to cross in a small fishing-vessel, happy to escape even in that ignominious manner.

23. But no sooner was he safely arrived in his capital, than he gave himself up to every species of riot and debauchery. This rendered him so offensive in the eyes of his subjects, that he was assassinated by Artabanus, the captain of his guards, in the twenty-first year of his reign.

24. Ancient authors have agreed, that Xerxes excelled almost every man in his dominions in stature and comeliness, and some have even praised him for the humanity of his disposition, because he wept on reflecting that all his immense army would, in less than one hundred years, be no more. But the instances of his cruelty on record will sufficiently prove that his sorrow arose more from a reflection on the instability of his power, than from humanity of heart.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Xerxes ? and why was he preferred to his elder brother ?
3. What resulted from the conquest of Egypt ?
5. Where did the force destined for the reduction of Greece assemble ? and what occurred worthy of record ?
6. What instance of folly and cruelty did Xerxes next exhibit ?
7. How did they at length pass over ?
- 9.

What was the first scene of glory to the Greeks ? 10. Who were the noble heroes that here fought and conquered ? 13. Was their resistance effectual ? 14. What was the consequence of this treachery ? 15. What bold undertaking is recorded of them ? 17. What other engagement took place on the same day ? 18. With what views did Xerxes march to Athens ? 20. What check did his ambition now receive ? 22. How did he recross the Hellespont ? 23. What was his conduct on his return to his capital ? 24. What were his personal perfections and his character ?

---

## SECTION XII.

- |                                                   |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 3. Ingra'tiated, <i>v.</i> got into favour.       | 13. Re'gal, <i>a.</i> kingly.              |
| 8. Reci'te, <i>v.</i> to repeat.                  | 14. Suspend'ed, <i>v.</i> hung.            |
| 10. Sub'stituting, <i>p.</i> putting in place of. | 15. Ela'ted, <i>v.</i> pleased; delighted. |
| 13. Expa'tiate, <i>v.</i> to enlarge upon.        | Sarcas'tic, <i>a.</i> severe; taunting.    |

## DIONYSIUS THE ELDER.

1. DIONYSIUS THE ELDER, king or tyrant of Syracuse, was the son of Hermocrates, a man of middling rank, who having been banished, attempted to return by force of arms, and was killed in the action.

2. Dionysius distinguished himself in the war against the Carthaginians, and by many popular actions obtained by degrees the post of commander-in-chief.

3. Having attained this eminence, he ingratiated himself with the soldiery by doubling their pay, and pretending that his life was in danger, he obtained a body guard; then possessing himself of the citadel, he openly assumed the title of king, in the twenty-fifth year of his age, 404 B. C.

4. On his departure from Syracuse to engage the Carthaginians, his cavalry deserted him, and returning home, seized the citadel, plundered his treasures, and behaved with brutal insolence to his wife. But Dionysius following with his mercenaries with the utmost speed, recovered the place, and severely revenged the outrage that had been committed.

5. His tyranny having excited another revolt, he was closely besieged in that part of the city called the *island*, where he was reduced to the greatest extremities; but by his superior craft, and the assistance of a party, he recovered the sovereign power.

6. His ambition next induced him to attempt the reduction of the whole island, which after many desperate struggles he at length accomplished, and obliged the Carthaginians to sue for permission to leave it. After this he carried his arms into Italy, when, after a long and bloody siege, he took Rhegium, and sold the surviving inhabitants for slaves.

7. But the ambition of Dionysius was not confined to an extension of dominion: he aspired likewise to eminence in literature, and wished to be thought the greatest poet of *his age*.

8. With this view he sent his brother Theodosius to recite some of his verses at the Olympic games; but instead of receiving the wished-for applause, his performance was saluted with hisses and groans. He was, however, more fortunate at Athens, and the prize which was adjudged to him there, gave him more pleasure than the greatest victories acquired by his arms.

9. A second mortification which he met with at the same games, soured his disposition, and rendered him more tyrannical than ever; and in order to raise money to carry on the war, which he had again entered into with the Carthaginians, he robbed the temples of the gods.

10. To this sacrilege he is said to have added ridicule, for he stripped the statue of Jupiter of a golden robe, pretending that it was too heavy for summer, and too cold for winter; substituting a woollen mantle, as more fit for all seasons. He likewise took away the golden beard of Esculapius, saying that it was a shame for the son to have such an ornament, while his father, Apollo, was entirely destitute.

11. Dionysius had been prevailed on to invite the divine Plato to his court; but the sentiments and discourses of that eminent man were so little to his taste, that he not only sent him away in disgrace, but even commanded him to be sold for a slave.

12. Frequent conspiracies against his person, and a consciousness of the hatred that his cruelties had inspired, rendered him one of the most suspicious tyrants that the world had ever known. He never approached the apartment of his wives without searching for concealed weapons, nor suffered a barber to touch his head, but always burnt his beard. He also slept in a chamber surrounded with a deep ditch, having a drawbridge.

13. Damocles, one of his courtiers, having one day expatiated largely on the happiness of his master, Dionysius determined to let him taste this felicity. He therefore made an entertainment, at which Damocles presided, dressed in the royal robes, and attended with all the respect due to the regal office.

14. Damocles for some time enjoyed his situation greatly; but on looking up, he perceived with terror that a naked sword was suspended over his head by a single hair. This effectually banished his mirth, and made him desirous of returning to his former station.

15. Dionysius having written a tragedy, it was performed at Athens during the feast of Bacchus, and awarded the prize. This so elated its author, that he offered a solemn sacrifice, feasted the whole city of Syracuse, and drank to such excess, that he soon after died, in the sixty-third year of his age, and thirty-eighth of his reign, 366 years B. C.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Dionysius the elder ? 2. By what means did he attain to eminence ? 4. What unpleasant event occurred during his absence from Syracuse ? 6. What were his next military exploits ? 7. Was the ambition of Dionysius confined to military glory ? 8. What was the success of his attempts ?
  9. What was the consequence of his ill success ? 11. Did he encourage learned and good men ? 12. What was his character during the latter part of his reign ? 13. How did he cure ambition in one of his courtiers ? 15. What were the circumstances of his death ?
- 

## SECTION XIII.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Ener'vate, <i>v.</i> to weaken.<br>6. Pu'nic, <i>a.</i> a contraction for Phoeni-cian, <i>i. e.</i> Carthaginian,—Carthage having been built by Phoenicians.<br>10. States'man, <i>s.</i> one employed in the affairs or government of a state. | 11. Tri'umph, <i>s.</i> victory; joy or pompous procession for a victory.<br>16. Invid'iou, <i>a.</i> envious; hateful.<br>20. Pop'ularity, <i>s.</i> favour of the people.<br>21. Polit'ical, <i>a.</i> relating to politics, or the management of state affairs. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## HANNIBAL AND THE SCIPIOS.

1. HAN'NIBAL, the Carthaginian, was one of the greatest generals of antiquity. When only nine years old his father, Hamil'car, induced him to take an oath of perpetual hostility to the Romans.

2. In his twenty-fifth year he was appointed to the supreme command of the Carthaginian armies. He completely subdued Spain in three years, and thence marched to Italy at the head of a well-disciplined army composed of various nations, and which, according to Livy, amounted to 100,000 foot and 20,000 horse, though other authorities make it considerably less.

3. He traversed Gaul, bearing down all opposition, crossed the Alps, which had never been passed over before by an army, except by that of Her'cules, and met and defeated the Roman armies in several pitched battles, the principal of which was that of Can'næ.

4. In this celebrated engagement the Romans lost at least 40,000 men, some say more; and such was the slaughter of the Roman knights, that the gold rings taken from their fingers filled three bushels, which he sent to Carthage as a token of his victory.

5. Instead of following up his advantages, and immediately attacking the city of Rome itself, he retired to Cap'ua, where his soldiers soon became enervated by the pleasures and riot of that luxurious city.

6. The Romans not only continued to oppose him in Italy, but determined on sending an army to Africa to carry on the war in the territories of the Carthaginians. Hannibal was, in consequence, recalled from Italy. He is said to have shed tears on leaving a country which he had kept in

a state of continual alarm and partial subjection for sixteen years.

7. In a general engagement fought shortly afterwards at Za'ma, near Carthage, his army was defeated by the Romans under Scip'io ; 20,000 of his troops were killed, and the same number made prisoners.

8. This battle decided the second Punic war. Carthage was obliged to submit to the hard conditions imposed by her victorious rival. Hannibal, to escape the vengeance of the Romans, took refuge, first with Anti'ochus king of Syria, and afterwards with Pru'sias king of Bithynia, from whom he was demanded by the Romans, who were determined on his destruction.

9. Rather than fall into their hands, he took a dose of poison, which he always carried with him in a ring on his finger. He died in his seventieth year, 182 years B. C.

10. Scipio, who conquered him, calls him the greatest general that ever lived. He was also distinguished as a scholar, and conspicuous as a statesman.

11. Intimately connected with the history of Hannibal was Publius Cornelius Scipio, surnamed Africanus from his triumphs over the Carthaginians in Africa.

12. After the disastrous battle of Cannæ, when he heard that some of his countrymen wished to abandon Rome, with sword in hand he compelled them to swear eternal fidelity to their country.

13. He was, some time after, placed at the head of the Roman army in Spain, which country, by a succession of brilliant victories, he rescued from the Carthaginians, and made it tributary to Rome.

14. As an instance of his magnanimity, it is related that, after the taking of New Carthage in Spain, he refused to see a beautiful princess who had fallen into the hands of the victors, and not only restored her to her parents, but also added large presents for the person to whom she was betrothed.

15. It was he who proposed to carry the war into Africa; being appointed to the command, he routed the Carthaginian armies, approached the city of Carthage, and after the decisive battle of Zama dictated to it, as a conqueror, the most severe and humiliating terms.

16. On his return to Rome, he was honoured with a triumph, but subsequently made himself unpopular by attempting to establish an invidious distinction between the senators and the rest of the people at the public exhibitions. Disgusted with the ingratitude of his countrymen, he at length removed from Rome to Liternum : in this retreat he died, 184 B. C., in the forty-eighth year of his age. In his latter days the poet En'nius was the companion of his peace and retirement.

17. Though denied the honours due to his exalted merit whilst living, he was not forgotten when dead. His character was viewed by his country with reverence, his military exploits duly extolled, and his name held up to future ages as an example of innocence, virtue, courage, and liberality.

18. Not less distinguished for his skill and success in war than for his private virtues, was Scipio Africanus the younger; he was a son of Paulus Æmilius, who had subdued Macedonia, and took the name of Scipio, having been adopted by the son of the elder Scipio Africanus.

19. Placed at the head of the Roman army, he brought to a conclusion the third and last Punic war, by destroying Carthage with fire and sword, and levelling its defences with the ground. On his return to Rome he was, like his adopted grandfather, honoured with a triumph and the surname of Africanus. He afterwards finished the Numantine war in Spain by the capture of Numantia, which had for a long time bravely resisted the Romans; and for this success received a second triumph and the surname of Numantinus.

20. His popularity, however, was short, and he retired from public life to Caie'ta, where with his friend Lælius he passed his time in the innocent diversions and amusements which had pleased them when children. He died suddenly B.C. 128, but not without suspicion of having been strangled by his political enemies. He was fond of literature, and rescued many valuable works from the flames of Carthage. Though one of the greatest men of his age, he died very poor.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What was Hannibal? What oath did he take against the Romans? 2. At what age appointed to the chief command of the Carthaginian armies? In what time did he subdue Spain? 3. What mountains did he cross? Whom defeat? 4. What sign of victory did he send to Carthage? 6. What course did the Romans now pursue? What did Hannibal do? 7. By whom conquered? 8. What was the result of this battle? Where did Hannibal take refuge? 9. How and when did he die? 10. What was Scipio's opinion of him? For what was he remarkable?

11. Why was Scipio surnamed Africanus? 13. What country did he conquer? From whom? 14. Relate an instance of his forbearance and self-command. 15. Where did he next command? 16. How was he received in Rome? What made him unpopular? Who was his companion? When and where did he die? 17. How was he regarded by the Romans after death? 18. Who was Scipio Africanus the younger? 19. What was the fate of Carthage? In what Punic war? How was he rewarded? What war did he next finish? 20. How and when did he die?

HISTORICAL  
AND  
MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

---

CHAPTER I.

A Preliminary View of General History.

SECTION I.

8. Aristoc'racy, *s.* the rule of the nobles. | 9. Aborig'inal, *a.* first; earliest.  
Oligarchy, *s.* the rule of a few. | 19. Allegor'ical, *a.* not real; figurative.  
Democ'racy, *s.* the rule of the people. | Obscur'ity, *s.* darkness.

1. WHAT were the effects of the general Deluge? The destruction of the whole human race, except No'ah and his family, who were preserved in the ark.

2. What were the principal events that took place shortly after this great era? The re-peopling of the earth by the descendants of Noah; the building of the tower of Ba'bel; the confusion of tongues; the dispersion of mankind into different countries, and their division into separate societies.

3. What monarchies were first founded after the Deluge? The Babylonian monarchy, founded by Nim'rod, 2221 years B. C.; the Chinese by Fo'hi, B.C. 2207; the Egyptian by Miz'raim, B.C. 2188; the ancient Assyrian by Ash'ur, the second son of Shem, B. C. 2059.

4. What nation, according to the general opinion of historians, first introduced a regular form of government? The Egyptians, in the time of Ja'cob; they first gave mankind the principles of civil order, and to them we are indebted for the origin of the useful and elegant arts.

5. Who were the Egyptians? The inhabitants of Egypt, the descendants of Mizraim, the son of Ham.

6. What is meant by *government*? A government is that amount of civilization, whereby a society of men have united, and formed laws for their common security and welfare. A society thus formed is called a *State*. That part of the earth which they inhabit, is called the *territory* of that state; and the body of inhabitants the *people*.

7. How many kinds of government are there? There are many, but the principal are the following; namely,

8. When the sovereign power is exercised by one person, it is called a *monarchy*. When the power of the monarch is limited by law, it is called a *limited monarchy*. When the

power of the monarch is not limited by law, the government is said to be *absolute*, or *arbitrary*. When the government is very absolute, it is called *despotic*. When the supreme power is vested in the hands of many, it is called a *republic*. When in the hands of the nobles, an *aristocracy*. When possessed by a few, an *oligarchy*. If by the people at large, a *democracy*. Thus, the British constitution partakes of the *monarchical*, *aristocratical*, and *democratical* forms: Polybius says this was the case with the government of Rome, which he extols as the most excellent system in the world.

9. What part of Europe was first civilized? Ath'ens. Ce-crops landed here with an Egyptian colony, B. C. 1556, and introduced order and harmony among the aboriginal inhabitants.

10. Who founded the kingdom of Troy? Scaman'der led a colony from Crete into Phry'gia, and settled at the foot of Mount Ida, B. C. 1546.

11. Who was Amphic'tyon? The third king of Athens. He established the council of Amphictyons at Thermop'yłæ, B. C. 1496.

12. When, and by whom, was the city of Thebes in Greece founded? By Cad'mus, B. C. 1493, who established a Phœnician colony here, and first introduced the use of letters into Europe.

13. What great event in the history of the Israelites happened about this time? Their departure from Egypt under the conduct of Mo'ses, B. C. 1491.

14. What other events of importance occurred about this time? The celebrated city of Spar'ta, the capital of Laco-nia in Greece, was built by Lacede'mon, B. C. 1490. Da-naus arrived in Greece from Egypt, and brought with him his fifty daughters, B. C. 1485: he settled at Ar'gos. The city of Troy was enlarged by Dar'danus, B. C. 1480. The first Olympic games were celebrated at E'lis by the Idæi Dac'tyli, B. C. 1453:

15. The Pentateuch, or first five books of the Old Testament, was finished in the land of Mo'ab by Moses, B. C. 1451, and his death took place here the same year. The Israelites under Josh'ua passed the Jordan, and entered Canaan, on Friday, April 30th, B. C. 1451, and the country was conquered and divided among them B. C. 1445.

16. Who was the famed Cre'tan law-giver? Mi'nos, king of Crete: he flourished B. C. 1406. His wisdom, justice, and moderation procured for him the appellation of the "favourite of the gods." He established also a considerable maritime power.

17. Mention a few other remarkable events that distinguish this period. The introduction of the Eleusi'rian *mysteries* at Athens, B. C. 1356; the institution of the Isth-

mian games, B.C. 1326 ; of the Olympic games by Pelops, B.C. 1307, (these games, however, were not regularly celebrated till long after) ; the building of that great commercial city Tyre, B.C. 1252, and the foundation of Carthage by a Tyrian colony, B.C. 1233 ;\* the Argonautic expedition, B.C. 1225. This grand division of history closes with the destruction of Troy by the Greeks, in the night between the 11th and 12th June, B.C. 1184, and 408 years before the first Olympiad.

18. What have you to observe upon the general character of the history of the above periods ? The only records on which we can place implicit reliance, are the Sacred Scriptures ; and these, after the conquest of Canaan by the Israelites, are chiefly confined to details of their connexions or differences with the nations in their immediate neighbourhood. The earliest profane writers, with whom we are acquainted, were Sanchoni'athon, a Phœnician, who lived several years after the Trojan war; Ho'mer, who lived a century later, and Cad'mus of Mile'tus, the first prose historian, who flourished under Cyrus, B.C. 540.

19. The annals of those distant ages being derived chiefly from tradition, are necessarily very imperfect and confused, and deeply involved in fabulous and allegorical obscurities. The same observation applies to many of their dates.

20. Whence do we derive our information respecting the siege of Troy ? Chiefly from Homer, who derived his information partly from works now lost, and partly from the current traditions of the age in which he lived.

21. What important changes now took place in the civil polity and affairs of the Israelites ? Their form of government by judges was changed into a monarchy, and Saul, by divine appointment, was made their first king, B.C. 1095. After his death in battle with the Philistines, David ascended the throne, and by his conduct, wisdom, and valour, raised his country to a pitch of greatness it had never previously attained. His son, Solomon, succeeded him, B.C. 1015, about the time at which regal government was abolished in Athens, and a republic established in its stead.

22. How, and with whom, did the first Assyrian monarchy end ? The luxury and indolence of the Assyrian monarchs were carried to the highest pitch by Sardanapa'lus, the last sovereign of that great empire. Arba'ces, governor of Me'dia, assisted by Be'lesis, a Chaldean priest, rebelled against him, routed his army, and besieged and took Nineveh. Sar-

\* The precise time, however, is undetermined. It is said by some celebrated writers to have been originally founded by Tzo'rus and Carche'don, fifty years before the fall of Troy. The second founding of Carthage occurred 173 years subsequent to the former : with this epoch the mention of Dido comes in for the first time. Her true era appears to be that of the third founding of the city, 190 years later.

danapalus, unwilling to survive his defeat, burned himself in his palace, with his treasures and the ministers of his luxuries. Thus ended the first Assyrian empire, B. C. 820, and three kingdoms arose out of its ruins. Arbaces ascended the throne of Media, and made Ecbat'ana his capital. Belis was acknowledged as monarch of the remaining part of the empire of Assyria.

23. What remarkable characters flourished about the middle of this period? The prophet Eli'jah, the poets Homer\* and He'siod, and Lycur'gus the great lawgiver of Sparta.

24. When did the Greeks begin to reckon time from the celebration of the Olympic games? The era of the Olympiads began B. C. 776.

25. What cities of note were built about this period? Carthage was rebuilt, or rather enlarged, B. C. 869; and Syracuse, in Sicily, was founded by Archias, a Corinthian, B. C. 769. Rome was founded by Rom'ulus, B. C. 753.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

3. When was the Babylonian monarchy founded? the Chinese? the Egyptian? the Assyrian? 6. What is a *state*? a territory? a people? 8. What is an aristocracy? a democracy? a limited monarchy? 9. Who brought civilization into Europe, and when? 10. Who founded Troy, and when? 11. Where did the Amphictyons hold their councils? 14. When, and by whom, was Sparta founded? What prince from Egypt next arrived in Greece, and when? When, and where, did Moses finish the Pentateuch? When did the Israelites cross the Jordan?

16. What was Minos called, and why? 17. When was Troy taken? 18. Who were the earliest profane writers now known, and when did they flourish? 21. Who succeeded Saul on the throne of Israel? What place changed its form of government about the time when Solomon was made king? 22. What was the division of the first Assyrian monarchy? 25. When was Carthage enlarged? When was Syracuse founded? By whom? When Rome, and by whom?

#### SECTION II.

- |                                                                        |                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Chronol'ogy, <i>s.</i> reckoning of time.                           | 5. Pol'ity, <i>s.</i> government.                                                 |
| 5. Ecclesiast'ical, <i>a.</i> pertaining to the affairs of the church. | 7. Sig'nalize, <i>v.</i> to make remarkable.                                      |
| Dy'nasty, <i>s.</i> race or family of rulers.                          | 9. Ascen'dancy, <i>s.</i> influence; power.<br>Expul'sion, <i>s.</i> driving out. |

1. WHO reigned over Judah and Israel at the time of the foundation of Rome, B. C. 753? Jotham was king of Judah, and Pekah king of Israel.

\* According to Herodotus he lived 168 years, by other writers two or three centuries, after the taking of Troy; but by Sir Isaac Newton only 28 years.

2. Who was the second king of Rome, and who were his cotemporaries in the Holy Land? Nu'ma Pompil'ius, B. C. 715, being cotemporary with Hezeki'ah and Manas'seh, kings of Judah, and Pekah and Hoshe'a, kings of Israel.

3. What calamity befell the Israelites at this period? In the ninth year of Hoshea, king of Israel, and sixth of Hezekiah, king of Judah, B. C. 720, Shalmane'sar, king of Assyria, took Samaria, and carried the ten tribes with their king into captivity. This event put an end to the kingdom of Israel, which had subsisted separate from that of Judah about 245 years, according to the Scripture chronology.

4. What have you to observe on the character of profane history from this period? It begins to assume a more credible form, though still corrupted by fable. The Romans are now rising into note in Italy, and the Carthaginians in Africa; while in Greece the petty states of Athens and Sparta are laying the foundation of their future fame.

5. What important events, about this period, mark the history of the East? Nineveh was taken a second time, and destroyed by Nebuchadne'zar, king of Babylon, B. C. 601. Jerusalem was taken by the same monarch in the eleventh year of Zedekiah, king of Judah, B. C. 588, and the Jews were carried captive to Babylon. Thus the civil and ecclesiastical polity of this favoured but rebellious nation was for a time subverted, as a just punishment from God for their multiplied acts of idolatry and wickedness, and the once-flourishing house of David, after passing through a long succession of ages, and a variety of fortunes, was finally extinguished as a royal dynasty, and the glory of Jerusalem lay prostrate in the dust.

6. Who were the most eminent characters of this age? In this age flourished Chi'lo, Anachar'sis, Thales, Epimen'i-des, Solon, and Æsop. Servius Tullius, sixth king of Rome, was cotemporary with Nebuchadnezzar; and Confucius, the Chinese philosopher, was born B. C. 551.

7. Who was the founder of the Persian empire? and what achievements signalized his reign? Cyrus, son of Camby'ses and Manda'ne, daughter of Asty'ages, king of Media. He defeated the Medes in battle, and made them tributary to Persia. He next subdued the eastern parts of Asia, made war against Croesus, king of Lydia, whom he conquered, B. C. 548; invaded Babylo'nia, and took the city of Babylon by drying the channels of the Euphra'tes, and marching his troops through the bed of the river while the inhabitants were celebrating a grand festival, B. C. 539.

8. What eminent men adorned these times? Daniel, Anaxim'enes, Anaximan'der, Cleobu'lus, Pythag'oras, Simon'ides, Thes'pis, Xenoph'anés, and Anac'reon.

9. What are the events of importance related in history from the conquest of Babylon to the death of Alexander the

Great? and what are the names of the most eminent men who flourished during that period? The restoration of the Jews to their own land; the rebuilding of Jerusalem, and the foundation of the second temple, B. C. 536; the expulsion of the Tarquins from Rome, B. C. 509; the war between Xerxes, the Persian monarch, and the Greeks, in which the latter were victorious, B. C. 480; the commencement of the Peloponnesian war, B. C. 431; and Athens taken by Lysander, B. C. 403, which occasions the downfall of the Athenian ascendancy:

10. The celebrated retreat of the 10,000 Greeks under Xenophon, after the battle of Cunax'a, a place of Assyria, near Babylon: this battle was fought between Artaxerxes and his brother Cyrus the younger, B. C. 401, in which the latter was defeated and slain. Xenophon, who commanded the retreat, is well known as its historian: he relates that Cyrus entered the field with 113,000 men, and Artaxerxes with 900,000. Socrates was put to death the following year.

11. During these ages flourished Heraclitus, Parmenides, Aristagoras, and Milo, the wrestler; next in order, Miltiades, Themistocles, Aristides, Æschylus, Pindar, and Zeuxis; Sophocles, Pericles, Zaleucus, Nehemiah, Herodotus, Euripides, and Phidias; Aristophanes, Cratinus, Eupolis, Metor, Democritus, Thucydides, Hippocrates, and Malachi, the last of the prophets, with whom ends the history of the Old Testament, B. C. 430. The next after were Plato, Xenophon, Conon, Agesilaus, and Camillus.

12. Rome was burnt by the Gauls, B. C. 390. In this age flourished Isaeus, Isocrates, and Diogenes; Aristotle, Eudemus, Philip, Æschines, and Demosthenes.

13. The Athenians and their allies were defeated in the battle of Cheronæa, B. C. 338, by Philip, king of Macedon, who being killed by Pausanias, was succeeded by his son Alexander, B. C. 336. This monarch, with 30,000 infantry and 5,000 cavalry, crossed the Hellespont the following year; gained the battles of Granicus and Issus; destroyed Tyre, B. C. 332; founded Alexandria, in Egypt; and, finally, in the decisive battle of Arbela, effected the overthrow of the Persian empire, and established the Greek empire on its ruins, B. C. 331. During this period the Jews had enjoyed tranquillity under the mild government of the Persian monarch.

14. What important events occurred from the foundation of the Greek or Macedonian empire to the destruction of Carthage? Alexander the Great died at Babylon, B. C. 323, and the Macedonian empire was divided among his principal generals, Ptolemy, Lysimachus, Seleucus, and Cassander. Ptolemy ascended the throne of Egypt; Seleucus received Babylon as his province; Lysimachus had for his share Thrace, the Chersonese, and the countries adjacent to the

Euxine ; Cassander seized the governments of Ma'cedon, Greece, and all the remaining European provinces.

15. This is the age of Apel'les, Hyper'ides, and Lysip'-pus. The Septuagint was translated, B. C. 284. The first Punic war commenced, B. C. 264, and lasted twenty-three years. The second Punic war began B. C. 218, continued seventeen years, and was ended by the battle of Zama. The third Punic war began B. C. 149, and terminated in the destruction of Carthage by Scipio. B. C. 146.

16. What other military operations of note were the Romans engaged in during this period ? They were occupied in subduing the different states of Italy ; in a war with the Tarentines, who called to their aid Pyrrhus, king of Epi'rus, in Greece, whom they conquered after several obstinate and sanguinary engagements ; also with the Gauls, the Macedonians, and the states of Greece ; and though sustaining many reverses, victory, in all these instances, finally declared in their favour.

### *Questions for Examination.*

3. How long were Israel and Judah separate kingdoms ? 5. When, and by whom, was Nineveh taken a second time ? How, and for what, were the Jews punished. 6. Name the great men who lived about this time ? 7. What were the exploits of Cyrus ? 9. When was the second Temple built ? 10. Relate some particulars of the famous retreat of the 10,000 Greeks. 13. What were the chief exploits of Alexander the Great ? 14. What division of his empire was made after his death ? 16. Whom did the Romans subdue ?

### SECTION III.

- |                                      |                                              |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 4. Reduc'tion, <i>s.</i> conquest.   | 7. Convul'se, <i>r.</i> to shake.            |
| 5. Annex'a'tion, <i>s.</i> addition. | 8. Fluc'tuate, <i>v.</i> to vary; to change. |

1. At the commencement of this great stretch of power, what was the political condition of the principal kingdoms of the world ? Syria and Egypt were on the decline ; the empires of India and Parthia, in Asia ; Ethiopia, Numidia, Maurita'nia, and Gætu'lia, in Africa ; Gaul, Germany, Spain, Macedonia, and Greece, in Europe, presented but a show of independence, and were not in a fit state to contend with the gigantic power of Rome.

2. Who were the most eminent men of this period ? The following, in the order of succession ; viz. Praxit'elles, Menan'der, Deme'trius, Vale'rius, B. C. 320 ; Zeno, Pyrrho, Phile'mon, Cran'tor, Euclid, Epicu'russ, Bion, B. C. 291 ; Sos'tratus, Theoc'ritus, Ara'tus, Ly'cophron, B. C. 278 ; Clean'thes, Mane'tho, Timæus, Callim'achus, Troilus, B. C. 256 ; Chrysippus, Archime'des, Vale'rius Mes'sala, C. Næ-

vius, Aristar'chus, Apollo'nius Rho'dius, Fa'bius Pictor, the first Roman historian, B. C. 224; Han'nibal, the Scipios, Læ'lius, Masini'ssa, and the Gracchi, B. C. 192; and Ter'ence, Poly'bius, Pacu'vius, Hippo'rhus, and Carne'ades, B. C. 168.

3. What is the principal feature in general history after the destruction of Carthage? The astonishing and rapid spread of the Roman empire, which, before its close, comprehended almost the whole of the then known world.

4. Describe briefly the progress of the Roman arms from this period to the Christian era. The Numantine war\* began B. C. 141, and was finished in eight years; Per'gamos, in Asia Minor, was annexed to the empire B. C. 133; the Jugurthine war lasted five years, and ended in the reduction of Numid'ia, B. C. 105; the Teu'tones were defeated by Marius, B. C. 102; the war with Mithrida'tes, the seventh king of Pontus, which lasted twenty-six years, and ended in that monarch's defeat; the conquest of Syria, by Pompey, which put an end to the reign of the Seleucidæ:

5. The conquest of Gaul and invasion of Britain by Julius Cæsar; the annexation of Egypt to the empire; the defeat of the Parthians under Pa'oros, by Venti'dius, the Roman general; the submission of the greater part of the world to Rome in the reign of Augustus; the defeat of the Parthians and Pannonians by Tibe'rius, and of the Rhæ'ti and Vin-del'ici by Drusus; and the establishment of universal peace at the time of the NATIVITY OF OUR SAVIOUR.

6. What eminent men flourished during this period? Lucil'ius, B. C. 121; Cicero, Catul'lus, Lucre'tius, Sal'lust, B. C. 60; Corne'lius Nepos, Diodo'russ Sic'ulus, Trogus Pompé'ius, Varro, B. C. 43. And in the Augustan age—that most polished period of Roman literature,—Virgil, Manil'ius, Asin'ius Pol'lio, Mecæ'nas, Agrippa, Strabo, Horace, Macer, Propertius, Livy, Tibul'lus, Ovid, Va'rius, and Dionysius Halicarnassensis.

7. Was Rome engaged all this period in war with her enemies? No. Some of her most celebrated generals, inflamed by ambition, stirred up civil wars, which for a time convulsed the empire. The principal civil wars were those of Sylla and Marius, Pompey and Cæsar, Octavius—afterwards Augustus—Cæsar, and Antony. Octavius having finally triumphed, was proclaimed emperor, and the commonwealth of Rome now assumed the imperial, or despotic, form of government.

8. What was the state of the Jews during this period? They were governed by their high-priests, under the control

\* Numantia was a city of Spain, which maintained a long war with the Romans, and at length was taken by Scipio. The inhabitants set fire to their houses, and destroyed themselves rather than fall into the hands of their enemies.

of the kings—sometimes of Syria, and sometimes of Egypt : and their affairs were almost continually fluctuating between good and ill fortune. In the reign of Anti'ochus Epiph'-anes, king of Syria, they suffered dreadful persecutions on account of their religion, from which they were delivered by Mattathi'as and his valiant sons, who deserve to be ranked among the greatest heroes of ancient or modern history.

9. Their independence was completely restored under Hyrc'a'nus, the son of Simon Maccabæus, B.C. 107. Jerusalem was taken by Pompey, and the Jews brought into subjection to the Romans, B.C. 63. They placed Herod the Great on the throne of Judea, B.C. 37, which he occupied at the birth of Christ, in the year, from the foundation of Rome, 753.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

2. Who was the first Roman historian ? 3. What was the extent of the Roman empire after the destruction of Carthage ? 4. How long did the Numantine war last ? How long the Jugurthine ? When, and by whom, were the Teutones defeated ? How long did the Mithridatic war last ? Who conquered Syria ? 5. By whom was Gaul conquered ? Who defeated the Parthians ? What country did Julius Cæsar invade ? What prevailed at our Saviour's birth ?

6. Who were the distinguished writers of the Augustan age ? 7. What were the principal civil wars of Rome ? Who changed the form of government ? Into what ? 8. Who persecuted the Jews ? By whom were they delivered ? 9. Who was Hyrcanus ? What took place under him ? When ? When, and by whom, were they again brought into subjection ? Who reigned in Judea when our Saviour was born ? In what year of Rome ?

#### SECTION IV.

- |                                                                              |                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Consolida'tion, <i>s.</i> making firm and strong by union ; establishing. | 10. Hep'tarchy, <i>s.</i> sevenfold government     |
| 2. Evacua'tion, <i>s.</i> leaving empty ; a- bandoning.                      | 11. Computa'tion, <i>s.</i> reckoning.             |
|                                                                              | 13. Insurrec'tion, <i>s.</i> rebellion ; sedition. |
|                                                                              | 19. Emer'ge, <i>v.</i> to issue from.              |

1. WHAT were the principal events of the *first century* ? The crucifixion and resurrection of our Saviour, in the 33rd year of his age ; the foundation of London by the Romans ; the persecution of the Druids in Britain ; the destruction of a great part of Rome by fire in the reign of Nero ; the persecution of the Christians, A.D. 64 ; the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus, A.D. 70 ; Herculaneum, Pompeii, and Sta'bæ were destroyed by an eruption of Vesuvius, in which Pliny the elder perished, A.D. 79.

2. What distinguished characters flourished in the first century ? Livy, Ovid, Phædrus, Persius, Quintus Cur'tius, Pliny the elder, Seneca, Lucan, Jose'phus, Fronti'nus, Quintil'ian, Ta'citus, Epicte'tus, Agric'o'la, and Ju'venal.

3. What were the principal events of the *second century*? Trajan's expedition to Parthia, A. D. 106, and his persecution of the Christians the following year; persecution renewed under Ha'drian, A. D. 118; consolidation of the Roman power in Britain, and extension of their conquests.

4. What are the principal characters of this century? Florus, Sueto'nus, Pliny the younger, Plutarch, Pol'ycarp, Ptolemy the geographer, Lu'cian, Justin Martyr, Galen, and Diog'enes Laer'tius.

5. What were the principal events of the *third century*? Persecution of the Christians under Severus, A. D. 202; the great wall of Seve'russ was built in Britain, A. D. 209; nearly all the Roman emperors of this century suffered violent deaths; persecutions of the Christians raged in the reigns of Alexander, De'cius, Vale'rian, and Aure'lian.

6. What eminent men flourished in this century? Ter-tullian, Clemens Alexandri'nus, Philos'tratus, Dion Cas'sius, Or'igen, St. Cy'prian, and Longi'nus.

7. Name some of the principal events of the *fourth century*. The tenth persecution of the Christians under Dio-cle'sian, A. D. 303; the transfer of the seat of the empire from Rome to Constantinople, A. D. 328; the conversion of Constantine to the Christian faith, and destruction of the heathen temples by his orders; and the division of the empire into eastern and western, A. D. 364.

8. Name some eminent characters in this century. A'rius, Lactan'tius, Euse'bius, Basil, Ambrose; Athana'sius, St. Hilary, Apollona'rius, and Ossian.

9. What were the great events of the *fifth century*? Rome was taken and plundered by Al'aric, king of the Visigoths, A. D. 410; the evacuation of Britain by the Romans took place, A. D. 426; Europe was ravaged by At'tila, king of the Huns, surnamed the Scourge of God, A. D. 447. Rome was again taken by Gen'seric, king of the Vandals, A. D. 455; the Western empire was destroyed by Odoa'cer, king of the Heruli, who assumed the title of king of all Italy, A. D. 476:

10. France was created a monarchy under Pharamond, and a heptarchy under the Saxons was established in Britain; several other new states arose on the ruins of the Roman empire in the west; and literature was very generally extinguished by its barbarous conquerors, the Huns, the Goths, the Vandals, &c.

11. What were the chief events of the *sixth century*? The publication of the Jewish Talmud, A. D. 506. Paris was made the capital of France, A. D. 510; the computation of time by the Christian era introduced by Dionysius, the monk, A. D. 516; publication of the code of Justin'ian, the Eastern emperor, A. D. 529; the kingdom of Poland was founded, A. D. 550; the Lombards founded a kingdom in

**Italy, A. D. 568;** the Turks were first mentioned, A. D. 569; the Latin language ceased to be spoken in Italy, about 580. Augustin first preaches Christianity in England, 597.

12. What were the principal events of the *seventh century*? Ma'homet, the founder of the Mahometans, in his 53rd year fled from Mecca to Medi'na, on Friday, July 16, A. D. 622, which forms the first year of the Hegira or Mahometan era; he died ten years after. Jerusalem was taken by the Saracens, A. D. 637, and the temple converted into a mosque; Alexandria, in Egypt, also fell into their hands, and the grand library there is supposed to have been burnt by the caliph Omar; the extension of the conquest of this people on every side; the establishment of the Saxons in Britain, A. D. 653; when the Britons, after many brave struggles, were obliged to retire before their invaders into Wales, Cornwall, Armorica or Britany, Ireland, &c.

13. What were the chief events of the *eighth century*? The conquest of Spain by the Saracens, A. D. 713; their defeat and expulsion from France, by Charles Martel, at the battle of Poictiers, A. D. 714; the commencement of the controversy about image-worship, which occasioned many insurrections in the Eastern empire; the institution of the Pope's Nuncio, A. D. 735; the commencement of the Pope's temporal dominion, A. D. 794. Haroun-al-Raschid, caliph of Bagdad, and the venerable Bede, flourished in this century.

14. What were the chief events of the *ninth century*? Charlemagne, king of France, was crowned emperor of Rome and the Western empire, A. D. 800; Britain was repeatedly devastated by the Danes; Alfred the Great composed his body of laws, and founded the University of Oxford.

15. What were the chief events of the *tenth century*? The establishment of the Normans in Normandy, A. D. 912, and of the Danes in England, A. D. 913; the foundation of Cambridge University, A. D. 915; the Saracen empire was divided by usurpation into seven kingdoms; the introduction of arithmetic into Europe, A. D. 941; the race of Abbas was extinguished in Egypt, A. D. 960; the coronation oath was first used in England, and juries instituted, A. D. 979.

16. What were the principal events of the *eleventh century*? The conquest of Persia by the Turks, and also of Jerusalem, which they wrested from the Saracens; the conquest of England, by William duke of Normandy, A. D. 1066; the first Crusade, A. D. 1096; Jerusalem taken by the Crusaders, A. D. 1099.

17. What were the principal events of the *twelfth century*? The rise of the Moguls under Temujin, afterwards Ghengis Khan. The second Crusade, A. D. 1147, and the overthrow of the kingdom of Jerusalem by Saladin, and declension of the affairs of the Christians in Palestine; the

occupation of Ireland by Henry II. king of England, who gained admission into that country through the dissensions of its native princes; academical degrees were now for the first time introduced; learning revived, and was encouraged in the University of Cambridge.

18. Towards the close of this century, the kings of England and France departed on a third Crusade, with their troops, to the Holy Land, A. D. 1190. Among the learned persons of this century are to be found Averroes, William of Malmesbury, Avicenna, Anna Comnena, Werner, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and Roger Hoveden. The schools of the Arabians and Saracens, in Egypt and Africa, produce several very eminent men in various departments of literature and science.

19. Name some great events of the *thirteenth* century. Constantinople was taken by the French and Venetians, A. D. 1204; London was incorporated, and its first charter for electing the Lord Mayor, and other magistrates, obtained from King John; Magna Charta signed by that monarch, A. D. 1215; astronomy and geography were brought into Europe by the Moors; the Tartars under Ghengis Khan, emerging from the northern parts of Asia, overran all the Saracen empire, and carried death and desolation wherever they marched.

20. The Inquisition was begun in 1204; entrusted to the Dominicans, A. D. 1233; Wales subdued, and Magna Charta confirmed, A. D. 1251; the invasion of China by the Tartars; end of the Crusades, A. D. 1291; the present Turkish empire began under Ottoman, A. D. 1298.

21. Thomas Aquinas, Roger Bacon the philosopher, and Matthew Paris the historian, flourished in this century.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What cities in Italy were suddenly destroyed, and how? 5. What happened to nearly all the Roman emperors in the third century? In whose reigns were the Christians persecuted? 7. When was Constantinople made the seat of empire? By whom were the heathen temples destroyed? 9. By whom, and when, was Rome taken? What befell the Roman empire? 11. When did Latin cease to be the language of Italy? 12. Who was Mahomet? What the first year of the Mahometan era? What did Omar destroy? Whither did the Britons retire?

13. When, and by whom, were the Saracens expelled from France? 15. When was the present system of arithmetic brought to Europe? 16. How many Crusades were undertaken in this century? 17. What Saracen leader retook Jerusalem? Who annexed Ireland to the British crown? How did he gain admission? Where was learning encouraged? 18. Who joined in the third Crusade? 19. Who granted Magna Charta, and when? By whom was the Saracen empire overthrown? 20. When was the Inquisition first established?

## SECTION V.

- |                                                                  |                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Sculptor, <i>s.</i> a carver or engraver.                     | 10. Episcopacy, <i>s.</i> the government of bishops, derived from the apostles. |
| 9. Satellite, <i>s.</i> a small planet revolving round a larger. | 13. Ratified, <i>r.</i> settled; made sure                                      |

1. NAME some important events in the *fourteenth* century. The mariner's compass was invented or improved by Gioja of Naples, A.D. 1302; \* the Popes removed to Avignon, in France, for seventy years, beginning at A.D. 1308; the University of Dublin was founded, A.D. 1319; the battle of Cressy, A.D. 1346; that of Poictiers, A.D. 1356; the Universities of Vienna and Geneva were founded, A.D. 1365: John Wickliffe, an Englishman, first began to call in question the doctrines of the Church of Rome, A.D. 1369; Greenland was discovered by a Venetian, A.D. 1378:

2. The Tartars under Timour,† or Tamerlane, subdued Western and Central Asia, establishing a mighty empire, which, however, was dismembered soon after the death of its founder. In this century flourished Chaucer, Boccaccio, Gower, Dante, Petrarch, and Barbour, poets; Froissart and Alain Chartier, historians.

3. What were the principal events of the *fifteenth* century? The invention of the art of printing, A.D. 1440, by L. Koster, at Haerlem, in Holland, and its general adoption in Europe; Constantinople was taken by the Turks, which ends the Eastern empire, A.D. 1453; the civil wars in England between the houses of York and Lancaster, which continued for thirty years, and destroyed upwards of 100,000 men, commenced in 1455:

4. America was first discovered by Columbus, a Genoese in the service of Spain, A.D. 1492; the Portuguese first sailed to the East Indies by the Cape of Good Hope, A.D. 1497; America was visited by Americus Vespucius, from whom it has its name, A.D. 1497; the coasts of North America and Newfoundland were discovered by John and Sebastian Cabot, A.D. 1499.

5. Name some eminent characters who lived in this century. Raphael and Michael Angelo, painters; Benvenuto Cellini, sculptor in gold and silver; Machiavel, the political writer; Caxton, the printer; and Erasmus.

6. What were the most remarkable events of the *six-*

\* The claims of Gioja as an original discoverer are doubtful, as there is reason to believe that the Chinese were accustomed to use the magnetic needle for nautical purposes long before their country was known to Europeans, who probably derived it, mediately or immediately, from that ingenious people.

† Temur, or Timour, is known in Europe by the name of Tamerlane, a corruption of Temur Lung, which signifies *Lame Temur*, an appellation seldom or never given him by the Eastern historians. Temur signifies *hardy*, and *strong*, from the Tartar word *temr*, iron.

*teenth century?* The discovery of Madagascar by the Portuguese, A.D. 1507; the Reformation begun in 1517 by Luther, and its spread over England, Scotland, Germany, Switzerland, Denmark, and Sweden; first voyage round the world performed by a ship of Magellan's squadron, A.D. 1522; dissolution of religious houses in England by Henry VIII. A.D. 1534:

7. The famous council of Trent begun in 1545, and continued 18 years; great massacre of the Protestants at Paris, A.D. 1572; Holland acquires independence; the East India Company was incorporated, A.D. 1579; first proposal in England for civilizing North America, A.D. 1583; destruction of the Spanish Armada by Drake and other English admirals, A.D. 1588; telescopes were introduced by Jansen, a German spectacle-maker, A.D. 1590.

8. Name some eminent men of this century. Columbus and Cabot, navigators; Luther, Melanchthon, Knox, reformers; Tycho Brahe, Copernicus, astronomers; and Shakspeare, Spenser, Tasso, and Camoens, poets.

9. What were the principal events of the *seventeenth century*? The union of the kingdoms of Scotland and England, A.D. 1603; a French colony was established in Canada, 1604; colonists were sent from England to Virginia, 1608; the Satellites of Jupiter discovered by Galileo, through the medium of the telescope, 1610; the north-west passage to China was attempted in vain by the English, 1612; the circulation of the blood discovered by Harvey, 1619; New England colonized by the Puritans, 1621; the battle of Lutzen, in which Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, and head of the Protestants in Germany, was killed, 1632:

10. Massacre of the Protestants in Ireland, 1640; civil wars of Charles I. of England commenced, 1642; and execution of that monarch, 1649; the Protectorate of Cromwell, who died in 1658; the restoration of royalty and episcopacy under Charles II. in 1660. A plague in London, which carried off 68,000 people, 1665; the great fire of London, 1666; persecution of the Protestants by Louis XIV. of France, 1685; the Revolution in England, 1688, by which William and Mary ascended the throne of England; the French fleet defeated by the combined English and Dutch off La Hogue, 1692.

11. Name some of the distinguished men of this century. Milton, Dryden, Racine, Molière, Boileau, the Daciers, Corneille, poets; Cassini, Galileo, Newton, and Halley, astronomers; Palladio, architect; the Scaligers, critics; Bentivoglio and Buchanan, historians; Montaigne, Lord Bacon, Boyle, Fontenelle, and Locke, philosophers; Guido, painter; Bernini, sculptor; Strada, historian; Boerhaave, physician; Puffendorf, Grotius, and Leibnitz, civilians.

12. What were the chief events of the *eighteenth century*? Gibraltar was taken from the Spaniards by Admiral Rooke, A.D. 1704; the battle of Blenheim was won the same year by the English and their allies, under the conduct of the Duke of Marlborough, against the French, and was followed up by several other splendid victories. Peter the Great, Czar of Russia, defeated Charles XII. of Sweden at Pultowa, 1709; Commodore Anson finished his voyage round the world, 1744; the battle of Culloden, in which the Pretender's army was defeated, 1745:

13. Lima was destroyed by an earthquake, A.D. 1746; the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle was concluded, 1748; Quebec was taken by the English under General Wolfe, who fell in the action, 1759; the Emperor of Germany, Empress of Russia, and King of Prussia stripped the King of Poland of a great part of his dominions, 1772; war commenced with the United States of North America, 1775; American independence was declared in 1783; and a treaty of peace ratified with Great Britain, 1784:

14. A revolution in France, 1789; Louis XVI. guillotined in 1793, and the regal form of government abolished, amidst excesses, on the part of the revolutionists, of the most revolting and sanguinary description. Poland, after a gallant struggle for independence, was subjugated by Prussia and Russia, 1794; Holland was overrun by the French under Pichegru, 1795; St. Domingo declared itself independent in 1797; extraordinary success of the French armies in various parts about this period; the Irish rebellion, aided by the French, burst forth in 1798, but was put down in the same year.

---

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who invented the mariner's compass? When were the battles of Cressy and Poictiers fought?
  3. When was printing invented?
  9. When the circulation of the blood discovered, and by whom?
  - What was the date of the Revolution in England?
  12. Who took Gibraltar? When? Who conquered Poland?
  13. In what year was the independence of America secured?
  14. When did the French revolution occur? What deplorable results attended it? When did the Irish rebellion break out? When put down?
- 

#### SECTION VI.

- |                                                                         |                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Subjugate, r. conquer; subdue.<br>Co-operation, s. working together. | 4. Ab'dicate, r. to resign office.<br>Minor'ity, s. state of being underage. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. WHAT have been the principal events of the present century? The union of the parliament of Ireland with that of Great Britain was effected in 1801; the French troops were driven out of Egypt in 1802; France was formed into an empire in 1804, and Napoleon Bonaparte, a Corsican,

who had pre-eminently signalized himself at the head of the armies of France, was crowned emperor, by the title of Napoleon I., in May 1804; the battle of Trafalgar, 1805, in which the combined French and Spanish fleets were defeated by the British fleet under Lord Nelson, who fell at the close of the engagement, October the 21st:

2. Immense military operations by the Emperor Napoleon, during the progress of which he subjugated nearly the whole of the continent of Europe, setting up kings and dethroning them at pleasure, and spreading the horrors of war throughout the world. The naval superiority of Great Britain, her resources and perseverance, presented a check to his career of victory, and aided by the co-operation of the different continental nations, finally effected his overthrow:

3. The British troops, under the Duke of Wellington, expelled the French from Spain; and the loss of one of their best armies in an imprudent invasion of Russia having given opportunity to that power and Germany to assert their independence, they united their forces, and in the decisive battle of Leipzic, in which the French lost 80,000 men, Napoleon was completely defeated:

4. Paris fell into the hands of the allies in 1814, and Napoleon was deposed and sent to Elba; from which place he returned in 1815, and compelled the French king, Louis XVIII., to abandon France. In the dreadful battle of Waterloo he was finally defeated by the British and Prussians; obliged to abdicate the throne a second time; and having surrendered to the English, was sent to St. Helena, where he died in 1821:

5. The republic of Colombia, in South America, was formed in this year, since which the other states of that continent, viz. Mexico, Peru, Chili, Guatemala, &c., have achieved their independence. Brazil was erected into an empire by Don Pedro, son of the king of Portugal, in 1822. The Burmese were subdued by the British in 1826.

6. What events of importance occurred in Europe subsequent to this period? A revolution was attempted in Spain in 1823, which was put down by the French army under the Duke d'Angoulême. Charles X. king of France was expelled by his subjects in 1830, and succeeded by Louis Philippe, Duke of Orleans, under the title of the King of the French. Belgium, by a successful revolt, became independent of Holland, and Prince Leopold of Saxe Coburg was elected its sovereign.

7. A war broke out between Russia and Turkey, ending in the defeat of the latter power, which now acknowledged the independence of Greece, and Otho of Bavaria was appointed its king. Don Miguel, regent of Portugal, usurped the throne of his niece, Donna Maria; but was forced to quit the kingdom by an army under the command of his

brother Don Pedro, and the young queen was placed on the throne.

8. On the death of Ferdinand VII. of Spain, his brother Don Carlos claimed the crown, in opposition to his niece Donna Isabella; and after a sanguinary and ferocious civil war of seven years, was driven out of that kingdom in 1839. William IV. was succeeded on the British throne, June 20, 1837, by her present most gracious Majesty, Queen Victoria.

9. By permission of the British government the ashes of the Emperor Napoleon were taken from the tomb of St. Helena, and conveyed to France by the Prince de Joinville, who arrived at Cherbourg 30th of November, 1840: on the 15th of December the body was re-interred in the Hôtel des Invalides at Paris. The funeral ceremony was one of the most grand, solemn, and imposing spectacles ever seen in France. It was witnessed by one million persons; 150,000 soldiers assisted in the obsequies, and the royal family and all the high personages of the realm were present.

10. In July 1840 a remarkable earthquake commenced near Mount Ararat, continuing by successive shocks until September, by which the waters of the Araxes were lifted from their bed and the banks of the river inundated; the Karassu was forced from its course, and strewn with mutilated human bodies; the village of Acorhi, its 200 houses and 1000 inhabitants, and nearly all the buildings of the canton of Eriwan entirely destroyed; 3,135 houses and 75 mills in Sharur were thrown down, whole villages and corn-fields overwhelmed by land-slips, and upwards of thirty springs dried up. Extensive damage to life and buildings was also sustained in the adjoining towns and districts, and the aspect of the surrounding country entirely changed.

11. The beginning of 1848 was signalized by a new revolution in Paris, which resulted in the sudden extinction of royalty and the establishment of a French republic. The influence of this eventful movement was felt throughout the continent, and tumultuous demonstrations occurred in Italy, Berlin, Vienna, and other German states, where the popular demand was successful in exacting from the authorities a promise of new institutions and popular government.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What event took place in 1801? Who was crowned in France in 1804? When was the battle of Trafalgar, and between whom?
2. What led to the overthrow of Napoleon? 6. What was his end?
6. In what year occurred the battle of Waterloo? What particular result attended this victory? How did Louis Philippe become king of the French, and when? How was Leopold raised to the throne of Belgium?
7. Who usurped the throne of Portugal? 8. What happened in Spain?

## CHAPTER II.

## Historical Questions on the Old Testament.

## SECTION I.

*Moses the first Sacred Historian.*

- |                                                                                                |                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Leg'islator, <i>s.</i> one who gives laws.<br>Historiog'raper, <i>s.</i> writer of history. | 8. Tab'ernacle, <i>s.</i> a tent; sacred place.                       |
| 2. Des'tiny, <i>s.</i> fate; divine decree.                                                    | 10. Promulg'a'tion, <i>s.</i> the act of publishing; making known.    |
| 3. Consecra'tion, <i>s.</i> the act of making sacred.                                          | 11. Interpo'sition, <i>s.</i> the act of coming between; interfering. |

1. WHO was the legislator and first historiog'raper of the Hebrew nation? Moses: he wrote above 1000 years before Herod'otus, the father of profane history. He was born in Egypt, B. C. 1571, and came within the decree of the king of Egypt, requiring that the male infants of the Israelites should be slain. He was exposed in a floating basket on the Nile, and found and adopted by the daughter of Pha'raoh, king of Egypt.

2. To what credit is this historian entitled? He is to be received as a very high authority for many reasons; and among them the following: 1. He did most extraordinary acts among a whole people, who were most intensely interested to know whether they were deceived or not. 2. That people received directly from him the writings in which his own and their history is contained. 3. These writings have been most faithfully preserved through all the wonderful destiny allotted to that people. 4. They are received as true and unquestionable, not only by the Jews, but also by all denominations of Christians, with whom the fact is established by the testimony of Christ and his apostles.

3. What are the several books attributed to Moses? The books attributed to Moses are the first five of the Bible; and also eleven of the Psalms, from the ninetieth to the one hundredth inclusive. The book of Job is supposed by some to belong to the writings of Moses, and to have been composed for the consolation of the Israelites in their servitude; but the best founded opinion is, that the author was cotemporary with Am'ram, and wrote an authentic memoir of himself, which Moses found in Midian, and brought with him into Egypt.

4. By what name are the first five books of the Bible known? They are known by the name of Pentateuch, and are so called from the Greek *pente*, five, and *teuchos*, book, or composition.

5. By what names are these books severally known? The

first of these books is GEN'ESIS, and is so called from a Greek word, *genesis*, meaning *generation*, or *birth*. The history related in this book comprises events from the creation of the world to the death of Joseph, a period of about 2369 years.

6. The second book is EX'ODUS, so called from the Greek words *ex*, out, and *odos*, a journey, and contains an account of the departure of the Israelites from Egypt, which forms one of the great epochs in their history. It includes events from the death of Joseph to the erection of the tabernacle, embracing a period of about 145 years.

7. The third book is called LEVIT'ICUS, from its containing the laws and regulations of the priests, who were of the tribe of Levi. It embraces one month only.

8. The fourth book is called NUMBERS, because the first three chapters contain the numbering of the Hebrews and Levites, at the time of the erection and consecration of the tabernacle, while in the wilderness: the remaining part of this book contains an account of the breaking up of the Israelites from Sinai, and their subsequent wanderings in the desert, until their arrival on the borders of Moab, extending over a period of thirty-eight years. The dates of events which are recorded in the middle of this book are uncertain.

9. The fifth book is named DEUTERON'OMY, from two Greek words, *deuteros*, second, and *nomos*, law, as signifying the second giving of the LAW, being the same as had been ordained in the preceding books. It carries the history forward almost two months.

10. The Israelites were constantly led by Jehovah, and the whole series of events is a continued succession of miracles. From their breaking up at Ra'mases, in Goshen, to their arrival on the confines of the "promised land," there was an interval of forty years, during which one whole generation passed away, and the promulgation of the law upon Mount Sinai took place.

11. There is no portion of history extant which so displays the constant and almost miraculous interposition of an overruling Providence in the affairs both of nations and individuals, as that which recounts these wanderings of Israel.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

2. On what grounds are the writings of Moses to be received as true? 3. How many of the Psalms were written by him? What is the most probable opinion relative to the book of Job?

5. What period does the book of Genesis comprise? 6. What, the book of Exodus? 7. Why is the third book called Leviticus? What time does it include? 8. Why is the fourth book called Numbers? What time does it embrace? 9. What means the word Deuteronomy?

## SECTION II.

*From the Creation of the World to the Destruction of Sodom, Gomorrah, &c.*

- |                                                                         |                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Par'adise, <i>s.</i> a place of bliss; the state of living with God. | 7. Ex'ile, <i>s.</i> banishment.                              |
| 6. Expul'sion, <i>s.</i> a driving out.                                 | 8. Artif'icer, <i>s.</i> a person who works according to art. |
| 8. Poster'ity, <i>s.</i> offspring; those that live in following ages.  | 10. Pa'triarchs, <i>s.</i> heads of families.                 |
|                                                                         | 23. Enor'mous, <i>a.</i> very big or wicked.                  |

1. WHERE did God place Adam and Eve after he had formed them? In the Garden of Eden, where they spent their first days in innocence and happiness, until they were driven out by the Almighty for their disobedience.

2. Where was the garden of Eden situated? The garden of Eden, according to Moses, was situated '*eastward in Eden*,' a little north of the Persian Gulf, between the rivers Euphra'tes and Tigris.—*Gen. ii. 8.*

3. What means the word Eden? The Hebrew word *eden* signifies pleasure or delight, thereby intimating the superior beauty of the region which was known by that name. And for the same reason, it was, in succeeding ages, imposed as a proper name on several other places remarkable for the pleasantness of their situation, and the diversified richness of the scenery with which they were adorned.

4. What further account does Moses give of the situation of the garden of Eden? That it lay on the banks of four streams, called Pison, Gihon, Hiddekel, and Perath, termed by the Greeks Euphrates; and as no other rivers are found that thus unite, the seat of Paradise is generally fixed as above mentioned.

5. The river Hiddekel is the same as the Tigris. Of this river Moses says, "*That is it which goes before Assyr'ia.*"\* Moses, therefore, must have used the term Assyria in its limited sense: and in this view the course of the Tigris exactly corresponds with the description which the sacred historian gives of the Hiddekel.

6. Who were the two sons born to our first parents after their expulsion from Paradise, and what befell them? Cain and Abel. Cain, the elder, moved with envy and jealousy, and an unwilling witness to the superior holiness and purity of Abel's life, rose up against him, and slew him; for which he was condemned by God to become a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth.

\* The term Assyria, in the days of Moses and long after his time, was the designation, not of the Assyrian *empire*, which consisted of many extensive provinces, but of that single province of which Nineveh was the capital, situated on the east of the Tigris. Babylonia, or Chaldea, lay on the west of the Tigris, between that river and the Euphrates, and south of Mesopotamia.

7. Where, and what, was the land of Nod? The land of Nod joined Eden on the east, and was the place of Cain's exile, and the scene of his wanderings after he had forsaken the delightful fields of Eden, which he had polluted with a brother's blood. Here he built a city, and called it, after the name of his son, Enoch.

8. What general name had the posterity of Cain? That of "the sons of men." Among the earliest of these were Ju'bal, the inventor of musical instruments, and Tu'bal-cain, the first artificer in brass and iron.

9. Who was Seth? The third son of Adam and Eve, born after the murder of Abel. The descendants of Seth are termed in Scripture "the children, or sons, of God."

10. How many patriarchs are reckoned from Adam to No'ah? Ten; the most eminent of whom were Adam, Seth, Enoch, and Methu'selah. Enoch, the father of Methuselah, was, for his eminent piety, allowed by the Almighty to enter a state of blessedness without previously suffering the pains of death. Methuselah was the oldest man on record; he lived 969 years.

11. Who were the immediate descendants of Methuselah? La'mech, his son, and Noah, his grandson. The posterity of Adam having long lived in neglect of God's laws, Noah was selected by God as a preacher of repentance and divine justice to the degenerate and corrupt sons of men.

12. Who were the sons of Noah? Shem, Ham, and Ja'phet.

13. What command did God give to Noah? God seeing the extreme wickedness of mankind, determined to destroy them from the face of the earth by a general flood: Noah, therefore, was commanded by the Supreme Being to build an ark (or large vessel) for the reception of himself, his wife, his sons, their wives, (eight persons in all,) and two of every living thing upon the earth, male and female; with provision for their sustentation.

14. Describe the ark. The material used was gopher or cypress wood: its size was prodigious, being three hundred common cubits in length, fifty in breadth, and thirty in height. It had three stories, and these were sub-divided into separate rooms for beasts, birds, &c., food, and the accommodation of Noah and his family.

15. How long did the deluge continue? The fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven opened. Forty days and forty nights did the waters prevail, until they rose fifteen cubits above the tops of the highest mountains. All creatures in whose nostrils was the breath of life,—all on the dry land died. One hundred and ten days of constant rain followed: then the flood began to lessen, and the ark rested upon a mountain of Armenia, called Ar'arat. Noah entered the ark November the 30th,



2349 years before Christ, and finally quitted it on the 18th of December in the following year, having remained there with his family one year and ten days.

16. What was Noah's first employment at the expiration of this period? He built an altar to the Lord, and offered up burnt-offerings on the altar. God accepted the pious sacrifice of Noah, declaring that while the earth remained, seed-time and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, and day and night, should not cease. God appointed the rainbow as a confirmation of this covenant with man. Noah lived 350 years after this memorable event, and then died, aged nine hundred and fifty years.

17. When was the building of the tower of Babel attempted? About one hundred years after the Deluge, by the posterity of Noah. The whole earth had then one language spoken by every human being: the pride and arrogance displayed by the builders of Babel caused God to introduce a confusion of tongues among them; as they could not understand each other's speech, those engaged in it dispersed themselves into different districts and regions, B.C. 2247.

18. Who was A'bram? The son of Terah, and descended from Shem, (one of the sons of Noah). Abram was chosen by the Lord to preserve to himself 'a peculiar people, zealous of good works.'

19. Which was the first covenant made with Abram by the Lord? One giving the immediate promise of Canaan; and the more distant one of Christ, in these terms, "Get thee out of thy country and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show thee. I will bless

them that bless thee, I will curse him that curseth thee, and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed."

20. When did God make this covenant with Abram? When he left Haran, accompanied by Sa'rai his wife and Lot his brother's son, to enter Canaan, where he erected an altar; but famine compelled Abram and Lot to quit Canaan for Egypt: they, however, returned to Canaan soon after, and then separated,—Lot for Sod'om, and Abram for Hebron.

21. How did Chedorlaomer, king of Elam or Persia, awaken the anger of Abram? By plundering the city of Sodom in which Lot dwelt, and carrying off Lot captive. Abram pursued and defeated Chedorlaomer, rescued Lot, and afterwards nobly refused to share in the spoils made on the occasion, but presented tithes of all to Melchis'edek, king of Salem, (afterwards Jerusalem,) priest of the most high God.

22. Who was Ish'mael? The son of Abram by Ha'gar, one of Sarai's handmaids: Ishmael was the father of the Ishmaelites, or Arabians. Thirteen years after the birth of Ishmael, God renewed his covenant with Abram; instituted the rite of circumcision; and changed the name of the patriarch from Abram to Abraham, which signifies the father of a great multitude. God also promised him a son by his wife Sarah, and a numerous posterity, B.C. 1898.

23. What befell Sod'om, Gomor'rah, Ad'mah or Ad'amah, and Zebo'im? These cities, becoming subject to the just judgment of God, on account of their enormous wickedness, were consumed by fire from heaven. Lot, directed by two angels whom he had hospitably entertained at Sodom, fled with his wife and two daughters to Zo'ar, a small city in the neighbourhood, and subsequently to the mountains; but his wife, eager to gratify an improper curiosity, which had been forbidden by the angels, looked back towards the city she had left, and was turned into a pillar of salt.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How did Adam and Eve spend their first days? Why driven out of the garden?
2. Where was Eden?
3. To what other places was the name afterwards given?
4. On the banks of what rivers did the garden of Eden lie?
5. By what names were two of these rivers also known?
6. What led Cain to slay his brother?
7. What punishment?
8. What city did he build?
9. Who invented musical instruments?
10. Who taught to work in brass and iron?
9. What were Seth's descendants called?
10. Who were the chief patriarchs?
11. How was the piety of Enoch rewarded?
12. How long did Methuselah live?

11. What was Noah appointed to preach?
12. To whom?
13. What was the cause of the universal deluge?
14. What did the ark contain?

15. Give the dates of Noah's stay in the ark. 16. What covenant did God make with Noah? What its sign? How long did he live afterwards? 17. When, and why, did the confusion of languages take place? 18. For what purpose was Abraham chosen? 20. Who was his wife? his nephew? 21. To whom did Abraham give tithe of all the spoils? What spoils? 23. Why was Lot's wife turned into a pillar of salt?

---

## SECTION III.

*From the Birth of Isaac to the Destruction of Pharaoh's Host in the Red Sea.*

- |                                                  |                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Emphat'ically, <i>ad.</i> strongly, forcibly. | 12. Emba'im, <i>v.</i> to impregnate with aromatics, so as to resist decay. |
| 2. Strat'agem, <i>s.</i> a trick; an artifice.   | 14. E'dict, <i>s.</i> a proclamation.                                       |
| Exas'perate, <i>v.</i> to make angry.            | 19. Em'bassy, <i>s.</i> a public message.                                   |
| 5. Interces'sion, <i>s.</i> mediation.           | 21. Vegeta'tion, <i>s.</i> the growth of plants.                            |
| 8. Pat'ronage, <i>s.</i> protection; support.    |                                                                             |

1. WHO was Isaac? The son of Abraham, by Sarah, born when she was 90 years of age, and emphatically called *the child of the promise*. At the age of forty he took Rebecca his kinswoman to wife; Sarah his mother died some time before this, at Hebron, aged 127. Abraham survived her about 38 years, and died at the age of 175; they were buried in the cave of Machpelah, which Abraham had purchased as a family burying-place.

2. What children had Rebecca? After being nineteen years childless she had two sons, E'sau and Ja'cob, of very different dispositions: Jacob was fond of agriculture, Esau of field-sports. Jacob, though the younger son, under the direction of his mother deceived his father, (then blind,) and obtained by stratagem his highest blessing. Esau, forced by hunger, had previously sold his birthright to Jacob for a mess of pottage: exasperated by this second loss and his brother's treacherous conduct, he set no bounds to his anger, and Jacob, fearful of the consequences, fled to his uncle Laban's house at Pa'dan-a'ram.

3. Jacob resided with his uncle La'ban twenty years, and during this interval of time he married Le'ah and Ra'chael, the two daughters of Laban. Jacob had by Leah six sons; Reu'ben, Sim'eon, Le'vi, Ju'dah, Is'sachar, and Zeb'u'lon, and one daughter, Di'nah: by Zil'pah, Leah's maid, Jacob had also two sons, Gad and Ash'er. By Rachael he had two sons, Joseph and Benjamin; she died at the birth of the latter: and by Bil'hah, Rachael's handmaid, he had two sons, Dan and Naph'tali.

4. Was Esau ever reconciled to his brother Jacob? Yes: on the return of the latter to Canaan he met him near Suc-coth, and buried all remembrance of former animosity.

5. What remarkable destiny had Joseph? Joseph's brethren, jealous of the affection shown him by his father,

resolved to destroy him ; but at the intercession of Reuben, they sold him as a slave to some Midianitish merchants, who were going into Egypt, and induced his father to believe that a wild beast had devoured him.



6. What befell Joseph in Egypt ? He was again sold by these Midianites to Pot'iphar, one of Pha'raoh's household ; whence he was soon cast into prison at the instigation of Potiphar's wife, a wicked and abandoned woman.

7. What caused his release ? Pharaoh king of Egypt had two dreams, the interpretation of which he was very desirous to obtain : Joseph, enlightened by the spirit of God, explained these dreams, and was in consequence promoted to the highest rank in the kingdom, being made prefect over all Egypt.

8. How did Joseph's brethren discover that he was yet alive ? A famine in Canaan (which owing to the provident management of Joseph had been less severely felt in Egypt) compelled the sons of Jacob to go down thither to buy corn, B.C. 1708. Here Joseph, now lord of the land, after witnessing their true remorse for their wicked conduct towards him, discovered himself : he supplied their necessities, magnanimously forgave all former injuries, and sent for his father from Canaan, that Jacob and his sons might settle themselves in the land of Go'shen, under the patronage of Pharaoh.

9. How long did Jacob remain in Egypt ? Seventeen years : he brought with him the whole of his descendants, and, including Joseph and his two sons, his family numbered seventy souls.

10. What name was given by Pharaoh to Joseph ? Zaph'-nath-paane'ah, (or revealer of secrets). Pharaoh also gave him as a wife the daughter of Potiph'erah, priest of On ;

and by her Joseph had two sons, called Manas'eh and E'phraim.

11. What were the circumstances of Jacob's death? Previous to it he assembled his children, solemnly blessed them, foretold the coming of the Messiah from the tribe of Judah; requested his son Joseph to bury him in the cave of Machpelah with his ancestors, and having obtained his promise, calmly resigned his spirit into the hands of Him who gave it, aged 147.

12. Did Joseph fulfil his father's injunctions? Yes: after embalming his body, Joseph obtained the permission of Pharaoh to bury Jacob in Canaan: the Egyptians mourned for him seventy days. Joseph ruled Egypt eighty years with wisdom and equity, and having seen his great-grandchildren, died aged 110, having survived his father about fifty-three years.

13. What befell the Israelites after the death of Joseph? Another Pharaoh ruled Egypt, who knew not Joseph: his subjects grew jealous of the Israelites, whose increased population alarmed them, and he resolved to subdue their growing numbers by taxes and oppressions of every kind.

14. Did the Egyptian task-masters succeed in humbling the Israelites? No: Pharaoh therefore issued an edict that every male Hebrew should be drowned. A'aron, son of Joch'ebed and Am'ram, was born a year before this edict: three years after it Moses, their second son, was born; his mother hid him three months, and then laid him in a basket among the reeds of the river Nile. Thermu'this, the daughter of Pharaoh, coming to bathe, discovered the child, was struck with his beauty, adopted and educated him.

15. Was Moses corrupted by the splendour of the Egyptian court? No: he retained his submission and duty to the one true God, occasionally visited his unfortunate countrymen, and resolved to relieve them.

16. How long did Moses remain in Pharaoh's court? Forty years; when, killing an Egyptian whom he found treating a Hebrew with barbarity, Moses dreaded the anger of Pharaoh, and fled into Mid'ian, where he continued forty years longer: in that period of time he married Zippo'rah, daughter of Je'thro, the priest of Midian.

17. Which of the Pharaohs was king of Egypt at this time? Rame'ses Mi'amun; he reigned sixty-six years, and oppressed the Israelites in a most grievous manner: while Moses remained in Midian this Pharaoh died, leaving two sons, Busi'ris and Pharaoh Amenophis. In the reign of the eldest (Amenophis) the Israelites left the land of Goshen, and Amenophis (or Pharaoh) fell a sacrifice in the Red Sea to his own obstinacy and blasphemous pride.

18. How did God manifest his will to Moses? He appeared to him, when tending Jethro's sheep on Mount

Horeb, in a burning bush, which still remained unconsumed, (B. C. 1491,) informed Moses that the time was now come for the deliverance of the Israelites, and commanded him to announce to Pharaoh his commission from on high. His brother Aaron was joined with him in the embassy.

19. How did Moses act on his return into Egypt? He met his brother Aaron, and communicated to him the purport of his mission to Pharaoh; they mutually agreed to visit his court immediately, and conveyed their embassy in these solemn terms: "The Lord God of the Hebrews hath sent me unto thee, saying, Let my people go, that they may serve me in the wilderness." Pharaoh refused to let them go, increased their daily labour, and for a time the condition of the Hebrews appeared worse than before.

20. How did God make Pharaoh feel his Almighty power? By afflicting the Egyptians with ten successive plagues. By the first, the waters of Egypt were turned into blood; by the second, frogs were sent in such numbers that they literally covered the land, entering the rooms, beds, ovens, &c.; by the third, the dust of the land became lice, on man and beast; by the fourth, a swarm of flies grievously infested Egypt, (though the land of Goshen was quite exempt from this evil): the fifth plague was a murrain or distemper among the cattle, of which most of them died; but in the land of Goshen the flocks and herds remained in security.

21. The Egyptian people and their beasts were next afflicted with boils or blains,—this was the sixth plague; and on the day after God caused a very grievous hail, such as had not been in Egypt from the foundation thereof until that time, to fall upon man and beast; the hail came down upon them and they died, only in the land of Goshen there was no hail: this was the seventh plague. God now sent an eighth plague upon the land of Egypt,—innumerable locusts, which destroyed the vegetation, and ate up every blade of grass; nothing green remained.

22. In consequence of Pharaoh's continued obstinacy, thick darkness prevailed over Egypt for three days, (yet the Hebrews had light in their houses): this was the ninth plague. The tenth was yet more dreadful, more immediately affecting Pharaoh: at midnight the Lord smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sat upon the throne to the first-born of the captive in the dungeon; but the destroying angel passed over the houses of the children of Israel, who lost not one.

23. How did Pharaoh feel this tenth calamity? He arose by night, sent for Moses and Aaron, and gave a hasty permission for the Israelites to depart; on which they quitted Egypt to the number of six hundred thousand men, exclusive of the Levites, and the women and children, having resided in the land of Goshen 430 years.

24. How is this period computed? From the death of Joseph to the departure of the Israelites was a period of about 145 years: from the coming of Jacob into Egypt to the departure of the Israelites was about 215 years: to which if 215 years be added, reckoning from the time of the promise and of Abraham's journey south, to the journey of Jacob into Egypt, the 430 years will be completed according to the statement in Exodus xii. 40.

25. Did the Hebrews continue their journey unmolested? Seven days after their departure, Pharaoh, repenting his extorted permission, pursued them with a numerous host, and came in sight of them on the borders of the Red Sea. Moses, by the command of God, now "stretched out his hand over the sea; and the Lord caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea dry land."

26. The waters were a wall unto them on the right hand and left, leaving the intermediate way dry; over this the Israelites marched in safety, which Pharaoh and his host attempting also to do, the waters suddenly closed, and overwhelmed them in one common destruction.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What was Isaac called? Who was his wife? At what ages respectively did his parents die? 2. How did Jacob obtain the highest blessing? What incensed his brother Esau against him? When did Jacob go from the face of his brother? 3. Who were Jacob's sons, and by whom? 5. By and to whom was Joseph sold? 7. What raised him to the government of Egypt? 8. How did he behave to his unnatural brethren? 10. What sons had he? 11. How many years did Jacob live? 12. How many Joseph?

14. Who was Aaron? How did Moses escape the cruel edict of Pharaoh? What was that edict? 16. What drove Moses into Midian? Whom did he marry there? 17. Who were Busiris and Amenophis? 18. What was the message from God to Pharaoh? 20. What was the first plague? the second? the third? the fourth? the fifth? the sixth? the seventh? the eighth? the ninth? the tenth? 23. What was the number that quitted Egypt? 25. What great miracle did God work in their behalf? How perished Pharaoh and his host?

#### SECTION IV.

##### *From the Departure out of Egypt to the Death of Joshua.*

- |                                                           |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Impen'etrable, <i>a.</i> that which cannot be pierced. | 10. Interces'sion, <i>s.</i> pleading for another |
| Con'ference, <i>s.</i> a meeting for counsel.             | 11. Abet, <i>v.</i> to encourage.                 |
| 5. Trans'port, <i>s.</i> a state of excitement.           | 20. Inter'ment, <i>s.</i> burial.                 |
| Idol'atrous, <i>a.</i> given to image worship             | 28. Predic'tion, <i>s.</i> prophecy.              |
|                                                           | 32. Ascri'be, <i>v.</i> to attribute to.          |

1. WHAT miraculous appearance guided the Israelites through their marches and wanderings? The Lord went

before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way; by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light.

2. Whither did Moses lead the Israelites? To the desert of Si'naï, near Mount Ho'reb. Here the Israelites pitched their camp, and under the command of Josh'ua, assisted by the fervent prayers of Moses, defeated the Am'alekites. The Hebrews continued in the desert of Sinai nearly a year, and during that time Moses received from the Almighty, and delivered to the people, the Decalogue, or Ten Commandments, with many useful laws and regulations, and set up the tabernacle.

3. How were the divine commandments given? From Mount Sinai, by God himself, with every accompaniment of awe and terror,—thunders, lightnings, and impenetrable darkness. This event took place about fifty days from their departure out of Egypt. After the delivery of the law, Moses went up into the mountain, and remained there forty days in conference with God.

4. How did the Israelites conduct themselves during his absence? A month having elapsed without sight of their leader, they imagined he would return no more, and prevailed upon Aaron to make them gods, to whom they might pray for support and protection. Aaron with criminal weakness complied with their request, and of their golden ornaments formed a calf, before which the people impiously and foolishly danced and worshipped.

5. What course did Moses take on his descent from the mountain? In the first transports of anger and concern, he broke the two tables of the law, (or Commandments,) reproached Aaron with just severity, and ordered the tribe of Levi, which had declared itself on the side of God, to slay without distinction all who still continued their idolatrous worship and revelry; about three thousand fell on this sad day victims to their own impiety, ingratitude, and the deserved wrath of heaven.

6. What became of the calf? Moses commanded it to be ground to powder, and then mixed with the water which the Israelites drank.

7. How long did Moses remain upon Mount Sinai the second time? Forty days and nights, without food. He then renewed the tables of stone on which the Commandments were to be inscribed; and when he descended the mountain, gave orders for the building of the tabernacle, after the pattern shown him by God, each Israelite freely offering something for its use or ornament: it was constructed like a square tent, and built of shittim wood. In it were placed the sacred utensils, the ark of the covenant, the table, the candlestick, altar of incense, &c.

8. Who was appointed the high-priest of God? Aaron, of the tribe of Levi: the priesthood was fixed in his family.

9. What other signal punishments were inflicted upon the people during their wanderings in the wilderness? Part of the camp was destroyed by fire from heaven at Tab'erah, as a punishment for repeated murmurings. After a wearisome march, many died of a plague at Kib'roth-hatta'avah, or the Graves of Lust, because they insolently refused manna, and demanded flesh: God in his anger sent them quails, with which they sated their gluttonous appetites:

10. One was stoned for blaspheming God, another for breaking the sabbath: and Miriam and Aaron, murmuring against Moses, were subjected to the indignation of the Almighty, who afflicted Miriam's hand with leprosy; but at the earnest intercession and prayer of Moses she was healed again.

11. Who were Ko'rah, Da'than, and Abi'ram? Three Israelites, who raised a rebellion against Moses and Aaron, claiming the priesthood; but themselves and families were swallowed up by a partial earthquake; two hundred and fifty men, who abetted their designs, being at the same time consumed by fire. The Israelites took no warning from this proof of the Almighty's displeasure; but renewed their murmurs, and fourteen thousand seven hundred were swept off by a pestilence.

12. What signal mercies were shown to the Israelites during their abode in the wilderness? They were miraculously sustained with provisions and water for forty years in the desert. The manna on which they subsisted, though not uncommon in that part of the deserts of Arabia, is proved to have been the effect of a miracle by the time, place, abundance, and duration of the supply. Their clothes were not worn out by use or time; their feet did not swell with long or painful marches, nor did their strength give way under fatigue.

13. Which were the principal feasts of the Jews? The sabbath, the passover, pentecost, the great day of atonement, the feast of tabernacles, of blowing the trumpets of the new moon, the feast of the dedication of the temple, and the feast of lots. *The sabbath*, as a day holy to the Lord; servants, strangers, and cattle were enjoined rest, as well as the master of the house. *The feast of the passover* was ordained as a memorial to all ages of the destroying angel passing over the doors of the Israelites, when he slew all the first-born of the Egyptians.

14. *The feast of pentecost* was kept in remembrance of the law given by the hand of God from Mount Sinai: Christians add another reason for this feast, viz. the descent of the Holy Spirit upon the Apostles. *The great day of atonement* was kept as a feast (or rather fast) of humiliation, cleansing, and reconciliation for sins. *The feast of the tabernacles* was held on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when the

people, having gathered in their corn and fruits, offered a solemn thanksgiving to God.

15. What happened when the Israelites drew near to Canaan? Moses deputed a man from each tribe to examine the country, and its inhabitants: ten of these men, seized with a foolish fear at the tallness of their stature, brought a false and evil report of the country; on which the Israelites, distrusting the power of God, murmured and refused to attack the Canaanites. The other two, Caleb, of the tribe of Judah, and Joshua, of the tribe of Ephraim, said, "The land is an exceeding good land, flowing with milk and honey: fear ye not the people of this land; their defence is departed from them, and the Lord is with us."

16. Then the Lord declared, that of the six hundred thousand who had quitted Egypt, Joshua and Caleb only should enter the promised land: they were all excluded from it, and even Moses and Aaron were forbidden to enter it, having incurred the displeasure of the Supreme Being when the people murmured for water the second time, by striking the rock, and ascribing the glory of the miracle in part to themselves.

17. What became of Aaron? He died shortly after this last event upon the top of Mount Hor, the high-priest's garments being first, by the command of God, put upon Aaron's son Eleazar. After Aaron's death, the people again murmured, and the Lord sent fiery serpents among them; but at the intercession of Moses this judgment was stayed. A brazen serpent was commanded to be made, and, when fixed in the wilderness, all who had suffered from the bite of the fiery serpents, upon looking on it, felt themselves healed.

18. What king of Moab sent for the prophet Balaam to curse the Israelites? Ba'laak: he promised Balaam great rewards, but God warned the prophet against cursing those whom he had blessed. Balaam, impelled by the spirit of avarice, inwardly resolved to violate or elude the divine injunction; but was checked on his way by an angel, and at length permitted to proceed on condition that he should speak only as the Lord directed: accordingly he emphatically blessed Israel, yet showed the depravity of his own heart, by advising the Moabites to entice the Hebrews to idolatry. He was slain soon after among the Midianites, in an engagement they had with the Israelites.

19. How did Moses die? He was not permitted to enter the promised land, but having appointed Joshua as the leader and captain of the Jews, and having given him a solemn charge for the welfare of the people, ascended Mount Ne'bo, was favoured by the Almighty with a clear view of Canaan, and quietly resigning himself to the will of heaven, died on the mountain, aged 120; his eyes were not dim, nor his natural force abated.

20. His death happened on the seventh of the twelfth month, about forty years after the departure from Egypt: the Israelites mourned for him thirty days. He was buried in the valley of Moab, but the spot of his interment was not made known; probably to prevent the people falling into the idolatry of worshipping at his tomb.

21. Moses is copious in recording the events of the first two years after the departure from Egypt, but very brief respecting the remaining thirty-eight. However, he recounts all the places (forty-two), in which the Israelites encamped during their sojourn in the wilderness.

22. How did Joshua fulfil the commands imposed upon him? He conducted the people immediately to the conquest of Canaan, the priests leading the way to the river Jordan, bearing the ark of the covenant. As soon as their feet touched the edge of the water, the current receded; it divided as the Red Sea had done formerly, and Joshua with his army went through on dry land. When all had passed, the ark was taken in safety out of the Jordan, and the river returned to its usual channel.

23. What did Joshua erect in commemoration of this miracle? He piled twelve large stones upon each other in the place where the priests and the ark rested, as a memorial of the fact. The crossing of the Jordan took place on the tenth of the first month, in the forty-first year after the departure from Egypt.

24. Which were Joshua's chief victories? After the priests and the army had surrounded the city of Jericho six days, on the seventh the priests with the ark made the circuit of the walls seven times; the trumpets sounded, the people shouted, the walls suddenly fell flat to the ground, and Joshua destroyed all within the city with the edge of the sword:

25. The city of Ai was taken, five kings of the Amorites overcome, with many other kings and countries. Joshua also encountered and defeated the Anakims, or sons of Anak, a race of men extraordinary for size and strength.

26. What other miracles were wrought in favour of Joshua? On one occasion a storm of stones was cast on his enemies; and at another time the sun and moon appeared to stand still in the valley of Ajalon, till Joshua had completed the defeat of the Amorites; or, astronomically speaking, the course of the earth was stayed.

27. How long did Joshua govern the Israelites in peace, after their establishment in Canaan? About seventeen years.

28. How was the conquered country divided amongst the Israelites? The Gadites, Reubenites, and half-tribe of Manasseh obtained their share on the east side of Jordan, which was given them by Moses.—*Numb. xxxii. 33.* The

land of Hebron fell to Caleb, according to the prediction and oath recorded by Moses; whilst on the west side of Jordan the land was divided among the remaining tribes by lot in Shi'loh, seven years after their entrance into Canaan. On reviewing the situation of the tribes and their different lots, it appears that the prediction of Jacob, (Gen. xl ix.) and that of Moses, (Deut. xxxiii.) were perfectly fulfilled.

29. What portion had the tribe of Levi? Forty-eight cities in various parts of Israel; thirteen were for the priests, six were cities of refuge, and the remainder were appointed to the Levites, who had also the tenth of the produce from every man's land.

30. What was the distinguishing trait in Joshua's character? Piety: though immersed in the busy scenes of life, he declared, "As for me and my house, we will serve the Lord." Joshua read to the people the book of Deuteronomy, its blessings, curses, and commandments, exhorting them to obedience by the remembrance of former mercies; and threatened them, in case they hearkened not to the word of the Lord. Soon after this he died at Timnath-serah, aged 110, (B. C. 1427.)

31. Was the whole of Palestine subdued by Joshua? No: several expeditions were made after his death by the tribe of Judah, and by that of Dan. Seven nations were destroyed,—the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Gergashites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; yet not utterly, for a remnant of them was left 'to prove Israel, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of the Lord.'

32. By whom was the book of Joshua written? According to some by Ezra, to others by Phin'ehas; but most ancient and modern writers ascribe it to Joshua himself.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

2. How long did the Israelites remain near Sinai? What was then delivered to them? 3. In what manner? What did Moses after this? 4. What did Aaron make for them? 5. What were the consequences of their idolatry? 7. What was the Tabernacle? When built? 9. For what were the Israelites punished? 11. How many were swallowed up with Korah? How many destroyed for murmuring? 12. On what did they subsist?

13. Why was the feast of the passover ordained? of pentecost? of atonement? of tabernacles? 16. What punishment was inflicted on the Israelites for refusing to enter Canaan? Why? Why were Moses and Aaron included? 17. When did Aaron die? By whom succeeded? 18. Who was Balaam? How did he act? What his end? 19. Where was Moses buried? 21. How many encampments did the Israelites make? 31. What nations were destroyed in Canaan? 32. Who wrote the book of Joshua?

## SECTION V.

*From the Death of Joshua to the Reign of Saul.*

- |                                                                                                  |                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Dicta'tor, <i>s.</i> a Roman magistrate, to whom absolute power was given for a limited time. | 14. Sensual'ity, <i>s.</i> too great indulgence of the appetites of the body.               |
| 6. Servi'tude, <i>s.</i> a state of service.                                                     | 20. Ded'icate, <i>v.</i> to devote; to set apart.                                           |
| 9. Assass'inate, <i>v.</i> to murder.                                                            | 22. Pre'text, <i>s.</i> excuse; feigned reason. Degen'eracy, <i>s.</i> decline from virtue. |

1. WHAT were the Judges of the Israelites? Extraordinary magistrates, similar to the Dictators among the Romans. The judges were under the immediate influence of the Divine Being. They were raised to their office on extraordinary occasions by the especial providence of God. Hence their government is called a theocracy; i. e. *the government of God.*

2. In whom was the ordinary magistracy vested? In the San'hedrim, or seventy Elders. There were also inferior courts, from which an appeal lay to the Sanhedrim.

3. What was the state of the Israelites during the sway of the judges? They fell into the idolatrous worship and practices of the neighbouring nations, with whom they also intermarried. Frequent slavery, troubles, and oppressions followed, as judgments from God. They at times repented, but their repentance was of short duration, and horrid crimes, slaughters, human sacrifices, and civil war succeeded.

4. How long were they governed by judges? About 450 years. Among the most celebrated of these were Oth'niel, Deb'orah, Gid'eon, Jeph'tha, Sam'son, Eli, and Samuel.

5. What judge succeeded Othniel? E'hud, a Benjaminite, who killed king Eg'lon, and defeated the Moabites; Sham'-gar, another judge, succeeded Ehud. After the death of these judges, Deborah, the prophetess, assembled the Israelites, to the amount of ten thousand, and marched against Sis'era, general of Ja'bin, king of the Canaanites. Sisera was defeated at the waters of Megid'do, and slain in his flight by Ja'el, the wife of Heber. Israel was thus rescued, and enjoyed peace for some years.

6. Who next oppressed the Israelites? This rebellious people having repeated their idolatry, and various crimes, fell into the most complete bondage to the Midianites; this servitude lasted seven years.

7. Who restored this oppressed people to temporary independence? Gideon. An angel called him from the thrashing-floor to be judge of Israel; assuring him that the Jews should, by his exertions, be raised from the depths of distress.

8. What marks of heroism did Gideon display? With three hundred men selected by the Lord, he defeated a host of Midianites, killed Ze'ba and Zalmun'na, kings of Midian,

refused the title of king of Israel offered him by his countrymen, and gave the land of Israel rest.

9. What happened on the death of Gideon ? The seventy lawful sons of Gideon were assassinated by the contrivance of Abim'elech, their natural brother, who, after this massacre, caused himself to be proclaimed king in She'chem : he was killed three years after by a piece of a mill-stone, which a woman threw from the walls of the city of The'bez upon his head.

10. Who next judged Israel ? Tola and Jair, successively : the former judged it well and prudently, but in the days of Jair the children of Israel again did evil in the sight of the Lord. The Aminonites and Philistines attacked and defeated them : the Israelites now mournfully repented, and implored the Divine forgiveness.

11. Did God hearken to the repeated prayers of the Israelites ? Yes ; and he raised up Jephtha, the Gileadite, who overcame the Ammonites.

12. Who was Samson ? Another deliverer of Israel, who, after a lapse of some years, (in which period Ib'zan, Elon, and Abdon judged Israel, but performed nothing worthy of record,) arose to encounter the Philistines, and judged Israel twenty years.



13. For what was Samson peculiarly remarkable ? For uncommon strength of body : he tore a lion in pieces, and killed a thousand Philistines with the jaw-bone of an ass. Some years after the Philistines shut him up in the city of Gaza, believing him to be then entirely in their power ; but

the next morning he carried off the city gates, posts, and bars, and removed them all to the top of a hill near Hebron, or Kir'jah Ar'ba.

14. Did the arm of the Lord still continue with him? Becoming at length a slave to sensuality, a Philistine, named Del'ilah, occasioned his destruction. He imprudently revealed to her the secret in which his great strength lay, viz. his hair, he being a Nazarite; upon this she treacherously, while he was sleeping, caused the seven locks of his head to be shaven off, and then sent for the Philistines. His strength departing from him, he was an easy prey to his enemies, who put out his eyes, loaded him with fetters, and compelled him to grind in the prison at Gaza.

15. What was Samson's end? The Philistines made a feast in honour of their god Da'gon, and in the midst of their merriment sent for Samson to divert themselves still farther with his misery. The flat roof of the house, or temple, is described as containing three thousand people upon it; the inside also was filled: then Samson requested permission to lean upon the pillars, and earnestly supplicating the assistance of the Almighty, overturned the pillars of the temple, and buried the Philistines, with himself, in one undistinguished ruin.

16. Who succeeded Samson as judge? Eli, the high-priest. He was of a meek, gentle disposition, but indolent and remiss in his care of the nation, and in proper attention to the regulation of his own family,—his sons, Hoph'ni and Phinehas, leading the most dissolute, profligate lives, unrestrained by their father.

In the time of Eli a severe battle was fought between the Philistines and the Israelites; the sons of Eli were slain, the ark of the covenant fell into idolatrous hands, being taken by the Philistines; and Eli, who sat by the way-side to learn the event of the battle, hearing these disastrous circumstances, fell from his seat and died.

17. What useful lesson may be drawn from the character of Eli? The necessity which parents, guardians, and all concerned in the religious instruction of youth, are under to watch over their passions, and restrain their inclination to evil.

18. What afterwards became of the ark? The Philistines, being afflicted by God with a deadly distemper, restored it to the Israelites. It was received by them at Beth'shemesh, where 50,000 were struck dead for presuming irreverently to look into it. Abin'adab, the son of Eleazar, was then sanctified to keep it; and in his house it remained till David, the son of Jesse, placed it under the care of Obed-edom, the Hittite, whom God blessed while it remained under his roof: thence David brought it to his city of Sion. Lastly, Solomon, after the building of his magnifi-

cent temple, with great solemnity and reverence placed the ark of God there.

19. The book of Judges, which connects the history from the death of Joshua to the death of Samson, a space of about 309 years, is supposed to have been compiled from existing records by Samuel.

20. Who was Samuel? A Levite and priest, then a prophet, and afterwards a judge over Israel. He was the son of El'kanah and Hannah, and dedicated to the service of God from his infancy. He is said to have presided over the state for twenty years, and appears not to have resigned all authority when Saul came to the throne.

21. Who was Saul? The first king of the Israelites. He was a Benjamite of noble presence, appointed by Samuel, under Divine direction, to reign over them when they loudly demanded to have a king, like the nations around.

22. What was the pretext they urged for requiring a king? Samuel's extreme old age, and the degeneracy of his sons; but the real reasons were, a love of change, rivalry of their neighbours, want of trust in God, and forgetfulness of his past deliverances. God was angry with their request, but permitted Samuel to grant it.

23. How did Saul bear this elevation? For some time he administered the government with equity, relying upon the prudent advice of Samuel; but at length frequently disobeying God, the Almighty expressed his high displeasure, and David the son of Jesse, a shepherd of Israel, was, when twenty-two years of age, anointed by Samuel as future king of that rich inheritance.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

4. Who were the most remarkable of the Judges? 5. What did Ehud do? By whom was Ehud succeeded? Who led the Israelites against Sisera? Who slew Sisera? 7. What did Gideon? 9. How died Abimelech? 10. What happened under Jair? 13. Relate the manner in which Samson escaped from Gaza. 14. How did he again fall into the hands of the Philistines? 15. How many Philistines were crushed to death with Samson? Relate the particulars. 16. What was Eli's character? What was the character of his sons? How did the ark fall into the hands of the Philistines?

18. How many were destroyed at Bethshemesh, and why? 19. Who wrote the book of Judges? How far does it bring down the history of the Israelites? 20. How long did Samuel act as judge? 21. Who was the first king of the Israelites? 22. What were the motives of the Israelites in demanding a king? 23. Who was appointed in Saul's stead, and why? How old was David when appointed king?

## SECTION VI.

*From the Death of Saul to the Reign of Rehoboam.*

- |                                                 |                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Cham'pion, <i>s.</i> a single combatant.     | 10. Con'templated, <i>v.</i> viewed; designed.                                    |
| 2. Pathet'ic, <i>a.</i> moving the passions.    | 12. Superstruc'ture, <i>s.</i> that which is raised or built upon something else. |
| 5. Consol'i date, <i>v.</i> to make firm.       | 19. Exas'perated, <i>v.</i> angry; enraged.                                       |
| 6. Reinsta'te, <i>v.</i> to restore; to return. |                                                                                   |

1. **WHAT** became of Saul? The Philistines and the subjects of Saul having engaged to decide their quarrels by single combat, their champion, Goli'ath, at length met an adversary in the youthful David, who, with unexampled courage and patriotism, slew the giant. The Israelites then



attacked and routed the army of the Philistines, with great slaughter. Some years after this memorable event, the Philistines again set their battle in array, and Saul, who had long forgotten God, requesting advice from Heaven in this extremity, received no answer. An engagement followed; Saul's army was worsted, and three of his sons slain; he fled, and in a fit of despair died upon his own sword on Mount Gilboa.

2. Who was Jonathan? One of the sons just mentioned, the cherished friend of David. He seemed worthy of a better fate; and David, hearing this mournful event, bewailed the loss of Saul and Jonathan in a beautifully pathetic lamentation.

3. What happened to the kingdom on the death of Saul? David was, on his death, proclaimed king by the tribe of Judah; but the other tribes placed Ish'bosheth, the son of Saul, on the throne, who, after some years, was murdered

by two of his captains; and David, having reigned king of Judah about seven years and a half, was by the other tribes chosen king over all Israel.

4. What was the general character of David,—his life and reign? Every portion of his life is worthy of regard. His piety displayed itself in his general anxiety to obey the will of God, and in the Psalms written by him; yet in some of his acts he exhibited lamentable proofs of human infirmity and sinfulness, by which he incurred the Divine displeasure, and brought many troubles on himself, his family, and his people.

5. What was the political condition of Israel under this monarch? The kingdom, under his wise and active rule, was consolidated and extended, and all the surrounding nations conciliated or subdued.

6. What were the chief traits of David's character in addition to his piety? Valour, generosity, and gratitude: in the first of these noble qualities he was inferior to none of the most distinguished heroes of Greece and Rome: many signal instances of it are recorded in the Bible. His gratitude was shown in his kind remembrance of Mephib'osheth, the son of Jonathan, whom he caused to sit daily at his table, and reinstated in the lands of his grandfather Saul.



7. Relate an instance of his generosity and high sense of duty. He gave a remarkable proof of these sterling qualities in his conduct towards Saul in the cave of Adul'lam. That monarch, in the latter years of his reign, jealous of David's popularity, and envious of his well-earned renown, had made many attempts to take away his life. On one

occasion he pursued him to the rocks of En'gedi, into one of the caves of which he entered to take repose. David, with some of his followers lay concealed in its sides, and might have slain Saul, but refused to avail himself of this opportunity of revenge on his mortal enemy. He merely cut off the skirt of his robe as he lay asleep.

The engraving represents David in the act of showing it to Saul on his departure from the cave, and expostulating with him on the injustice and cruelty of his conduct to an innocent and faithful subject.

8. The books of Samuel connect the thread of the history from the latter end of Eli's government to the death of David. The book of Psalms bears the name of David, because he wrote the greater part of them. Eighty-two have his name affixed; the rest are ascribed to Moses, Solomon, Asaph, Heman, and Ethar.

9. Who succeeded David, and what was his character? His son Solomon, the former part of whose life was spent in the steady observance of God's precepts. On his accession to the throne, the Almighty offered to his choice riches, honour, or wisdom; he chose wisdom, and the Lord, pleased with his decision, conferred also upon him riches and honour.

10. What great and honourable work was reserved for Solomon? The building of the temple; first contemplated by his father David, but postponed by Divine command till after his death.

11. Give a brief description of this splendid building. Its materials were of the richest kind; beautiful stones of Parian marble, of immense size, profusely adorned with gold, silver, brass, and jewels. About 180,000 workmen, among whom were some of the cleverest artists and mechanics of the age, were employed in its construction.

12. It was divided into two parts, the Temple or Holy Place, and the Holy of Holies, by means of a vail of very fine workmanship. The whole was sixty cubits long, and twenty wide; the height of the lower house was thirty cubits, and with the superstructure 120 cubits. It stood on Mount Moriah. Seven years and a half were required to complete it.

13. What was the state of the kingdom in his reign? Tranquil and prosperous beyond any nation before or after him.

14. How did he offend God? Towards the end of his reign he fell into idolatry, led away by his foreign wives. As a punishment for his wickedness and ingratitude to the God of all power, he was informed in a dream that in the days of Rehobo'am, his son, the tribes of Judah and Benjamin should alone acknowledge his sway, and that the other ten tribes should revolt; thus dividing the kingdom.

15. Solomon died after a reign of forty years. The Scriptures are silent as to his repentance, but it is inferred, from the works he wrote, that he did repent before his death.

16. What were those works? The Proverbs, the Song of Solomon, and the book of Ecclesiastes.

17. Who succeeded him? His son Rehobo'am.

18. Who was Jerobo'am? He was originally an officer of Solomon's; but being informed, in the latter years of that monarch, by Abi'jah the prophet that he should in due time be king over the ten tribes, Solomon felt his distrust and anger rise against Jeroboam, and he was compelled to take refuge in Egypt, where he remained till the death of Solomon. He then joined the principal inhabitants of Jerusalem in an entreaty to Rehoboam that he would lessen the oppressive taxations, and rule more gently than his father Solomon had done.

19. How did Rehoboam act? He returned a haughty answer, expressive of his resolution to govern with still greater severity than his father had done. The exasperated Israelites immediately revolted, and ten of the tribes chose Jeroboam as their king.

20. Did Rehoboam subdue this revolt? No. For three years he reigned well; afterwards sinking into idolatry, Shishak, king of Egypt, was permitted to defeat his forces, to enter his city of Jerusalem, and carry off the treasures in the temple and palace, leaving Rehoboam to deplore his own folly.

21. After living about twelve years longer he died, and his son Abijah succeeded him. From this time to the Captivity, about 245 years, the interests of Judah and Israel were separate.

-----

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Goliath? By whom slain? How and where did Saul die? Who fell on the same day? 2. Why and how did David lament the death of Jonathan? 3. Who was Ishbosheth? What his end? 5. What was the general state of Israel under the reign of David? 6. Was he a perfect character? 8. How far do the books of Samuel carry the Old Testament history? Who, besides David, wrote the Psalms? Why are they called the Psalms of David?

9. What did Solomon choose? In preference to what? How was he rewarded for his excellent choice? 10. How many workmen were employed in building the temple? How long was it in building? 12. What was its length? breadth? height? Where did it stand? 15. How long did Solomon reign over Israel? Why is he supposed to have repented? 17. Who succeeded him on the throne of Israel? 19. What was the conduct and character of Rehoboam? 20. Who plundered the temple?

=====

## SECTION VII.

*Chronological Synopsis of the Kings of Judah and Israel.*

**Ins'tigate,** v. to tempt or urge to ill. | **Announce'ment,** s. a declaration.  
**Predeces'sor,** s. one going before. | **Storm,** v. to take by open force.

*Kings of the Twelve Tribes of Israel.*

|           |    |    |          |
|-----------|----|----|----------|
| B.C. 1095 | .. | .. | SAUL.    |
| 1055      | .. | .. | DAVID.   |
| 1015      | .. | .. | SOLOMON. |

*Kings of Judah and Benjamin.*

975. REHOBOAM, a wicked man, and an idolater ; warred with Jeroboam, and with Shishak king of Egypt, who defeated him and carried off the treasures of the temple and the palace.

958. ABI'JAH, his reign was short and evil.

955. A'sa, a good king : he restored the worship of God. His reign was long and prosperous. He overthrew the *Aethiopians*, who attacked him with an immense army. He acted inconsistently in his latter days.

914. JEHOSH'APHAT, a good and wise king ; he thoroughly reformed the abuses that still remained in the worship of God and the administration of justice. He warred successfully against the Moabites, Ammonites, and Syrians.

889. JEHO'RAM, a wicked king : murdered his brothers, and renewed the worship of idols. The Ammonites and Philistines ravaged the country, and plundered Jerusalem. He died of a sore disease, sent as a punishment for his crimes.

885. AHAZI'AH, a wicked king : he was slain by Jehu.

884. ATHALI'AH, this mother of Ahaziah slew all the seed royal of the house of Judah, and usurped the throne. After a wicked reign of six years she was killed in the temple.

878. JO'ASH, the grandson of

*Kings of the Ten Tribes of Israel.*

975. JEROBOAM, a wicked king, who made Israel to sin : he built two temples, and set up two calves to be worshipped ; one at Dan, the other at Bethel, to prevent his subjects—the revolted ten tribes—going up to Jerusalem to worship with the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. In a great battle, fought between Jeroboam and Abijah, Judah slew of Israel 500,000 men.

954. NA'DAB, } All these were  
 953. BA'ASHA, } wicked kings.  
 930. E'LAH, } Omri built Sa-  
 929. { ZIM'RI, } maria, and made  
 { OM'RI, } it the capital of  
 Israel.

918. A'HAB exceeded all that went before him in vice and impiety, and was instigated to deeds of iniquity by his wicked wife, Jez'ebel. He fell in battle against the Syrians under Ben-hadad.

897. AHAZI'AH, a wicked king.

896. JEHO'RAM did not carry his wickedness to such an extent as his predecessors : he was slain by Jehu, whom God appointed to destroy the whole house of Ahab, as a punishment for their sins. In this reign Samaria suffered greatly in a siege, and was miraculously delivered. Under the three last kings the prophets Eli'jah and Eli'sha were eminent for their prophecies, actions, and miracles. The former, like Enoch, was translated into heaven.

884. JE'HU : though raised by

Athaliah : he escaped the massacre of the royal family, being hid by his aunt, and was educated by Jehoi'ada, the high-priest. At first he governed well, but on the death of Jehoiada he became depraved. He was slain by his own servants.

839. **AMAZI'AH** : a good king, but not so perfect as his ancestor David.

810. **UZZI'AH**, whose reign was very long and prosperous : he died a leper, for presuming to burn incense in the temple. In his days Isai'ah began his prophetic announcements, continuing them during the reigns of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

758. **JO'THAM**, a good king : he carried on defensive wars with Syria, and with Israel.

742. **A'HAZ**, a cruel, impious monarch, who even shut up the gates of the temple, after despoiling it.

727. **HEZEKI'AH**, a pious and prosperous king : he restored the worship of God. In his reign the Assyrians, under Sennache'rib, invaded Judah, but were obliged to abandon their design, having lost 185,000 men in one night, who were smitten by an angel because they defied the God of Israel.

698. **MANAS'SEH** led the people back into idolatry : he was the most wicked of all the kings of Judah. He was defeated and made prisoner by Esarhad'don, king of Babylon ; but repenting, he was restored to his kingdom.

God to punish idolatry, he only put down the worship of Baal : the golden calves of Jeroboam were allowed to remain. In those days the Lord began to cut Israel short, and Haz'ael smote them in all their coasts.

856. **JEHO'AHAZ** : he did evil before God, and his people were greatly oppressed by the Syrians during his reign.

839. **JEHO'ASH**, or **JO'ASH** : he defeated Amaziah, and recovered many cities from the Syrians ; but persisted in the idolatrous practices of his fathers. In this reign the prophet Elisha died.

825. **JEROBOAM II.** was valiant and successful in his wars with Judah and with the Syrians : he did evil in the sight of the Lord.

773. **ZACHARI'AH**, ) All wicked  
772. { **SHAL'LUM**, ) kings. In  
761. { **MEN'AHEM**, } the reign of  
759. **PEKAHI'AH**, ) Menahem,  
**PE'KAH**, ) Phul king  
of Assyria invaded Israel, and  
peace was only obtained from  
him by payment of a large ransom.  
In the reign of Pekah the  
tribes beyond Jordan, with that  
of Naphtali, were carried away  
captive by Tig'lath-Pile'ser.

730. **HOSHE'A** : the last king of the Israelites. The measure of their iniquity was now full, and their general captivity took place in the ninth year of this reign. Shalmane'sar, king of Assyria, transplanted them into Assyria and the mountainous parts of Media, after they had existed as a separate kingdom 245 years.

#### *Kings of Judah after the Captivity of Israel.*

643. **A'MON**, a wicked king.

641. **JOSI'AH**, distinguished by his piety and zeal. He was slain in a battle with the Egyptians, under Pharaoh-Necho, after a long and happy reign.

610. **JEHO'AHAZ** reigned only three months, when he was deposed by the king of Egypt, who appointed his brother king, and compelled the land to pay a heavy tribute.

610. **JEHO'IAKIM** reigned eleven years, doing evil in the sight of the Lord. The first removal of the kingdom of Judah took place about the commencement of the fourth year of his reign, by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. Daniel was among the captives at

that time. Four years after, the Babylonians rendered their oppression still heavier; and three years subsequently the king, having rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar, was taken prisoner, and put to death.—Another portion of the inhabitants was now carried captive to Babylon, among whom was the prophet Ezekiel.

599. JEHOI'ACHIN, the son of the preceding, who did evil like his father, succeeded to the throne: he, with the priests and prophets, and a great multitude of the people, were carried away captive to Babylon in the first year of his reign.

599. ZEDEKI'AH, his uncle, was placed on the throne. He rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, who after a year's siege of Jerusalem, stormed it, and put to death the sons of Zedekiah before their father's face, together with the principal men of Judah. Zedekiah's eyes were put out, and he died in prison in Babylon. The city, and the beautiful temple which had stood 400 years, were destroyed; the people of Judah, with the remains of Israel, were finally removed to Babylon, except a few of the lowest class, who were left behind, and a remnant that escaped to Egypt. The prophet Jeremi'ah was permitted to remain.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

How many kings reigned over the ten tribes, from Jeroboam to Hoshea? How many over the two, from Rehoboam to Zedekiah? Who were the good kings of Judah? Who the wicked? Who were the most wicked of the kings of Israel?

What were the objects of the idolatry of the Israelites? Who set them up? Why? What was the end of Ahab? For what were Elijah and Elisha eminent? What occurred in Hezekiah's reign to the army of the Assyrians? Who was the worst of all the kings of Judah? By whom were the ten tribes led away captive? Where were they placed? For what?

What was the end and character of Josiah? Who reigned in Judah at the time of the captivity of Israel? In what reign was the first captivity of the kingdom of Judah? When, and for what, did a second removal take place? Who was among the captives in the first? Who in the second removal? Who in the next? In the last? How was Zedekiah treated? What befell the temple and the people?

---

#### SECTION VIII.

##### *From the Captivity to the Reign of the Ptolemies.*

- |                                                 |                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Interposi'tion, <i>s.</i> interference; aid. | 11. Syn'agogue, <i>s.</i> an assembly; usually applied to a place of Jewish worship. |
| 3. Carou'se, <i>v.</i> to drink to excess.      |                                                                                      |
| 8. Subor'dinate, <i>a.</i> subject to.          | 14. Amass', <i>v.</i> to heap up.                                                    |

1. WHO were Sha'drach, Me'shach, and Abednego? and what befell them? These were three pious young Hebrews, who had been carried away captive at the same time with Daniel: they refused to worship a golden image which Nebuchadnezzar had set up on his return to Babylon, and were, by his order, cast into a burning fiery furnace, from which, by a miraculous interposition, they escaped unhurt.

2. How did Daniel begin his prophetical office? By interpreting the dreams of Nebuchadnezzar. In his writings are many remarkable predictions relating to the Chaldean, Persian, Grecian, and Roman empires, and also respecting the MESSIAH. He was promoted by Nebuchadnezzar to the highest offices and honours of the Babylonish empire.

3. What was the subsequent fate of Babylon? It was taken by the army of the Medes and Persians under the command of Cyrus, fifty years after the conquest of Judæa; and Belshaz'zar, its impious monarch, grandson of Nebuchadnezzar, when carousing out of the golden vessels that had been consecrated to God, and brought from the temple at Jerusalem, was surprised and slain.

4. What befell Daniel after the reduction of the city? Dari'u's, the Mede, who assumed the government, having united Babylonia to Media, appointed him ruler over the whole empire. He was afterwards, through an artifice of the Median nobles, who envied him, cast into a den of lions, but miraculously preserved.

5. When were the Jews permitted to return to Canaan? After the death of Daniel, Cyrus granted them this privilege: the captivity had lasted seventy years, according to the prophecy of Jeremiah. They were allowed by Cyrus to rebuild the city and the temple. Many thousand Jews prepared for their departure, led by Zerub'babel, the lineal representative of the royal house of David, and accompanied by their high-priest. Cyrus restored to them the sacred vessels taken by Nebuchadnezzar, and they left Babylon B.C. 536.

6. Who settled the government? Ezra: he also restored the worship of God. Nehemi'ah, a spirited and upright Jew, assisted in repairing and fortifying the city: he was originally cup-bearer to that king, Artaxerx'es or Ahasuerus, whose queen Esther, a Jewess, so eminently befriended her fallen country, by prevailing on Ahasuerus to publish an edict in favour of the Jews.

7. Who were the prophets that flourished, or wrote, during the captivity? Hag'gai, Zechari'ah, Eze'kiel, Nehemiah, and Daniel: the latter exactly foretold the time when Christ would appear; this was revealed to him in a vision by God, with a promise of the Jews' deliverance from captivity.

8. By whom were the Jews governed after Nehemiah's decease? They were subject to a Persian governor of all Syria. In religious matters they were under the control of their high-priests, who also exercised the civil power, subordinate to that of the Persian governors, whose rule was mild.

9. Till what period did they remain under the Persian sway? Till the conquest of the Persian monarchy by Alexander the Great.

10. Under whose rule did they fall, after the division of Alexander's empire among four of his principal generals? These and their successors, for more than 150 years, were generally at war with one another: but the Jews, whose country lay between them, were marvellously protected by Divine Providence. Ptolemy Lagus, to whose lot Egypt fell, did indeed invade Judaea, which refused to submit to his authority, and carried away 100,000 of the people captive into Egypt; he treated them well, however, and appointed many to places of trust and power.

11. Who was Simon the Just, and when did he die? This high-priest was the last of the great synagogue, consisting of 120 persons, appointed by Ezra for the restoration of the Jewish church: he is believed to have made the last revision of the books of the Old Testament. He died B. C. 292.

12. Of whose empire did Judaea now form a part? That of the Ptolemies, kings of Egypt, by whom they were befriended and protected until the time of Ptolemy Philopater, B. C. 221, who was a profligate monarch. Having engaged in war with Antiochus Theos, king of Syria, and conquered him, he made a progress through his provinces. On visiting Jerusalem he offered numerous victims, and gave valuable presents to the temple; but the high-priest, Simon II., not permitting him to enter the Holy of Holies, in revenge he treated the Jews in the most barbarous manner when he returned to Egypt. They were deprived of their privileges, and multitudes exposed to wild beasts, which however, it is said, instead of slaying them, destroyed their enemies.

13. On the death of Philopater, B. C. 204, Antiochus the Great marched a large army into Palestine and subdued it; but the following year it was wrested from him by the Egyptians, who garrisoned Jerusalem, B. C. 192. The year after it was recovered by Antiochus, to whom the Jews were so favourable that he repaired their city, and restored them all the privileges originally granted by Alexander.

14. What great calamity next befell them? The office of high-priest, from the great civil and religious power with which it was invested, and also the means it afforded of amassing wealth, became an object of ambition and avarice among those who had any pretensions to fill it. Antiochus Epiphanes (*i. e.* illustrious), who ascended the throne B. C. 176, being pressed by the Romans for tribute, deposed the Jewish high-priest, and sold the office first to his brother Jason, and afterwards to his brother Menelaus: between these two a civil war arose, attended with much bloodshed.

15. Antiochus interfered to put down the contest, and having been told that the Jews made great rejoicing at a report that had been spread of his death, he stormed Jerusalem, slew 40,000 persons, sold as many for slaves, plundered the temple, and sacrificed some on the altar of burnt-

offering. He then appointed Philip, a Phrygian and a man of great cruelty, to be their governor, and confirmed Menelaus in the priesthood.

16. What further acts of cruelty did he commit? Being ordered by the Romans to withdraw his forces from Egypt, he vented his rage on the Jews, and despatched Apollo'nius, one of his generals, with 25,000 men to destroy Jerusalem, put the men to the sword, and sell the women and children as slaves. These savage orders were carried into execution on the Sabbath day, and none escaped but such as took refuge in the mountains.

17. Did his cruelties stop here? No: he next set on foot a persecution against all Jews who refused to turn idolaters; suppressed the observances of their religion, dedicated the temple to Jupiter Olympius, whose statue he erected; and put to death all who would not conform to his mode of worship.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. For what were the three pious Jews condemned to be burnt? How saved? 2. How was Daniel treated? 3. What befell Belshaz-zar? Why? 6. Who was Esther? In what way did she serve the Jews? 7. Who was Nehemiah? What did he do for his people? 10. What befell the Jews under Ptolemy Lagus? 11. Who was the last priest of the great synagogue? How, for what, and by whom constituted? What important service did he accomplish?

12. How did Ptolemy Philopater treat the Jews? 13. Was Ju-dæa the theatre of the war between two powerful monarchs? Who were they? How did it end as respected the Jews? 15. What was the cause of the anger of Antiochus against them? How did he treat them? 16. Relate a few particulars of his cruelty. 17. What act of profanity did he commit?

---

#### SECTION IX.

##### *From the time of the Maccabees to the Birth of Christ.*

2. Pros'ecute, *v.* to follow up.  
8. In'dolent, *a.* lazy; careless.

| 5. Usurp'er, *s.* one who holds the right of another.

1. WHO first made a determined stand against this persecution? Mattathias, great grandson of Asmonæ'us, a Levite, raised with his sons a valiant band, by which he overthrew and put to death Apelles, the king's agent, and all his attendants, restored the worship of God, and repaired Jerusalem B. C. 167. He died the year after.

2. By whom was he succeeded? By Judas, surnamed Maccabæ'us, his third son, who in several unequal conflicts routed the armies of Antiochus Epiphanes with great slaughter, and nobly prosecuted the work his father had begun.

3. What happened to Antiochus? He determined to take signal revenge, but was seized with an incurable disease, of which he died B. C. 164.

4. Did this put an end to the war? No: it continued under his successor, Antiochus Eupater, with various success. Judas at length fell in battle, having held the high-priesthood about six years. He was succeeded by his brother Jonathan, who held the supreme civil and ecclesiastical power for about eighteen years, and contended successfully with his enemies, as his brother Judas had done before him.

5. He was at length treacherously slain by Tryphon, the usurper of the throne of Syria. To him succeeded Simon, the eldest brother, who with two of his sons were assassinated by his son-in-law Ptolemy, B. C. 135. He had finally triumphed over the enemies of his native land, and rendered it independent and tranquil.

6. Who succeeded him? His only surviving son, John Hyrcanus: under this wise, valiant, and good prince, Judæa attained a pitch of greatness and power such as it had not known since the days of Solomon. He reigned thirty years.

7. By whom was he succeeded? By his son Aristobulus, B. C. 107, who was the first prince that assumed the royal dignity after the Babylonish captivity. He reigned one year, and was followed by his brother Alexander Jannæus: after a prosperous reign of twenty-eight years he died, and, in conformity with his will, was succeeded by his widow Alex'andra. She reigned with prudence and ability nine years.

8. Her eldest son Hyrcanus, who was an indolent and weak character, reigned but three months after her decease, when he was deposed by his younger brother Aristobulus: he was soon restored by the Romans, who afterwards compelling him to resign the crown, Judæa became a Roman province, B. C. 63.

9. Who was now made governor of Judæa? Antipater, a crafty Idumæan of noble rank, was made procurator of the province, leaving to Hyrcanus the office of high-priest, B. C. 47.

10. Who was Herod the Great? The son of Antipater. He pulled down the temple erected by Zerubbabel, which had existed 500 years, and built a new one, that far surpassed the old in size, workmanship, and magnificence. This was an active and talented monarch, but a monster of cruelty.

11. In the 37th year of his reign, the long-promised and expected Saviour of the world was born.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

2. What exploits did Judas Maccabæus perform? 4. How did he die? How long did he rule? By whom succeeded? What his

fate? How long had he ruled? 5. By whom slain? Who was the next high-priest? What had he achieved? What his end? 6. What was the character of John Hyrcanus? and what the state of Judæa under him? How long did he reign? 7. Mention the names and characters of his successors, and the length of their respective reigns. 11. What great event took place in the reign of Herod?

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### Miscellaneous Questions in Grecian History.

##### SECTION I.

- |                                                 |                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Declen'sion, <i>s.</i> going down.           | 33. Commem'oration, <i>s.</i> preserving the memory of; public celebration.       |
| 4. Cotem'porary, <i>a.</i> living at same time  | 35. Rig'id, <i>a.</i> severe; inflexible.                                         |
| 5. Di'lect, <i>s.</i> local style of language.  | 36. Trans'migration, <i>s.</i> going from one state, body, or place into another. |
| 13. Discuss, <i>v.</i> to examine; investigate. |                                                                                   |
| 15. Areop'agus, <i>s.</i> hill of Mars.         | 40. Sus'pend, <i>v.</i> to hang by any thing.                                     |
| 24. Auster'ity, <i>s.</i> harsh manners.        |                                                                                   |

1. WHO were the first inhabitants of Greece? Tribes of hunters and shepherds, associated for mutual defence. The Pelas'gi were the first tribe that acquired the ascendancy over the rest; hence the Greeks are often in the ancient writings called Pelasgi. The Helle'nes, a more civilized tribe, first established themselves in Phocis, and thence spread, first to Thessaly, and afterwards over the greater part of Greece.

2. The Hellenic race subdivided into the Æolians, Ionians, Dorians, and Achæans, who differed in after ages in their dialect, customs, and form of government. The Æolians occupied Acarnania, Ætolia, Phocis, Locris, Elis in the Peloponnesus, and the Western islands; the Dorians, Macedonia and Crete; the Ionians, Attica; the Achæans, Argolis and Laconia. The latter was afterwards taken by the Dorians. From the middle of the sixteenth to the middle of the fourteenth century, B. C., several colonies from Egypt, Phœnicia, and Phrygia settled in different parts of Greece.

3. How may the Grecian history be divided? Into four periods. The first extends 1000 years, from the building of Si'cyon to the siege of Troy: the second, from the demolition of Troy to the reign of Darius, (when the Grecian and Persian histories mingle,) containing 600 years: the third, from the beginning of the reign of Darius to the death of Alexander, comprehending the most important part of Grecian history; and the fourth begins with the death of Alexander, continuing through the gradual declension of the Grecian power, until totally reduced by the Romans.

4. Which were the most considerable states in Greece? Sicyon was the most ancient, its first king being cotem-



## KEY TO THE MAP.

- |                      |                      |                           |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Dyrrhacium.       | 12. Anticyra.        | 24. Argos.                |
| 2. Berse.            | 13. Delphi.          | 25. Mycenæ.               |
| 3. Pydna.            | 14. Mount Parnassus. | 26. Sparta, or Lacedemon. |
| 4. Thessalonica.     | 15. Thebes.          | 27. Olympia.              |
| 5. Philippa.         | 17. Cheronsea.       | 28. Mantinea.             |
| 7. Nicopolis.        | 18. Leuctra.         | 29. Tegea.                |
| 9. Larissa Cremaste. | 19. Platsea.         | 30. Elis.                 |
| 10. Pharsalus.       | 21. Eleusis.         | 32. Ithaca.               |
| 11. Mount Olympus.   | 23. Corinth.         |                           |

porary with Noah: Argos, whose king, In'achus, was cotemporary with Abraham and Nimrod; Athens, founded by Cecrops; Sparta, or Lacedemon, (the latter being properly the name of the suburbs); Corinth; Thebes, founded by Cadmus; Macedon, Thessaly, and Epirus.

5. How many dialects were used among the Greeks? Four; the Attic, the Ionic, the Doric, and the Æolic.

6. Which was the most elegant? The Attic, spoken in Athens and its vicinity: Thuoyd'ides, Isoc'rates, Xen'ophon, Pla'to, Aristoph'anés, and Demos'thenes wrote in it.

7. Which was the dialect next esteemed? The Ionic, spoken chiefly in Asia Minor: Herod'otus and Hippoc'rates wrote in it.

8. What nations spoke the Doric dialect? The Spartans, Sicilians, Dorians, Rhodians, and Cretans: Theoc'ritus, Pindar, and Archime'des, wrote in it. What states used the Æolic dialect? First, the Bœotians; afterwards the Æolians, who lived in Asia Minor.

9. Why was the Grecian expedition against Troy undertaken? To recover Helen, the beautiful queen of Sparta, who had been carried off by Paris, the son of Priam, king of Troy.

10. Who commanded this expedition? Agamem'non, a Grecian king: Nestor and Ulys'ses, who both served in the army, are said to have assisted him by their wise counsels. Troy, after a siege of ten years, was taken by the Greeks.

11. Who was Amphi'ctyon? The third king of Athens, endowed with uncommon genius and strength of mind: he lived about 1496 years before Christ, and contrived to unite in one common system of politics the states of Greece.

12. How did he effect this? By engaging twelve of the Grecian cities to join for their mutual advantage, sending each two deputies to Thermopylæ twice a-year, who debated there, and were called the Amphictyonic council.

13. What was the end effected by this council? Its determinations answered the best purposes, as every thing relative to the general interests of the cities represented was there discussed: by these means the Greeks were able to preserve their liberty and independence from the attacks of the Persian empire.

14. What other employments had the Amphictyons? They took care of the treasures amassed by the voluntary contributions of those who consulted the oracle in the temple of Delphos.

15. What was the Areop'agus? The place in which the Areopagites, or Athenian judges, assembled to debate: they were, for many years after their first institution, famed for the justice of their decrees. Cecrops, king of Athens, instituted this court: he also regulated marriage ceremonies among the Greeks, making them binding for life.

16. Who was the first king of Thebes? Cadmus, its founder. Thebes afterwards became a republic, and was at length dismantled by the Romans.

17. For what were the Bœotians noted? For their heaviness and stupidity: Plutarch, Epaminon'das, and Pindar are, however, great exceptions to this rule.

18. How was Sparta governed? By two kings, who reigned jointly; their power was very limited, and their chief use was to head the army in military expeditions. When were the Spartan laws new modelled? 884 years B. C., by Lycur'gus.

19. Who was Lycurgus? The great law-giver of the Spartans. He effected an equal division of lands among them, banished the use of gold and silver, trained the youth to perfect obedience and military discipline, and ordered that particular respect should be paid to the aged. To his exertions and useful decrees the Spartans were indebted for their discipline, and much of their valour.

20. What effects did his laws produce? The Spartans became brave, active, and noble-minded; and were inspired with a peculiar readiness to defend their lives and liberties.

21. What great example did Lycurgus give of patience and ready forgiveness of injuries? That of pardoning Alcan'der, a Spartan youth, who in a tumult struck out one of his eyes: Lycurgus even took him into his house, and treated him with the greatest kindness.

22. Where did iron pass as current coin? In Sparta. Lycurgus established this regulation to check any improper desire which the Lacedemonians might cherish for riches.

23. In what light were the Spartans considered? Entirely as a warlike nation; but they were forbidden to attack or oppress their neighbours without provocation, and were only allowed to defend themselves against the inroads of other states.

24. What was the great defect in the Spartan laws? Lycurgus directed his attention to form a nation of soldiers, wholly neglecting the culture of the mind; thus the sciences were banished, and the Spartans, owing to their roughness and austerity, were little esteemed by their more polished neighbours.

25. Who were the Helots? Lacedemonian slaves: the severe treatment of their masters frequently obliged them to revolt, and their lives were then at the disposal of those whom they served. The Spartans, to show their children the enormity of drunkenness, used to expose their slaves to them in that condition.

26. What were the Gymna'sia? Academies, in which were taught the use of arms, and all manly exercises.

27. Which was the most polished city in Greece? Athens. Glory, liberty, and interest were the darling passions of the

Athenians; yet their liberty frequently degenerated into licentiousness. They excelled in the art of navigation, and were the general patrons of the liberal arts; but were fickle and ambitious.

28. Who was Homer? The earliest and best Grecian poet: he wrote the *Iliad*, which gives an account of the last year's siege of Troy; and the *Odyssey*, which relates the adventures of Ulysses.

29. What were the Olympic games? They are said to have been instituted by Her<sup>c</sup>ules among the Greeks, in honour of Jupiter, upon the plains of Elis, near the city of Olympia; they consisted of boxing, running, chariot races,



ARMSTRONG

wrestling, and quoiting, and were celebrated at the commencement of every fifth year: at first no females were permitted to be present, but this law was repealed.

30. What were the Isthmian games? They were celebrated every third (some say every fourth) year, in honour of Neptune, by the Greeks, upon the Isthmus of Corinth.

31. What were the Pythian and Neme'an games? The Pythian, instituted by the assembly of Amphictyons, were celebrated every fourth year, in honour of Apollo, after he had slain the serpent Python; and the Nemean derived their name from Nemea, a city in Peloponnesus: they were instituted by Adras'tus, in honour of Hercules, (who is said to have destroyed the lion of the Nemean forest,) and were solemnized every two years.

32. What were originally the rewards of the victors in all these games? A simple wreath. In the Olympic games, which were accounted the most honourable, because sacred to Jupiter, and instituted by their first heroes, this wreath was composed of wild olive; in the Pythian, of laurel; and

in the Isthmian and Nemean games, of parsley,—honour, not interest, being the best reward of great exertions.

33. What influenced the Greeks to keep up the commemoration of these games? As each of them was dedicated to the memory of some god, or hero, they were considered both in a religious and political light; and these frequent assemblies of the Grecian states united them more closely, and strengthened their mutual interests.

34. Who was Thales? An ancient geographer, and founder of the Ionic sect of philosophers, so named from Ionia, where he was born. They held many singular opinions, one of which was, that water was the principal of being, and that God formed all things by water. Thales fixed the term and duration of the solar year among the Grecians.

35. Who was Dra'co? The first rigid legislator of Athens. Who was Solon? One of the seven sages of Greece, the reformer of Draco's code: his laws were held in high estimation. Name the Grecian sages. Thales, Solon, Chilo, Pittacus, Bias, Cleobu'lus, and Periander. Anachar'sis (the Scythian) has also been classed among the sages, and he appears to merit the distinction.

36. Who was Pythag'oras? A native of Samos, and a heathen philosopher: he taught the doctrine of transmigration of souls, and was the founder of the Pythagore'an sect.

37. Who was Pisis'tratus? An aspiring Athenian, who usurped the government of Athens during the absence of Solon. Who built, and who was the destroyer of the famous temple of Diana at Eph'esus? Ctes'iphon, the celebrated architect, built, and Eros'tratus burnt it.

38. When was the battle of Marathon? 490 years B. C., between the Persians and Athenians: the Greeks gained a signal victory.

39. Why did the Persians invade the Grecian states? The Athenians having taken and burnt the city of Sardis, B. C. 500, Dari'u's, king of Persia, led his subjects on to revenge the affront.

40. How did the Athenians honour Milti'ades, who commanded their forces at Marathon? Polygno'tus, a famous painter, some time after the battle, presented the Athenian state with a picture, representing this celebrated action: the most conspicuous figure was Milti'ades, at the head of the ten commanders, exhorting them to victory or death. This picture was suspended for many ages in the porch where the Stoic philosophers assembled.

41. Did the Athenians retain their sense of gratitude to Miltiades? No: upon a false accusation of treachery to his country these fickle people threw him into prison, from which he was never liberated, but died there of the wounds he received in his country's service.

42. What marks of esteem did Polygnotus receive from Greece? Having painted many pictures at Delphos, and presented the Athenians with some excellent ones representing the Trojan war, he was honoured with the solemn thanks of all Greece, conveyed to him by the Amphictyonic council; apartments free of expense were decreed him in all the Grecian cities, and he was presented with crowns of gold.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

3. What is the most important part of Grecian history? 4. With whom was Inachus cotemporary? Who founded Athens? Thebes? 6. Who spoke and wrote in the Attic dialect? In the other dialects respectively? 9. What is said of Helen? 12. What was the Amphictyonic council? Where did it meet? 15. What court did Cecrops institute? What was its character? What else did he institute? 19. What were the chief peculiarities of the laws of Lycurgus? 22. Why was iron used as money? 25. How did the Spartans disgust their children with drunkenness? 27. What was the general character of the Athenians? 28. What is the subject of the Iliad? of the Odyssey? 29. Where were the Olympic games held? 30. The Isthmian? How often were these games severally celebrated? 33. What effect had they on the Greeks? 40. Who was Polygnotus? 42. What honour did the Grecians accord him?
- 

### SECTION II.

- |                                             |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pre-em'inence, <i>s.</i> superiority.    | 16. Eter'nize, <i>v.</i> to make endless.   |
| 2. Repeal', <i>v.</i> to recall; make void. | Animos'ity, <i>s.</i> hatred; spite.        |
| 11. Ta'citly, <i>ad.</i> silently.          | 20. Merito'rious, <i>a.</i> deserving well. |

1. **W**HAT was the Ostracism? A law introduced into Athens by Clis'thenes, one of its chief magistrates; its original intention was to prevent the excesses of ambition, by banishing for the space of ten years those citizens whose distinguished talents led them to wish for pre-eminence over their countrymen: the sentence of the law ran thus, "If any one aim at obtaining superiority over his fellow-citizens, let him go and excel elsewhere."

2. **W**hy was this law termed the Ostracism? From the custom which prevailed of writing the name of the person they wished to exile upon an oyster-shell, and he whose name was most frequently inscribed upon these shells, was adjudged to suffer this punishment; but as many of the best citizens were exiled by this law, its impolicy and bad tendency were at last perceived, and it was repealed.

3. **W**here ran the river Euro'tas? Through Peloponnesus and the Lacedemonian states: it was the most clear and limpid of the Grecian streams. Sparta, the capital of Laconia, was built upon it, and the inhabitants acquired much of their strength and vigour from frequently plunging

into its waters. That famous city remained for ages without walls or gates, its defence being entrusted to the valour of its citizens; but fortifications were erected during the period of its decline.

4. Why was the Spartan conversation famed? For its brevity and conciseness: hence the word *laconic*, Sparta being the capital of Laconia.

5. Of what ancient states did the inhabitants take their meals in public? Sparta and Crete. Which of the Spartan kings made the best defence against his enemies? Leonidas, at the straits of Thermopylæ.

6. What were the words of the monument erected to the memory of Leonidas and his brave companions? *Go, passenger, and tell at Sparta that we died here, in obedience to her sacred laws.*

7. Between whom was the battle of Artemisium? This naval engagement was between the Persians and the Greeks, on the very day that the Spartans and Persians were engaged at the straits of Thermopylæ: the success was doubtful.

8. What was A'thos? A famous mountain in Macedonia. Xerxes, in his expedition against the Grecian states, ordered a passage to be cut through it.

9. Which of the Athenians contributed most to their country's glory? Theseus, Miltiades, Cimon, Themistocles, Aristides, and Pericles: Aristides was famed particularly for his justice. What testimony did Plato give to his merit? "Themistocles, Cimon, and Pericles," said Plato, "have enriched Athens with statues, edifices, and public ornaments, but Aristides with VIRTUE."

10. Where did Themistocles acquire the greatest honours? At Sal'amis: this was the most signal victory gained by the Greeks over the Persians.

11. What was the prevailing custom among the Athenians after a battle? The commanders declared those who had distinguished themselves most, and best deserved the prize of victory (a laurel crown), by writing their names upon a slip of paper. After the battle of Salamis, each general adjudged the first prize to himself, the second to Themistocles, thus tacitly giving him a decided preference over all.

12. What honours did Themistocles receive? The prize of wisdom was decreed him: the Spartans presented to him the best chariot in their city, and commanded three hundred of their young men to attend him to the frontiers of their state. When he appeared at the Olympic games, the whole assembly rose in compliment; all eyes were directed to Themistocles, and this involuntary homage from a countless multitude must have been infinitely more flattering to a great mind, than the most eloquent orations in his favour.

13. What privileges were granted, in the last ages of the Athenian republic, to those who had deserved well of their country? They were made free of the city, and exempted from giving public feasts and shows, which often amounted to great sums. These immunities, in some cases, were extended to their posterity, and they were frequently honoured by the erection of statues to their memory.

14. What funeral ceremonies were observed by the Athenians? The bones of those citizens who had fallen in battle, after being strewed with perfumes and flowers, were exposed three days in an open tent; they were then enclosed in coffins, and carried round the city. These bones were finally laid in a public monument called the Ceramicus. Here were deposited, in all ages, those who had fallen in battle, except the warriors of Marathon, who, to immortalize their uncommon valour, were buried where they fell.

15. What were the *trophies* so frequently mentioned in ancient history? They were (among the Greeks) wooden monuments, erected in the place where some signal victory had been obtained, and either adorned with real arms and colours taken from the enemy, or had warlike instruments carved upon them. The block of white marble which the Persians brought into the field to erect as a trophy should they prove victorious at Marathon, was converted by Phidias into a Nemesis, or goddess of revenge.

16. Why did the Greeks choose wood for their trophies? From this noble motive,—they were unwilling to eternize the memory of feuds and state-quarrels, and therefore preferred wood to a more durable substance, that as national animosities in time decayed, the remembrance of them might do so too.

17. How long did the first war between the Persians and Greeks continue? Fifty-one years.

18. Who was Pericles? A celebrated Athenian general and orator. How did Pericles show his public spirit in Athens? By improving and beautifying the city considerably, under the direction of the celebrated Phidias.

19. Pericles, hearing that the Athenians murmured at this disposal of the public money, offered himself to defray all necessary expenses, provided his name were recorded upon the public edifices.

20. Did the Athenians permit this? No: they felt the intended rebuke, and afterwards allowed him whatever sums he thought proper.

21. What were the last words of Pericles? "I am surprised," said he, speaking to the friends who surrounded his bed, and were relating his great exploits to each other, "that you should forget the most meritorious circumstance of my life: I never caused any one citizen to mourn on my account."

22. Which were the chief works of Phidias? A Minerva, erected in the city of Athens, and a Jupiter Olympius, sixty feet high, made of gold and ivory. Phidias, exasperated at his countrymen's ingratitude to him, presented his Jupiter to the Eleans, a neighbouring nation.

23. What was the Peloponnesian war, and its cause? It was a war among the different states of Greece: having collected much gold in their quarrels with Persia, the desire of increasing their treasures, added to their mutual haughtiness after recent victory, fomented divisions among them, which proved the cause of this war.

24. What particular calamity befell the Athenians at this period? A terrible plague raged in Athens, 430 years B. C. The famous physician Hippocrates then distinguished himself by his care of the sick, and greatly increased his reputation.

25. What was the Odeum? A musical theatre, erected in Athens by command of Pericles: it was ornamented by the celebrated Phidias. The Greeks considered music as one of the essentials in the education of their children.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How did the Athenians treat ambitious citizens? 2. Why was the law of ostracism repealed? 3. What contributed to the vigour of the Spartans? How was Sparta fortified? 8. Who cut a passage through Mount Athos? 9. For what was Aristides famed? 11. How was Themistocles distinguished after the battle of Salamis? 13. How were public benefactors rewarded by the Athenians?

15. How were trophies adorned? Of what did Phidias make his Nemesis? 19. How did Pericles meet the murmurs of the Athenians? 22. To whom did Phidias present his Jupiter Olympius? Why? 24. What great physician flourished in Athens? When? On what occasion did he distinguish himself? 25. How was music esteemed by the Greeks?

---

### SECTION III.

- |                                          |                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Appella'tion, <i>s.</i> a name.       | 11. Mal-administra'tion, <i>s.</i> ill conduct or management of public affairs. |
| 3. Am'nesty, <i>s.</i> a general pardon. | 12. Disciplina'rian, <i>s.</i> a strict ruler.                                  |
| Obliv'ion, <i>s.</i> forgetfulness.      | 13. Con'secrated, <i>v.</i> made sacred.                                        |
| 7. Dem'igod, <i>s.</i> half a god.       |                                                                                 |

1. How was the style of the historian Herod'otus distinguished? By its elegance and simplicity. When he read his history at the Olympic games, the Greeks, after bestowing upon this celebrated work unbounded applause, gave to each separate book the name of one of the nine Muses.

2. Who was Lysan'der? A Lacedemonian general, and the conqueror of Athens. Towards the conclusion of the Peloponnesian war he established thirty magistrates in

Athens, known by the appellation of the thirty tyrants, or kings; wealth, in their eyes, was the greatest crime: they seized wherever they found it, and are said to have put more to death in eight months, than the enemies of Athens had slain during the continuance of a long war.

3. Who was Thrasybulus? A noble Athenian. After attacking and defeating the thirty tyrants, who then usurped the government of Athens, and restoring freedom, he passed an act of amnesty, by which the citizens engaged upon oath to bury all past transactions in oblivion.

4. Which of the Grecian philosophers was most famed for his virtues and liberal opinions? Socrates: history records an action of his truly heroic. When unjustly sentenced to death by the Athenians, he refused to escape from prison, although an opportunity presented itself, since it was contrary to the standing laws of his country.

5. Why was the isle of Delos famed? The common treasures of Greece were deposited there: the Athenians were accustomed to send a ship every year to offer sacrifices at Delos; the laws forbade any person being put to death in Athens from the time of the ship's departure till its return.

6. What great man was sentenced to die in Athens before these sacrifices left the city? Socrates. The execution of his sentence was suspended thirty days: he was then compelled to drink hemlock.

7. Were the Athenians ever sensible of his merit? Yes: the Delphic oracle had before declared him the wisest of mankind, and after his decease great honours were paid him. A statue by Lysip'pus was erected to his memory, and at length he was worshipped as a demi-god.

8. Who was Xenophon? A famous historian, philosopher, and warrior, who commanded the ten thousand Greeks in their celebrated retreat to their own country after the battle of Cunax'a.

9. What was the favourite diversion of the Athenians? Hunting. It was so highly esteemed at Athens, that Xenophon wrote a treatise purposely to display the advantages resulting from an exercise, which enables its followers to suffer hunger, cold, heat, and thirst with equal indifference.

10. Who was Agesilaus? A valiant king of Sparta, who defeated the Persian army near Sardis, and the Thebans in the plains of Chærone'a.

11. Who were the Ephori? Spartan magistrates: nine were elected, but five had the power of acting collectively. All, even kings, were compelled to appear before them upon any charge of mal-administration: they regulated religious rites, made peace and war, and had the custody of all the public treasures.

12. What celebrated action is recorded of these Ephori? They were such strict disciplinarians, that they fined one of

their valiant soldiers for gaining a victory unarmed: the youth was bathing when he heard the sound of the trumpet, and rushed to head the troops under his command; after a victory gained, the magistrates decreed him a crown of laurel for the courage he had shown, but fined him for not staying to put on his armour.

13. To what amusement were the Athenians most partial? To theatrical entertainments, in the representation of which they excelled. What were the *Anthesteria*? Festivals, in which the slaves were entertained.

14. What was the *Bar'athrum*? A public pit in Athens, into which those condemned to die were thrown. What was the *Lyce'um*? Anciently a temple dedicated to Apollo, and afterwards converted into a public school in Athens, where the orators declaimed.

15. Who was Epaminon'das? A celebrated Theban general, the contemporary and friend of Pelop'idas: they jointly gained the battle of Leuctra. Epaminon'das commanded at Mantinea alone, where he bravely fell, in his last moments breathing an ardent wish for the glory and safety of his country.

16. Where stood Pella? This city, famed as the birth-place of king Philip and Alexander his son, was anciently the capital of Macedonia.

17. What Grecians distinguished themselves against Philip of Macedon by their speeches and writing? Lycur'gus, the orator; Dem'ades; and the celebrated Demos'thenes, whose orations against Philip were called Philip'pics. Who rivalled Demosthenes in eloquence? Æschines, the orator.

18. When was the social war, or war of the allies? 358 years B. C., carried on by several Grecian nations for the purpose of throwing off the Athenian yoke, and re-establishing independent states.

19. What occasioned the sacred war? The Phocians, who inhabited the territories near Delphos, had ploughed up some land consecrated to Apollo: for this supposed sacrilege they were sentenced by the Amphictyonic council to pay a heavy fine; and upon their refusal a war broke out, in which most of the Grecian states were engaged, called the sacred war.

20. What sides did the Greeks take in this quarrel? The Spartans and Athenians assisted the Phocians; the Bœotians, Locrians, and Thessalians sided with the Amphictyons.

21. When was the battle of Chæronea? In the reign of Philip of Macedon. By the event of this battle Philip became master of Greece.

22. Where was the philosopher Ar'istotle born? At Stagi'ra, a city in Macedon, which was destroyed by king Philip, but rebuilt by his son Alexander, the pupil of Aristotle.

23. Which were the first battles gained by Alexander over the Persians? The Granicus and Issus.

24. Where stood Tyre? It was a city of Phœnicia, besieged and taken by Alexander.

25. How did Alexander dishonour his character in respect to the Tyrians? By inhumanly putting them all to the sword, excepting two thousand, whom he reserved for crucifixion: crosses were erected along the sea-shore, where this barbarous sentence was rigidly executed.

26. What particular instance did Alexander give of his pride and folly? He suffered his subjects to pay him adoration as the reputed son of Jupiter Ammon, the god of the Egyptians.

27. Where stood the temple of Jupiter Ammon? In Africa, in the midst of the Lybian desert: the god worshipped there was, by the Greeks, called Jupiter, by the Egyptians, Ammon: at length both these names became one.

28. In what battle did Alexander completely triumph over the Persians? Arbela; when the defeat and death of the Persian monarch gave Alexander another empire.

29. Who was Calanus? An Indian philosopher, who attended the court of Alexander of Macedon.

30. What was his end? Although he professed to follow the most severe philosophy, yet being attacked by a painful disorder, he had not patience to bear its repeated approaches, but resolved to burn himself upon a funeral pile.

31. Did he effect his purpose? Yes, and against the earnest entreaties of Alexander: it is generally supposed that he was prompted to this action chiefly by vain-glory, and a desire of being conspicuous to after-ages.

32. What story does Josephus relate of some Jewish soldiers in the service of Alexander? When commanded by that prince to assist in re-building the temple of Belus (which Xerxes had destroyed), they absolutely refused, alleging that as idolatry was forbidden by their law, the respect due to that, and their conscience, would not allow them to assist in the erection of a temple designed for idolatrous purposes.

33. How did Alexander act upon this? He gave orders for their immediate punishment; but, on reflection, their conduct appearing in a more favourable light, he discharged and sent them home.

34. How did Alexander in one day evince the extremes of generosity and passion? In the morning he gave his friend Clitus the government of Maracan'da, one of his most important cities; and in the evening killed him, in a hasty fit of resentment, at a banquet.

35. Who was Po'rus? An Indian prince, who was taken prisoner by Alexander; and when brought before him in chains, showed equal fortitude and presence of mind. The

Macedonian monarch asked how he would be treated? "As a king," replied Porus. "Do you, then, wish for nothing more?" said Alexander. "No: all things are comprehended in that sentence." Alexander, touched by his greatness of soul, restored Porus to his kingdom.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How was Herodotus honoured?
2. What did Lysander on conquering Athens?
3. How did Thrasybulus act?
4. What instance of heroism do we read in the life of Socrates?
5. What law prevailed in Athens relative to the ship sent to Delos?
6. How did Socrates die?
11. What powers had the Ephori?
14. Where did the Athenian orators declaim?

15. What battles did Epaminondas fight?
  16. Where did he fall, and how?
  19. For what were the Phocians fined?
  20. By whom?
  - What ensued?
  21. What made Philip master of Greece?
  24. What barbarous act did Alexander commit after the taking of Tyre?
  34. How did he treat his friend Clitus?
  35. How Porus?
- 

### SECTION IV.

- |                                                                   |                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Gla'diator, <i>s.</i> a prize-fighter.                         | 5. Au'spices, <i>s.</i> omens; influences.     |
| 7. Or'acle, <i>s.</i> something delivered by supernatural wisdom. | 8. Pha'lax, <i>s.</i> close body of troops.    |
|                                                                   | 15. Intrig'ue, <i>s.</i> plot; private scheme. |

1. How did the Athenians honour those who fell in their country's defence? Their most celebrated orators were appointed to pronounce funeral orations in their praise. This was done to inspire the Athenians with an ardent desire of glory and military fame.

2. How did the Greeks excel the Romans in humanity? They could never be persuaded to public exhibitions of gladiators in their cities; and the speech of an Athenian upon this subject well deserves to be remembered: "First," said he, "before we permit these barbarous shows, let us throw down the altar which our ancestors have erected to Mercy."

3. Why was A'gis, king of Sparta, executed? This prince, who lived in the time of Alexander's successors, wished to revive the ancient laws of Lycurgus; but his people, dead to all sense of justice and virtue, condemned him to an ignominious end.

4. What forms of government prevailed successively in Athens? It was first governed by kings, then by archons; these yielded to the tyrannical power of the Pisistrat'ideæ; this was destroyed, and freedom again restored, till the city was taken by the Lacedemonians. The thirty tyrants then assumed absolute power: and after their expulsion, the democratic form of government was re-established, until the Romans made Greece a tributary province.

5. What forms of government prevailed in Sparta? For the space of 900 years it was governed by kings. Lycurgus then established a republic, which continued 700 years longer, under the most promising auspices; but the Spartans having subdued the neighbouring states, particularly the Athenians, the tide of victory began to turn, and the Thebans, headed by Epaminondas and Pelopidas, compelled them, after the battle of Leuctra, to sue for peace. Philip of Macedon, and finally the Romans, completed the conquest of this famous state.

6. Name the most famous oracles consulted by the Pagan world. That of Apollo, at Delphos; of Tropho'nus, in Bæotia: the temple and oracle of the Bran'chidæ, in the neighbourhood of Mile'tus; and one at Dodo'na, a city of the Molossians.

7. What happened to the temple of Delphos? It was destroyed by fire, 83 years B.C.: from that time the famous oracle there ceased to answer the questions proposed to it.

8. What progress did the Greeks make in the arts? From the time of Cyrus to that of Alexander they were gradually improving: warriors, statesmen, philosophers, poets, historians, painters, architects, and sculptors, form a glorious phalanx in this golden age of literature; and the history of the Greeks, at this period, is equally important and instructive.

9. Name the chief Grecian poets. Ho'mer, He'siod, Ar-chil'ochus, Tyrtæ'u's, Alce'sus, Sap'pho, Æs'chylus, Eurip'i-des, Aristophanes, Soph'ocles, Anac'reon, Pindar, Simon'ides, and Menan'der.

10. Name the chief philosophers. Thales, So'lom, Pytha-goras, Herac'litus, Anaxag'oras, Soc'rates, Emped'ocles, Pla'to, Aristo'tle, and Ze'no.

11. Name the chief law-givers. Ce'crops, of Athens; Cad'mus, of Thebes; Cara'nus, of Macedon; Lycur'gus, of Sparta; Dra'co and So'lom, of Athens.

12. Name the chief historians. Herod'otus, Thucyd'ides, and Xen'o phon.

13. Name the chief Grecian painters. Zeux'is, Parrha-sius, Timan'thes, Pam'philus, Apel'les, Polygno'tus, Ari-sti'des, and Protog'enes.

14. Name the chief Grecian sculptors. Ctes'iphon, Phi-dias, My'ron, Sco'pas, Lysip'pus, and Polycle'tus.

15. How did the Romans acquire dominion in Greece? The Aetolians, a Grecian state, called them over to their assistance in a war which they were carrying on against Philip, king of Macedon, who was then at the head of the principal states of Greece. After a series of political intrigues and successes in battle, they finally overthrew the Macedonians at Pydna, B.C. 169, and thus became masters of Greece, which they permitted for a time to enjoy a

nominal independence. A new war broke out between them and the Achaeans, B. C. 148 : the latter were defeated.

16. Corinth was taken by Mummius, the Roman consul, B. C. 146, who razed that splendid city to the ground. Greece then became a Roman province, under the name of Achai'a, and its history, of course, blended with that of Rome. The shadow of freedom was still allowed to remain in some cities, and Athens long continued the principal school of literature, science, and the arts.

" 'Twas Greece, but ancient Greece no more ! "

### *Questions for Examination.*

2. What was the speech of the Athenian relative to shows of gladiators ? 5. Who finally subdued Sparta ? 6. What Pagan oracles were in most repute ? 7. When did the Delphic oracle become silent ? 15. What battle decided the fate of Greece ? 16. Under the Romans what was it called ? With what stream of history does that of Greece mingle after its subjection ? Did any vestige of freedom still remain ? Where ? What did Athens long continue to be ?

## CHAPTER IV.

### Miscellaneous Questions in Roman History.

#### SECTION I.

- |                                                                                                              |                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Patri'cian, <i>s.</i> senatorial; noble.<br>Plebe'ian, <i>s.</i> of the common people<br>or lower orders. | 4. Heredi'tary, <i>a.</i> descending from<br>parent to child. |
| 30. U. C. Urbe condit <i>a</i> , i. e. in the year from the building of the city of Rome.                    | 10. Enfee'bled, <i>a.</i> made weak.                          |

1. WHO founded the city of ROME ? Rom'ulus, its first king, in the year 753, B. C.

2. How did the idolatry of the Romans differ from that of surrounding nations ? In this respect ; they worshipped their gods, originally, without statues or images. It is asserted by Plutarch, that Nu'ma forbade the setting up of any image by which to represent the Deity, either in human form or in that of any kind of beast ; a prohibition that was regarded by the Romans for several centuries.

3. How many kings had Rome ? Seven : of these Nu'ma Pompil'ius and Ser'vius Tul'lius are thought the most deserving, and Tarquin the Proud the least so.

4. Who established the difference between the *patricians* and the *plebeians* ? Romulus : the former were the nobility, the latter the common people. The dignity of the patricians was hereditary, and the chief offices of the state were for a long time filled by them.

## ANCIENT ITALY.



## KEY TO THE MAP.

|                |                |                       |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| A. Apu'lia.    | L 1. La'tium.  | V. Vene'tia.          |
| L 2. Luca'nia. | F. Fret'a'ni.  | E. Etru'ria.          |
| B. Bruttium.   | S 56. Sabi'ni. | L. Ligu'ria.          |
| S. Sam'nium.   | P. Pice'num.   | G. Gallia Cisalpi'na. |
| C. Campa'nia.  | U. Um'bria.    |                       |

## TOWNS.

|                   |                      |                  |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 58. Rome.         | 78. Beneventum.      | 124. Olbia.      |
| 53. Veii.         | 91. Metapontum.      | 129. Caralis.    |
| 72. An'tium.      | 83. Brundusium.      | 121. Urcinum.    |
| 81. Hercula'neum. | 86. Canusium.        | 120. Mariana.    |
| 82. Pompe'ii.     | 50. Ancona.          | 116. Syracuse.   |
| 97. Croton.       | 32. Ravenna.         | 104. Messina.    |
| 93. Syb'aris.     | 8. Verona.           | 109. Agrigentum. |
|                   | 73. The river Tiber. |                  |

5. Who appointed *lictors* and *fasces*? Romulus: lictors were twelve men who walked before the kings, or consuls; and fasces were bundles of rods, with an axe in the middle, carried by the lictors.

6. Who were the *celeres*? A guard of three hundred young men, instituted by Romulus to defend his person.

7. What were the *ancilia* among the Romans? Sacred bucklers, carried by priests devoted to Mars, in the reign of Numa Pompilius.

8. Who were the *duum'viri*? Two magistrates appointed by Tullus Hostilius, to give judgment in criminal affairs.

9. What was the occasion of the battle between the *Horatii* and *Curiatii*? There was a war between the Albans and the Romans in the reign of Tullus Hostilius, king of Rome, and it was agreed to decide it by a combat of three persons on each side. The Albans chose three brothers named Curiatii; the Romans three, called Horatii.

10. After two of the Horatii had been killed by their antagonists, and all the three Curiatii wounded, the surviving Roman champion obtained an easy victory, by first separating, and then successively putting to the sword his enfeebled opponents.

11. What was the *census*? A general survey of the Roman people and their estates, instituted by Servius Tullius: it was first made by kings, then by consuls, and at length by magistrates, called censors, whose office also extended to taxing estates, and reforming the manners of the people.

12. When did the Romans erect their temple to *Faith*? In the reign of Numa Pompilius: that dedicated to *Fortune* was built by the command of Servius Tullius.

13. What was the *civis crown*? One made of oak-leaves, given by the Romans to him who had saved the life of a fellow-citizen in battle.

14. Why was the orator's pulpit called *rostrum*? From the *rostra*, or beaks of ships, with which this pulpit was generally adorned.

15. What was the *ad'yta*? The *sanctuary* in heathen temples, into which none but priests were admitted.

16. What was the ancient *naval crown*? One made in the form of the ancient ships' beaks, and presented to him who first boarded an enemy.

17. How were the ancient Romans trained up to war? A place was appropriated for exercise in the city, called the field of Mars: here they ran and leaped in ponderous armour, carried the heaviest weights, and performed all martial exercises. War and agriculture were their only professions; their bodies were kept in continual activity; and to this steady, unrelaxed discipline they owed much of their fame and military glory.

18. How were the Roman soldiers punished for small deviations from duty? They were always bled; for as every ancient Roman entertained high ideas of his own prowess, this temporary deprivation of strength was to them the most sensible mortification.

19. What rule was observed inviolably in the Roman armies? This; he who abandoned his post, or quitted his arms in battle, suffered death.

20. Why were the Romans entertained with gladiators? The policy of their rulers accustomed them to these exhibitions, that they might learn to look upon wounds and bloodshed without shrinking. These shows were often prohibited by the merciful emperors, but never totally abolished till the reign of Hono'rius, who died A. D. 425.

21. Which of the ancient nations paid the most sacred regard to an oath? The Romans; even during their greatest corruptions, their high sense of this obligation never entirely forsook them.

22. What was the *mural crown* used by the Romans? One indented at the top like the battlements of a wall, and bestowed upon him who first scaled the wall of an enemy's city.

23. What is meant by *ides*? A method of counting time among the Romans: their Ides were the thirteenth day of each month, excepting March, May, July, and October; of these they were the fifteenth.

24. What was a *lustrum*? A space of five years, at the end of which a general survey was taken of the Romans and their estates.

25. What was an *indiction*? A space of fifteen years, observed among the later Romans, and established by the emperor Constantine.

26. Name the different forms of government in Rome. The establishment of the regal power; then of the consulship, which continued till the first dictator was chosen; then succeeded the authority of the decem'viri; after its abolition the perpetual dictatorship prevailed at intervals for a short period, till Augustus Cæsar introduced the imperial power.

27. What were *consuls*? Two chief magistrates among the Romans, who acted together, and whose authority continued one year. Brutus and Collati'nus were the first appointed to fill this high office.

28. What was a *dictator*? A magistrate, who was invested with supreme power for six months; never chosen during the earlier ages, but when the commonwealth was thought in extreme danger: this office at length was made perpetual. Lar'tius was the first dictator.

29. What were *tribunes*? Magistrates, chosen to preserve the liberties and privileges of the people against the power

and encroachments of the nobles. At first two were appointed, then five; at length their number was increased to ten.

30. What occasioned the institution of *military tribunes*? The plebeian Romans being displeased with the consular government, three new magistrates were chosen u. c. 310, called military tribunes, but their power was soon laid aside for ever; and Camil'lus, the dictator, dedicated a temple to *Concord*, to perpetuate the union then effected between the patricians and plebeians.

31. When were the *decemviri* appointed in Rome? u. c.

302. Ambassadors having been sent to the principal Greecian cities for the purpose of collecting the best codes of law, on their return *ten* persons were appointed, with consular power, to arrange a body of laws for the Roman commonwealth: one at a time acted as supreme magistrate. Their office was to continue a year; but they kept themselves in power much longer, under pretence of finishing the tables completely.

32. What were the offices of *questor* and *edile*? The questors were two in number, and were to take care of the public money and contributions, sell plunder, &c.; but in Julius Cæsar's time they amounted to forty. There were also two ediles, who were to assist the tribunes, rectify weights and measures, and prohibit unlawful games. This number was afterwards increased.

---

### Questions for Examination.

2. What does Plutarch relate of Numa? 5. What were the lictors? What the fasces? 10. How did the last of the Horatii win the battle? 11. Who made the census? 13. Who received the civic crown? 16. Who the naval? 17. To what do the Romans owe much of their fame? 18. How did they punish slight military offences?

20. When, and by whom, were gladiatorial shows put down? 22. Who received the mural crown? 27. Who were the first consuls? 28. Who was the first dictator? 31. For what purpose were the decemviri appointed? How did they act? 32. What was the number of the questors? of the ediles?

---

### SECTION II.

- |                                                  |                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1. Antip'athy, <i>s.</i> rooted dislike.         | 27. Incon'gruous, <i>a.</i> not fitting.     |
| 2. Hostil'ities, <i>s.</i> open war.             | Trium'virate, <i>s.</i> coalition of three.  |
| 11. Mu'r'al, <i>a.</i> belonging to a battlement | 29. Par'icide, <i>s.</i> murder of a parent. |

1. WHAT rival states showed great antipathy to each other? Rome and Carthage. What was meant by *Punic faith*? The term "Punic" is a contraction of the word "Phœnician," and as the Carthaginians came originally from Phœnicia, it was applied to them; so remarkable were

they for breach of faith, that the term *Punic faith* was proverbially infamous.

2. What gave rise to the Punic wars, i.e. the wars between Carthage and Rome? The Romans took offence at the assistance granted by the Carthaginians to the southern parts of Italy, then at war with Rome; but, in fact, these two great rival states had long regarded each other with jealousy, and only waited for a pretext to commence hostilities.

3. This was afforded by certain disturbances in Sicily. The Mamertine mercenaries, who had seized Messina and slaughtered the citizens, divided into two parties; one sought the protection of the Carthaginians, and the other of the Romans, which was granted on both sides; and thus the first Punic war commenced in Sicily, B.C. 264.

4. How long did the Punic wars subsist? The first, twenty-four years; the second, seventeen years; and the third and last, four years and some months.

5. Name the four great battles in which Hannibal defeated the Romans. Tici'nus, Tre'bua, Thrasyme'ne, and Cannæ; but Hannibal was himself defeated at the battle of Zama, by Scipio Africanus.

6. What remarkable commanders fell a sacrifice during these wars? Reg'ulus, Flamin'ius, and two of the Scipios, on the Roman side; As'druba'l, Han'no, Postar, and Han'ibal, (who was constrained to poison himself,) on the part of the Carthaginians.

7. When did the Romans acquire a taste for the arts? In the 270th year of the republic.

8. For what were the Romans particularly famed? For their perseverance, love of fame, and patriotism.

9. Where did Hannibal and his army, infatuated with the seductions of luxury, forget their character as soldiers? At Cap'ua, in Italy, where they passed a winter.

10. Who was Coriola'nus? A noble Roman, who having recommended the senate to destroy the insolent power of the tribunes, was banished his country, and took refuge among the Volscians. To punish their ingratitude he afterwards returned with a victorious army to besiege Rome; but his mother's entreaties prevailed upon him to spare his native city, which lay at his mercy. He is reported to have said on that occasion, "Oh, my mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son!" He perished soon after in a tumult of the Volscians.

11. Who was Sic'cius Denta'tus? A Roman, who fought one hundred and twenty battles for his country, and gained fourteen civic, and four mural crowns: he was, notwithstanding his services, never properly recompensed, and soon after basely assassinated by command of the decemviri.

12. Who was Camil'lus? A Roman general, and dictator,

memorable for taking the town of Veii, after it had been besieged ten years : he then forbade the soldiers to plunder, and they in revenge instigated the tribunes to accuse him of fraudulent practices. He was most unjustly banished ; but Rome being besieged by the Gauls, he nobly returned, completely defeated them, and once more enjoyed the highest offices : he afterwards fell a sacrifice to the plague, which desolated the city.

13. What Roman sacrificed himself to propitiate the gods ? Decius. In a battle between the Romans and Latins, B. C. 330, the former were on the point of being defeated ; when Decius, who was one of their consuls, devoted himself, after the superstitious form and belief of the age, for the good of his country, by rushing into the midst of the enemy, where he fell, covered with wounds. This so inspired the Romans with confidence, that they vigorously renewed the fight, and routed the Latins.

14. Which of the Romans beheaded his son for contempt of his consular authority ? Manlius Torquatus. Before the commencement of the engagement just alluded to, Manlius, being one of the consuls in command, gave orders that none should quit their ranks, under pain of death. His own son, being challenged to single combat by one of the enemy's generals, rushed forth to meet him, and though he slew his opponent, was ordered by his father to immediate execution, for breach of discipline.

15. What Roman was most famed for his integrity ? Fabri'cius. King Pyrrhus, his enemy, declared publicly that it was easier to turn the sun from its course, than Fabricius from the path of honour.

16. Who was Fa'bius Max'imus ? A dictator, who led the Roman armies against Hannibal : his caution and experience were such, that without hazarding a battle, he continued to keep the troops of Hannibal in perpetual alarm, whilst his own remained in security ; on this account he was termed the *buckler of Rome*.

17. Who was Cato the censor ? A philosopher, brave, just, and famed for the severity of his manners : he was the inveterate enemy of Carthage, and continually advising its destruction.

18. Name the destroyer of Carthage. Scipio Æmilia'nus : this hero and Julius Cæsar are said to have best united the military and literary talents.

19. What instance of determined resolution was shown by a Carthaginian at this time ? During the destruction of Carthage, which continued burning for seventeen days, the wife of Asdrubal, to avoid falling into the hands of the Romans, threw herself into the flames.

20. Who afterwards rebuilt Carthage ? Augustus Cæsar, and in some degree re-established its prosperity : but the

Arabs, in the seventh century, once more demolished it, and Tunis now stands near its ruins.

21. Name the four most ambitious men of Rome. Ma'rius, Sylla, Pompey, and Cæsar.

22. What were the most important civil wars in Rome? The first, B. C. 86, between Sylla and Marius; the second, B. C. 49, between Pompey and Julius Cæsar; the third, B. C. 42, between Octavius Cæsar, Mark Antony, and Lepidus on one side, and Brutus and Cassius on the other.

23. Name some of the most temperate Romans. Cincinna'tus, Fabricius, Cato, and Cicero. Name the three most luxurious. Lucul'lus, Cat'iline, and Sylla.

24. What is meant by proscriptions of the people? Banning them, confiscating their goods, setting their property up for sale, and sometimes putting them to death.

25. Who invented proscriptions? Marius and Sylla: they were continued by many of the emperors, as an easy method of ridding themselves of obnoxious persons.

26. What Roman showed the greatest depravity of heart, and inclination to betray his country? Cat'iline. Cicero discovered his conspiracy.

27. Who formed the first Roman *triumvirate*? Crassus, Pompey, and Julius Cæsar. The policy of Cæsar effected this incongruous union, that he might quietly enjoy the consulship, ingratiate himself with the plebeians, and after crushing the factions of his colleagues, unite them both in his interest. The enterprises of this able commander in Gaul, Germany, Italy, and Britain, are well known: his power was as extensive as his abilities.

28. Which of his colleagues became his adversary? Pompey the Great, who feared the increasing power of Cæsar: the senate and consuls followed Pompey's standards, while Julius Cæsar, relying upon the affection of his soldiers, threatened to march to Rome unless they would grant him justice, but offered to resign his command in case Pompey would do so too.

29. What decree did the Roman senate pass, when menaced by Cæsar? They enacted, that whoever should pass the river Ru'bicon, either with a cohort, legion, or army, should be deemed a sacrilegious man and a parricide, and be solemnly devoted to the infernal deities; but decrees of this kind were ineffectual when the republic was convulsed to its centre.

30. What followed Cæsar's march towards Rome? Pompey and his party, which was very powerful, abandoned Rome, and all Italy submitted to Cæsar in sixty days. Pompey's army in Spain, under his lieutenants Afra'nus and Petré'iis, surrendered at discretion.

31. Cæsar next followed his rival into western Greece, where he found a large army prepared to oppose him. The

battle of Pharsalia was fought B.C. 47: Cæsar proved victorious. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered; and Cæsar, after a succession of events, in all of which his good fortune continued to befriend him, returned in triumph to Rome, to enjoy the fruits of his victories.

32. Was Cæsar long permitted to do so? No; being suspected of a design to make himself King,—a name which, as regarded their own government, the Romans most abhorred,—a conspiracy was formed against him by a large body of senators, and he was assassinated in the senate-house on the Ides of March (15th), B.C. 44. The principal conspirators were Brutus and Cassius: the former had been his most intimate friend.

33. Where did Cato die? He killed himself at Utica, in Africa, because he scorned to survive the liberties of his country.

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What place in Sicily did the Mamertine mercenaries seize? How did Rome and Carthage become involved in the quarrel? 5. Where was Hannibal at last defeated? 9. What effect had the occupation of Capua on his soldiers? 10. In what words did Coriolanus reply to his mother? On what occasion? 12. What city resisted the Romans for ten years? By whom taken? What befell him?

15. What did Pyrrhus say of Fabricius? 16. How did Fabius prove himself a good general? 17. For what was Cato famed? 25. Why were proscriptions resorted to, and by whom? 27. What is a triumvirate? 28. What was the cause of the civil war between Pompey and Cæsar? 31. What befell Pompey? 32. What was the end of Cæsar? 33. Why did Cato commit suicide?

### SECTION III.

- |                                                         |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Sensuality</i> , <i>s.</i> gross pleasure.        | 5. <i>Tar'nish</i> , <i>v.</i> to sully; to soil. |
| 2. <i>U'sury</i> , <i>s.</i> interest for use of money. | 19. <i>Man'date</i> , <i>s.</i> a command.        |

1. WHAT doctrine was introduced at Rome towards the end of the republic? That called the Epicurean: its tenets, evidently favouring luxury and sensuality, are by many thought to have had a powerful effect in corrupting the minds of the Romans, and extinguishing that noble spirit which once animated them. Epicurus himself made pleasure to consist in virtue; his followers shamefully perverted that doctrine, and were noted for their dissolute mode of life.

2. What caused the most frequent seditions among the Roman soldiers? The exorbitant amount charged as interest for money lent: the laws instituted by the decemviri forbade a rate of interest above twelve per cent.; but this wholesome regulation was neglected, and the excessive usury practised at Rome caused most of the calamities which afterwards befell the empire.

3. How were the superior triumphs conducted? On the day appointed, the general, crowned with laurel, pronounced an oration to the soldiers and surrounding multitude, relating his military achievements: then the march began with a long procession, in which were carried inscriptions, containing the names of the nations, provinces, or cities he had conquered; the priests assisted, leading the beasts used for sacrifice.

4. Who closed the procession? The conqueror, in an ivory car, richly ornamented: he was surrounded by his friends and relations, bearing branches of laurel. The procession stopped at the Capitol, where they sacrificed to Jupiter, and deposited part of the spoils.

5. How was the lustre of the Roman conquests tarnished? By their inhumanity to the conquered. Their prisoners, if of high rank, were reserved only to suffer superior mortifications; the captive monarchs and generals were bound in chains, their heads closely shaven,—a mark of peculiar degradation,—and they were thus presented a sad spectacle to the gazing multitude.

6. What was an *ovation*? A kind of inferior triumph among the Romans, conferred upon those whose victories were not very considerable: Posthumius was the first honoured with one. In the ovation, the general walked on foot in his common habit, and was met by the knights and citizens; he was not allowed a sceptre, and for drums and trumpets, fifes and flutes were substituted.

7. How long did the custom of triumphing after a battle continue? From Romulus to Augustus, when it was forbidden, with some few exceptions, till some ages after; then Belisarius, having, under the emperor Justinian, subjugated Africa, and taken Rome, Carthage, and Ravenna from the hands of the Goths, was permitted by his sovereign to make his triumphal entry into Constantinople.

8. When was the second great Roman triumvirate formed? After Julius Cæsar's death, when Octavius Cæsar, Mark Antony, and Lepidus shared the Roman power among them; but Octavius was afterwards declared emperor, by the title of Augustus Cæsar.

9. Between whom was the battle of Philippi? It was fought by Brutus and Cassius on one side, Mark Antony and Octavius Cæsar on the other; its issue finally overthrew the Roman republic, and established the imperial form of government.

10. In what great battle was Mark Antony ultimately defeated? At the battle of Actium, by Octavius Cæsar.

11. When did Egypt become a Roman province? In the reign of Augustus: it continued in the hands of the Romans 700 years.

12. What particular change did Augustus effect in the

Roman constitution? When declared emperor, he deprived the people of their ancient privilege to make laws and judge criminals, but suffered them to retain that of electing magistrates. Tiberius, however, took this power also into his own hands.

13. What period of time was called *the Augustan age?* Augustus Cæsar's reign: the distinguished writers were Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Varro; Vitruvius, the Roman architect, lived in that age.

14. Which were the best Roman emperors? Augustus, Vespa'sian, Ti'tus, Nerva, Tra'jan, Adrian, Antoni'nus, Marcus Aure'lius, Pertinax, Alexander Seve'rus, Claudius II., Tacitus, and Constantine the Great.

15. What emperors were noted for their vices? Tibe'rius, Calig'ula, Ne'ro, O'tho, Vitel'lius, Domi'tian, Com'modus, and Heliogaba'lus.

16. Who was emperor when Christ was born? Augustus Cæsar. Who was emperor when Christ suffered death? Tiberius, famed for his dissolute way of life.

17. When was Christianity introduced into Rome? Thirty years after the death of Christ.

18. What emperors persecuted the Christians? Nero, Domitian, Trajan, Adrian, Severus, Maximinus, Decius, Valerian, Aurelian, Dioclesian, and Julian the Apostate.

19. What Roman emperor ordered himself to be worshipped as a god? Calig'ula; but the Jews refused to obey the mandate. This was the monster who wished his people had but one neck, that he might destroy them at a single blow.

20. What Roman emperor set fire to his own capital, and afterwards laughed at the calamity he had caused? Nero.

21. When was Jerusalem levelled with the ground? In the reign of the emperor Vespasian, by Titus, his son.

22. Why did God permit the destruction of Jerusalem, his favoured city? On account of the great wickedness and repeated acts of impiety shown by the Jews.

-----

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What is Epicureanism? How, and when, did it affect the Romans? What did Epicurus teach? 2. What unjust practice prevailed at Rome? 3. In the superior triumphs, how were the generals crowned? What did the long procession carry? What did the priests lead? 4. How was the conqueror conveyed to the Capitol? By whom attended? How were illustrious prisoners treated?

6. In what respect was an ovation inferior? 7. Who was the last general honoured with a triumph? For what achievements? 9. What overturned the republic? By what succeeded? 19. What was Caligula's monstrous wish? 20. What the atrocity committed by Nero, and his conduct on that occasion? 22. What led to the destruction of the city of Jerusalem?

## A TABLE OF THE ROMAN EMPERORS.

|                                | A. D. | A. D.                             |
|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| AUGUSTUS . . . . .             | 14    | Gordian I. and Gordian II. 237    |
| Tiberius . . . . .             | 37    | Pupie'nus and Balbi'nus . 238     |
| Caligula . . . . .             | 41    | Gordian III. . . . . 244          |
| Claudius . . . . .             | 54    | Philip, the Arabian . . . 249     |
| Nero . . . . .                 | 68    | De'cius . . . . . 251             |
| Galba . . . . .                | 69    | Gallus and Volusia'nus . 254      |
| Otho . . . . .                 | 69    | Æmilia'nus . . . . . 254          |
| Vitel'lius . . . . .           | 70    | Vale'rian . . . . . 259           |
| VESPASIAN . . . . .            | 79    | Gallie'nus . . . . . 268          |
| TITUS . . . . .                | 81    | CLAUDIUS II. . . . . 270          |
| Domit'ian . . . . .            | 96    | Aure'lian . . . . . 275           |
| NERVA . . . . .                | 98    | TACITUS . . . . . 276             |
| TRAJAN . . . . .               | 117   | Floria'nus . . . . . 276          |
| A'DRIAN . . . . .              | 138   | Pro'bus . . . . . 282             |
| ANTONI'NUS PI'US . . . . .     | 161   | Ca'rue . . . . . 283              |
| MARCUS AURE'LIUS . . . . .     | 180   | Cari'nus and Numeria'nus . 284    |
| Com'modus . . . . .            | 193   | Diocle'sian and Maxim'ian 304     |
| PER'TINAX . . . . .            | 193   | Constan'tius I. . . . . 306       |
| Di'dius Julia'nus . . . . .    | 193   | Gale'rius . . . . . 311           |
| Ni'ger, in Syria . . . . .     | 194   | Maxen'tius . . . . . 312          |
| Albi'nus, in Britain . . . . . | 197   | Licin'i'us . . . . . 325          |
| SEVE'RUS . . . . .             | 211   | CONSTANTINE the GREAT . 337       |
| Geta . . . . .                 | 212   | Constantine II. . . . . 340       |
| Caracalla . . . . .            | 217   | Con'stans . . . . . 350           |
| Macri'nus . . . . .            | 218   | Constan'tius II. . . . . 361      |
| Heliogaba'lus . . . . .        | 222   | Julian, the Apostate . . . 363    |
| Seve'russ Alexander . . . . .  | 235   | Jovian . . . . . 364              |
| Maxim'inus . . . . .           | 237   |                                   |
| Valentinian I. . . . .         | 375   |                                   |
| Gratian . . . . .              | 383   |                                   |
| Valentinian II. . . . .        | 392   |                                   |
| Euge'nius . . . . .            | 395   |                                   |
| Hono'rius . . . . .            | 425   |                                   |
| Valentinian III. . . . .       | 455   |                                   |
| Maximus . . . . .              | 455   |                                   |
| Avi'tus . . . . .              | 456   |                                   |
| Majoria'nus . . . . .          | 461   |                                   |
| Severus II. . . . .            | 465   |                                   |
| Anthemius . . . . .            | 472   |                                   |
| Olybrius . . . . .             | 473   |                                   |
| Glycerius . . . . .            | 474   |                                   |
| Julius Nepos . . . . .         | 475   |                                   |
|                                |       | EASTERN EMPIRE.                   |
|                                |       | <i>To the reign of Justinian.</i> |
|                                |       | Valens . . . . . 379              |
|                                |       | Theodosius the Great . 395        |
|                                |       | Arcadius . . . . . 408            |
|                                |       | Thodosius II. . . . . 450         |
|                                |       | Marcianus . . . . . 457           |
|                                |       | Leo I. . . . . 474                |
|                                |       | Zeno Isauricus . . . . . 491      |
|                                |       | Anastasius . . . . . 518          |
|                                |       | Justin I. . . . . 527             |
|                                |       | Justinian . . . . . 565           |
|                                |       | &c. &c. &c.                       |

August'ulus, the last emperor of the Western Roman empire, was deposed, August 23rd, 475, by Odoa'cer, king of the Heruli, who assumed the title of KING OF ITALY.

## SECTION IV.

- |                                                                                                                                         |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 11. Amphitheatre, <i>s.</i> a circular or oval building for public amusements, with seats one above another, and an area in the middle. | 11. Catacombs, <i>s.</i> caverns for burial.     |
| Fantheon, <i>s.</i> temple of all the gods.                                                                                             | 13. Aver'sion, <i>s.</i> dislike; detestation.   |
|                                                                                                                                         | 15. Epigram, <i>s.</i> a short, pointed poem.    |
|                                                                                                                                         | 16. Biographer, <i>s.</i> a writer of lives.     |
|                                                                                                                                         | 19. Rhetorician, <i>s.</i> a teacher of oratory. |

1. WHO was Agric'ola? The Roman governor of South Britain, in the time of Domitian. He built a line of forts between the rivers Forth and Clyde, to defend the Britons from the inroads of the Scots, whom he defeated on the Grampian mountains.

2. Who was Tacitus? A Roman historian, and one of the greatest orators and statesmen of his time.

3. Who was the first Christian emperor? Constantine the Great; fifteen emperors, all professing Christianity, succeeded him.

4. What city was anciently called Byzan'tium? Constantinople: the emperor Constantine the Great removed the seat of his government thither, that he might be nearer the Persians, whose power then began to be formidable to the Romans.

5. What nations enslaved the Romans, after the time of the emperor Constantine? The Goths and Vandals.

6. Were the morals of the Romans better under the imperial or the republican form of government? Under the latter.

7. When was the imperial power in the most flourishing state? In the reign of Trajan.

8. What occasioned the overthrow of the Roman power? Its fall was owing to the luxury and corruption of the people, when the empire became too extensive.

9. Who first laid the Roman power low? Al'aric, king of the Goths, 410 years after Christ.

10. What prince was called the scourge of God, the destroyer of nations? Attila, king of the Huns, because he ravaged and destroyed the Roman empire.

11. Name the chief Italian curiosities, both natural and artificial. The amphitheatres, one at Rome, the other at Verona; the triumphal arches of Vespasian, Severus, and Constantine the Great; the pillars of Trajan and Antoninus; the roads made by the consuls Appius, Flaminius, and Emilius; the Pantheon, anciently a temple dedicated to the heathen gods; the catacombs; mounts Aetna and Vesuvius; the ruins of the city of Hercula'neum, almost destroyed in Nero's time by an earthquake, and totally covered by the lava in the reign of Titus; and the city of Pompeii, destroyed by the same volcanic eruption.

12. Name the most distinguished literary characters in the reign of Tiberius. Vale'rius Max'imus, the compiler of

memorable stories and events; *Vellē'ius Pater'cūlus*, the writer of the Grecian and Roman history from the defeat of Perseus king of Macedon, by the Romans, to the sixth year of Tiberius.

13. What learned men flourished under the reign of Caligula? Few. Caligula declared open war upon the Muses, banished the works of Virgil and Livy from the public libraries, and would scarcely allow Homer better treatment; Seneca and, in short, all men of eminent virtue and learning were his aversion. *A'pion*, the grammarian, however, lived in his reign, and *Philo Judæus*, a Jewish writer upon moral philosophy.

14. What great men flourished in the reign of Nero? *Sen'eca*; *Lucan*, the poet; *Persius*, the satirist; *Epictet'us*, the moralist; and *Petronius Arbiter*, a Roman writer, whose opinions were openly Epicurean.

15. Name some authors in the reign of Domitian. *Mar'tial*, the writer of epigrams; *Ju'venal*, the satirist; *Josephus*, the Jewish historian and antiquarian; and *Quintili'an*, the celebrated instructor of youth.

16. Name some in the reign of Trajan. *Plu'tarch*, the biographer; *Pliny the younger*, who was raised to the dignity of consul; *Suetōnius*, who wrote the lives of the twelve Cæsars; and *Tacitus*, the historian.

17. Name some great men in the reign of Adrian. *Ptolemy*, the geographer and astronomer; *Arrian*, the historian; *Aulus Gellius*, the learned author of *Attic Nights*.

18. Name some learned men in the reign of Antoninus Pius. *Galen*, the physician; *Justin*, the historian; *Ælian*, the natural philosopher; and *Diogenes of Laertes*, the Epicurean philosopher and biographer.

19. Who flourished in the reign of Marcus Aurelius? *Justin Martyr*, the Christian apologist, and *Polycarp* bishop of Smyrna; *Hermog'enes*, the rhetorician, and *Lucian*, the celebrated Greek critic and satirist.

20. Who flourished under the emperor Severus? *Clemens Alexandrinus* and *Tertullian*, celebrated fathers of the primitive Christian church; the latter was also an elegant Latin writer; and *Minutius Felix*, the Roman orator and writer in defence of Christianity.

21. Who flourished in the reign of Heliogabalus? *Origen*, of Alexandria, one of the fathers of the church, who defended the Christian religion against the attacks of *Celsus*, the Epicurean philosopher.

22. Who in the reign of the emperor Alexander? *Dion Cassius*, who wrote the Roman history in Greek.

23. Who flourished in the reign of the emperor Decius? *Plotinus*, the celebrated Platonic philosopher, born in Egypt, but a resident in Rome; and *Cyprian*, the ornament of the African church.

24. Name some famous characters in the reigns of Quintillus and Aurelian. Longinus, the celebrated critic, and friend of Zenobia, queen of Palmyra; and Porphyry, the Jewish philosophical writer. Porphyry was a man of extensive acquirements, and excelled all his contemporaries in knowledge: he was at first a Christian convert, but afterwards an apostate.

25. From this period (the latter end of the third century) few writers of note appeared in the Roman empire, excepting the Christian fathers. The continual irruptions of the Northern nations introduced new languages and new customs; these turbulent times were little calculated for the cultivation of literary talents, and after the Goths and Vandals had overrun the empire, a night of mental darkness followed, from the tenth to the middle of the fifteenth century.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

4. Why did Constantine change the seat of the Roman empire ?  
 11. What cities in Italy were covered with lava ? 12. What did Valerius Maximus compile ? What did Velleius Paterculus write ?  
 15. What was Martial ? Juvenal ? Josephus ? Quintilian ? 16. Suetonius ? Tacitus ? 17. Ptolemy ? 18. Galen ? Justin ? 21. Who was Origen ? 24. What was Longinus ? Porphyry ? 25. What followed the irruptions of the northern nations ? How long did mental darkness prevail ?
- 

## CHAPTER V.

### Ecclesiastical and General History,

FROM THE BIRTH OF CHRIST TO THE REFORMATION.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Christianity in the Early Ages.*

- |                                                                |                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Tes'tament, <i>s.</i> name of the Scriptures                | 12. Trad'i'tion, <i>s.</i> an oral account transmitted from age to age. |
| 3. Evan'gelist, <i>s.</i> a bringer of good or joyful tidings. | 19. Proscri'be, <i>v.</i> to censure capitally.                         |

1. WHAT is Ecclesiastical history ? An account of the affairs relative to the Christian church, however subdivided into sects and opinions; including the lives and characters of those who maintained them.

2. What are the sources of Ecclesiastical history ? The New Testament, and the approved writings of those eminent Christian authors who from age to age, since the time of the Apostles, have published accounts of the principal events in the history of Christianity; also the writings of cotemporary historians, Jewish, heathen, or infidel.

3. What is meant by the four Gospels? Four narratives of the leading transactions in the life of Christ, from his birth to his resurrection: they were written respectively by Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. The word Gospel means 'good news.' Matthew was one of the twelve Apostles; Mark is said to have been one of the seventy disciples; he accompanied Paul and Barnabas in some of their travels: Luke was a physician, and attended Paul in his travels; John, one of the twelve Apostles, was called 'the disciple whom Jesus loved.' They are also termed Evangelists.

4. What are the most remarkable events related in the Gospels? The tax of Augustus Cæsar; the birth of Christ; the offerings presented to him by the wise men from the East; the four passovers celebrated by him; the ministry of John the Baptist, who was beheaded by order of Herod; and the miracles, sufferings, death, resurrection, and ascension of our Lord.

5. What do the Acts of the Apostles comprehend? A history of the beginning of the ministry and miracles of the apostles of Christ, and the principal events connected with the first Christian churches. It contains chiefly a record of the acts of Peter and Paul, and embraces a period of thirty years.

6. What are the chief events recorded in this book? The descent of the Holy Ghost; the martyrdom of St. Stephen; the conversion of St. Paul; the foundation of several Christian churches, viz. at Jerusalem, Antioch, Philippi, Ephesus, Rome, &c., and the council of the Apostles at Jerusalem, A. D. 52.

7. By whom were the early Christians persecuted? By the Jews and Romans. The great mass of the former would not receive Christ as the Messiah, and hated him and his followers. The Romans or Gentiles could not endure the Christians, who aimed at the destruction of the worship of their gods. Many wicked and false reports also were raised against them by their enemies, which doubtless was one cause of the persecutions they suffered.

8. How many general persecutions are mentioned in history? Ten. The *first*, under the Roman emperor Nero, A. D. 64, lasted three years: the reason he assigned was, that they had set fire to Rome, which, however, was done by himself. Some were crucified or burnt; others clothed in the skins of wild beasts, and worried by dogs; and numbers covered over with pitch, and set on fire like torches.

9. When was the *second*? In the reign of Domitian, A. D. 95. It extended over the Roman empire, and included Jews as well as Christians. The apostle John was banished to the isle of Patmos, where he wrote the book of the Revelation.

10. When was the *third*? Under Trajan, A. D. 107. It lasted ten years: neither age, sex, nor rank was spared. At the intercession of Pliny the younger, its severity was relaxed.

11. When did the *fourth* and *fifth* take place? The fourth commenced with the reign of Adrian, A. D. 118. It lasted nine or ten years, during which great numbers were put to death by the most cruel torments. The *fifth* began A. D. 139, under Antoninus Pius, and was stopped by Marcus Aurelius.

12. Who were the most remarkable martyrs under these persecutions? Under those of the Jews, Stephen, James the son of Zeb'edee, and James the brother of our Lord; Paul, under that of Nero, and Peter; but it is uncertain whether the latter was crucified or beheaded at Rome or Babylon. All the apostles suffered violent deaths in various ways and different places, except John. There are several uncertain traditions respecting the time, place, and circumstances of the death of Peter, Thomas, Bartholomew, Andrew, Philip, Luke, Mark, Onesimus, Linus, Clemens, &c.

13. In the third, Simeon Cleophas was crucified at Jerusalem when upwards of 100 years old. Ignatius of Antioch was carried to Rome, and torn by wild beasts, A. D. 107. Anacletus and Evaristus, bishops of Rome, suffered under Trajan. Photinus bishop of Lyons, Justin Martyr, Polycarp bishop of Smyrna, and Apolloinus, a Roman senator, during the fifth.

14. When did the *sixth* persecution rage? the *seventh*, *eighth*, and *ninth*? The *sixth* was under Seve'rus, in which Irenæus bishop of Lyons, and Victor bishop of Rome, suffered martyrdom, A. D. 202. The *seventh* happened in the reign of Decius, A. D. 250. It was so severe that many relapsed into heathenism; others fled into the deserts for safety, and this is supposed to have given the first occasion to an ascetic or monastic life. Paul, of Thebes, is said to have been the first hermit.

15. The *eighth* was under the reign of Valerian, A. D. 257. Cyprian, the amiable bishop of Carthage, was beheaded; Sixtus, bishop of Rome, was crucified; and Laurentius, a deacon, was roasted alive over a slow fire. The *ninth* was in the reign of Aurelian, A. D. 272.

16. What, and by whom, was the last and most deadly blow aimed at Christianity? The *tenth* persecution by Dioclesian. It was so severe that it had nearly succeeded.

17. What produced an important change in the state of the Christians about this period? The conversion of Constantine the Great to the Christian religion, by a vision, as was supposed, of a fiery cross in the air, on which were written the words, *In hoc vinces*,—‘In this thou shalt conquer,’ when he was about to engage his rival Maxen’tius, over whom he obtained a complete victory.

18. The Christians now enjoyed peace. Their exiles were recalled, those who had been made slaves, condemned to the mines, or imprisoned, were set free, and their property and civil rights restored.

19. What followed this protection of Christianity? Heathenism was now in its turn proscribed. The idols were removed from the temples, the altars broken down, sacrifices to the gods forbidden, and the temples shut up.

20. What is the origin of the term Paganism? The heathen customs and practices, when driven from the cities and large towns, still prevailed for a long time in the villages, which in Latin are called *pagi*. Hence arose the term Pagan.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

3. By whom were the Gospels written? What does 'Gospel' mean? Who was John? 4. How did John the Baptist die? 6. What were the first Christian churches? 7. Why did the Romans persecute the Christians? 8. How did Nero treat them?

9. Where was John sent? What did he write? 10. Who interceded for the Christians? With what effect? 14. What is said to have originated the monastic life? 15. Who suffered in the eighth persecution? 17. What is related of Constantine? 18. How did he treat the Christians? 19. What else followed his conversion?

---

#### SECTION II.

##### *The Jews: the Destruction of their Kingdom by the Romans, &c.*

1. Depo'sed, *v.* dethroned.  
Proc'urator, *s.* a viceroy.

| 10. Theolog'ical, *a.* relating to sacred doctrine or divinity.

1. How was the Jewish kingdom governed after the death of Herod? It was divided among his three sons. Herod An'tipas ruled over Galilee; Philip over Iture'a; and Trachoni'tis and Archela'us reigned in Judaea and Samaria; but the last-named was deposed by Augustus, and his kingdom made a Roman province under a procurator. Pontius Pilate filled this office ten years. The high-priests still ruled in matters connected with religion.

2. What were the circumstances that led to the final overthrow of the Jewish kingdom? The cruelty and extortion of the Roman governors and the family of Herod, together with the provocations received from the Roman garrisons, caused frequent insurrections of the Jews against these tyrants: their ruin was further promoted by the factions and ambition of their chief priests.

3. What completed their ruin? They rebelled against Gessius Florus, on account of his extraordinary rapacity

and cruelty. Cestius Gallus advanced against Jerusalem with a Roman army, but, for some reason not explained, suddenly retired. On this the Christians, forewarned by our Lord's predictions, left that devoted city, and took refuge in Pella, in Cele-syria.

4. The command of the Roman army next fell into the hands of Vespasian, who being made emperor, gave it to his son Titus. This general commenced the siege of Jerusalem A.D. 70, a little before the passover, when multitudes had assembled from all Judea, and various distant parts, to celebrate that festival.

5. What was the fate of the city? Instead of uniting to defend themselves against the Romans, the Jews split into contending factions or parties; and when not occupied in repelling the attacks of the enemy, were engaged in furious conflicts within the walls. In mutual revenge of each other, they destroyed the corn which should have supported them during the siege, and the horrors of famine were now added to those of foreign and civil war.

6. After enduring great miseries, they were overpowered by the Romans, who took the city, pillaged and burnt it on the 8th of September. The temple itself was burnt on the 10th of August preceding, though Titus did all in his power to save that beautiful edifice. The whole city, except a part of one of the walls and three towers, was levelled with the ground.

7. What numbers are said to have perished? 1,100,000 by sword or famine; 100,000 were taken prisoners; besides, considerable numbers were slaughtered in Palestine, Asia, and Africa. Thus the prophecies of Christ were literally fulfilled. What remained of the Jews were scattered over the world.

8. Did they afterwards ever rebel against the Romans? Yes: though scattered and trodden down by their enemies they multiplied exceedingly, and became sufficiently strong to make several attempts for the restoration of their government and independence.

9. What is related of the heathen oracles about this time? They gradually fell into neglect after the birth of our Saviour, and towards the close of the first century became extinct.

10. Who were the principal theological writers of the first century? The Evangelists, Apostles, Philo the Jew, and Flavius Josephus. The apostolical fathers of this century were Clement, Barnabas, and Hermas.

11. At the beginning of the second century how far had Christianity spread? In Asia, through Palestine, Syria, Armenia, Mesopotamia, Parthia, Asia Minor, and Arabia; and in Africa, through Egypt, Cyrenaica, Lybia, and Ethiopia; in Europe, through Greece, Macedonia, Illyricum,

Thrace, Italy, Gaul, Spain, Germany, and Britain. Indeed, so great was the zeal of the Christians, that there was scarcely a part of the Roman empire in which their faith was not known.

12. What new forms were introduced into their mode of worship? It was not till towards the end of the second century that the sign of the Cross, and anointing, were used, and the custom of praying toward the east adopted.

13. Have you any other events worthy of particular notice to relate of this century? There were disputes between the Eastern and Western churches concerning Easter-day; the former insisting on the 14th day of the Jewish month as being the proper day, and the latter the Sunday after, A.D. 144:

14. Various fasts and festivals were instituted at this time, the principal of which were Lent and Christmas-day: as to the date of the latter, there was also a great difference of opinion. Christian meetings were held on Sundays, and in the burial-places of the martyrs. Infant baptism and sponsors were introduced in this century:

15. Adrian raised his famous wall from Carlisle to Newcastle in Britain, and also rebuilt Jerusalem, which he peopled with heathens. He erected in this new city a temple to Jupiter Capitolinus, and this contempt of their religion, together with the oppressions they endured under the Roman yoke, again roused the Jews into rebellion: they were led on by a false Messiah, called Barchochebas.

16. The Romans crushed this insurrection, but not without much bloodshed. The Jews were now forbidden to enter Jerusalem, and great cruelties were practised upon them by the Romans.

17. Mention some eminent Christian writers of the second century. Ignatius, Polycarp, Justin Martyr; Irenæus, bishop of Lyons, Clemens Alexandrinus, and Tertullian. The two last were men of great learning and ability.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who were Herod's three sons? Who, and what, was Pontius Pilate? 2. How did the Romans treat the Jews? 3. How complete their ruin? What became of the Christians? 4. Who besieged Jerusalem? 5. What was the conduct of its defenders? Why were the Jews so unfortunate? 6. How did the siege terminate? 7. How many persons fell victims?

9. When did the oracles become silent? 13. What did the Eastern and Western churches dispute about? 14. What important church festival was now instituted? Where did the early Christians meet to worship? 15. Who rebuilt Jerusalem? 16. What befell the Jews, and why did they revolt?

-----

## SECTION III.

*From the third to the seventh Century.*

- |                                                                             |                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. <i>Apos'tate</i> , <i>s.</i> one who renounces his religion; a renegade. | 17. <i>Unc'tion</i> , <i>s.</i> an anointing.                             |
| 8. <i>Pil'grimage</i> , <i>s.</i> journey for devotion.                     | 22. <i>Fab'ricate</i> , <i>v.</i> to forge; to make.                      |
| 9. <i>Pre'fecture</i> , <i>s.</i> government.                               | 26. <i>Superse'de</i> , <i>v.</i> to make void, or suspend; to set aside. |

1. WHAT was the state of Christianity in the third century? Prosperous. Many illustrious persons and Roman senators were converted, and Christians admitted into high offices under the Roman government. New churches were now formed in Arabia, France, Germany, Scotland, &c.

2. Were there any further departures from the simplicity of Christianity, as it was in the age of the Apostles? Yes; some of the Pagan rites were injudiciously allowed to mingle in some places with the pure forms of Christian worship, and prayers were now first made for the dead; altars were used; wax tapers employed; and public churches built.

3. To what period is the origin of the monkish life traced? Paul of Thebes, while a young man, retired to avoid the persecution under Decius, and set the example, which was followed in succeeding ages to a great extent.

4. Who were the chief theological writers of the third century? Origen, Cyprian bishop of Carthage, Ambrose, Paul of Samosata, Eusebius of Alexandria, Gregory Thaumaturgus (the wonder-worker,) so called from the number of his miracles. The Jewish Talmud was composed in this century.

5. When, and where, was the first General Council held? At Nice, in 325. In it the opinions of the Arians were condemned, and the bishops of Rome declared not superior in dignity to other Christian bishops.

6. What other events of importance to Christianity occurred in this century? The Christian religion is said to have made remarkable progress in Asia, Africa, and Europe. The emperor Julian, commonly styled the Apostate, attempted to restore the Pagan worship, and to prove the prophecies concerning Jerusalem false, by encouraging the Jews to rebuild the city of Jerusalem; but he was defeated by an earthquake and fiery eruption, and his career was cut short by death:

7. The use of incense and the censer, with several other superstitious rites borrowed from the heathens, were introduced; the Saints were invoked, images used, and the Cross worshipped in some places, in this century.

8. Splendid churches were now erected at Rome, Constantinople, Antioch, and Nicomedia, and amongst the rest that celebrated one on the site of the Holy Sepulchre, by the desire of Constantine and his mother Helena. This

gave rise to the pilgrimages into Palestine. Relics now began to be regarded with superstitious veneration.

9. What important change was made after the time of Constantine in the system of ecclesiastical authority? When the empire was divided into eastern and western for civil purposes by his successors, the same was done for ecclesiastical purposes also. The empire of the East was divided into two prefectures and seven dioceses; the same was done in the West. The bishops of each received the same rank for their churches, as the civil governors for their chief cities. Rome, the ancient metropolis of the empire, received the first rank:

10. Constantinople, as being the second, received the second; Alexandria, the third; and Antioch, the fourth. The bishops of Rome now claimed the right of hearing appeals, but not of universal authority. The word *Papa*, or "Pope," was a common title of respect applied to all bishops. Arianism first sprung up in this century, and the disputes that arose long divided and distracted the various Christian churches.

11. Who were among the chief Christian writers of the fourth century? Eusebius of Cæsarea, Eustatius of Antioch, Athanasius of Alexandria,—the great opponent of Arianism; Cyril of Jerusalem, Gregory Nazianzen, Jerome, Augustine, Paulinus of Nola, and John Chrysostom.

12. What were the principal events of the fifth century? Christianity made great progress among the Franks and the Germans. The Irish were converted by St. Patrick, whose original name was Succathus: he arrived in Ireland about the year 432. Terrible persecutions were carried on against the Christians in Britain by the Picts, Scots, and Anglo-Saxons; in Spain, Gaul, and Africa by the Vandals; and in Italy and Pannonia by the Visigoths.

13. Name some eminent Christian authors of the fifth century. Polybius, Cyril of Alexandria, Hilarius, Basil, and Zosimus bishop of Rome. In this century a schism took place between the Eastern and Western churches.

14. What changes took place in the civil state of the Western empire during this century? The barbarians that overthrew the Roman empire established separate kingdoms in the different provinces. The Ostrogoths settled in Italy, and were followed a century after by the Lombards. The Vandals established themselves in Spain, but were supplanted by the Visigoths, and driven onwards to Africa.

15. The Saxons took possession of England soon after it had been abandoned by the Romans, the Burgundians and Franks of Gaul, and the Alemanni of the Roman provinces on the Rhine. Of these the Lombards, Franks, and Saxons were long distinguished for their opposition to all refinements, and respect for military virtues.

## **ETHNOLOGICAL MAP**

**SHOWING THE**

## COURSE AND SETTLEMENT OF THE NORTHERN HORDES IN THE ROMAN EMPIRE.



16. After the fall of the Roman empire in the West, what was the state of the Eastern empire? For nearly fifty years it presented little worthy of notice, till the reign of Justinian.

17. Who succeeded Odoacer? He was conquered by Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, A. D. 493, who extended his sway over Rhoetia, Dalmatia, Noricum, and the bordering countries, thus enjoying the finest portion of the Western empire.

18. What ecclesiastical events of importance occurred during the sixth century? Extreme unction was instituted by Felix, bishop of Rome, and the canon of the Mass established by Gregory the Great.

19. What was the general state of the Church? It suffered severe persecutions from the barbarous conquerors of the Roman empire, and also in Persia and other Eastern countries; still Christianity spread among the Ethiopians, the Colchians, the Iberians, Armenians, Picts and Scots, and the Anglo-Saxons. It was chiefly by the exertions of forty Benedictines under Augustine, or Austin, that the latter embraced Christianity, which, however, had flourished several centuries before among the British.

20. The bishops of Rome now began to claim to themselves universal authority over all the Christian churches, which being resisted by those of Constantinople, a rupture between the eastern and western sections of the church took place. The Roman hierarchy at this time laid claim—not to any temporal, but to spiritual power only. The differences between the great eastern and western sees were for a time composed by Justinian.

21. What memorable events took place in the reign of Justinian? Belisarius, one of the best generals of the age, defeated the Vandals in Africa, and the Ostrogoths in Italy, both of which thus became for a time re-united to the empire.

22. Who were the Turks? They originally inhabited the great Altaian mountains, and were famous for their skill in mining and forging iron, the ore of which was the produce of those mountains; and also in fabricating weapons of every sort. Issuing from their native hills, they overran a great part of northern Asia, and carried their conquests from the Sea of Japan to the river Wolga.

23. Who was Chos'roes I.? A celebrated Persian ruler, who aimed at re-establishing the ancient ascendancy of that empire. He invaded Syria in the reign of Justinian, from which he was driven back by Belisarius, A. D. 540.

24. What was the end of this renowned general? He fought several battles afterwards in Italy with the Goths, and in various parts of the empire against other barbarians, in which he was generally victorious; but he had his ene-

mies, and an ungrateful master. After his long and important services to Justinian he was sent to prison under a false charge of treason, and though soon set free, died of a broken heart.

25. What were the Justinian Code, and Digest or Pandects? A digest of the laws of the Roman and Byzantine empires, made by commissioners under Justinian. These laws had been multiplying during 1300 years, and his object was to remove such as were contradictory or out of use, explain those that were obscure, render simple what was complex, and fix what was doubtful. The first part of the work was called the Code, the second the Digest or Pandects.

26. How long were these received and acted on? His successors in later times superseded them. They prevailed in the West till the time the Lombards took possession of Ravenna, and were then neglected and lost. No portion of these famous laws was discovered till the twelfth century, when Lothaire II. found a copy of the Digest on the taking of Amalfi, and presented it to the citizens of Pisa. This, with the Code, which was subsequently found at Ravenna, forms the main source of the modern legislation of Europe.

27. Who were the Lombards? One of the barbarous northern hordes that overran the Roman empire. They first settled in Pannonia (now Hungary), and then established themselves in the North of Italy, where they maintained their supremacy till A. D. 774; they were then defeated by Charlemagne, who put an end to their kingdom and assumed the iron crown of Lombardy.

28. The Eastern emperors held a nominal authority over the rest of Italy until this period, and had a viceroy resident at Ravenna under the name of Exarch. With the fall of the Lombard dynasty the connexion between the Eastern and Western empires was finally dissolved, A. D. 756.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Where were new churches formed? 3. Who first set the example of a monastic life? Why did he retire from the world? 5. What opinions were condemned in the council of Nice? 6. What did Julian attempt? 8. What church was built at Jerusalem? By whose desire? 10. Whence arose the word Pope? 12. Who converted the Irish? and when? Who now persecuted the Christians? 14. Describe the settlements of the Northern barbarians. 17. What was the extent of the empire of Theodoric?

19. Who converted the Saxons? 21. Who were defeated by Belisarius? 23. What did Chosroes attempt? 25. How long had the laws of the empire been multiplying? By whom digested? With what view? 26. When were these laws lost? When found, and by whom? What do they still constitute? 27. Who conquered the Lombards? 28. How, and when, were the Eastern and Western empires finally severed?

## SECTION IV.

*From the seventh to the ninth Century.*

- |                                                                                         |                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Prop'agate, <i>v.</i> to extend; to spread.                                          | 8. Ul'timately, <i>ad.</i> in the end.                                |
| 5. Mosque, <i>s.</i> a Turkish church.                                                  | 13. Temporal'ties, <i>s.</i> worldly estates.                         |
| 6. Fanat'icism, <i>s.</i> religious phrensy.<br>Intes'tine, <i>a.</i> internal; inward. | 14. Canoniza'tion, <i>s.</i> the act of making<br>any person a saint. |

1. WHAT were the chief ecclesiastical events of the seventh century? The archbishoprics of London and York were founded; the Gospel spread in Holland, Friesland, and Germany. Schism between the Greek and Latin churches was renewed and confirmed. Mahomet arose, and his religion made rapid progress, being propagated by fire and sword. The Mahometan era, or Hegira, dates from the year of Christ 622. England was divided into parishes in this century.

2. What was the state of the East about the time of Mahomet? The history of the Eastern empire presents, from the death of Justinian, little else than scenes of usurpation and disorder. The emperor Maurice, who had restored Chosroes II. to the throne of Persia, from which he had been driven by one of his generals, was deposed and imprisoned by Phocas, a centurion, who was made emperor by the soldiery, and in his turn dethroned and put to death.

3. Chosroes, mustering the entire strength of Persia, now attacked the Byzantine empire, and subdued it as far as the very walls of Constantinople: but Heraclius, the emperor, drove him back to Persia with great loss, and so weakened that country, that it afterwards fell an easy prey to the Saracens, who were now emerging from their deserts.

4. While Heraclius was congratulating himself on the success that exhausted his resources, these fierce invaders appeared on the borders of Syria, which, together with Persia, soon submitted to their arms. At the death of Mahomet, 8th June, 632, his army amounted to 100,000 men.

5. Describe the progress of the Saracen arms. Mahomet was succeeded by Abu Bekr, whose generals overran Persia, Irak (or Babylonia), and Syria, after routing a very large army sent against them by Heraclius, and storming Damascus, A. D. 634. The next caliph (*i. e.* vicar) of note was Omar, to whom Jerusalem surrendered after a siege. He treated the Christians with kindness, and built a mosque on the site of Solomon's temple. Egypt was next invaded, and easily overrun.

6. It is related that in the storming of Alexandria, the only city in Egypt which made a vigorous resistance, the famous Alexandrian library was burnt, through the ignorance and fanaticism of these barbarous conquerors. A series of intestine divisions for a short period retarded their

career ; but on the settlement of these, their armies pursued a triumphant march through western and northern Africa, as far as the Straits of Gibraltar, and then passed over into Spain, which they subdued.

7. Meditating the conquest of all Europe, they next crossed the Pyrenees and invaded France, where they were met and signally defeated by the French under Charles Martel, in an obstinately contested engagement that lasted many days, and forced to retreat into Spain. Meanwhile their armies had passed the Oxus, and subdued various parts of eastern Asia, on which they imposed their religious creed.



8. The empire of the Saracens, though broken up into various members by civil commotions, was to a greater or less extent maintained in different parts of the world for some centuries. The greater part ultimately fell under the power of the Turks.

9. For what were the Saracens afterwards famed ? Their love of learning, and the cultivation of science. While Christian nations were sunk in the deepest ignorance, the sciences, arts, and literature were encouraged and flourished under the Saracens. The sixth century was the commencement of the dark ages in Europe.

10. The Spanish Saracens may be looked upon as the fathers of European philosophy ; all the knowledge, whether of physic, astronomy, philosophy, or mathematics, which flourished in Europe from the tenth century, was originally derived from the Arabian schools, and the writings of their learned men translated into Latin.

11. What historical spectacle does the Eastern empire present during the period of the Saracen ascendancy ? Scenes of confusion, weakness, and profligacy so extreme, that it is a matter of surprise it should have so long held out against the enemies by whom it was on every side surrounded. From this general description a few brilliant reigns must be excepted.

12. What events in church history are worthy of note in the eighth century ? The further propagation of the Gospel took place in Germany, Hyrcania, and Tartary. The worship of images was authorized by the second Council of Nice, A. D. 787, and the reading of the Epistle and Gospel was introduced into the service of the church :

13. Masses for the dead were first instituted, and the Popes of Rome made temporal sovereigns. Their temporalities were granted by Pepin, king of France, from the spoils of the Exarchate of Ravenna, and subsequently increased by Charlemagne.

14. What in the ninth century ? The conversion of the Swedes, Danes, Saxons, Huns, Bohemians, Moravians, Sclavonians, Russians, Indians, and Bulgarians ; the rise of the doctrine of transubstantiation ; great injury to Christianity in the East by the successes of the Saracens ; and the canonization of saints introduced by pope Leo III.

15. The feasts of St. Andrew, St. Peter, St. Martin, St. Paul, St. John the Baptist, Whitsuntide, the Epiphany, the Assumption of the Virgin Mary, and All Saints, were ordered to be kept in the Western churches. Peter-pence granted to Rome by king Ethelwolf, A. D. 852.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How was Mahomet's religion propagated ? What is the Mahometan era ? 3. What made the conquest of Persia and Syria easy to the Saracens ? 5. Who succeeded Mahomet ? What caliph took Jerusalem ? How did he treat the Christians ? 6. What happened at Alexandria ?

7. Who stopped the Saracens in their victorious career ? 8. What became of the Saracen empire ? 9. When did the dark ages commence ? 10. For what are we indebted to the Saracens ? 13. Who conferred temporal dominions on the Roman see ? 15. Who granted Peter-pence to Rome ?

#### SECTION V.

##### *From the ninth to the eleventh Century.*

|                                                 |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 4. Wrest, <i>v.</i> to take by force.           | 13. Lat'ins, <i>s.</i> a name given by the |
| 6. Or'ganize, <i>v.</i> to form; to discipline. | Greeks and Saracens to the na-             |
| 17. Men'dicants, <i>s.</i> beggars.             | tions of western Europe.                   |

1. MENTION some memorable occurrences of the tenth century. The Normans, who had established themselves in

France under Rollo, were converted, and Christianity made great progress in Denmark, Norway, and Poland. The holy war was projected by pope Sylvester II., and a multitude of superstitious rites were added to the church service.

2. The feudal system is generally supposed to have been instituted in this century, though some authors refer it to the reigns of Pepin and Charlemagne, or to the family of Hugh Capet. Italy was conquered and united to the German empire by the emperor Otho.

3. What undertaking signally distinguishes the close of the eleventh century? The Crusades. These were carried on with all the excesses that usually attend an ill-directed and extravagant zeal.

4. What was the origin of the term Crusade? The holy war was called by the French, who first undertook it, *croisade*, as its object was to wrest the cross of Christ out of the hands of the infidels; and because every soldier wore on his right shoulder a consecrated cross of various colours.

5. What was the cause of the crusades? The cruelties and extortions practised upon the Christians who made pilgrimages to Jerusalem. Peter the Hermit first roused the attention of Europe to these oppressions; he was seconded by pope Urban II.

6. How was the first crusade conducted? A. D. 1096. Multitudes of undisciplined fanatics joined in it: they committed excesses of various kinds, and most of them perished by famine, sickness, or violence in their attempted march to the Holy Land. But Godfrey of Bouillon, joined by Robert duke of Normandy, and other princes of Europe, having organized a formidable army, passed by the route of Constantinople into Asia.

7. This celebrated general gained a decisive victory over the sultan Solyman, took Antioch, and afterwards Jerusalem itself, from the Mahometans, and made it the capital of the new kingdom of Palestine, A. D. 1099, of which he was appointed sovereign by the common choice of the crusaders. This kingdom lasted till the conquest of that country by Saladin, A. D. 1187.

8. Who was Saladin? The caliph, or sultan of Egypt; by descent a Kurd, and equally esteemed and beloved by Saracens and Turks, as one of the greatest champions of Mahometanism. He displayed the greatest vigour and courage in many conflicts with the crusaders.

9. On the capture of Jerusalem what princes of Christendom volunteered to re-take it? Frederick I. emperor of Germany, Richard I. king of England, and Philip king of France, with other princes of less note, followed by the most gallant spirits of the age.

10. What was the result? Frederick encountered many hardships on his march, yet gained some important victories

over the infidels : he was accidentally drowned in the river Cydnus. The two other monarchs besieged and took Acre ; but a feeling of jealousy and animosity having arisen between them, Philip returned home.

11. Becoming thus the sole commander, Richard proceeded from victory to victory ; he encountered and defeated the heroic Saladin at the head of 300,000 men, near Ascalon,



and soon after arrived within sight of the holy city, the object of his long and fervent aspirations. But his forces were now so wasted by famine and fatigue, that he was reluctantly compelled to conclude a truce with Saladin, A. D. 1192, by which the Christians were guaranteed access to Jerusalem, and the free exercise of their religion. This terminated the third crusade.

12. What were the chief events of the fourth ? It was led by Boniface, marquis of Montserrat, whose first exploit was to take and pillage Constantinople : he appointed Baldwin, count of Flanders, as its sovereign, A. D. 1204. The Latin rule lasted fifty-seven years, when Constantinople was re-taken by the Greeks.

13. What other crusades followed ? The fifth, under the king of Hungary, A. D. 1218, which was unsuccessful. Successive attempts were afterwards made by Frederick II. of Germany, who obtained many privileges for the Christians at Jerusalem ; Louis IX. of France, who was reduced with his army to great extremities, died of the plague, and was canonized ; and Edward I. of England, who obtained a three years' truce. The Latins were finally expelled from Palestine, A. D. 1291, by the Mamelukes.

14. Mention some important events of the eleventh century. Prussia was conquered and converted to Christianity by the knights of the Teutonic order. Poland and Hun-

gary were created kingdoms. The wealth of the Roman pontiffs was greatly increased by their assumption of the power to create bishops, abbots, &c. Their arrogance was opposed by the emperors Henry I. II. III. and IV.; by William I. king of England, and some of his successors; by Philip king of France; and by the British and German churoches. Domesday-book was compiled, by a survey of all the estates in England.

15. The Inquisition was first established at Narbonne in France, and entrusted to the direction of Dominic and his order, who treated the Waldenses, and other reputed heretics, with the greatest cruelty. At the Sicilian vespers, the French in Sicily, to the number of 8,000, were massacred in one evening, at a signal given by John Prochyta, a Sicilian nobleman. The Jews were driven out of France by Louis IX. The Dominicans, Franciscans, Servites, Mendicants, and the Hermits of St. Augustin, date the origin of their orders from this century.

16. Who were the Benedictines? This monastic order, by St. Benedict, was the first established in Europe. He selected, for his monasteries, spots amidst the thick forests which then covered Europe, and obliged the monks to clear and cultivate the soil. This body soon became very rich and powerful.

17. Who were the Franciscans? The Franciscan order was established by St. Francis. Their lives were spent in preaching and begging: hence they were called Mendicants. These soon began to possess great influence, which they long retained.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

2. To whose time do some authors refer the beginning of the feudal system? Who united Italy to the German empire? 4. What did the crusaders wear on their shoulders? 5. What was the origin of the crusades? Why were they so called? Who was the first preacher of the erusades? 6. What befell the first divisions of the army of crusaders? What celebrated leaders headed the next divisions? 7. Who was made king of Jerusalem? How long did that kingdom endure? Who subdued it? 8. Who was Saladin? What qualities did he display? 9. What princes volunteered to recover possession of Jerusalem?

10. What was the issue of the third crusade? 11. Why did it fail? 12. What did Boniface do in the fourth? How long did the Latins hold Constantinople? 13. Who expelled them from Palestine? and when? 15. Where was the Inquisition first established? Who was entrusted with its direction? How many persons were massacred at the Sicilian vespers? 16. Who first established the monastic order in Europe? Where did Benedict locate his monks? 17. Why were the Franciscans called mendicants?

-----

## SECTION VI.

*From the eleventh to the fifteenth Century.*

7. *Monas'tic*, *a.* pertaining to a monk. | 16. *Hom'age*, *s.* respectful submission.  
9. *As'pirant*, *s.* one ambitious to rise. | 17. *Ex'tant*, *a.* yet existing.

1. WHO was Genghis Khan? This celebrated founder of the Mongolian or Mogul empire was originally the chief of a petty Tartar principality. He married the daughter of the nominal head of the Tartar hordes, and soon after made war on his father-in-law, and slew him. His original name was Temujin; but after his victory he assumed the name of Genghis Khan, (*i. e.* supreme sovereign.)

2. Issuing from the deserts of Tartary at the head of a numerous and well-disciplined army, he invaded and subdued the northern parts of China. He next conquered Central Asia and the greater part of Persia. He was a prince of great ability and courage, but merciless to those who opposed him: he died A. D. 1227.

3. What became of this empire after his death? His successors extended it over the remaining part of China, overthrew the caliphate of Bagdad, and subdued the Russian empire. The Mongolians then spread themselves over the north-eastern parts of Europe as far as the Adriatic Sea; but after the death of Kuhblai Khan, grandson of Genghis, the empire was dismembered, and its different provinces gradually rescued from its Tartar governors.

4. Who were the Mamelukes? Turkish captives, sold into slavery by the Moguls. Great numbers of them were sent to Egypt, where in a short time they became so numerous as to usurp the supreme power, which they maintained and widely extended for some centuries. They drove the Moguls from Syria, became masters of Arabia, and A. D. 1291, expelled the Christians from Palestine.

5. Mention some remarkable events of the twelfth century. The three famous military orders of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, the Knights Templars, and the Teutonic Knights, were instituted in this century. The power and insolence of the Roman pontiffs became excessive, and frequent disputes arose between them and the emperors of Germany. The ground-work of the Reformation was laid by the Waldenses and Albigenses, who suffered severe persecutions. The Jews also were greatly oppressed.

6. Among the important features of this period were the commencement of the scandalous traffic in the sale of indulgences by the bishops and popes; the administration of the Lord's Supper only in one kind, the wine being withdrawn by order of pope Paschal; and the revival and encouragement of learning.

7. What were the events worthy of notice in the history of the Church during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries? The adoration of the Host was introduced by pope Honorius III., and several monastic orders founded in the thirteenth century. In 1308 the popes removed from Rome to Avignon, where they remained for seventy years. The order of the knights Templars was condemned and extinguished by a council at Vienna in 1312, when Molai, the grand-master, and several of the order, were burnt alive.

8. The papal authority declined in the fourteenth century: Philip the Fair of France, Louis of Bavaria, and Edward III. of England, strenuously opposed its arrogance and assumption. The Bible was translated into French, by order of Charles V. The celebrated reformer Wickliffe, and many eminent and learned men who argued and wrote against the abuses of the church of Rome, flourished in this century.

9. What was the progress of the Turks? Issuing from Turkistan, they overran Persia, India, Armenia, Syria, Asia Minor, and Greece, till at length, in the eleventh century, their dominion extended from China to the Mediterranean; but it was soon dismembered by sanguinary civil wars between the different aspirants for supreme power. Their monarchs were called Sultans.

10. Whence did the Turks derive the name of Ottoman? From Othman, or Ottoman, one of their leaders, who first established them in Asia Minor, which he wrested from the Byzantine or Greek empire, A. D. 1327.

11. Who led the Turks into Europe? Solyman and Amurath, the grandsons of Othman. The latter took Adrianople, A. D. 1360, and brought Thrace, Macedon, and Servia, under the Turkish rule. He fell at the sanguinary battle of Cossova.

12. Who consolidated the Turkish empire? Bajazet, a brave and politic, but cruel sultan: he subdued southern Greece and Bulgaria, and united under himself the petty Turkish kingdoms in Asia Minor, leaving the emperor of Constantinople nothing but his capital.

13. Who was Tamerlane the Great? This celebrated conqueror of the Eastern world was the son of a Jaghatai Turk, who ruled a horde nominally subject to Genghis Khan. From early life he displayed extraordinary courage, enterprise, and strength, whence he derived his name Timur, which signifies iron. With a view to attract the Tartars or Mongolians to his standard, he asserted that he was descended from Genghis Khan, and this gave rise to the appellation he generally received, viz. Timour the Tartar; and hence, also, his descendants in Hindostan were afterwards called the Great Moguls.

14. Tamerlane first conquered Khorasan and Candahar,

and next overran Persia and India. In Delhi, the capital of Hindostan, he found immense treasures. He next directed his march to Bagdad, which had revolted during his absence, and having taken that city, delivered it over to plunder, and put to death upwards of 80,000 of its inhabitants. Determined to wrest Syria and Asia Minor from the Ottoman Turks, he attacked and took Damascus and other large cities in those provinces, treating the inhabitants with the utmost barbarity, and spreading ruin and desolation wherever he went.

15. Who attempted to arrest his progress? Bajazet, the Turkish sultan, who lost a fine army, and was himself taken prisoner by Tamerlane, and died afterwards in the camp of his conqueror.

16. Where did he fix the seat of his government? At Samarcand, where he received the homage and tribute of numerous monarchs. Ambassadors were sent to him by the Byzantine emperor, and by Henry III. king of Castile. His empire extended from the wall of China to the Mediterranean Sea, and included Russia and India. While preparing to invade China, he fell a victim to disease, in the year A.D. 1405.

17. What was his general character? He was not less remarkable for his military genius and exploits than for his literary assiduity and accomplishments. There are some works of his still extant, which show that he was well versed in Persian literature, and intimately acquainted with the Koran, in which he professed to believe. Though he styled himself the benefactor of mankind, his career of conquest was tracked by bloodshed, plunder, and most wanton acts of destruction and cruelty.

18. What befell this empire after his death? It was broken up and sub-divided among his successors. Baber, who was one of his descendants, established an empire in Hindostan, of which he made Delhi the capital, A.D. 1526. It subsisted nearly to our own times, and was called the empire of the Great Mogul.

19. When, and how, did the Turks capture Constantinople? This was done by the sultan Mohammed II., with an army of 300,000 men, and a fleet of 300 sail. Constantine, its last emperor, fell bravely defending his capital, which was stormed on the 29th of May, A.D. 1453.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What was the origin of Genghis Khan? Whom did he marry? What was his name? What is meant by Genghis Khan?
2. What countries did he conquer?
4. Who obtained the ascendancy in Egypt about this time? When were the Christians of the West driven from Palestine? By whom?

5. What were the military orders called ? Who began the Reformation ? 6. What were the most important features of the history of this period ? 7. To what place did the popes remove ? What befell the knights Templars ? 8. Who opposed the popes ? 10. Who was Othman ? 15. By whom was Bajazet defeated ? 18. Who founded the empire of the Great Mogul ? 19. Who took Constantinople ?
- 

## SECTION VII.

### *Historic Events of the fifteenth Century.*

7. Maritime, *a.* belonging to the sea. | 20. Monop'olize, *v.* to engross all of a  
Emulate, *v.* to rival. | commodity in the hands of a few.

1. WHAT were the principal events of the fifteenth century ? The Moors and Jews in Spain were compelled to adopt the profession of Christianity. Literature revived in Italy, under the patronage of the family of Medici, and the Neapolitan monarchs of the house of Aragon. The council of Constance was convened by the emperor Sigismund in the year 1414, and by one of its decrees John Huss and Jerome of Prague were condemned and committed to the flames.

2. This council also removed the sacramental cup from the laity, and declared it lawful to violate the most solemn promises and engagements when made to heretics. The popes of this century, more especially Alexander VI., committed grievous excesses.

3. Several universities were founded in different parts of Europe : among them, were the universities of Leipsic in Germany, and St. Andrew's and Glasgow in Scotland. This century was famous for the exploits of Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans ; and for the invention of the art of printing with moveable wooden types.

4. The honour of this discovery has been claimed for Laurence Koster, of Haerlem, and others ; but it is more justly attributed to John Geinfleisch, otherwise Gutemberg, of Mentz. Great improvements also were made in this noble art, by Peter Schoeffer, of Strasburg. The first book printed with metal types was the Vulgate Bible, at Mentz, in the year 1450.

5. What was the progress of the Turkish power during this period ? In the year 1514 Persia, Diarbekir, and several provinces to the east of the Tigris, and afterwards Egypt, were annexed to the Turkish empire by Selim I. His successor, Solyman the Magnificent, invaded Hungary : he captured the important fortress of Belgrade, A. D. 1521, and gained a signal victory over the Christians at Mohatz, A. D. 1526.

6. Having previously driven the knights of St. John of Jerusalem from Rhodes, A. D. 1522, who retired to Malta,

Solyman once more entered Hungary, defeated the Austrians, and pursued them to Vienna, A. D. 1529; but, by the advance of the Poles under John Sobieski, was forced to retreat to Turkey, with the loss of 80,000 men. He died in 1566, after raising the Turkish empire to its highest pitch of greatness.

7. What was the state of maritime knowledge among the antients? The Syrians, or Phœnicians, were the most celebrated navigators of antiquity, and the most commercial people. They passed the Straits of Gades, or Gibraltar, and visited several ports on the Atlantic. Carthage, a colony of Tyre, successfully emulated the parent state in trade and navigation. The maritime experience of the early Greeks and Romans was chiefly confined to the Mediterranean Sea.

8. What first gave an impulse to ancient navigation? The discovery of the trade winds in the Indian Ocean by Hippalus, A. D. 50. By taking advantage of these, voyages to India from the Arabian Gulf, which had previously occupied two years, were now performed in as many months.

9. What was the progress of discovery? The Ferroe Isles were discovered in the ninth century by some Scandinavian pirates. Iceland is supposed to have been first discovered by the Irish, but it was colonized by the Norwegians. Greenland was discovered by this people near the end of the tenth century, and a settlement made for the purposes of commerce.

10. What next gave an impulse to navigation? The introduction of the mariner's compass; one of the first results of which was the discovery of the Canary islands. Instead of timidly cruising along the coasts, or depending on observations from the stars, the mariner now boldly ventured into unknown seas.

11. Who were the nations that paid most attention to navigation after this event? The Portuguese and Spaniards. The former penetrated the region of the tropics, and discovered the Cape de Verd and Azore islands, and other points on the western coast of Africa.

12. By whom was the Cape of Good Hope discovered, and India first visited by that route? An expedition from Lisbon, under the conduct of Bartholomew Diaz, reached this Cape in 1483; but, in consequence of the stormy state of the weather, was unable to round it. He called it the Cape of Tempests; but John, then king of Portugal, called it the Cape of Good Hope. Fifteen years after Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese, accomplished this important achievement, and reached India by that route, A. D. 1498.

13. Who was Christopher Columbus? This celebrated navigator was a native of Genoa. It was known in his time that the earth was of a round form, and not a plain as the

antients thought. Having conceived the idea of reaching India by sailing westward instead of eastward, he applied in vain to his native state and the kings of Portugal and England for means to make the attempt, but was at length supplied with a few ships by Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. After a bold and trying voyage of about seventy days, he reached one of the Bahamas, a cluster of islands to which he gave the name of the West Indies, (12th of October, A. D. 1492), from an erroneous supposition that he had arrived at the western coasts of India.

14. How was he rewarded for this important discovery? At first he was loaded with honours by his royal patrons; but subsequently his enemies, who envied him, succeeding in procuring his disgrace, he was treated with great injustice and indignity. He made a second voyage, but died soon after his return of a broken heart.

15. From whom did the continent of America derive its name? Americus Vespuclius, a Florentine. He visited the continent of South America; and being employed to prepare charts of the coasts, and draw up instructions for vessels sailing to the New World, his name was soon given to it, though that honour belonged to Columbus, who had discovered the continent on his second voyage.

16. What followed the discoveries of the Portuguese and Spaniards? The former established themselves in Goa, and other parts of the East, for the purposes of commerce; and exported, direct from India, the various commodities which had previously been brought to Europe by the Red Sea, through Egypt and the Mediterranean, chiefly to Venice.

17. The Spaniards seized upon the islands, and invading the continent of America, conquered the two great empires of Mexico and Peru. Incited by the love of gold, they extorted it by every means from the wretched natives, whom they treated with the most shocking cruelties. It was not till long after that they turned their attention to commerce.

18. Who followed the example of the Portuguese in commerce, and the Spaniards in discovery? First the Dutch, and afterwards the English and French. Sebastian Cabot, the son of a Bristol pilot, discovered Newfoundland and the North American continent. The first colony planted in the latter was by Sir Walter Raleigh, in Virginia, in the reign of Elizabeth, A.D. 1584. The Dutch sent a colony to New York, and the French to Canada.

19. When, and why, did Venice decline? The Venetian republic began to decline during the wars between Francis I. and Charles V. of Germany. Their revenue, and all the other resources of the state, were drained by the extraordinary efforts they made in their own defence.

20. The principal cause, however, of their decay was the diversion of the extensive commerce between India and Europe, which they had long monopolized, into a different channel, owing to the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope. Lisbon, instead of Venice, became for a time the grand dépôt for East Indian commodities.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who patronised learning in Italy ? Who were burnt by order of the council of Constance ? 3. What universities were founded ? What great discovery made ? 5. What great battle did the Turks win ? 6. Who relieved Vienna ? When, and under whom, was the Ottoman empire at its greatest height of power ? 7. What knowledge had the ancient Greeks and Romans of navigation ? Who excelled them in this knowledge ? 8. When were the trade winds discovered ? By whom ?
  9. Who discovered Iceland ? Who colonized it ? 10. What resulted from the discovery of the mariner's compass ? 13. What did Columbus aim at in sailing westward ? Who gave him ships ? Why did he call the islands he discovered West Indies ? 14. How did he die ? Of what ? 15. How did Americus give his name to the New World ? 17. How did Spain treat America ? 20. What great change did the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope make in commerce ?
- 

### SECTION VIII.

#### *Historic Events of the sixteenth Century.*

|                                              |  |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|
| 2. Pres'byter, <i>s.</i> a priest or elder.  |  | 8. Sanc'tuary, <i>s.</i> a place of refuge. |
| Deacon, <i>s.</i> third order of the clergy. |  | 17. Tournament, tilt ; mock encounter.      |

1. **WHAT** were expressly termed *the dark ages* ? From the close of the sixth, to the dawning of the fourteenth century. During this dreary night, Alfred and Charlemagne aimed at the revival and restoration of literature in their dominions, but with little success. The Arabians, in the ninth century, were the great patrons of the arts and learning, while the mists of superstition and ignorance enveloped Europe.

2. Who were the cardinals ? The word cardinal was applied originally to the presbyters and deacons in great churches ; but in the eleventh century, to the presbyters and deacons of Rome only. In imitation of Christ's disciples, their number was limited to seventy.

3. How did they rise into such estimation with the Catholic churches ? Gradually : their exclusive power of electing the popes was acquired in the time of Edward the Confessor ; they first wore the red hat (a token that they were to shed their blood for religion, if necessary,) towards the middle of the reign of our Henry III. ; they received from

pope Urban VIII. the title of Eminence, in the time of our Charles I.; their power is, however, at present much diminished, having little influence in the Christian world.

4. What is the Conclave? An assembly of the cardinals, after a pope's decease, to elect his successor: the distinguished family of Medici gave two popes to the ecclesiastical state, viz. Leo X., son of Lorenzo the Magnificent; and Clement VII., natural son of Julian, the brother of Lorenzo. Julius II. and Leo X. were patronisers of the fine arts: Julius began St. Peter's church at Rome: the architect was Michael Angelo.

5. What is meant by Christian or General Councils? They were meetings of the pope, cardinals, and clergy, for the suppression of what they termed heresies; and to fix the doctrines of the Roman church.

6. How many general councils have been held? Twenty. The four most noted were as follow: the seventh general council, which was held towards the end of the Saxon heptarchy, to restore the worship of images; the tenth, to preserve to the church its revenues and temporalities, which was called in Stephen's reign, one thousand fathers attending; the fifteenth, in the reign of Edward II., to suppress the order of knights Templars; and the twentieth, in the reign of Edward VI., to condemn the doctrines of the early reformers, Luther and Calvin.

7. Name some of the most famous popes. Hyginus, who established the form of consecrating churches, and ordained that godfathers and godmothers should stand for children; he lived in the early ages of the church: Sylvester, in whose popedom was the council of Nice; Gregory the Great, who at the close of the sixth century introduced many new doctrines, processions, &c.:

8. Boniface V.; he, at the commencement of the seventh century, made churches sanctuaries for criminals: Sergius, who from the lowest station became a pope; and Benedict IX., whose scandalous life has frequently disgraced the historian's page; he lived about the middle of the eleventh century, was several times deposed and restored, and once sold his pretensions to the papacy, but resumed them again.

9. Name some famous popes since the Norman conquest. Gregory VII., whose power was once excessive; he excommunicated the emperor of Germany, but afterwards died himself in exile: Adrian IV., whose former name was Nicholas Brakespear, the only Englishman who ever reached that dignity: Innocent III., who appointed auricular confession, and established the infamous Inquisition:

10. Clement V., who removed the seat of power from Rome to Avignon: Leo X., noted for granting indulgences; he was pope when Luther preached against them: Clement VII.; he excommunicated our Henry VIII.: Gregory

XIII., the reformer of the calendar: Sixtus V. and Clement XIV., or Ganganelli, both excellent popes.

11. What is chivalry? A military dignity and brotherhood, first instituted in France, as is supposed, by Pepin or Charlemagne. In a general sense it is synonymous with knighthood.

12. What were the great characteristics of the chivalry of the middle ages? Courtesy towards the fair sex, and protection of person and property against the rapacious and lawless bands or individuals abounding in Europe in those troubled times; redress of grievances, and the infliction of punishment on such as oppressed the weak and defenceless, or insulted females: great attachment was also professed to the laws and rites of the Christian religion.

13. What gave chivalry its principal influence and strength? The Crusades. What was the origin of heraldry? The armies that carried on those wars were composed of many different nations, and it was found necessary to adopt the use of coats of arms, and distinctive banners, to distinguish them one from another in the confusion of battle, or on the march, &c.

14. What were the chief military orders of knighthood? The first were the knights of St. John of Jerusalem, since called the knights of Malta. They were created by pope Paschal, A. D. 1114,—bore as a badge an octagonal white cross, and were placed under an obligation to make war on infidels, and attend sick pilgrims. They were expelled from Rhodes by the Turks, and in 1798 from Malta, their last possession, by Napoleon.

15. What was the next order? The knights Templars. These wore a red cross, and vowed to protect pilgrims from the infidels on their way to Jerusalem. They rapidly rose into high repute for the bravery and success that characterized their efforts in the Holy Land, but were abolished, and their estates confiscated, in 1312.

16. What was the next great military order? The Teutonic, whose duty was to attend the sick and wounded, A. D. 1192. These wore a black cross, and consisted chiefly of German knights. They introduced Christianity into Prussia, and ruled that country till the time of the Reformation.

17. What gave rise to tournaments? They took their rise from the suppression of the gladiators in the fifth century. At their first institution, a knight, who was superior to a rich lord in a single combat, set what price he pleased upon the liberty of the vanquished, and many, after they had killed their adversary, obliged his friends or relatives to purchase the mangled body and spoils left in possession of the victor; but at length these tournaments assumed the character of mock-fights, the combatants using the precaution to blunt their swords and lances.



18. Mention the principal orders of courtly chivalry in the modern states of Europe. In Austria, the orders of the Golden Fleece, instituted 1430; of Maria Theresa, 1757; of Leopold, 1808; and of the Starry Cross, 1688, for ladies of noble birth.

In France: of St. Michael, 1469; of the Holy Ghost, 1578; of St. Louis, by Louis XIV., 1693; and that of the Legion of Honour, by Napoleon, 1802.

In Great Britain: of the Garter, by Edward III., 1350; of the Thistle, by James V. of Scotland, 1530; of the Bath, revived by George II., 1725, and enlarged in 1815; and of St. Patrick, by George III., 1783.

In Russia: of St. Andrew, 1698, by Peter the Great; of St. Catherine, 1714; of St. Alexander Newski, joined to the Polish order of the White Eagle, 1722; of St. Anne, 1735; of St. George, 1769; and St. Vladimer, 1782: add to these the Polish orders of St. Stanislaus, 1765, and the order of Merit, 1791.

In Prussia: of the Black Eagle, 1701, by the Elector Frederick I.; of the Red Eagle, 1734; of Merit, 1740; of St. John, 1812; of Louisa, 1814, for ladies who have given remarkable proofs of a love of their country, by Frederick William III.; and of the Iron Cross, 1815.

In Portugal: of Christ, 1317, founded on the ruins of the order of the Templars; of the Tower and Sword, 1459, by Alphonso V.; of St. Isabella, 1804, for noble ladies, by Charlotte, queen of John VI.

In Spain: of St. Jago, 1070, during the wars with the Moors; of Calatrava and Alcantara, 1153-6; and of Jesus Christ and St. Peter, 1216, by Dominic, the head of the

Inquisitors. There are also many others in the various minor states of Europe.

19. Mention some particulars relative to the British Orders. That of the Garter is the most ancient and illustrious: it was founded by Edward III. on his return to England after the victory at Cressy. Its original number was twenty-five, but by more modern statutes members of the royal family and foreigners of distinction may be added. The order of the Thistle, instituted in 1769, comprises sixteen, who are all Scotch nobles; and that of St. Patrick twenty, established in 1783 for Irish Peers.

20. The military order of the Bath is of older date. The knights were originally created in a peculiar manner, in which bathing formed part of the ceremonials. This order in 1815 was divided into three classes,—Knights Grand Crosses, limited to seventy-two; Knights Commanders, not to exceed 180; and Companions, the number of which is unlimited: the latter is honorary only; they take precedence of esquires, but are not entitled to the distinction of knighthood.

21. Name some famous Peruvian emperors. Manco Capac, founder of the empire; Guiana Capac, and Atabalipa, who was emperor when Pizarro conquered the country. Name the most celebrated Mexican emperors. Montezuma and Guatimozin: when Cortez and his Spaniards took possession of Mexico, Montezuma, ever weakly irresolute, suffered himself to be guided by him entirely, though the haughty Spaniard was the declared enemy of his nation.

22. On what account was Guatimozin chiefly celebrated? For his heroic fortitude. One instance of it has been frequently recorded: Guatimozin was sentenced to undergo excessive torture, that the cruel Spaniards might discover his supposed hidden treasures. The high-priest, condemned to suffer the same punishment, and overcome by the violence of his anguish, dared to murmur, and cast a look upon the monarch which seemed to intimate a wish to reveal what he knew; Guatimozin silenced him by this mild rebuke: "Do I, then, lie on a bed of roses?"

23. What were the most prominent occurrences in the sixteenth century? The Reformation was introduced into Germany by Luther in the year 1517; into Switzerland by Zuinglius in 1519; and into France by Calvin in 1529. Henry VIII. of England threw off the papal yoke, and constituted himself supreme head of the Anglican church. The Reformation was encouraged in England in the reign of Edward VI., and attempts made to crush it by persecution in that of Queen Mary, his successor. It was finally and completely established in the reign of Elizabeth.

24. The reformers were first called Protestants at the diet of Spires, in 1529. The Reformation was introduced into

Scotland by John Knox in 1560; into Ireland by George Brown, about the same time; into the United Provinces about 1566; into Sweden by Olaus Petri, under Gustavus Ericson, in 1530; and into Denmark in 1521.

25. The differences between the leading reformers greatly injured the cause of the Reformation. Half of Germany, Denmark, Sweden, Norway, Prussia and Livonia, adopted the doctrines of Luther; England, Scotland, Holland, and part of Switzerland, those of Calvin. The reformation spread but partially over France, Bohemia, Hungary, and Poland.

26. How was it proposed to settle the disputes between all parties? By a general council. The council of Trent was assembled 1545, and continued its sittings for eight years; but its decrees were rejected by the Protestants, and also by many Catholic princes.

27. The Gospel was propagated in foreign parts by the missionaries of the church of Rome in India, Japan, and China. The order of the Jesuits was founded in 1540, by Ignatius Loyola.

28. What is meant by the Inquisition? A tribunal in several Roman Catholic countries, erected by the popes for the examination and punishment of persons called heretics. It was founded in the twelfth century, and the management of it entrusted to Dominic and his order, whose business it became to 'search into' the number and quality of those who differed in religious opinions from the church of Rome: hence they were called Inquisitors.

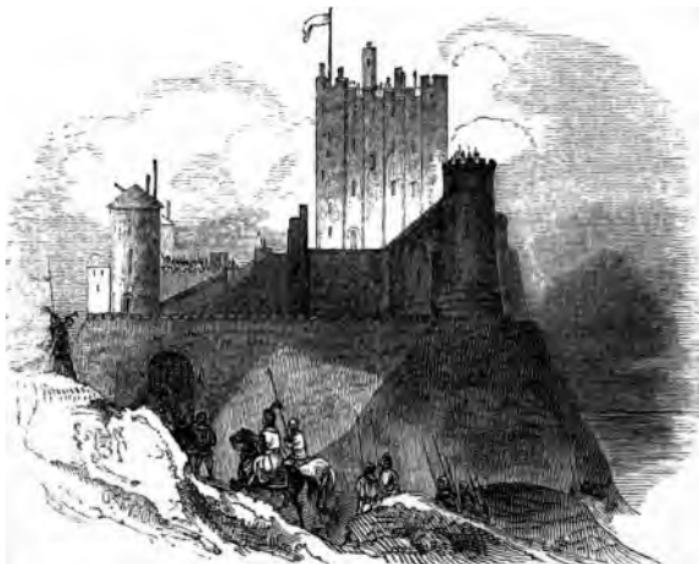
29. This wicked tribunal arrogated to itself the right of subjecting to the most cruel tortures, and to death, all persons who presumed to differ from the church of Rome. In all countries where the Inquisition was established the people stood in so much fear of it, that parents delivered up their children, husbands their wives, and masters their servants, to its officers, without daring to utter a murmur.

30. What was the massacre of St. Bartholomew's eve? A.D. 1572. A general massacre of the Huguenots, (or French Protestants,) chiefly at the instigation and by the orders of Catharine de Medici, and a few ferocious bigots, in the reign of Charles IX., with a view to exterminate Protestantism in France. All the Huguenots in Paris were put to death without mercy, or respect to age, sex, or rank. The butchery lasted eight days and as many nights, and extended to other large cities in the kingdom.

31. What is meant by the feudal system, to which allusion has already been occasionally made? The military policy of the Celtic and Gothic nations furnished the original constitution or system of feuds. The victorious general allotted considerable tracts of land to his principal officers; while they, in like manner, divided their posses-

sions among the inferior officers and the common soldiers, who were thought to be most deserving.

32. Allotments of this kind were named *fiefs*, which signify a reward bestowed on certain conditions: these were, that the possessor should faithfully serve the person from whom they were received, both at home and abroad, in a military way. To this they engaged themselves by an oath of fidelity, or *fealty*. In the event of not performing the service agreed upon, or deserting their lord in time of battle, the lands were forfeited to their original owners. These



feudal lords dwelt in strongly-fortified castles, and frequently made war upon one another like independent princes.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who aimed at the revival of literature? 3. Of what was the cardinal's red hat a token? 11. Who instituted chivalry, and in what does it consist? 19. Who founded the order of the Garter? the Thistle? of St. Patrick? 20. What peculiar ceremony attended the creation of members of the Bath? 23. What circumstances attended the Reformation in England? 24. Who introduced it into Scotland? into Ireland? into the other states of Europe respectively?

25. What injured the cause of the Reformation? 26. Who rejected the decrees of the famous council of Trent? 27. Where did the church of Rome send missionaries? Who founded the order of the Jesuits? 28. To whom was the Inquisition entrusted? Why was it so called? 29. What powers did it claim? 30. Who instigated the massacre of St. Bartholomew's eve? 31. In what originated the feudal system? 32. What is a *fief*? How might it be forfeited?



## CHAPTER VI.

### Miscellaneous Questions on English History.

#### SECTION I.

- |                                                                              |                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 4. Revolu'tion, <i>s.</i> change in the state<br>of a government or country. | 14. Inan'imate, <i>a.</i> without life.       |
| 13. Tia'ra, <i>s.</i> a head-dress; diadem.                                  | 23. Monas'tic, <i>a.</i> belonging to a monk. |
|                                                                              | 27. In'terdict, <i>s.</i> prohibition.        |

1. WHAT are the boundaries of England, including Wales? It is bounded on the north by that part of the island of Great Britain called Scotland; on the east by the German Ocean, or North Sea; on the south by the English Channel; and on the west by the Irish Sea.

2. How was England divided after its conquest by the Saxons? Into the seven kingdoms which formed the HEP-TARCHY; viz. Kent, Sussex, Essex, Northumber-

land, East Angle-land, and Mercia. These were united into one under Egbert, and subdivided into forty counties, or shires, by Alfred. Wales, at a subsequent period, was divided into twelve counties. Besides these, there are also cities and towns which are counties corporate, i. e. by themselves, distinct from the counties in which they are situate. Thus the city of London is a county, distinct from Middlesex.

3. What are the principal cities and towns in England? London, the metropolis; Manchester, Liverpool, Bristol, Birmingham, Leeds, Plymouth, Norwich, Sheffield, Bath, Portsmouth, Newcastle, York, Oxford, Cambridge, &c.

4. Name the six grand epochs in the history of England. The introduction of Christianity; the Norman conquest; the signing of Magna Charta, which laid the foundation of English liberty; the Reformation; the Restoration; and the Revolution.

5. When was Christianity introduced into England? Sixty-three years after the death of Christ. What was the Reformation? A change from the Catholic to the Protestant opinions, set on foot in the reign of Henry VIII.

6. When was the Reformation begun in Scotland and Ireland? In Ireland, during the reign of Henry VIII.; in Scotland, in that of Mary Queen of Scots, by John Knox, the reformer. What gave rise to the Reformation in this and foreign countries? The general sale of indulgences, or pardon for sins, and the abandoned lives of the clergy.

7. What was the Restoration? Restoring the kingly power, in the person of Charles the Second, after the death of Oliver Cromwell. What was the Revolution? A change in the constitution, which took place on the accession of William the Third.

8. What two great advantages did England gain by the Revolution? The present constitution was firmly established, and the famous *Bill of Rights* passed. What is meant by the constitution of England? Its laws and government. What is the Bill of Rights? An Act passed in the reign of William the Third, to confirm and secure the liberties of the people.

9. Name the English lines of kings. Saxon, Danish, Norman, Plantagenet, Tudor, Stuart, Orange or Nassau, and that of Hanover or Brunswick. How many princes were there of each line? *Seventeen Saxons, three Danes, four Normans, fourteen Plantagenets, five Tudors, six Stuarts, one Orange or Nassau, and six of the line of Brunswick.*

10. What is the ancient name for England? Albion, or Britannia. For France? Gallia or Gaul. For Scotland? Caledonia. For Ireland? Hibernia. For Wales? Cambria. For Holland? Batavia, or Belgium. For Spain? Iberia. For Portugal? Lusitania. For Sweden and Den-

mark? Scandinavia. For Poland? Lithuania. For Switzerland? Helvetia.

11. By whom were the Britons first conquered? By the Romans: Julius Cæsar attempted this conquest, and the succeeding emperors finally achieved it.

12. Who were the Druids? Priests of Britain, whose principal residence was in the Isle of Anglesea, where they performed their idolatrous worship, and were held in great veneration by the people.

13. How were the Druids clothed when they sacrificed? In long white garments: they wore on their heads the tiara, or sacred crown; their temples were encircled with a wreath of oak-leaves; they waved in their hands a magic wand, and also placed upon their heads a serpent's egg, as an ensign of their order.

14. What plant did the Druids hold in high estimation? and what inanimate objects did they worship? They revered the mistletoe, and worshipped rocks, stones, and fountains. What became of the Druids? Numbers of them were put to death by the emperor Nero's command, when Britain became a Roman province.

15. How were public events transmitted to posterity when the Britons were ignorant of printing and writing? By their bards or poets, who were the only depositaries of the national events.

16. What Roman emperor, projecting an invasion of Britain, gathered only shells upon the coast, and then returned to Rome in triumph? Caligula.

17. What British generals distinguished themselves before the Saxon heptarchy was formed? Cassibelaunus, Caractacus, Vortigern, and king Arthur.

18. What was the exclamation of Caractacus, when led in triumph through Rome? "How is it possible that a people possessed of such magnificence at home, should envy me a humble cottage in Britain!"

19. What queen poisoned herself to avoid the insults of the Roman conqueror? Boadicea, queen of the Iceni.

20. What two Saxon generals assisted in subduing England? Hengist and Horsa: they were brothers. What was the Saxon Heptarchy? The union and mutual agreement of seven Saxon princes to divide England into seven different parts, each taking a share.

21. Who was the first Christian king in Britain? Ethelbert, fifth king of Kent. Who raised the first sole monarchy upon the ruins of the Saxon heptarchy? Egbert, A.D. 827.

22. When did the clergy first collect tithes in England? In the reign of Ethelwolf, successor to Egbert. What Saxon monarch erected a number of monasteries? Ethelbald.

23. What gave rise to monastic institutions in Christen-

dom? The persecutions which attended the first ages of the Gospel obliged some Christians to retire into the deserts and unfrequented places; their example gave so much reputation and weight to retirement, that the practice was continued when the reason ceased to exist.

24. Name the best Saxon king. Alfred the Great. What were the remarkable events of his reign? He defeated the Danes, encouraged learning and learned men, founded the university of Oxford, and divided England into shires and counties. This prince first established a national militia, and put the English navy upon a respectable footing: houses were built of brick in this reign.

25. What was Peter's Pence? An annual tribute of a penny, (some say of a shilling,) paid by every family in Britain to the popes. When was this tribute abolished? At the Reformation, in the reign of Henry VIII.

26. What was meant by *excommunication*? A decree of the popes, by which they deprived the nation or person excommunicated of all religious rites and privileges. What English sovereigns did the popes excommunicate? John, Henry VIII., and Elizabeth.

27. What is meant by laying a kingdom under an *interdict*? By this the pope deprived the nation of all exterior rites of religion, except baptism and the communion to the dying; the people were forbidden the use of all meats, pleasures, and entertainments.

28. What was the trial by *ordeal*? This superstitious custom was anciently very prevalent in Britain. There were three kinds of ordeal; that by *fire*, that by *cold water*, and that by *hot water*. In that by fire, the accused were to walk blindfolded and barefooted over nine red-hot ploughshares, placed at unequal distances; in that by cold water, the person accused was bound hands and feet, thrown into a pond or river, and was then to clear himself by escaping drowning; in that by hot water, the hands and feet were immersed in scalding water. These ridiculous customs were totally laid aside in the reign of Henry III.

---

### Questions for Examination.

4. What laid the foundation of English liberty? 5. When was Christianity introduced into England? 11. In whose reign was Britain brought under the Roman yoke? 12. Where did the Druids principally reside? 13. What was the ensign of their order? 14. What plant did they reverence? What did they worship?

16. What instance of folly did Caligula exhibit? 19. Why did Boadicea poison herself? 21. Who was the first English Christian monarch? 23. What first gave rise to the monastic life? 24. How did Alfred distinguish his reign? 28. How many kinds of ordeal were there? Describe them separately. When were they laid aside?

## SECTION II.

- |                                                                                 |                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Degen'erate, <i>a.</i> decayed in virtue or strength ; unlike his ancestors. | 10. An'archy, <i>s.</i> confusion ; absence of regular government. |
| 9. Feu'dal, <i>a.</i> held by tenure.                                           | 18. Misdemea'nour, <i>s.</i> a criminal offence                    |
| 10. Illit'erate, <i>a.</i> unlearned.                                           | 26. Cog'nizance, <i>s.</i> knowledge ; notice.                     |

1. WHO founded the university of Cambridge? Edward the elder. When did the famous Guy earl of Warwick live? In the reign of Athelstan : his strength is said to have been gigantic ; the romantic accounts of his combat with Colbrand, the Danish giant, are well known.

2. What Saxon king was stabbed by an assassin? Edmund, by Leolf the robber. Which of our princes was stabbed, by order of his mother-in-law, at Corfe Castle? Edward, called the Martyr. Elfrida, who commanded the execution of this treacherous deed, was equally beautiful and wicked.

3. When was the general massacre of the Danes? In the reign of Ethelred II. Which of the Saxon monarchs, after Alfred, was the most valiant? Edmund Ironside ; he opposed the Danish Canute, but unsuccessfully, and was afterwards murdered by two of his servants.

4. Which of our kings, by a memorable speech, reproved the flattery of his courtiers? and what was the substance of it? Canute the Great, first of the Danish line. He ordered his chair to be placed upon the beach, when the tide was coming in, and commanded the sea to retire : he feigned to sit some time, expecting its submission, till the waves began to surround him ; and then turning to his courtiers, he exclaimed, "The titles of lord and master belong only to Him, whom earth and seas are ready to obey."

5. When was paper first made in England? In the reign of Harold, successor to Canute. What is remarkable of Hardicapute? He was a weak and degenerate prince : in him ended the Danish line : he died from excess of drinking.

6. What laws did Edward the Confessor collect? Those of the Danes, Saxons, and Mercians, which he abridged and amended ; and till the twentieth year of the reign of William the Conqueror, they were considered as the common law of England.

7. Name the principal events in the time of William the Conqueror. The battle of Hastings, fought between William and Harold, when the latter was killed ; Domesday-book compiled, the curfew-bell established, sheriffs appointed, the New Forest in Hampshire laid out, and the feudal law introduced.

8. What was Domesday-book? An account of the value of every man's estate, and the number of cattle and servants upon it. What was the Curfew-bell? A bell order-

ed to be rung every night at eight o'clock, when the English were to put out their fire and candle.

9. What was meant by the Feudal law? Estates held by this law were occupied by men who were obliged to assist the master of the estate, engage in his quarrels, and do him other actual services: these men paid no rent. In process of time this law was so much abused, that when a gentleman sold his estate, the farmer who lived upon it, his children, and stock of cattle, were sold also.

10. When was the custom of beheading introduced? By William the Conqueror. Musical notes were invented in this reign by a Frenchman. The English were in general illiterate, rude, and barbarous; but in this century began what is commonly termed the age of chivalry in Europe, when anarchy and barbarism were abolished, and civilization, with politeness of manners, first introduced.

11. When was Westminster Hall built? In the reign of William Rufus; this king was noted for his oppressions, and his irreligion. When were the first Crusades, or Holy wars? In the reign of William Rufus: they were undertaken to rescue Jerusalem from the hands of the Saracens and Turks, who were infidels.

12. For what was the famous Saladin, son of Noureddin king of Egypt, remarkable? He fought on the Turkish side during the crusades, besieged and took Jerusalem, and founded the military order of Mamelukes.

13. Who made the first King's Speech on record? Henry I.: he was surnamed Beau Clerc, on account of his great learning. What was meant by knights Templars? This was a military order of knighthood, instituted in the time of Henry I. to defend the temple and holy sepulchre at Jerusalem; also Christian strangers from the assaults of infidels.

14. Which of our kings was earl of Blois? Stephen, grandson to William the Conqueror, by his daughter Adela; his father, Stephen earl of Blois, fell in the crusades against the Saracens: Stephen usurped the English throne.

15. Which of them was earl of Anjou? Henry II., the first of the Plantagenets. The loadstone's attractive power, glass windows, and surnames were first known and used in his reign.

16. Who was prime-minister to Henry II.? Thomas à-Becket, archbishop of Canterbury: Becket having been murdered at Henry's instigation, he consented to perform penance at his tomb, to humour the superstition of the people, who believed Becket to be a saint, as he had been canonized by the church of Rome. The famous earl of Pembroke lived in this reign.

17. What king was twice crowned, and taken prisoner in Germany on his return from the Holy Land? Richard I., surnamed Cœur de Lion on account of his valour. Richard

first assumed the motto of ‘God and my Right,’ and affixed it to his arms. A great eclipse of the sun happened in this reign, when the stars were visible at ten in the morning.

18. When did Robin Hood and Little John live? In the time of Richard I. Robin Hood was said to be earl of Huntingdon, and outlawed for some misdemeanours committed at court; upon which he, and his attendant Little John, concealed themselves in Sherwood Forest, in Nottinghamshire, and lived by plunder.

19. What generous action of Richard I. does history record? The pardon of his brother John, after repeated treasons: he then said, “I forgive you, and wish I could as easily forget your injuries, as you will my pardon.”

20. Which of our kings was called Sans Terre, or Lackland? John: he put out the eyes of his nephew, Arthur duke of Bretagne, who was the nearest in succession to the throne, and afterwards threw him down a precipice. Astronomy, chemistry, and distillation were first common in Europe in this reign.



21. Who signed Magna Charta? John: before he was prevailed upon to sign this, he surrendered his crown to the pope, consenting to hold it afterwards tributary to Rome, on condition that the pope should accommodate a quarrel between himself and Philip II. king of France.

22. What was Magna Charta? A bill, or act of parliament, granting the barons and citizens greater privileges than they had ever enjoyed before: by this act, the obligation of the feudal law was abolished, and English freedom restored. Who afterwards revoked Magna Charta? John’s son, Henry III.; but the people at length obliged him to confirm it.

23. When was the court of Common Pleas first instituted, and when were aldermen appointed? In the reign of Henry III.

24. When was marriage first solemnized in churches? In the reign of Henry III. Magnifying glasses and magic lanterns were invented by Roger Bacon, the monk.

25. What other improvements were introduced in the reign of Henry III.? Cider, linen, and tapestry were first made in England, and the mariner's compass, one of the most important discoveries of the age, brought into use; but there are such various opinions concerning the inventor, and the time of this discovery being made, that nothing conclusive can be said upon it.

26. When was the Inquisition established? In the time of Henry III. What was the Inquisition? A cruel court, composed of monks and friars, appointed to take cognizance of every thing supposed to be heretical, or contrary to the established religion, which was then Roman Catholic.

27. What best promotes a liberal way of thinking? A thorough knowledge of ourselves, and a candid allowance for the faults of others.

28. What were the discoveries and improvements in the reign of Edward I.? Geography, and the use of the globes, were introduced; tallow-candles and coals were first common; wind-mills invented; and it is remarkable, that wine was sold in England only as a cordial, in apothecaries' shops.

29. What accident did Edward I. meet with, while in the Holy Land? He was wounded there, by a poisoned arrow; but his queen, Eleanora, is said to have sucked the poison from the wound, and restored him to health. At the death of this queen, Edward erected crosses at every place where her corpse rested on its way to interment: the remains of some of these are still visible. This prince was surnamed Longshanks, on account of the great length of his legs.

30. What king inhumanly ordered a general massacre of the Welsh bards? Edward I., after the conquest of Wales and the death of Llewellyn, its last prince of Welsh extraction, and who with David his brother were beheaded, and their bodies treated with the greatest indignity.

31. Who was William Wallace? A famous Scottish hero, who, in the time of Edward I., bravely endeavoured to defend the liberties of his country against the English. What became of him? He was taken prisoner by Edward's army, and cruelly hanged in chains.

-----

#### *Questions for Examination.*

4. What did king Canute say to his flatterers? 10. What was the state of society in England at the time of William the Conqueror? 11. What sort of a monarch was William Rufus? Why were the

Crusades called Holy wars ? 13. What was the professed aim of the knights Templars ? 15. Who was the first king of the Plantagenet line ? What were the inventions in the reign of Henry II. ?

16. What befell à-Becket ? 17. What famous motto did Richard I. assume ? What was he called, and why ? 18. What has been related of Robin Hood ? 20. What act of great cruelty did King John commit ? 21. What act of degradation ? 26. For what purpose was the Inquisition founded ? 29. What did Eleanora do for her husband ? How did Edward show his respect for her memory ?

### SECTION III.

10. Mon'itor, *s.* an adviser.  
13. Insa'ne, *a.* mad.

18. Mar'tyr, *s.* one who dies for truth.  
19. Dis'solute, *a.* loose; debauched.

1. WHO first bestowed the title of Prince of Wales upon his eldest son ? Edward I., to reconcile the Welsh to their subjection.

2. When was the battle of Bannockburn fought with the Scots ? In the reign of Edward II.; the English lost it. Name the chief favourites of Edward II. Gavestone and the De Spencers.

3. When was the order of knights Templars abolished ? In the time of Edward II. Why ? Because many of the knights were charged with high crimes and misdemeanours ; fifty-nine of them, residing in France, with their grandmaster, were arrested and burnt alive.

4. Who was king of Scotland in this reign ? Robert Bruce, celebrated for his valour and fortitude. What remarkable events afflicted England at this time ? A dreadful famine, which continued three years, and the most severe earthquake ever known in Britain. What death did Edward II. suffer ? He was dethroned, and afterwards cruelly murdered in Berkeley Castle, Gloucestershire.

5. Name the most remarkable events in the reign of Edward III. The battles of Cressy and Poictiers, (the former gained by the valour of the Black Prince, then only sixteen) ; the siege of Calais ; the institution of the order of the Garter ; and the battle of Neville's Cross, in which David Bruce, king of Scotland, was taken prisoner by Philippa, Edward's queen. What riband do the knights of the Garter wear ? A blue riband : it is esteemed the most honourable order which the English have.

6. Name the great men in the reign of Edward III. The Black Prince ; John, duke of Lancaster ; the earl of Salisbury ; and the duke of York.

7. What were the character and fate of the Black Prince ? He was valiant, prudent, and accomplished ; he died in the prime of life, of a consumption, regretted by all. It has been remarked, that John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, though so nearly allied to royalty, never ascended the

throne: he was the son of Edward III., the father of Henry IV., and the uncle of Richard II.

8. Upon what grounds did Edward III. assert his claims to the French monarchy? In right of his mother Isabella, who was sister to a former king of France. What law destroyed this claim? The *Salic law*. What gave rise to the Salic law in France? The Salii, the original inhabitants, had a law which excluded females from the inheritance of any landed property; the Franks, or French, adopted this rule, and applied it to the succession of the throne, excluding women from sovereign power.

9. Name some discoveries and improvements made in the time of Edward III. Gold was first coined, cannons used, turnpikes and clocks introduced, and the woollen manufacture first established; Windsor Castle built, Trinity Sunday first observed, the first Speaker of the House of Commons chosen, and the title of Esquire given to people of fortune.

10. What king caused his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, to be privately smothered at Calais? Richard II., to rid himself of a monitor whom he feared. By whom was the poll-tax first levied? By Richard II. What was it? A tax of one shilling, ordered to be paid by every person above fifteen: it occasioned an insurrection among the people, because the rich paid no more than the poor.

11. Who headed this insurrection? Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, two of the common people: it was, with some difficulty, quelled. What two great noblemen did Richard II. banish? The dukes of Hereford and Norfolk; but Hereford returned with an army before the expiration of his banishment, and deprived Richard of his crown and life. Where did Richard end his days? In Pontefract Castle, where he was starved, or, as some say, assassinated.

12. What were the improvements in this reign? The manufactory of woollen broad-cloth was carried to great perfection, side-saddles and spectacles first became common in England, and cards were invented in France.

13. For whom were cards invented? For Charles VI. king of France, called the Well-beloved. He was insane the greater part of his reign, and during his intervals of reason cards were produced as an amusement for him.

14. When was the office of Champion of England first instituted? In the reign of Richard II. What has the Champion to do? On the king's coronation-day he rides up Westminster Hall on a white horse, proclaiming the sovereign by the usual titles: he then throws down a gauntlet, or iron glove, challenging any one to take it up and fight him, who does not believe the monarch then present to be lawful heir to the crown.

15. Who was the first king of the house of Lancaster? Henry IV. When was the battle of Otterbourne (or Chevy

Chase)? In the reign of Henry IV. Owen Glendower and Harry Hotspur flourished at this period: the former was a valiant Welshman; the latter, son of the earl of Northumberland: from his ardent valour he derived his name.

16. What distinguished characters lived in this reign? Chaucer and Gower, both English poets; and William of Wickham, bishop of Winchester. Who was Wickliffe? A reformer, patronised by John of Gaunt. He has the merit of being the first to protest openly against the errors of the Roman church, and was famed for his learning and piety.

17. What order of knighthood did Henry IV. institute? That of the Bath: the knights wear a red riband. Who gained the battles of Harfleur and Agincourt? Henry V. They were fought against the French. Henry was afterwards declared heir to the French monarchy, and regent of France and Normandy.

18. When were the followers of Wickliffe first severely persecuted? In the reign of Henry V.; Lord Cobham was one of the first martyrs to this cause. What death did he suffer? He was roasted before a slow fire, because he refused to subscribe to the Roman Catholic opinions.

19. What happened to Henry V. when Prince of Wales? Sir William Gascoigne sent him to prison for contempt of his authority. Relate the story. One of the dissolute companions of Henry being brought before the magistrate for some offence, the prince, who was present, was so provoked at the issue of the trial, that he struck the judge in open court: Sir William, fully sensible of the reverence due to his authority, committed the prince to prison. When the king heard it, he exclaimed, "Happy is the king who has a subject endowed with courage to execute the laws upon such an offender; still more happy in having a son willing to submit to such chastisement."

20. Name the three principal events in the reign of Henry VI. The civil wars, the siege of Orleans, and the loss of France. Why were these civil wars engaged in? Because the houses of York and Lancaster contended for the throne: their divisions were occasioned by the claims which Richard duke of York laid to the throne, in the reign of Henry VI. of Lancaster.

21. What are civil wars? They are wars carried on between people who live under the same government, and are more to be held in detestation than any other; since they can be of no advantage to the nation, but, on the contrary, cause endless divisions, and totally put a stop to trade and industry.

22. Who was the Maid of Orleans? Joan of Arc, a young French woman, who headed her countrymen against the generals of Henry VI., and gained great advantages over them. Charles VII. of France ennobled the maid of Or-

leans, her father, three brothers, and all their descendants, even by the female line.

23. What French countries did England formerly possess? Bretagne, Maine, Anjou, Touraine, Normandy, Gascony, and Guienne.

24. When was the battle of Wakefield fought? In Henry the Sixth's reign, between the Yorkists and Lancastrians: in this engagement Richard duke of York, and his son, were slain. What other celebrated battles were fought in this reign? Those of Towton and Tewkesbury. After the latter, Edward, son of Henry VI., was murdered in cold blood, by Richard duke of Gloucester.

25. Who was Henry the Sixth's wife? Margaret of Anjou; a woman of keen penetration, undaunted spirit, and exquisite beauty. She fought twelve pitched battles in her husband's cause; but ambition, not affection, guided her actions, and wanting principle, she may engage our pity, but has no title to our esteem and reverence.

26. What were the discoveries and improvements in this reign? The Azores and Cape Verde islands were discovered; the Vatican library founded in Rome; caps and jewels were first worn, and pumps invented. In Henry's time the first national debt was incurred.

27. What is the national debt? Money borrowed from time to time by Government of the nation, for which legal interest is paid to the lenders.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

2. Who won the battle of Bannockburn? 3. What befell the knights Templars? 4. Where was Edward II. put to death? 5. Who fought the battle of Neville's Cross? 7. How, and when, did the Black Prince die? How was John of Gaunt related to royalty? 8. What is the Salic law? 9. When was artillery introduced? 10. What did a poll-tax levy occasion? 11. What followed the duke of Hereford's banishment? How did Richard die?

17. Who instituted the order of the Bath? 19. What did Henry IV. say when his son was sent to prison? 21. Why should civil wars be abhorred? 22. Who was Joan of Arc? 23. What territories did the English once possess in France? 24. Who fell in the battle of Wakefield? What was the end of the son of Henry VI.? 25. What was Margaret of Anjou's character? 26. When did the national debt commence?

#### SECTION IV.

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Electri'city, <i>s.</i> that property in bodies whereby they attract or repel light bodies, and emit sparks. | 14. Infallibil'ity, <i>s.</i> exempt from error.       |
| 3. Re'instate, <i>v.</i> to restore again.                                                                      | 17. Impe'ach, <i>v.</i> to accuse by public authority. |
|                                                                                                                 | 24. Compet'itor, <i>s.</i> a rival.                    |

1. NAME the first king of the house of York. Edward IV. In the reign of this prince printing was introduced,

and polite literature encouraged among the English ; Angola was settled by the Portuguese, violins were invented, and the first idea of electricity given.

2. How did Edward IV. recompense the services of his brother, the duke of Clarence ? He caused Clarence, upon some slight accusation, to be drowned in a butt of wine. What king married lady Elizabeth Grey ? Edward IV.

3. Name the most famous warrior at this period. The earl of Warwick, commonly called the king-maker, because he deposed and reinstated to power Henry VI. and Edward IV. Name some other distinguished English generals. The earls of Talbot and Salisbury ; the dukes of York, Bedford, and Mortimer.

4. What king was smothered in the Tower by his uncle's order ? Edward V. Who was his uncle ? Richard III., who succeeded him upon the throne. The earl of Rivers and lord Hastings were beheaded in this reign. What were the improvements of this period ? Post-horses and stages were established.

5. When was the herald's office instituted ? In the reign of Richard III. : this king was killed at the battle of Bosworth, in defence of his crown, when engaged against Henry earl of Richmond, afterwards Henry VII. Richard was the first king who established English consuls abroad. Horace Walpole has endeavoured to rescue the memory of Richard III. from the ignominy always attached to it ; how successfully, must be left to the judgment of his readers.

6. When was America discovered ? In the reign of Henry VII. by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa : Sebastian Cabot, another famous navigator, lived at this period.

7. When was the rebellion headed by Perkin ? In the reign of Henry VII. Who was Perkin ? An impostor, who pretended to be the son of Edward IV. : the prudence and sagacity of Henry defeated this, and many other plots.

8. What were the discoveries and improvements in this reign ? Shillings were first coined in England ; Greek generally taught in schools ; a passage to the East Indies discovered by the Portuguese ; trade and commerce were greatly encouraged with foreign nations ; and maps and sea-charts now began to be commonly used in England.

9. What king first assumed the title of Majesty ? Henry VIII. : till his reign the English kings were styled Your Grace, or Your Highness. Henry also received the title of Defender of the Faith, from the pope. Why ? On account of a book which he published against the opinions of Luther : this title our sovereigns still retain.

10. In whose person were the houses of York and Lancaster united ? In that of Henry VIII. ; his claims on both sides were equal, as his mother was of the house of York, his father of the line of Lancaster.

11. Name the most remarkable events in the reign of Henry VIII. The Reformation was begun ; the battle of the Spurs fought between the English and the French ; and the battle of Flodden Field, in which James IV. king of Scotland, with the flower of his nobility, fell.

12. When did Luther and Calvin live ? In the reign of Henry VIII. They were two celebrated reformers : Luther was a German, and Calvin a native of Picardy.

13. What was meant by a reformer ? One who protested against the errors of the Roman church.

14. Who was the first Pope that claimed the infallibility of the pontificate ? Gregory the Seventh, cotemporary with William the Conqueror ; he said in council, that the church of Rome neither ever had erred, nor ever could err ; and this doctrine of infallibility was urged by Leo X. as a defence against the opinions of Luther.

15. Who was prime-minister to Henry VIII.? Cardinal Wolsey. Who were his two great contemporaries ? Francis I. king of France, and Charles V. emperor of Germany.

16. Name the discoveries and improvements at this period. The Bermuda, Japan, Ladrone, and Philippine isles were discovered ; soap, hats, and needles were first made in England ; Peru was discovered and settled ; the articles of religion, and the Bible, were now first printed in an English version.

17. What great men suffered death in this reign ? Sir Thomas More, the lord chancellor ; Fisher, bishop of Rochester, (tutor to Henry) ; Lord Surry, famed for his love of literature ; and Edward Bohun, duke of Buckingham. Wolsey, too, was impeached, but died of a broken heart before his trial : this prelate is said to have intrigued for the papal chair.

18. When were the knights of Rhodes first called by the title of *knights of Malta*? In the reign of Henry VIII. Why? Because the emperor Charles V. gave the island of Malta to the knights of St. John, when they were expelled the isle of Rhodes by the Turks.

19. Upon what conditions were these knights admitted ? They were to be of noble blood, to be unmarried, five hundred to reside upon the island, and the rest to appear when called upon : they took a vow to defend Malta from the invasion of the Turks ; and were governed by thirty knights, and a grand-master chosen from their body.

20. What law of Henry the Eighth's reign exhibited the servile adulation of his people, and his own contempt of justice ? It was enacted, that the same obedience should be paid to the king's proclamation as to an act of parliament ; that the king should not pay his debts ; and that those who had been already paid should refund the money.

21. What order of knighthood was instituted in the time

of Henry VIII.? That of the Thistle, by James V. king of Scotland: the knights wear a green riband.

22. By whom was the religious order of the Jesuits founded? By Ignatius Loyola, a Spaniard, in the reign of Henry VIII. This order was dissolved on account of the great confusion caused by the various intrigues of its members, who interfered in political matters: its dissolution took place in Rome, in 1773.

23. Europe, during the reign of Henry VIII., was the theatre of many great events. Charles V., king of Spain and emperor of Germany, enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Mexico, and the possession of Peru; the Portuguese, after the discovery of Brazil, erected forts, subdued the surrounding nations, and waged a bloody war in Africa.

24. Francis I. of France, who has been called the father of learning, was the formidable competitor of Charles V. for empire, renown, and power: the fatal battle of Pavia, in Italy, established the ascendancy of Charles over his rival Francis.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What remarkable events took place in Edward the Fourth's reign? 3. What was the earl of Warwick called, and why? 4. What noblemen suffered in the reign of Richard III.? 5. What was the end of Richard? 6. Who was the discoverer of the continent of America? In whose reign did it take place? 7. What rebellion in England occurred at this period? By whom was it headed? What were his pretensions? 8. Name some of the inventions in the time of Henry VII.

9. What titles did Henry VIII. assume? 10. To what descent could he lay claim? 11. Who fell at Flodden Field? 14. What did Gregory VII. claim? What were his words? 16. What islands were discovered at this period? 19. On what conditions did Charles V. grant Malta? 22. Who founded the Jesuits? When were they put down? Why? 23. What great events took place in Europe in the reign of Henry VIII.? 24. What battle proved fatal to Francis I., and who was his rival?

### SECTION V.

|                                                |                                                                                  |                            |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 4. Anat'omy, <i>s.</i> the art of dissecting;  | 22. Transporta'tion, <i>s.</i> banishment to<br>the science of animal structure. | some place beyond the sea. |
| 12. Arma'da, <i>s.</i> a large fleet of ships. | 26. Tel'escop'e, <i>s.</i> glass for distant views.                              |                            |

1. WHEN was the battle of Pinkey, or Musselburgh, fought with the Scots? In the reign of Edward VI. Who was Protector during the minority of Edward? Seymour, duke of Somerset.

2. Name Edward the Sixth's best public action. Promoting and establishing the Reformation by act of parliament. What insurrection was there during his reign? One headed by Ket, a tanner, a discontented seditious fellow: he raised

an army in Norfolk, but was defeated by Dudley earl of Warwick, and afterwards hanged.

3. To whom did Edward VI. leave the crown? To lady Jane Grey, his cousin: she reigned only ten days, and was then deposed by Mary, Edward's sister.

4. Name the improvements in this reign. Engraving, and knitting stockings, were invented; the Common Prayer-book was compiled, and published in English; the Psalms of David were translated into verse; half-crowns were first coined in England; and the study of anatomy was revived.

5. When were lord Guildford Dudley and lady Jane Grey beheaded? In the reign of Mary. Why? Because Jane, the wife of Dudley, stood in Mary's way to the throne.

6. To whom was queen Mary married? To Philip the Second, king of Spain. Mary was a zealous advocate for the Catholic faith, and repealed all the acts her brother Edward passed in favour of the Reformation; she caused the Protestants to be burnt in Smithfield as heretics, the bishops Gardiner and Bonner assisting her in the execution of these barbarities: Cranmer, Ridley, Latimer, Hooper, and Ferrar, with nearly three hundred others, perished at the stake in this reign.

7. When did the English lose Calais? In the reign of Mary; the celebrated duke of Guise reconquered it from the English. What improvements were made in Mary's time? Hemp and flax were first planted in England, the horse-guards instituted, and starch first used.

8. When happened the dreadful massacre of Protestants at Paris? On Saint Bartholomew's day, in the reign of Charles IX. of France, and Elizabeth queen of England.

9. What memorable answer did the viscount d'Ortez return to Charles's letter commanding the execution of the Protestants? This: "Your Majesty has many faithful subjects in this city of Bayonne, but not one executioner."

10. Name the chief leaders on the Catholic and Protestant sides in France, during the civil wars there. On the Catholic were Charles IX., the two dukes of Guise, and Catherine de Medicis, the chief instigator of the wars; on the Protestant, the prince of Condé, admiral Coligni, and Henry the Great, then king of Navarre.

11. When did the Scots first openly declare themselves Protestants? In the reign of their queen Mary. What is now their established religion? Presbyterianism.

12. Name the chief events in Elizabeth's reign. Sir Francis Drake's voyage round the world; the Spanish armada defeated; and the execution of Mary queen of Scots.

13. What was the Spanish armada? A fleet of ships sent out by Philip II. king of Spain, to invade England.

14. How did Elizabeth conduct herself in this trying emergency? She displayed the greatest vigour and prudence,

and, undismayed by danger, issued her orders with tranquillity and firmness. She visited the camp at Tilbury Fort on horseback, and riding through the lines, harangued the troops with a cheerful countenance, her spirited demeanour inspiring them with enthusiasm and ardour.



15. How did she afterwards evince her humility and trust in God? By ascribing the victory less to English bravery alone, than to the merciful interposition of Providence.

16. Who was Mary queen of Scots? Daughter of James V., king of Scotland, and cousin to Elizabeth: she was famed for her beauty and misfortunes. Name Mary's husbands. Francis II. king of France; Henry Stuart, (lord Darnley); and the earl of Bothwell. Mary was eighteen years a prisoner in England, and at length executed at Fotheringay Castle, in Northamptonshire.

17. Name some men of genius in Elizabeth's time. Shakespeare and Spenser. For what are Shakspeare's works particularly famed? For the wit, variety, and genius displayed throughout, no two characters being alike.

18. Who were the most distinguished naval officers in Elizabeth's reign? Drake, Howard of Effingham, Hawkins, Frobisher, and Raleigh.

19. Name some great men in Elizabeth's reign. Sir Philip Sidney, Cecil lord Burleigh, the earl of Leicester, the earl of Essex, and sir Francis Walsingham; but before all others, Francis Bacon, lord Verulam, deserves the highest applause as a philosopher, and a man of extensive acquirements and penetration. Sir P. Sidney aspired to the crown of Poland, but Elizabeth, unwilling to lose so bright an ornament to her court, refused to promote his advancement.

20. When was the slave-trade first practised in England ? In the reign of Elizabeth : it was introduced by sir John Hawkins. What has caused its gradual abolition in most countries ? The sense which the generality of mankind entertain of its oppression and inhumanity.

21. What young Englishman was at the head of a plot against Elizabeth, to place Mary queen of Scots on the throne ? Anthony Babington, who was detected and afterwards executed.

22. Name the inventions and improvements in Elizabeth's reign. Stops were introduced in reading and writing ; coaches and watches first common in England ; the study of botany was revived ; knives first made in England ; Holland declared a republic ; and criminals first sentenced to transportation.

23. Name the first prince of the Stuart line who reigned in England. James, the first of England and sixth of Scotland. What remarkable event happened to James before he ascended the English throne ? The conspiracy of the earl of Gowrie, who invited James to his house and took him prisoner ; but he was rescued by his attendants.

24. What were the most remarkable occurrences in his reign ? The gunpowder-plot was discovered and defeated ; and the celebrated Sir Walter Raleigh beheaded. What was the gunpowder-plot ? A scheme of Roman Catholic conspirators to blow up both houses of parliament, by laying a train of gunpowder under them.

25. Who was sir Walter Raleigh ? A famous historian and navigator. When was the first general assembly of the church of Scotland held ? In the reign of James the First.

26. Name the principal incidents that marked the reign of James I. The circulation of the blood was discovered by Harvey ; telescopes were invented ; the satellites round the planet Saturn were first perceived ; baronets created, of whom there are now more than eight hundred ; mulberry-trees planted in England, and potatoes brought hither from Brazil.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

3. Who was lady Jane Grey ? 5. What was her end ? 6. What did Mary effect against the Protestants ? What distinguished men suffered ? 12. Who conquered the formidable Spanish armada ? What was Elizabeth's conduct on this occasion ? Where is Tilbury Fort situate ?

16. What was the end of Mary queen of Scots ? 19. Why did Elizabeth refuse to aid the aims of sir Philip Sidney ? 20. Who introduced the slave-trade ? What is the general sense of mankind on this trade ? 21. Who plotted against the life of queen Elizabeth ? 23. Who was the first English sovereign of the Stuart line in Scotland ? 24. What was the object of the gunpowder-plot ?

## SECTION VI.

2. Trait, *s.* peculiarity; sample.  
 6. Barom'eter, *s.* instrument to measure the weight of the atmosphere.  
 Thermom'eter, *s.* an instrument for measuring its heat.
15. Mece'snas, *s.* a Roman knight, who encouraged literature; a term applied to the patrons of learning.  
 17. Hydraul'ics, *s.* science of the motion of fluids, and of conveying water.

1. WHAT is meant by Highland clans? Tribes of Scotch highlanders, each of which bears a different name: they anciently lived upon the lands of their respective chieftains, to whom they showed every mark of attachment, and cheerfully shed their blood in their defence; these chieftains in return bestowed a paternal protection upon their clans, equally founded on gratitude and a sense of their own interest.

2. Mention the characteristic traits of the ancient Scotch highlanders. Fidelity, hospitality, and great family pride. What were their dress and character? They wore a plaid made of woollen stuff, or tartan, which either hung down from their shoulders, or was fastened with a belt; from this belt hung their sword, dagger, knives, and pistol: a leatheren purse hanging before, adorned with silver, was always a part of the chieftain's costume. Their patience was unwearied, their courage undaunted, and their honour unsullied.

3. Name the most striking events in the reign of Charles I. The wars between Charles and his parliament; the Irish massacre; and the execution of lord Strafford, and archbishop Laud. This unfortunate king was taken prisoner by the parliament, confined in the Isle of Wight, and at last beheaded.

4. What led to the Irish massacre? A conspiracy of the Roman Catholics in Ireland, to murder all the English and Irish Protestants residing there.

5. When did Clarendon and Hampden live? In the reign of Charles I.; the former was a statesman and historian, the latter a celebrated patriot.

6. What were the discoveries and inventions in this reign? The Bahama Isles were discovered: barometers and thermometers invented; newspapers first published; sawing-mills erected; and coffee brought to England.

7. When did the lords Falkland and Fairfax live? In the time of Charles I. They were of opposite parties; Falkland was attached to the king.

8. When was England declared a Commonwealth? In the time of Cromwell, Protector of England. Name the most remarkable events in the protectorship of Cromwell. A war with the Dutch, who were defeated, and the conquest of Jamaica. Who took the English emigrants over to settle in Philadelphia? William Penn, son of admiral Penn, one of Cromwell's officers.

9. When did Milton live? In Cromwell's time, to whom he was Latin secretary. Cromwell however, in general, was by no means an encourager of learning; but the nation, under his administration, improved both in riches and power.

10. Why did Richard Cromwell resign the protectorship? Because he did not possess the great qualities necessary to support the views of his father, Oliver Cromwell. What were the improvements made about this time? St. Helena was settled; and air-pumps and speaking-trumpets invented.

11. Name some of the remarkable events in the reign of Charles II. Dunkirk sold to the French, for four hundred thousand crowns; the great fire and plague in London; and the Royal Society established.

12. Why was this society instituted? That its members might judge of all new inventions and discoveries, and give the public an account of their utility.

13. When was the Bill of exclusion attempted to be passed? In the reign of Charles II., to prevent the duke of York, brother to Charles, from ascending the throne, as he was a Roman Catholic; it passed the house of commons, but was thrown out by the lords.

14. In this reign, also, many of the corporations in England were induced to surrender their charters. What is meant by the charter of a corporation? Its right to elect a mayor, aldermen, &c., and other municipal privileges.

15. When were Algernon Sidney and lord Russell beheaded? In the reign of Charles II. Name some men of genius in this reign. Milton, Boyle, Dryden, Otway, Butler, Temple, Waller, Cowley, Wycherley, Halley, and the earl of Arundel, the great patron of learning and genius, who obtained the title of the English Mecænas.

16. What were the principal works of these authors? Milton wrote two epic poems, called *Paradise Lost*, and *Paradise Regained*; Boyle, treatises on natural and experimental philosophy; Dryden translated Virgil, Plutarch, Juvenal, and Persius; he wrote twenty-seven plays, and numerous pieces of poetry; Otway, plays; Butler, *Hudibras*; Temple, polite literature; Waller, poems; Cowley, miscellaneous poetry; Wycherley, poems and plays; whilst Halley treated of astronomical subjects.

17. Name some inventions in the reign of Charles II. Hydraulic fire-engines were invented, buckles introduced, gazettes first published, and the penny-post established.

18. Name the most memorable actions in the reign of James II. The duke of Monmouth's rebellion; seven bishops sent to the tower for refusing to read the decrees of James for liberty of conscience in the Protestant churches, (intended to bring Romanists into civil and ecclesiastical employments); and his endeavours to reconcile the church

of England to the see of Rome; the duke of Monmouth was defeated and beheaded, and those concerned in his rebellion were convicted, and sentenced by judge Jeffreys, noted for severity in the execution of his office.

19. What became of James? He was obliged to abdicate the throne, on account of his religious principles and arbitrary conduct, and died at St. Germains, in France. This king introduced the use of sea-signals.

20. When was the battle of the Boyne? In the reign of William III., between William and James: the former was victorious. What renowned generals fought under the banner of William? The duke of Schomberg, baron de Ginkle, count de Solmnes, and prince George of Denmark.

21. What great men shed lustre on this reign? Newton, Locke, Tillotson, Prior, and Burnet. Name their chief works. Newton wrote on astronomy and the mathematics; Locke, on philosophy: Prior, poems; bishop Burnet, history and divinity; and archbishop Tillotson, sermons.

22. What Russian monarch travelled through Europe, in the reign of William and Mary, to obtain instruction in the arts of commerce and mechanics? Peter the Great; this prince evinced the elevated nature of his mind, in descending from a throne to work as a common labourer in an English dock-yard, that he might acquire a practical knowledge of the art of ship-building, and introduce it among his subjects, to whose prosperity he knew it was essential.



23. What remarkable expression of Peter the Great proves the insufficiency of mere human reason? This: "I can reform my people, but how shall I reform myself?" As he knew not the blessings of being early taught the lessons of morality, his elevated genius was not sufficiently cultivated, nor his passions accustomed to the restraints of reason: his virtues were all his own, his defects those of his education and country. The celebrated colossal equestrian statue of this monarch stands in the Field of Mars, near the imperial gardens of St. Petersburg.

24. Name the chief improvements in the reign of William? Reflecting telescopes were made, and bayonets first used, made at Bayonne, in France; the Bank of England also was established, and public lotteries appointed by the government.

25. Whom did Queen Anne marry? Prince George of Denmark; she had six children by him, who all died in their infancy. What general, in her reign, was famed for his military talents and courtly accomplishments? The duke of Marlborough; his victories at Blenheim, Oudenard, Ramilles, and Malplaquet, will transmit his name to the most distant posterity. He was created prince of Middleheim by Joseph I., emperor of Germany, for his signal services to the house of Austria.

26. When was the Act of union between England and Scotland passed? In the reign of Anne: the Scotch nation is represented in our parliament by sixteen peers, and fifty-three commoners.

27. When was the Hanoverian succession established? In Anne's time; the line of Stuart was set aside to place that of Brunswick upon the throne, because on the death of Anne, there being no lineal Protestant heir to the crown, the house of Hanover stood the nearest in succession.

28. What was originally meant by Whig and Tory? Whig was a name given in queen Anne's time to those who were for liberty without abandoning monarchy, and friends to the house of Hanover; and Tory was a title by which those were distinguished who were for absolute monarchy, and friends to the house of Stuart.

29. When did the English take the fort of Gibraltar from Spain? In the reign of Anne; it has continued ever since in our possession. When were the British and French Augustan ages? The French in the reign of Louis XIV.; the English in that of queen Anne.

30. Name some men of talent in the reign of Louis XIV. Descartes, an astronomer; Fontaine, Molière, Boileau, and Corneille, poets: Bossuet and Rapin, historians; Fenelon, archbishop of Cambray, (the author of *Telemachus*); the two Daciers, critics and translators; and madame de Sévigné, who shone in the belles lettres.

31. Name some men of genius in Anne's reign. Pope and Swift, Congreve and Rowe, poets; Bolingbroke and Shaftesbury, philosophers; Steele and Addison, celebrated for their excellent periodical publications; and Arbuthnot, who wrote on medical subjects.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

3. What was the end of Charles I.?
  5. What was Hampden?
  8. Who was William Penn? What did he do?
  11. What did the French pay for Dunkirk?
  15. What is meant by *Mecænas*?
  16. On what subject did Milton write? Boyle? Dryden? Otway? Halléy?
  18. What was the end of the duke of Monmouth? and why?
  19. Why was James deposed?
  21. On what did Newton write? Locke? Burnet? Tillotson?
  22. What was the character of Peter the Great?
  24. Where were bayonets first made?
  26. How is Scotland represented in the Imperial parliament?
  27. Why did the house of Hanover succeed to the British throne?
  30. Who wrote *Telemachus*?
- 

### SECTION VII.

- |                                                 |                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 3. Septen'nial, <i>a.</i> every seven years.    | 22. Nef'a'rious, <i>a.</i> very wicked. |
| 12. Aberra'tion, <i>s.</i> deviation from right | 24. Vin'dicate, <i>v.</i> to assert.    |
| 19. Ab'dicate, <i>v.</i> to resign power.       | Emancipa'tion, <i>s.</i> setting free.  |

1. **WHAT** line of kings has been the most uninterruptedly unfortunate? The line of Stuart. Name some of its vicissitudes. James I. of Scotland was assassinated; James II. was killed by the splinter of a cannon at the siege of Roxburgh; James III. was killed in battle, while endeavouring to crush a rebellion of his subjects; James IV. fell at the battle of Flodden-field; James V. died of grief for the loss of a fine army:

2. Mary, queen of Scotland, was beheaded; Charles I., king of England and Scotland, shared the same fate; Charles II. wandered many years as an exile; James II. was compelled to abdicate the throne; the two Pretenders, son and grandson of James II., after experiencing innumerable hardships in their fruitless attempts to recover the crown, were proclaimed as traitors, and had a price of forty thousand pounds set upon their heads; but they escaped.

3. Name the three most remarkable events in the reign of George I. The rebellion of Scotland, in 1715, in favour of the Pretender; the South Sea scheme, and its ruinous termination; and the act passed for septennial parliaments. The electorate of Hanover was annexed to the British crown in this reign, and the battles of Preston and Sheriff Muir were fought with the rebels.

4. What lord chancellor was accused in the time of George I. of taking bribes in the execution of his office?

The earl of Macclesfield : he and the learned sir Francis Bacon are the only two recorded as examples of corruption in this high office. Macclesfield was sentenced to pay a fine of thirty thousand pounds, and to imprisonment till the sum was paid.

5. What were the improvements and discoveries in this reign ? The northern lights were observed ; inoculation used ; the East-India House built ; the commerce of the company greatly extended ; and the Scots attained the art of making thread.

6. When were the battles of Dettingen and Culloden fought ? In the reign of George II. ; the former was gained by the king in person, in favour of the queen of Hungary ; the latter by William, duke of Cumberland, against the Pretender, whom he finally defeated.

7. When was the battle of Minden ? In the time of George II., gained by the English against the French. In what part of the globe did the English forces, during this reign, extend their conquests ? Through the greater part of North America, headed by Townshend and the gallant Wolfe, who gained immortal glory.

8. When did Lord Anson sail round the world ? In the reign of George II. What remarkable improvements mark this reign ? The new style was introduced into England ; the British Museum established ; and the Latin language abolished in the courts of law.

9. Who signalized himself at this time by his victories in the East Indies ? Colonel, afterwards lord Clive, whose great services laid the foundation of the British empire in India.

10. In this reign, also, occurred that disastrous affair at Calcutta, when a hundred and forty-six Englishmen, confined in a small room called the *black-hole*, by command of the nabob, were in such want of space and air, that no less than one hundred and twenty-three were found dead the next morning.

11. Name some remarkable events in the reign of George III. In the early part of this king's reign captain Cook sailed round the world ; New Holland was discovered ; the Isle of Man annexed to the British crown ; the order of the Jesuits suppressed by the pope ; the riots in London (1780) ; and after a contest of eight years, the independence of America was acknowledged by the British government, (1782.)

12. Name some other interesting events. The independence of the Irish Parliament was conceded in the same year ; George III. in 1787 was visited with mental aberration, and a subsequent return of the malady rendered him a mere nominal sovereign during one of the most brilliant periods of Great Britain's history : from this attack, however, he recovered the same year.

13. The Revolution took place in France in 1789, and that country declared itself a republic. Louis XVI. and his queen Marie Antoinette were guillotined in 1793, by the sanguinary revolutionists of Paris, whose deeds of cruelty excited the horror and indignation of Europe. War was proclaimed by the French republic that same year against Great Britain and Holland: they were every where victorious on the continent, and took possession of Egypt with a view to weaken our power in the East.

14. The English under lord Nelson destroyed the French fleet off Alexandria in the memorable battle of the Nile, and subsequently expelled them from Egypt. The latter part of this century was also signalized by the great naval victories of Howe, Vincent, and Duncan, and the brilliant capture of Seringapatam, and conquest of the Mysore country, by lieut.-general Harris.

15. What great events mark the opening of the nineteenth century? The Act of Union between Great Britain and Ireland was passed in 1800. By this act the two parliaments of England and Ireland, which had hitherto been separate and independent, were formed into one, and was thenceforth called the Imperial Parliament:

16. Napoleon Buonaparte, supported by the army, was appointed chief Consul of France, and afterwards Emperor. The battle of Copenhagen was fought in 1801 between the Danes and the English fleet under lord Nelson, and the victory decided in favour of the latter. In the great naval engagement off Trafalgar, A.D. 1805, the combined fleets of France and Spain were annihilated; but Nelson fell near the close of the action, deeply regretted by his grateful and admiring country.

17. The English forces under Sir John Moore were compelled to retreat before the French armies in Spain, and fought the battle of Corunna, in which the latter were repulsed: their gallant leader was slain, but the British troops succeeded in embarking on board a fleet assembled at that port, which brought them to England. Sir Arthur Wellesley, the present duke of Wellington, overthrew the French in Portugal, and afterwards, in a series of brilliant campaigns, drove them across the Pyrenees into France.

18. What great changes had been going forward in the mean time in Europe? Napoleon, by the battle of Marengo in 1800, had become master of Italy; by that of Austerlitz, of Austria; and by that of Jena, of Prussia. In 1812 he invaded Russia with one of the best-disciplined armies that Europe had ever seen, won the sanguinary battle of Moskwa, and entered Moscow. Here his career of victory was arrested. The Russians burnt Moscow, thus leaving him without shelter for his troops during the winter, which had set in early and intensely severe. He was obliged to re-

treat to the frontiers of Poland; nearly the whole of his numerous army perished by famine, the extreme severity of the weather, and the sword of their relentless pursuers.

19. The emperor never repaired this disaster: in the decisive battle of Leipsic he was defeated by the combined armies of Russia, Prussia, and Austria, and driven back to France about the time that the English, under the duke of Wellington, crossed the Pyrenees, and entered that country on the opposite side. Overpowered by the united forces of indignant Europe, which he had overspread with desolation and carnage, he was at length obliged to abdicate, when the sovereignty of the isle of Elba was conceded to him.

20. From this retreat, however, Buonaparte found means to escape, shortly after the retirement of the allied armies from France. Louis XVIII., who had been restored to the throne of his ancestors, made a precipitate flight into Belgium. England, Prussia, and Russia again took the field: the dreadful battle of Waterloo between the French and English armies, under the two most distinguished commanders of this or any other age, decided the repose of Europe. The latter, aided by the Prussians towards the close of the engagement, routed the French with immense slaughter; and Napoleon, compelled to fly, surrendered to the English, who banished him to St. Helena, where he died in 1821.

21. What else occurred at this eventful period? In 1812 hostilities commenced between England and America, which were energetically pursued, although productive of few decisive results. The British forces were unsuccessful in a descent on New Orleans; but they took the cities of Baltimore and Washington, burnt the senate-house and other public edifices, and ravaged a considerable extent of coast. Peace was restored in 1814.

22. When did George III. relapse into a state of insanity? In 1810, on which afflicting event the Prince of Wales was chosen Regent of the kingdom. Mention some events of importance subsequent to the overthrow of Napoleon. Algiers was bombarded by a British and Dutch fleet under lord Exmouth in 1816, when the Dey was compelled to liberate all Christian slaves in his territories, and that nefarious trade, so long pursued by the piratical Algerines, happily annihilated.

23. The Princess Charlotte, only daughter of the Prince Regent, died in 1817, much regretted by the nation. George III. died at Windsor Castle, January 29th, 1820, aged 81, fifty-nine years after he had ascended the throne of England. During this lengthened period—the longest reign on record,—Europe was the theatre of some of the most extraordinary events in the annals of history, and in these Great Britain bore a principal and dignified part.

24. What were the chief events of the reign of George IV.? The trial of his queen, Caroline, who claimed to be crowned as queen consort, 1820; the recognition of the independence of the South American republics by England, 1825; the battle of Navarino, in which the combined English, French, and Russian fleets destroyed the navy of Turkey, then employed against the Greeks, who had risen to vindicate their freedom, which they obtained in 1833; the repeal of the test and corporation acts, and finally, the passing of the Catholic emancipation bill, by which equal political rights were granted to all classes of Christians in the British dominions. George IV. died A.D. 1830, and was succeeded by his brother William IV.

25. What were the most remarkable events in his reign? Charles X. of France was dethroned for attempting to dispense with constitutional law, and Louis Philippe, duke of Orleans, invested with regal authority as king of the French. The cholera made extensive ravages in Scotland, England, Ireland, &c., as well as in other parts of Europe, 1831; the Reform Bill passed in 1832; negro slavery in the West Indies was abolished, and twenty millions of money voted to indemnify the slave-owners. William IV. died in 1837, and was succeeded by our beloved queen, Victoria.

26. What have been the principal features of the present reign? Hanover was separated from the British crown by the operation of the Salic law, which precludes the succession of females. A revolt took place in Canada in 1838, but was speedily suppressed. England, Austria, and Prussia assist the sultan of Turkey against Mohammed Ali, pasha of Egypt, and by vigorous operations on the coast of Syria, particularly the bombardment and reduction of St. Jean d'Acre, compelled him to acknowledge the sultan's supremacy.

27. In India an expedition was successfully directed in 1839 against Dost Mahomed, the usurping ruler of Affghanistan, and Schah Soojah, the legitimate sovereign, restored to the throne; but at the close of 1841 a British force of 5000 men, on quitting Caubul, were treacherously assailed in their formidable mountain passes by the Affghans, who, aided by the intense winter cold of that elevated region, overpowered and annihilated them.

28. In the following summer, however, the British re-entered that province, signally avenged this cruel massacre, and redeemed the honour of the British arms. In 1843 the fertile district of Scinde, comprising 100,000 square miles, and commanding the navigation of the river Indus, was annexed to the British empire in the East.

29. In what other war has Great Britain been engaged during the present reign? In a war with China, which commenced in 1841, England succeeded in humbling the haughty tone and arrogant pretensions of that ancient and

extensive empire; political concessions and commercial privileges of great importance were also obtained, which will not only place our future intercourse with China on a more rational and satisfactory footing, but contribute, it is hoped, to the moral, social, intellectual, and religious improvement of the semi-barbarous millions that people its vast territories.

30. At the close of 1845 the peace of India was again disturbed by an unprovoked aggression on the British by the Sikhs. This warlike people, under the politic rule of Runjeet Singh, called from his bravery the Lion of Lahore, had acquired great power and military distinction, and throughout his long reign he governed the Punjaub with great firmness and success. At his decease, however, the unity of power established by his genius was broken; intrigue and faction effected rapid and sanguinary changes; the power of the throne became prostrate, and at length the arrogance of a military despotism impelled a sudden and treacherous invasion of the British territories in Upper India.

31. With a great numerical force and more than 250 pieces of heavy artillery they crossed the Sutlej, and entrenching themselves on its banks, commenced active hostilities on the surrounding tribes. The battles of Moodkee, Ferozeshah, Aliwal, and Sobraon occurred in quick succession: on no occasion was British valour more conspicuously displayed, and a short though bloody campaign terminated in the overthrow of this formidable army, the occupation of the citadel of Lahore by the English, and the establishment of peace on terms dictated by the conquerors.

-----

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What fate attended the kings of the house of Stuart? 3. When was Hanover annexed to Great Britain? 4. How was the earl of Macclesfield punished? For what? 10. What disastrous affair happened at Calcutta? 13. How did the revolutionists of Paris act? Whom did they put to death? What was their success on the continent? 14. Who defeated their navy? Where? What great admirals flourished in this reign? 15. What is the act of Union? 16. Who fought the battle of Copenhagen? Who won it? What happened at Trafalgar? 17. What at Corunna? 18. What occasioned Napoleon's retreat from Moscow? 20. What ultimately befell him?

21. Who was made Regent? Why? 22. What measures were taken with Algiers? 23. When did the Princess Charlotte die? When George the Third? 24. Who fought the battle of Navarino? What important acts of Parliament were passed in the reign of George IV.? 25. How did Louis Philippe become king of the French? What disease ravaged England? When? What two great legislative acts were passed in the reign of William IV.? 26. How was the pacha of Egypt reduced to submission? 27. Relate the affairs of the English in Afghanistan. 29-31. What was the result of our campaigns in China and the Punjaub?

## SECTION VIII.

1. *Tel'egraph, s.* machine for rapid conveyance of information by signals. | 4. *Miscella'neous, a.* composed of various kinds; mixed without order.

1. **WHAT** were the chief improvements in the reign of George III.? Electricity, by the discoveries of doctors Franklin and Priestley, brought to great perfection: an academy of painting established: air balloons invented, and telegraphs first used, though known in the time of Ptolemy.

2. The arts and sciences received every possible encouragement in this and the succeeding reigns; but whilst the many improvements introduced during this period are too numerous to be here particularized, mention must not be altogether omitted of the application of steam to machinery and navigation, the use of gas in lighting our public streets and buildings, and the extensive adoption of railways and the electric telegraph throughout the kingdom.

3. Name a few of the most distinguished authors since the accession of the line of Hanover. Bentley, the critic; Thomson, Shenstone, Young, Akenside, Chatterton, Gray, Goldsmith, Mickle, Wharton, Burns, Cowper, poets; Watts, Sherlock, Hoadley, Leland, Lardner, Jortin, Warburton, Newton, Kennicott, Lowth, Paley, Kippis, and Blair, divines:

4. Fielding, Richardson, Sterne, and Smollett, novelists; Lyttleton, Hume, Robertson, and Gibbon, historians; Ramsey, Chesterfield, Johnson, Hawkesworth, Burke, Melmoth, miscellaneous literature. Johnson excelled not only as a lexicographer, but as a poet and biographer.

5. Name some other great characters. Keill, Saunderson, and Robins, mathematicians; Hearne and Baker, antiquaries; sir Hans Sloane and Hales, naturalists; Graham, Brindley, and Harrison, mechanics; Flamstead, Bradley, and Ferguson, astronomers.

6. What other eminent names may be added to these distinguished persons? Sir H. Davy, Tennant, Children, Cavendish, Dalton, Faraday, Dr. Black, chemistry and electricity; sirs W. and John Herschell, Wollaston, Playfair, sir D. Brewster, Dr. Young, astronomy and philosophy; Leslie, Robinson, Airy, Ivory, Peacock, Hamilton, mathematics; Adam Smith, Malthus, Ricardo, M'Culloch, and Senior, political economy:

7. Watt, Arkwright, Ramsden, Houghton, mechanics; sir J. Soane, sir J. Wyattville, Smirke, Nash, architecture; Conybeare, Smith, Buckland, Sedgwick, sir H. de la Beche, Ansted, Lyell, Phillips, geology; Selby, Owen, Yarrell, Bell, Jamieson, sir W. Jardine, naturalists; sir A. Cooper, sir C. Bell, anatomy; B. West, sir T. Lawrence, sir D. Wilkie, Constable, Hilton, Turner, Etty, Stanfield, Roberts, painting; sir F. Chantrey, sculpture; Hallam, Turner, Lingard, and sir J. Mackintosh, historians:

8. James Montgomery, Crabbe, Bloomfield, Kirke White, Coleridge, lord Byron, Scott, Southey, Campbell, Moore, Rogers, Wordsworth, Keats, Shelley, Milman, Tennyson, Joanna Baillie, Felicia Hemans, Mary Howitt, and many others have, by their genius and talent, enriched the poetical department of modern literature; whilst the labours and discoveries, in different parts of the globe, of sir E. Parry, sir J. Franklin, sir J. Ross, the Landers, captains Back, Beechey, and Basil Hall, have considerably enlarged the boundaries of our geographical knowledge.

9. Which four of our British queens have given the greatest proofs of courage and intrepidity? Boadicea, queen of the Iceni; Philippa, the wife of Edward III.; Margaret of Anjou, wife of Henry VI.; and Elizabeth, who reigned in her own right.

10. What English kings, since the Conquest, have ascended the throne when minors? Henry III., Edward III., Richard II., Henry VI., Edward V. and Edward VI.

11. What English kings have been most noted for their love of war and conquest? Richard I., Edward I., Edward III., and Henry V. What is true glory? Active benevolence, fortitude to support the frowns of fortune, evenness of temper in prosperity, patience in afflictions, and contempt of unmerited injuries: this is virtue, and the fame of virtuous actions can alone be called true glory.

12. Name some of the antiquities in England. The Picts' wall, between Northumberland and Cumberland; Stonehenge in Wiltshire, (or circles of stones where the Druids worshipped); York Minster, Westminster Abbey and Hall; and many Roman monuments, altars, and roads.

13. Name the five greatest philosophers England has produced. Roger Bacon, sir Francis Bacon, the honourable Robert Boyle, sir Isaac Newton, and John Locke.

14. Name the weak kings who have filled the English throne since the Conquest. John, Henry III., Edward II., Richard II., Henry VI., and James II.

#### SECTION IX.

- |                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. Collat'eral, <i>a.</i> descending from the same stock or ancestor, though not lineally related; side by side. | 11. Incor'porate, <i>r.</i> to unite. Umpire, <i>s.</i> one called in to decide a question when the previous judges are equally divided in opinion. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

9. Zen'ith, *s.* the highest point.

#### SCOTLAND.

1. How is Scotland situated? To the north of England, being surrounded by the Atlantic ocean on the west, and the North Sea on the north and east. It is divided into thirty-three counties: Edinburgh is the capital, and Glasgow holds a distinguished rank among the great commercial towns of the British empire.



The SHETLAND or ZETLAND Isles form the north-east division of the Scottish northern isles, about fifteen leagues from the Orkneys, and forty-four only west of Bergen in Norway. The climate is somewhat severe; the winds are tempestuous, and the rains heavy; whilst the sea rages and swells in such a manner, that for five or six months their ports are almost inaccessible. Shetland is noted for its diminutive breeds of horses and cattle.

2. From whom did it receive the name of Scotland ? From the Scotti, who emigrated from the north of Ireland to North Britain, where they effected a settlement about the beginning of the sixth century. The word Scot is a corruption of the word Scyth, or Scythian, these people being originally from the north, to which the Romans gave the general name of Scythia.

3. What was the state of Scotland about the time of Charlemagne ? They were then governed by Achaius, a prince so much respected that his friendship was courted by Charlemagne, and a league concluded between them. Learning then flourished in Scotland, and its learned men lent their aid in civilizing the vast dominions of the western empire.

4. When were the Picts and Scots united ? About the middle of the eleventh century, when Kenneth Mac Alpin was king of Scotland. The Picts were an ancient people of North Britain, whose origin and history are very obscure.

5. Were these the only ancestors of the present Scottish population ? No : the Saxons had overspread the Lowlands before the end of the eleventh century, and the Norwegians established themselves in the northern districts. The annals of this period are chiefly filled with accounts of wars between the different races. In the time of Alexander I. Saxon institutions began to be generally adopted in the Lowlands, 1107.

6. What was the pretext on which Edward I. of England seized the sovereignty of Scotland ? On the death of Alexander III. the direct royal line became extinct, and several claims were made to the succession by the descendants of collateral branches of the family. The principal claimants were Robert Bruce and John Baliol, who, with the rest, referred their dispute to Edward, by whom the throne was awarded to Baliol, on condition that he should hold it as his dependent. This he did for a short period, when Edward dethroned him, and attempted to annex the crown of Scotland to his own. The Scottish nation opposed this union, but the country was overrun, and the Scottish armies were defeated in several engagements by the English.

7. Did Edward finally succeed ? No : the nobility united with the brave sir William Wallace to expel the invader. This celebrated hero was successful in many gallant enterprises. He cleared a great part of the country of the hostile garrisons, signally defeated the English at the battle of Stirling Bridge, in 1297, drove them out of Scotland, and pursued them as far as Newcastle.

8. Relate some particulars of his subsequent career. Edward now led a powerful army against him, and defeated the Scots with great slaughter in the battle of Falkirk. The nobles, who had long envied Wallace, seized this oppor-

tunity to degrade him, and in 1304 once more made their submission to Edward. Wallace was outlawed, and at length betrayed to this monarch, who caused him to be hanged as a traitor, at West Smithfield, in London, 1305.

9. How was Scotland restored to her independence? Edward I. died when about to crush another revolt of the kingdom; and his son Edward II., at the head of an army said to have consisted of 100,000 men, was signally defeated by 30,000 Scots under Robert Bruce (the son of Baliol's rival) at the battle of Bannockburn, in 1314. The English loss was very severe, and many of their principal nobility fell. This decisive victory secured to Bruce the undisputed possession of the throne. The glory of the Scots may be said to have been at its zenith under this prince.

10. What forms the next grand epoch in the Scottish annals? The reign of Mary Stuart. Her beauty, imprudence, and misfortunes are alike famous in history. In this reign the ancient fabric of the Roman religion was suddenly destroyed, and the Presbyterian worship established in its room. Civil war arose between the nobles who sided with the queen, and the party that supported the Reformation; and it was not till after many struggles that the Catholics were completely put down, and Mary compelled to take refuge in England.

11. When, and how, did Scotland and England become a united kingdom? The way to this union was prepared by the junction of the two crowns in James VI. of Scotland, the son of Mary, 300 years after Edward's invasion. James employed his best efforts to incorporate the two countries, but without success: the next attempt was made by Cromwell, and this also failed.

12. The project was again renewed in the reigns of Charles II. and William III., and finally succeeded in the reign of queen Anne, 1st of May, 1707. The Scottish parliament was then united to the English, and has remained so since that period.

13. What part did Scotland act during the wars between Charles I. and the parliament? That unfortunate monarch, after his final defeat at Naseby, hoping to receive protection from the Scottish army, then lying before Newark, threw himself on their good feeling; but they treated him as a captive, and delivered him into the hands of his enemies.

14. How was this effected? On the payment of the sum of £400,000 the Scots basely surrendered their royal prisoner into the hands of the English parliament.

15. How did Charles II. treat the Scotch covenanters? He persecuted them with the utmost rigour and cruelty, because they refused to conform to modes of worship inconsistent with their conscientious convictions. They displayed great fortitude under their sufferings.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. How is Scotland bounded ? divided ? What is its capital ? its chief commercial town ? 2. Who are the Scotti said to have been ? 4. Who were the Picts ? 5. When did the Saxon customs become prevalent over a great part of Scotland ? 6. Who were the principal claimants to the throne of Scotland after the death of Alexander III. ? Who was made umpire ? How did he decide ? How afterwards treat Scotland ? 7. Who distinguished himself in resistance to the English ? What great battle did he win ? 8. How did he die ? 9. What battle secured the throne to Bruce ? What was the number of the English army ? 10. For what is Mary Stuart famous ? What occurred in her reign ? 11. What efforts were made to effect a union of Scotland with England ? By whom ? 12. When was it accomplished ? 13. What did Charles do after his defeat at Naseby ? What was the result ? 14. Whom did Charles II. persecute ? Why were they so persecuted ? How did they bear their sufferings.
- 

## SECTION X.

- |                                                                               |                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Bronze, <i>s.</i> mixture of tin and copper, mostly with some other metal. | 17. Confiscation, <i>s.</i> a transferring the goods of criminals to public use. |
| Cyclope'an, <i>a.</i> huge; extensive.                                        | Attain'der, <i>s.</i> conviction of a crime.                                     |
| 14. Prom'inent, <i>a.</i> very remarkable.                                    | 18. Retalia'tion, <i>s.</i> return of like for like.                             |

## IRELAND.

1. WHAT is the geographical situation of Ireland ? This important portion of the united kingdom is an island situated on the west of England, from which it is separated by the Irish Sea; it has the Atlantic on the north, west, and south.

2. What is the ordinary geographical division ? Into provinces and counties. The provinces are, Leinster, Munster, Ulster, and Connaught: these contain thirty-two counties; viz. Leinster 12; Ulster 9; Connaught 5; and Munster 6. The population, in 1841, amounted to 8,205,000.

3. What was Ireland anciently called ? It was called by the Latin writers Iernis, and Hibernia; and by the natives, Erin; the root of all which would appear to be derived from the Phœnician or Gallic word Ir or Eri, which signifies the west. The term Scotia does not seem to have been applied to Ireland till about the end of the third century, from which time till the beginning of the eleventh it was the name by which the island was generally known.

4. What points out the affinity between the early inhabitants and the Phœnicians, or those European nations supposed to be of Phœnician origin ? The monuments and relics which have been found in various parts of the kingdom attest the presence of a people considerably advanced in civilization; such as Cyclopean buildings, sepulchral mounds containing stone chambers, mines, bronze instruments, and weapons of classic form, and elegant workman-



ship. These are generally referred to some of the predecessors of the Scotti,—to some more ancient people, who have left vestiges of a similar kind in several parts of the south and south-west of Europe.

5. When is it supposed the Irish became Christians? Their general conversion to Christianity is said to have taken place in the fifth century; but it is probable that the truths of religion had made great, though partial, progress among them before that time.

6. What followed this event? The introduction of Greek and Roman literature, and the rapid advance of civilization: while Italy and other parts of Europe were sunk in

profound intellectual darkness, learning flourished in Ireland during the sixth, seventh, and eighth centuries.

7. It is asserted, however, by some historians, that learning was cultivated in Ireland at a much earlier period. The venerable Bede says, that about the middle of the seventh century many nobles and other orders of the Anglo-Saxons retired from their own country into Ireland, either for instruction, or for an opportunity of living in monasteries of stricter discipline.

8. What was the general state of Ireland between the close of this prosperous epoch and the invasion of the English? The kingdom was harassed without by the frequent incursions of the Danes, and within by the feuds and wars of its own petty princes.

9. What had been the general nature of the government of Ireland previous to the English invasion? It had usually been vested in a supreme monarch, who was entitled to certain subsidies and services from the petty kings of the provinces; and these, in like manner, levied contributions on the minor chieftains.

10. What was the immediate pretext for the landing of the English in Ireland? Dermot Mac Murrough, king of Leinster, having abducted the wife of one of the petty princes, and incurred the hatred of the people for his tyranny, was driven from his dominions, and forced to take refuge with Henry II. of England; who, having previously obtained a grant of Ireland from pope Adrian IV., embraced this opportunity of gaining a footing in that country, under the pretext of rendering aid to the exiled prince.

11. How was the enterprise conducted? Henry, being engaged in a war with France, issued permission to his subjects to assist Dermot in the recovery of his dominions. Richard Strongbow, earl of Pembroke, espoused Dermot's cause, and sent over a chosen body of about 500 men, who attacked and took Wexford, and restored him to his dominions. Strongbow himself followed soon after with a reinforcement, made himself master of Dublin, and marrying Eva, daughter of Dermot, succeeded to the throne of Leinster.

12. The nominal conquest of the entire island was thus effected, and in 1172 Henry came over in person, and received the homage of the Irish monarch, and all the provincial kings. The discipline of the Irish church was now made similar to that of the English, at a general synod of the clergy held at Cashel.

13. What became of the territory of the kingdom after this event? It was parcelled out, to a considerable extent, among the Anglo-Norman conquerors. English modes of tenure were introduced, courts of law appointed, and executive authorities established. When was the kingdom

divided into counties? In the twelfth year of the reign of king John.

14. Mention a few of the most prominent occurrences between this and the reign of Henry VIII. Many of the great lords of the country adopted the Irish customs, as being more congenial to arbitrary authority, and by degrees fell away from the exercise of the English law; some also assumed Irish names: the northern Irish crossed the river Bann, and drove the English settlers out of the north-eastern part of Ulster.

15. The great families of Desmond and Kildare, who had possessed themselves of a great part of Munster and Leinster, introduced the Irish customs on that side; so that when Henry VIII. ascended the throne, there was only an inconsiderable tract along the eastern coast in which the English rule was acknowledged.

16. What were the chief occurrences during the reigns of Henry and his more immediate successors? Henry tried to govern the Irish by setting their chiefs against each other. Austria and Spain encouraged them in their rebellions against England. The Reformation was introduced in the reign of Edward VI. in that part which owned the English sway, but nowhere else.

17. Fresh rebellions and confiscations took place in the reign of Elizabeth. In the reign of James the attainders of the rebellious Irish chieftains placed 600,000 acres in Ulster alone at the disposal of the crown, on which colonies of Scotch and English were planted.

18. What happened in the reign of Charles I.? The Irish Catholics conspired to exterminate the Protestants; the dreadful massacre of 1641 took place, in which neither rank, age, nor sex were spared: Cromwell landed with an army in Ireland, and in retaliation treated the Irish Catholics with great severity, and the kingdom remained quiet till the reign of James II.

19. What events of importance took place in this reign? Ireland now became the theatre of war between James and William his son-in-law: the Catholics took part with the former, and the Protestants with the latter. Londonderry stood a long and memorable siege against the troops of James, who, being obliged to retire southwards, were met by William at the head of the English, Dutch, and native Protestant Irish forces, and defeated in the decisive battle of the Boyne.

20. James fled to France: Limerick, the last stronghold of his party, capitulated; and the country was at length finally reduced to submission. The military men, and other more active members of James's party, quitted the country, and entered into the service of foreign states, where they very generally distinguished themselves by

their fidelity and bravery. The penal laws enacted against the Catholics were for a time enforced with rigour; but afterwards, by degrees, they were relaxed, and finally abolished by the Catholic emancipation act of 1829.

21. What were the principal events about the latter part of the last century? The outbreak of the rebellion in 1798, its prompt suppression, and the legislative union of the kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland.

22. What are the chief curiosities of Ireland? The Giant's Causeway, in the county of Antrim, is the greatest natural curiosity. The lakes of Killarney are far-famed for their romantic beauty, and the island generally abounds with cavities, cataracts, picturesque scenery, and other pleasing and uncommon natural objects.

23. Among the artificial curiosities may be mentioned the round towers found upon the coasts, which are supposed to have been built by the Danes and Norwegians, as beacons, spy-towers, or barbicans, whilst pursuing their piratical incursions.

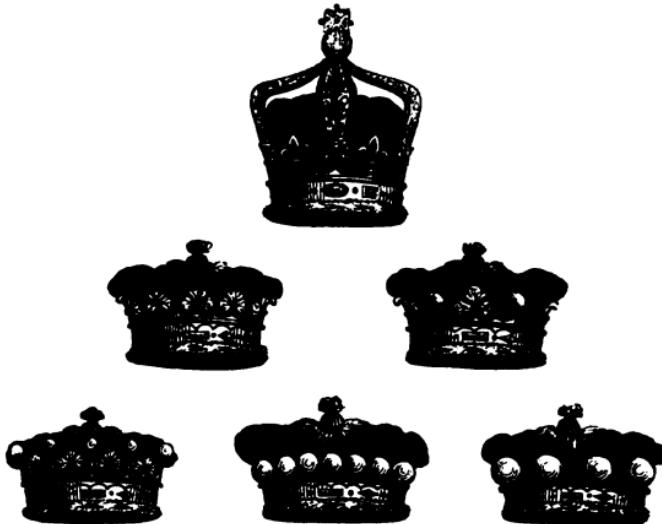
24. What are its chief cities or towns? Dublin, the capital, a very beautiful city on the river Liffey; Cork, on the river Lee; Limerick, on the Shannon; Sligo; Belfast, the great mart of the linen trade; and Londonderry, on the Foyle, called the maiden city, as, though often besieged, it was never taken.

25. What natural advantages does this country possess? The climate of Ireland is more temperate than that of other countries in the same latitude; the heat of summer is less oppressive, and the cold of winter less severe. The soil is fertile, and numerous mines abound with coal, iron, copper, lead, a variety of marbles, crystals, and precious stones, while its coasts are indented with capacious havens and harbours. Mineral springs, chiefly chalybeates, are also found in almost every county.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

2. What was the population of Ireland in 1841? 3. How long was it called Scotia? 6. When did learning flourish in Ireland? 7. What does Bede say of this period? 10. Who was Dermod Mac Murrough? Who took up his cause? From what motive? 11. Who replaced him on his throne? What did he gain by doing so? 12. When did this occur? What followed? 13. What did the Anglo-Norman lords do?

14. By whom was the English pale of authority narrowed? 15. To what extent in the reign of Henry VIII.? 16. How did he try to rule the Irish? Who aided them? 17. How was James able to plant colonies in the north? 18. How did Cromwell treat the Irish? Why? 19. Where did William defeat James? 20. What became of the vanquished party? What act relieved the Catholics? 22. Where is the Giant's Causeway? 23. What are the round towers? 24. Of what is Belfast the principal mart?



## CHAPTER VII.

### Miscellaneous Questions on the British Constitution.

#### SECTION I.

- |                                                                                             |                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Nom'inate, <i>v.</i> to appoint by name.<br>Prerog'ative, <i>s.</i> exclusive privilege. | 10. Can'didate, <i>s.</i> one who sues for office<br>14. A'gitate, <i>v.</i> to debate. |
| 7. Jurisdic'tion, <i>s.</i> legal authority.                                                | 16. Abjura'tion, <i>s.</i> denial of papal power.                                       |

1. WHAT is the Government of England? A limited monarchy: the crown is hereditary, and females have the right of succession.

2. What power has the king\* of England? He alone declares war, and makes peace; receives and appoints ambassadors; disposes of the several governments of the kingdom, and of all civil, military, and naval employments; he is heir to all estates when no other heir can be found; the law is administered constantly in his name, and he has a power to pardon all offences committed against it.

3. What other powers has the king? He nominates all the great officers of the state and household; disposes of all the vacant bishoprics; no money can be lawfully coined without his command; and he can refuse his assent to any bill, though it should have passed both houses of parliament,—a branch of the prerogative, however, seldom exercised. Lastly, the king being the fountain of office, honour, and privilege, all creations of rank and title are by his immediate grant.

\* By the word *king*, the sovereign, whether male or female, is to be understood.

4. How many degrees of nobility are there? Five; viz. duke, marquis, earl, viscount, and baron. The engraving represents the royal diadem, and the coronets as worn by the peers of each class respectively.

5. Of whom is the Imperial Parliament composed? Of the king, the lords spiritual and temporal, and the commons, who debate in a separate house; they are all assembled by the king's writ, and the power of dissolving them rests with him.

6. Of how many persons is the house of lords composed? It is never fixed, as it may be increased at will by the power of the crown. At present it consists of—princes of the blood royal, 3; archbishops, 3; dukes, 20; marquises, 20; earls, 117; viscounts, 22; barons, 200; bishops, 27; representative peers for Scotland, 16; for Ireland, 28.

7. What is the Jurisdiction of parliament? It has an uncontrollable authority in making, abrogating, repealing, and revising laws; it can regulate, and new model, the succession to the crown, alter or establish the religion of the land, and even change the constitution of the kingdom, and of parliaments themselves.

8. Who are the lords Spiritual? Two archbishops and twenty-four bishops, as representatives of the English church; and one archbishop and three bishops for Ireland. They are not considered peers, but lords of parliament, as holders, or supposed holders, of certain ancient baronies under the king.

9. Who are the lords Temporal? All English peers are members of the upper house: some of these sit by descent, some by creation; but the 16 peers for Scotland sit by election, being chosen at the opening of every new parliament: the 28 Irish peers are elected for life.

10. Of whom are the Commons composed? They are in general men of independent property: every candidate for a county is required to possess an estate of £600 per annum; for a city or borough, £300. The house of commons contains in all 656 members, of whom 471 are returned for England; viz. 143 for the counties, 322 for cities and boroughs, and 4 for the universities: 29 for Wales; viz. 15 for counties, and 14 for cities and boroughs: 53 for Scotland; viz. 30 for counties, and 23 for cities and boroughs: 105 for Ireland; viz. 64 for counties, 39 for cities and boroughs, and 2 for Dublin university.

11. What estate qualifies for an elector? The right of voting has been considerably extended by the Reform bill. In cities and boroughs it is vested in resident householders, whose tenements are of the annual value of £10, and retained for life by the freemen of the old constituencies. In counties it is extended to all leaseholders of lands or tenements of the yearly value of £10, and to all tenants-at-

will paying £50 a-year; while freeholders worth 40*s.* a-year, retain the right as before the passing of the Reform act.

12. What is meant by the Chiltern Hundreds? Hundreds or divisions of counties, parcelled out by the wise Alfred, and now annexed to the crown: they are situated in Buckinghamshire, Bedfordshire, and Hertfordshire, and still retain their peculiar courts.

13. What are the Stewards of the Chiltern Hundreds? Officers appointed by the Chancellor of the Exchequer; the salary is twenty shillings a-year. The representative function cannot be resigned; but as a member of parliament by taking an office of profit under the crown vacates his seat by law, accepting the stewardship of the Chiltern hundreds is merely a formal manner of resigning a seat.

14. What is meant by a Call of the House? This, in parliamentary proceedings, is calling the names of the commons over, each member answering to his own, and leaving the house in the order in which he is called. This mode is adopted to ascertain whether any member be absent, or any person present who is not a member: if forty members are present, the house may, in general, proceed to business: when very important questions are agitated, a call of the house takes place.

15. What is a Committee of the whole House? A committee of the whole house comprises every member present; to form it the Speaker quits the chair, and each member may then speak as often as he pleases: when the house is not in committee a member can speak only once, except in explanation. The house resolves itself into a committee when the details of a bill are to be considered and discussed. There are also committees of 'supply,' and committees of 'ways and means,' for financial purposes; select committees for special purposes; committees on private bills; and election committees, to try cases of alleged bribery at elections.

16. What are the oaths taken by electors? They take the oath of abjuration, and likewise swear that they have not polled (or voted) before during that election, nor received, directly or indirectly, any gift or reward, place or employment, in order to induce them to give their vote.

17. What are the qualifications requisite for a member of parliament? No one can sit or vote in parliament who is under age; all members must take the proper oaths; and no alien, though naturalized, is capable of being a member of the house of commons.

18. Who are, by their functions and offices, particularly disqualified for a seat in the imperial parliament? The clergy and judges, mayors and bailiffs of boroughs, sheriffs of counties, (though a sheriff for one county may be chosen a knight for another,) all persons concerned in the manage-

ment of taxes and duties, excepting the treasury commissioners,—in short, all accepting employment under the crown, except officers of the army and navy, are considered ineligible to this important trust.

19. How is the balance of power preserved? When held in its original purity, the people should form a check upon the nobles, the nobility again upon the people, and the king upon both, by the mutual privilege of rejecting what the other has resolved.

20. What important rights have the members of both houses? Freedom of speech is the first and highest, and, till the year 1770, neither lords nor commons could be sued for legal debts while the parliament was sitting; but they then unanimously relinquished this privilege, and may now be proceeded against as other debtors are, with this exception, that they cannot be arrested for debt.

21. What peculiar privileges have the lords? Each peer, when a vote passes not agreeing with his sentiments, has a right to enter his dissent upon journals of the house, called his protest, and assign the reasons in writing: he may vote by proxy in the house of lords, but each peer can hold but one proxy. In their judicial capacity the lords give their verdict ‘on their honour;’ but in the courts of justice, in civil or criminal cases, they must be sworn.

22. Peers cannot be tried unless by peers, and when any great officer of state is impeached, his trial takes place before the house of lords. This house is the highest court of justice in the realm, and the last court of appeal from the ‘courts below.’ A peer can appoint and qualify a certain number of chaplains, who may hold a plurality of benefices: his character is shielded from virulent abuse by the statute of *scandalum magnatum*, and finally, he cannot be outlawed in a civil action.

23. What peculiar rights have the commons? They propose all taxes and grants to the crown: the reason given is, that as the supplies are raised upon the body of the people, it is just they should have the right of taxing themselves: the lords may reject the grants of the commons altogether, but they cannot make the least alteration in a money bill; they also choose their own speaker, who must afterwards receive the king’s approbation.

24. How are laws made? By the mutual assent of king, lords, and commons: whatever is enacted by one, or even two of these parts, is no statute, unless they all concur: but there is an exception to this rule, in affairs relating solely to the peculiar rights of either house.

25. What is the form observed in making laws? Every bill must be read three times and passed in both houses, before it can receive the royal assent; when this is done, it becomes the law of the land: but an act of grace, or par-

don, is signed first by the king, and then read and passed in both houses.

26. Have the great Law lords a seat in the house of peers? The fifteen judges, and the twelve masters in chancery, sit in the house, and their opinion is referred to occasionally, but they have no vote. The lord chancellor is commonly speaker of the house of lords.

### *Questions for Examination.*

5. By what authority is parliament assembled? dissolved? 6. How many peers sit for Scotland? How many for Ireland? 10. How many members are returned by each kingdom for counties? for boroughs? 11. What is the money qualification for a member of the house of commons? 13. What form enables a member to resign his seat?

14. How many members are requisite to constitute a house in the commons? When is a call of the house made? 15. How many sorts of committees are there? 21. How many proxies can a lord hold? 22. What statute shields the lords from virulent abuse? 23. Who vote the taxes? Why? 25. How often must a bill be read? What is necessary before it becomes law? 26. Who is generally speaker of the house of lords?

### SECTION II.

|                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 10. Ju'ra rega'lia, a Latin term, signi-   | 25. Ha'beas cor'pus, s. a legal writ, sig- |
| fying royal rights.                        | nifying you may have the body.             |
| 21. Va'grants, s. wanderers.               | 26. Mit'timus, s. a law term; literally,   |
| 25. Palla'dium, s. a security; protection. | we send.                                   |

1. WHAT is meant by an adjournment, prorogation, and dissolution of parliament? An *adjournment* is the continuation of the session from one day to another, then named; sometimes the house adjourns for a week, fortnight, or month together: a *prorogation* is the continuance of the parliament from one session to another, notified generally by royal proclamation: a *dissolution* is the total end of the parliament, which takes place on the accession of a new monarch, or at the expiration of the time granted by law for its continuance, or on some great political occasion.

2. What is the substance of the king's Coronation Oath? He solemnly promises to govern according to law, to execute judgment in mercy, to maintain the established religion in England and Ireland, also the protestant-presbyterian form of worship as prevailing in Scotland.

3. What is meant by the Civil List? Money granted by parliament to the king for the maintenance of the court and royal family, and to defray the expenses of the household, the salaries of the judges, those of the officers of state and ambassadors to foreign courts, and all pensions granted by the crown,

4. How is the Navy regulated? It is divided into squadrons, called *red*, *white*, and *blue*; each squadron has its admirals, vice-admirals, and rear-admirals, but the admiral of the red takes the chief command of the whole. In whom is the direction of the navy vested? In the king, and by him delegated to the lords of the admiralty.

5. What powers do they exercise? They regulate and govern the whole naval force of the kingdom; but as the members are subject to removal at the pleasure of the crown, they issue no orders which are not conformable to the inclinations of the ministry.

6. When were Lord-Lieutenants of counties appointed? In the reign of Henry VIII.; they act as representatives of the crown, to keep their respective counties in military order.

7. How are the English counties divided? Into six circuits, for the accommodation of the judges, called the Home, Norfolk, Western, Oxford, Midland, and Northern: two judges are appointed for each of these. The assizes are held twice a-year; and three times in the Home circuit, and some other counties. Why is Middlesex excluded from these circuits? Because the supreme courts of justice sit in Middlesex; and a central court, for the trial of criminal cases, has been established there.

8. Which are the counties Palatine? There are three pre-eminently so termed, viz. Lancaster, Chester, and Durham; the two latter have been so called ever since the Conquest; and Lancaster was created a county palatine by Henry III. in favour of Edmund Plantagenet, first earl and duke of Lancaster.

9. Pembroke and Hexham also were anciently counties palatine: Hexham belonged to the archbishop of York, but was stripped of its privileges in the fourteenth year of Elizabeth's reign, and reduced to be part of the county of Northumberland; the power of Pembroke as a county palatine was abolished in the twenty-seventh year of the reign of Henry VIII.

10. What is considered to be the origin of the name? Palatine alludes to *palatina militia*, (or prince's guard,) because the owners of these counties had royal ensigns, or *jura regalia*, as fully as the king in his palace, and as governors, received a special charter from the monarch to issue writs in their own name; while in the dispensation of justice, they exercised absolute power, only acknowledging the king as superior and governor.

11. Why were these privileges granted? For this reason: as the chief of the counties palatine bordered on enemies' countries, viz. Wales and Scotland, armies could be levied, and justice inflicted in a summary way,—the earls or counts having the same authority in their counties, as the king in others: but in Henry the Eighth's time this power was

greatly abridged, though still all writs for Durham, Cheshire, and Lancashire are witnessed in the name of the bishop of Durham, the lord-lieutenants of Cheshire and Lancashire, and all forfeitures for treason by the common law, in their respective jurisdictions, accrue to them.

12. What is the office of a High Sheriff? He is appointed annually by the king to attend the judge at the assizes, empanel juries, and bring suspected persons to trial; afterwards he is to see the sentence of the law executed upon them. What is meant by empanneling a jury? Calling over their names, and seeing that they take the oath required of them.

13. Has the high sheriff any other powers? He decides all elections for knights of the shire, returning those persons to serve in parliament whom he thinks duly elected; he is also, during his office, the first man in the county, taking place of the greatest noblemen; and in cases of immediate danger threatened by invasion or rebellion, he has a right to command the attendance of the whole body of the people of the county over which he presides.

14. Why does not the king appoint sheriffs for Middlesex and Westmoreland? In Westmoreland the office is hereditary; in Middlesex, the corporation of London has a right to appoint its own sheriffs.

15. What is a Coroner? An officer whose business it is to inquire, by a jury of neighbours, how any person came to a violent death; to know the particular circumstances respecting shipwrecks, and to determine who shall be put in possession of the goods.

16. How are trials conducted in England? When any person is charged with a criminal offence, the evidences of his guilt are laid before the grand jury of the county in which the crime was committed; and if they agree that a bill of indictment shall be found, he is then to stand a trial before a petty or special jury composed of twelve men, whose opinion is decisive.

17. What is a bill of indictment? A bill of accusation presented to a court of justice by the grand jury of a county. What act is peculiarly favourable to accused persons? One passed in the reign of Henry VI., which declares, that if the person accused be a foreigner, he shall, if he chooses, have half his jury foreigners likewise.

18. In what other respects is the law favourable to suspected persons? They are always furnished with a list of the jury, and should any be proposed as such whom they have reason to believe are prejudiced against them, the prisoners may object in open court to twenty men successively; they can even challenge thirty-five in cases of high treason, till twelve men are selected, supposed to be competent and impartial judges.

19. What form is used on these occasions? After the evidence on both sides is heard, the judge repeats its substance to the jury, who, if the affair appears clear, give their verdict immediately; should doubts arise, the jury retire into another room, where they remain until they are unanimous in opinion.

20. How many gentlemen compose the grand jury of a county? Twenty-three. What is the substance of the oath administered to jurymen? That they will hear the case with attention and impartiality, and acquit or condemn according to the evidence given.

21. What authority have Justices of the Peace? They can examine and commit to prison all who break or disturb the peace; and can put those laws into execution which relate to highways, the poor, vagrants, riots, and the preservation of game.

22. How often do the justices hold a public session? Once in three months, generally at the county town, when the grand jury present to them bills of indictment. Several justices are commissioned to act for each county, one of whom is styled *Custos Rotulorum*, or keeper of the local records; the qualification required for this office is an estate of £100 a-year.

23. What are Constables? Constables are of two kinds, high and petty; there is a high constable chosen for every hundred, whose principal duty is to keep the peace, prevent riots, &c. with the assistance of the petty constables. These minor officers are in every town and parish; they can detain any person in custody till brought before a justice, and their office obliges them to execute all warrants directed to them by the magistrates.

24. When were Overseers of the Poor appointed? In the reign of queen Elizabeth: their duty is to raise money for the relief of the destitute, infirm, and blind, in their respective parishes; these contributions are called the poor rates, which fall heavier in some districts than in others. A great alteration was made in the administration of the poor-laws by parliament in the session of 1834. The different parishes and townships are now formed into unions; and each union has a building for the reception of the poor, called the Union Workhouse. These unions are respectively governed by a local board of guardians, subject to the orders of the commissioners in London, who control all matters relating to the cost and management of the poor.

25. What is the *habeas corpus* Act? This act, which has been justly celebrated as the palladium of English liberty, prohibits sending any one to prison beyond sea; the judges are forbidden, under severe penalties, to refuse any claim to the benefit of this writ, by which the gaoler having custody of the accused must bring him into court, and declare

the reason of his imprisonment; every prisoner must be indicted the first term after he is committed, and brought to his trial the next; and none, after being once acquitted, can be tried again for the same offence.

26. Is this act always in force? Generally; but in periods of emergency, the parliament has occasionally authorized its temporary suspension. What is a *Mittimus*? A warrant granted by a justice of the peace, to send any offender to prison.

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. When does a dissolution of the Commons take place? 3. How does the sovereign dispense the money voted by parliament for the civil list? 4. How many squadrons is the navy divided into? What their respective colours? Which ranks the first? 10. What is a county palatine? What counties still retain this privilege? 11. Who abridged the authority they exercised?

12. Who sees the law executed on criminals? 13. What can a sheriff do in cases of urgent danger? 15. What is the duty of a coroner? 16. How many men compose a common jury? 17. What privilege is given to a foreigner? 22. What is meant by *Custos Rotulorum*? 23. What is the duty of high constables? Of petty? 24. What changes have been made in the laws affecting the poor? 25. What is the law of *Habeas Corpus* considered to be?

### SECTION III.

|                                               |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Quar'tered, <i>v.</i> cut into four parts. | 10. Impro'priate, to turn to private use.       |
| 3. Mispris'on, contempt, concealment.         | 14. Intes'tate, <i>a.</i> dying without a will. |
| 5. Archbishop, <i>s.</i> a chief bishop.      | 25. Manda'mus, <i>s.</i> a writ, we command.    |
| 6. Convoca'tion, <i>s.</i> calling together.  | 26. Cinque, <i>a.</i> five.                     |

1. **WHAT is High Treason?** An offence committed either against the safety of the sovereign or state, by imagination, word, or action: thus, it is high treason to effect or imagine the death of the king, queen, or heir apparent to the throne; to coin false money; to make war upon the lawful monarch; or to take any part with his enemies.

2. **What is the punishment of the law in these cases?** Traitors, if of rank, are generally beheaded; if otherwise, they are hanged and quartered; their wives lose their jointures, their children their estates and nobility, and the whole of their landed and personal property is forfeited to the crown; coining, though adjudged high treason, does not, however, subject the offender to all these penalties.

3. **What is meant by Misprision of Treason?** Neglecting to declare any treason with which we may be acquainted: for this offence the punishment is imprisonment for life, and forfeiture of the person's goods, with the profits arising from his estate.

4. **Why is the sovereign of England called the supreme Head of the Church?** This title has been assumed ever

since the reign of Henry VIII., to denote the regal power over the church of England and Ireland in temporal affairs; those of a spiritual nature are left for the clergy to settle, subject, however, to the approbation of the crown.

5. Who compose the clergy of the establishment? The church of England has two archbishops, twenty-six bishops, twenty-nine deans and chapters, fifty-eight archdeacons, 355 prebends, 291 canons, 10,700 rectors or vicars, and nearly 5000 curates.

6. What are their several offices? The archbishops assist at the coronation of our monarchs; Canterbury placing the crown on the head of the king, York on that of the queen consort. They consecrate bishops, grant letters of administration to the friends of those who die intestate within their jurisdiction; they can assemble the clergy within their provinces in convocation, and censure the misconduct of bishops and inferior clergy.

7. What is the office of bishops? They, as well as the archbishops, confirm, consecrate churches and burial-grounds, and ordain priests and deacons; they are obliged to visit their dioceses once in three years.

8. What is the office of the archdeacons? To visit the diocese for the bishop two years out of three, reform ecclesiastical abuses, and inquire what necessary repairs are wanting in the churches. Every cathedral has a dean, and a certain number of prebendaries, called the chapter.

9. What is the office of rectors or vicars? To take care, in a spiritual sense, of the congregation entrusted to them, perform divine service as frequently as they can, and register marriages, baptisms, and burials. Deacons, not being in full orders, cannot read the absolution, nor administer the sacrament.

10. What constitutes the distinction between rectors and vicars? When the great tithes are impropriated, or in the hands of laymen, parish priests are called vicars; when these tithes are appropriated, or in the hands of the clergy, they are called rectors.

11. What are the ecclesiastical divisions of England and Wales? Provinces, dioceses, and parishes. Provinces are the jurisdictions of archbishops; dioceses of bishops; and parishes of rectors, vicars, and curates.

12. What is a churchwarden? An officer elected annually, by the minister and parishioners, to keep the church in good repair, see that every thing is prepared for the proper performance of its rites, and collect the charity of the congregation.

13. By what right have the bishops a seat in the house of peers? William the Conqueror converted their benefices into temporal baronies, in right of which the prelates of England and Wales both sit and vote.

14. What is a Consistory Court? One held by the bishop of every diocese in his cathedral, to examine wills and intestate estates; when his diocese is extensive, he appoints commissioners to settle these matters in the places severally assigned them; these are called consistory, or spiritual courts.

15. What causes are brought before the ecclesiastical court, and tried by the canon law? Blasphemy, apostacy from Christianity, heresy, schism, and every thing relative to matrimony, tithes, divorces, and wills. Name the several kinds of law used in England? Civil law, common law, statute law, canon law, martial law, forest law, and that called the law of custom.

16. How are these laws administered? Civil law is used in the ecclesiastical and admiralty courts; common law contains the English rights, as confirmed to us by Magna Charta; the statutes, acts, and ordinances of parliament are contained in statute law; canon law comprehends the decrees of the popes, general councils, and the judgments of the fathers; martial law is used in all military and most naval affairs; and forest law relates to the regulation of the forests and the chase.

17. Who is the Lord Chancellor? An officer of the greatest legal weight and power in the kingdom; he takes precedence of every temporal lord. What is his employment? He sits in the court of chancery for the purpose of determining according to equity and reason; his power can moderate the severity of the common law, and none but the house of lords can reverse his decrees.

18. What other powers has the Chancellor? He appoints the justices of the peace; bestows many of the inferior church livings; and is the general guardian of infants, idiots, and lunatics.

19. What is meant by the term Prime Minister? There is not, in reality, any such office in the constitution; but that minister of the crown who enjoys the place of first lord of the treasury is generally considered as the king's chief confidential servant: his authority is paramount in the cabinet, and he has the principal direction of state affairs.

20. Who are the Lords of the Treasury? Gentlemen who have the management of the exchequer money, and inspect the integrity of those officers who are employed in collecting and bringing in all taxes and tributes.

21. What power has the first lord of the treasury? A very extensive one: the revenues of the crown, kept in the exchequer, are at his disposal; the places in the customs, and many other lucrative appointments, are granted by him.

22. What is the Exchequer? The place where the king's money is received and paid, and where all the crown receipts are kept.

23. By whom are the king's Privy Councillors appointed? The sovereign nominates them, and they can be removed at his pleasure. What is the duty of a privy councillor? To advise the king, the best way in his power, for his majesty's honour and the public good, without partiality, fear, or dread; to keep secret what shall be determined upon in council; to assist in its execution, and to withstand all those who shall attempt the contrary.

24. What is the office of Secretary of State? The secretaries are always privy councillors, and are intrusted with the king's seal; they have the management of domestic and foreign correspondence, and all orders for secret expeditions and securing traitors are signed by them.

25. What is a Mandamus? A writ, by which the king requires the admission of any particular person into a college, university, or other office; this writ is always addressed to the superior officer of the place.

26. Which are the Cinque Ports? Dover, Hastings, Sandwich, Romney, and Hythe; to these Winchelsea, Rye, and Seaford, have been added: these havens were once esteemed of consequence; they lie on the east coast of England.

27. What is remarkable of these ports? They had formerly great privileges, on condition of fitting out ships, when ordered by government, for the defence of the coast against France, which were to be employed forty days together, as often as called upon.

28. What is meant by Justices in Eyre? They are said to have been appointed in John's reign, to see the forest laws put in execution, when the woods were numerous and extensive; and derived the name at their first institution, from their custom of sitting in the open air to determine causes.

29. What titles have been assumed by our kings? From the reign of James, the sixth of Scotland and first of England, to the close of the eighteenth century, they have been styled *kings of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, defenders of the faith*: to these titles the kings of the line of Hanover added that of duke of Brunswick and Lunenburgh, arch-treasurer of the holy Roman empire, and elector, or king, of Hanover. The latter ceases with the present reign, as a female cannot succeed to the crown of Hanover.

30. What title was chosen by the British monarch upon the union of Great Britain with Ireland? The following: 'George, by the grace of God, of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, king, defender of the faith.' The arms of England, Scotland, and Ireland are now borne by the sovereign quarterly.

31. Who bears the title of duke of Aquitaine? The king of England: this ancient duchy (comprehending the provinces of Guienne and Gascony) was conquered by Henry

V. of England; and though nothing more than the name now remains, yet at the coronation of our monarchs one of the officers of the crown stands upon the right side of the throne with a ducal cap and sword of state, in memory of that conquest.

32. Name the titles assumed by the Prince of Wales. He is duke of Cornwall and Rothsay, earl of Chester, earl of Carrick, baron of Renfrew, lord of the Isles, and great Steward of Scotland.

-----

### *Questions for Examination.*

2. How are traitors of rank punished? If commoners, how? 3. What is the penalty of misprision of treason? 4. What king first took the title of supreme head of the church? What is the nature of the sovereign's power over the church? 5. How many archbishops are there in England? How many bishops?

6. Who crowns the sovereign? 7. What is the duty of a bishop? 8. Of an archdeacon? 12. Of a churchwarden? 14. What are the powers of a consistory court? 26. Name the cinque ports. 27. Why had they great privileges formerly?

-----

### SECTION IV.

|                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 12. Conser'vator, <i>s.</i> a preserver.          | 22. Licens'tiousness, <i>s.</i> abuse of liberty; |
| 18. La'ity, <i>s.</i> the people, as distinguish- | contempt of just restraint.                       |
| ed from the clergy.                               | 26. Big'am'y, <i>s.</i> having two wives.         |

1. WHAT is the first great officer of the English crown? The lord High Steward, whose office is only exercised at the coronation of a king, or the trial of a peer or peeress; his badge is a white rod, which he breaks when the coronation or trial is over.

2. Name the second great officer of the crown. The lord Chancellor, whose office has been already spoken of. Name the third. The lord High Treasurer: this office is now put in commission, and vested in five lords of the treasury, the first of whom enjoys all the power which anciently belonged to the lord high treasurer.

3. Name the fourth office. That of lord President of the Council; his duty is to propose the business at the council-board, and inform the king (when his majesty is not ~~present~~) of what passes there: this is a place of considerable dignity, and requires proportionate abilities for the exercise of such an important trust.

4. Name the fifth great officer. The lord Privy Seal; this officer sets the king's privy seal to all charters and grants before they pass the great seal.

5. Name the sixth great officer. The lord Great Chamberlain of England: this office is hereditary in the family of the duke of Ancaster; he is to attend the king at his coro-

nation, take charge of the house of lords while parliament is sitting, and have Westminster-hall properly fitted up for coronations and trials.

6. What is the seventh great office? The temporary one of lord High Constable, used only at coronations; the unfortunate duke of Buckingham was the last hereditary constable, in the reign of Henry VIII.; for, after the duke's execution, Henry abolished the office, having felt deeply offended with the ceremonial observed by the constable according to ancient custom at his coronation.

7. What was the form observed? Upon receiving a sword from the king, the high constable said aloud, "With this sword I will defend thee against all thine enemies, if thou governest according to law; and with this sword, I, and the people of England, will depose thee, if thou breakest thy coronation oath." The power of this officer was very great, as he commanded all the forts and garrisons, and took precedence of all other officers in the field.

8. Name the eighth officer of the crown. The Earl Marshal of England: this office is hereditary in the family of the duke of Norfolk: he regulates proceedings and precedence in the herald's office, appoints general mournings, processions, coronations, and proclamations.

9. Name the ninth great officer of the crown. The lord High Admiral of England was formerly considered as such; but this office is now executed by commissioners, who are the lords of the admiralty.

10. Which are the English courts of law? The court of Chancery, the court of King's Bench, the court of Common Pleas, and the Exchequer court: these are held during the several terms called Easter, Trinity, Michaelmas, and Hilary. There are also courts of bankruptcy and insolvency.

11. What is the court of Chancery? This court, next in rank to the parliament, examines into frauds, breaches of trust, and other oppressions; obliges all trustees to discharge their office with faithfulness and impartiality, and moderates the severity of the common law.

12. What is the King's Bench, or as it is now called, the Queen's Bench? The jurisdiction of this court is very high and transcendent; it examines, controls, and corrects the decrees of all other courts, but those of Chancery and the Exchequer: all affairs which can be tried by common law are brought here, and determined by a jury. Five judges preside in this court, who are by their offices the great conservators of the peace and head coroners of the land.

13. What is the court of Common Pleas? The judges of this court are also five in number, who hear and determine all matters of law arising in civil causes, but possess no jurisdiction in pleas wherein the king is plaintiff.

14. What is the court of Exchequer? This court tries

all causes which concern the public revenue, and has the power of judgment, both according to law and equity ; the lord chief baron, and four other barons, preside in the Exchequer. There is also a cursitor baron, whose office consists in administering the oaths to the bailiffs, receivers, collectors, comptrollers, surveyors, and searchers of the custom-house in England ; there are, besides these, two inferior officers, who are termed the king's remembrancer, and the treasurer's remembrancer.

15. Name the different oaths taken by English subjects. That of supremacy, declaring the king supreme head of the church, first taken in the reign of Henry VIII. ; of allegiance, in James the First's time ; and of abjuration, in the reign of William III.

16. How is Wales governed ? This country, which was united to England in the reign of Henry VIII., is governed entirely by the English laws and customs ; the established religion is that of the church of England.

17. What is the government of Scotland ? Since the union effected by queen Anne, Scotland has been governed by the same general laws as England, though many of its own peculiar customs are still retained.

18. What is the highest ecclesiastical authority in Scotland ? The general assembly of the church, composed of commissioners, who are ministers chosen by the voice of the people, and of elders chosen from the laity.

19. How are the members chosen ? They are elected yearly, six weeks before the meeting of the assembly : their business is to examine the state of the church, and decide all ecclesiastical affairs. Who presides in this assembly ? The lord commissioner, who is generally a nobleman of the first distinction, appointed by, and representing the king ; but he has no vote in their debates.

20. What is the government of Ireland ? This kingdom, conquered by Henry II., was, from that period to the year 1800, governed by lord-lieutenants, who represented the king. It had a house of peers, and a house of commons : in the latter sat 300 members : laws made in Ireland were sent over to England to receive the king's approval, and pass the great seal ; but by the act of union, the Irish legislature was abolished : 28 peers, and 105 commoners, now sit in the imperial parliament as representatives of the Irish nation : the office of lord-lieutenant is still retained.

21. What constitutes the superior excellence of the British constitution ? Its liberty, the equality of its laws, and the right of trial by jury.

22. What is liberty ? That power which every civil state or community has to govern itself by laws of its own making ; and where the laws are so constituted, that one man need not be in fear of another, when acting justly.

**What is the abuse of liberty?** When the people of a state, no longer regarding the laws, deviate into licentiousness.

**23. Why were laws originally instituted?** To guard the weak from the oppression of the strong, to protect the property of individuals, to support the interest of the community for the sake of each member of it, and to make justice not only a principle of the heart, but a tie which even the most abandoned might not violate with impunity.

**24. What English prince laid the foundation of the liberty Englishmen at present enjoy?** Alfred the Great, by his institution of juries; to him we are indebted for the introduction of what is called the common law, and many other useful regulations. The cabinet council was also instituted by Alfred.

**25. What are Sequestrations?** During the civil wars sequestrations meant seizing upon the property of a delinquent for the use of the commonwealth; in civil law, they mean disposing of the goods and chattels of a deceased person, whose estate no man will meddle with; in common law, separating disputed property equally from the possession of both parties; and in ecclesiastical affairs, sequestrations mean collecting the fruits of a vacant benefice, for the advantage of the next incumbent, or reserving them to pay the debts of the present.

**26. Name a few of the most remarkable acts of parliament.** That against bigamy, in the reign of Edward I.; the first navigation act, in Richard the Second's; the first for the preservation of game, time of Henry VII.; that for punishing perjury with the pillory and loss of ears, in Elizabeth's reign; the test and the corporation acts, passed in Charles the Second's; the test act required all officers under the English government, whether civil or military, to receive the sacrament according to the rites of the established church, (this act has been repealed); and the toleration act, passed in the reign of William III., empowering all those who do not profess the doctrines of the English church to worship God after their own manner, without being disturbed; the Catholic emancipation act; the act for the abolition of slavery; and the reform act.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

3. What is the duty of the lord president of the council ? 4. Of the lord privy seal ? 7. What words did the lord high constable formerly use at coronations ? 8. In what family is the office of earl marshal hereditary ? 10. When do the law-courts sit ? 16. What is the established religion of Wales ? 18. Of what is the Scotch general assembly composed ? 19. What is their business ? 20. When was the union with Ireland accomplished ? How many Irish peers and commoners sit in the imperial parliament ? 24. What is the foundation of British liberty ?



## KEY TO THE MAP.

## GERMANY.

- I. Mecklenburgh.
- II. Hanover.
- III. Hesse Cassel.
- IV. Franconia.

## BAVARIA.

1. Salzbach.
2. Ratisbon.
3. Stranbing.
4. Ingoldstadt.
5. Donawert.
6. Neuburg.

## AUSTRIAN CIRCLE.

1. Lintz.
2. Brixen.
3. Lavam.
4. Goritz.
5. Trente.
6. Trieste.

## FRANCONIA.

1. Meinengen.

## 2. Rudstadt.

3. Coburg.
4. Schweinfurth.
5. Wurtzburg.
6. Bamberg.
7. Ansbach.
8. Nuremberg.

## MECKLENBURG.

1. Rostock.
2. Wismar.
3. Strelitz.
4. Schwerin.

## HANOVER.

1. Hornburg.
2. Lunenburg.
3. Emden.
4. Osnabruk.
5. Celle.

## BOHEMIA.

1. Egra.
2. Koniggratz.

## 3. Budweis.

4. Pilsen.

## DENMARK.

1. Aalborg.
2. Aarhus.
3. Flensburg.
4. Sleswick.
5. Gluckstadt.
6. Odensee.
7. Tonning.

## BALTIM ISLANDS.

1. Zealand.
2. Funen.
3. Meon.
4. Falster.
5. Laaland.
6. Femeren.
7. Langland.
8. Alsen.

## PRUSSIA.

1. Camin.
2. Braunsberg.
3. Magdeberg.
- 
4. Eylau.
5. Sargard.
6. Perleberg.
7. Bromberg.
8. Wittenberg.
9. Dressau.
10. Munster.
11. Wesel.

## RHINE PRUSSIA.

12. Dortmund.
13. Coblenz.

## SILESIA.

1. Segau.
2. Glogau.
3. Leignitz.
4. Neisse.
5. Bautzen.
6. Oppeln.

## CHAPTER VIII.

**Historical Questions on the European Continental States.**

## SECTION I.

- |                                                                   |                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. Alle'giance, <i>s.</i> duty of subjects.                       | 22. Op'portune, <i>a.</i> timely; fit.                                       |
| 10. Organize, <i>v.</i> to construct the frame work of any thing. | 24. Tolera'tion, <i>s.</i> allowance of religious worship without restraint. |

## GERMANY.

1. How is Germany bounded? On the north by the Baltic Sea and Denmark; on the east by Poland and Hungary; on the south by Switzerland and the Alps; and on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland.

2. To what country did the Romans apply the name of Germany? All that part of Europe east of the Rhine, and north of the Danube, as far as the Baltic Sea and German Ocean. The name was first used to this extent in the time of Julius Caesar.

3. What does modern Germany include? The empire of Austria and the kingdom of Prussia, with the minor kingdoms of Bavaria, Saxony, Hanover, and Wurtemburg, and the principalities of Baden, Hesse Cassel, Hesse Darmstadt, Mecklenburg Schwerin, Mecklenburg Strelitz, Saxe Weimar, Saxe Coburg, Gotha, &c. &c.

4. How is the Austrian empire bounded? On the north by Saxony, Prussia, and Poland; on the west by Bavaria, Switzerland, and the Sardinian States; on the south by Turkey, the Adriatic Sea, and the Italian States; and on the east by Russia and Turkey. Vienna is the capital.

5. Who were the first kings of the Germans? Louis, grandson of Charlemagne, was made king by the treaty of Verdun, 843. In his reign burgs, *i. e.* fortified towns or castles, were founded, to prevent the incursions of the Normans and Sclavonians.

6. Charles the Fat, 884. He reunited Germany to France, but being a weak and indolent monarch, the Germans renounced their allegiance to him, and elected in his room

7. Arnulph, his nephew, 887. A warlike monarch. He was succeeded by his infant son Louis, 899, who died A. D. 911. Thus ended the Carlovingian dynasty in Germany, and Conrad, duke of Franconia, was elected emperor the same year.

8. Henry the Fowler, duke of Saxony, elected 918. From this time to 1806 the crown of Germany remained elective. Henry was succeeded by Otho I., 936; Otho II., 973; Otho III., 983. From the time of Otho I. the emperors of

Germany added to their title that of king of Rome, and the successor to the empire, elected during the emperor's life time, was called king of Rome.

9. Next followed in order, Henry II., 1002; Conrad II., 1024; Henry III., 1039; Henry IV., 1056; Henry V., 1106.

10. What is the most prominent feature of this period? The feudal system was organized in Germany by Conrad II., and Burgundy incorporated with the empire. Henry the Third's reign was remarkable for his frequent disputes with the Roman see, as was also that of Henry IV. Under the reign of Henry V. the great vassals became independent of the emperor, and thus arose the division of Germany into several States.

11. Who followed next in order? Lothaire II., 1125; Conrad III., 1138; and Frederick I. (Barbarossa) 1152. In the reign of this able prince the Hanseatic league\* was established. He was engaged in frequent wars with the popes and the states of Italy, and died on his expedition to the Holy Land.

12. Name the next in order of succession. Henry VI., 1190; Philip, 1198; Otho IV., 1208; Frederick II., 1218. The last named joined the crusades, and having been excommunicated by pope Gregory for a truce he made with the infidels, he laid siege to Rome, and compelled that pontiff to agree to terms of peace. The factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines owed their origin to these events. This was an accomplished and able prince.

13. What followed on his death? Conrad, his son, succeeded him, and died 1254; upon which William, count of Holland, Richard, brother of Henry III. king of England, Alphonso of Spain, and Ottocar of Bohemia, appeared as competitors for the crown, and their different supporters took advantage of the occasion to increase their own power. At length the contention was ended by the accession of

14. Rudolph I., count of Hapsburg, 1272. He was a prince of great talents and energy, and repressed the insolence and tyranny of the feudal nobility, whose excesses had been carried to a most alarming extent. The house of Hapsburg, which still reigns in Austria, was founded by this monarch.

15. Who followed next in order? Adolphus of Nassau, 1291; Albert I. of Austria, 1298; Henry VII., 1308; Louis V. of Bavaria, 1313. During the reign of Albert, the Swiss freed themselves from the yoke of Austria. The succeeding reigns were remarkable for frequent wars in Italy, which was then distracted by the parties of the Guelphs and Ghibelines.

16. What distinguishes the reign of Charles IV. of Bo-

\* A confederation of the commercial cities in northern and western Europe, to protect their trade from pirates and robbers.

hemia, the next emperor, 1346? The constitution of the Golden Bull, by which the rights of electors, the coinage, the customs, and the privileges and duties of the free cities, were regulated and defined.

17. Name his successors next in order. Wenceslaus, his son, 1378; Sigismund, brother to the last, 1411: and Albert II. of Austria, 1437. In the reign of Sigismund, the council of Constance condemned Huss to the flames, which gave rise to the wars of the Hussites, who defended themselves in many a glorious field.

18. Who next ascended the throne? Frederick III., 1439. Science was now making rapid progress in Europe, and many universities were founded in Germany.

19. Who succeeded? Maximilian I., 1493: a prince of great ability. He reformed many of the abuses in the government and administration of the laws. In the latter part of his reign the Reformation was begun in Germany, at the university of Wittemburg, 1517, by Martin Luther.

20. What distinguished the reign of Charles V.? He was the grandson of Maximilian, and king of Spain. This extraordinary man displayed vast ability during his active reign, which constitutes one of the most remarkable epochs in the history of Germany, or indeed of Europe. He was constantly engaged in wars with Francis I. of France, whom he took prisoner at the battle of Pavia; also with the Protestant princes of Germany, and the Moors. At length, weary of the world, and disgusted with all his schemes of ambition, he resigned the throne, and retired into private life.

21. By whom was he succeeded? By his brother Ferdinand I., 1556, who granted toleration to the Protestants; Maximilian II., 1564; Rudolph II., 1576; Matthias, 1612; and Ferdinand II., 1619. The last was a bigoted prince, and his zeal against the Protestants, as well as his ambition, involved Germany in a war which lasted thirty years, and was terminated by the treaty of Westphalia in 1648, under the reign of his son and successor Ferdinand III. By this famous treaty many important alterations were made both in the internal and external relations of the empire: the Protestants were guaranteed the free exercise of their religion.

22. Who succeeded him? Leopold I., 1657. He was engaged in constant wars with France and the Turks: the latter besieged Vienna, which was narrowly saved by the opportune succour of John Sobieski, who at the head of 10,000 Poles raised the siege, and obliged the Turks to retire with immense loss, 1683. Europe was thus saved from the irruptions of the Ottomans. In 1692 Leopold granted the electoral dignity to the duke of Brunswick-Lunenburg, and conferred the regal title of king of Prussia on the elector of Brandenburg.

23. Who were his successors? Joseph I., 1705, and Charles VI., 1711, in whom the male line of the house of Hapsburg became extinct. Maria Theresa, his only daughter, succeeded to the hereditary estates of the family, and from her the present emperor of Austria is descended.

24. Who now became emperor? Charles Albert, elector of Bavaria, 1742. He was succeeded by the duke of Lorraine, who married Maria Theresa, and was elected emperor under the title of Francis I. Joseph II., 1765, his successor, distinguished his reign by many useful reforms. One of the most excellent acts of this prince was that in 1781, granting religious toleration to all his subjects.

25. By whom was he succeeded? By his brother, Leopold II., 1790. He concluded the treaty of Pilnitz with the king of Prussia, against the French.

26. Who next occupied the throne? His son Francis, 1792. After the Rhenish Confederation was formed by Napoleon Buonaparte, 1806, he took the title of emperor of Austria. This confederation deprived many German princes of their titles and prerogatives, conferred new ones upon others, and made several important changes in the internal affairs of Germany.

27. When was it dissolved? In 1813, by the overthrow of Napoleon. In 1815, at the Congress of Vienna, a new confederation was formed, consisting of thirty-eight independent states; and its representatives, called the Federative Diet, were empowered to deliberate on all matters affecting the external security of the empire against foreign foes, and the maintenance of domestic peace.

28. What more recent events require especial mention? In February, 1848, a revolution occurred in the city of Paris, which terminated in the extinction of monarchy, and the promulgation of a French republic. Europe was startled by this unexpected event; every where the people rose in arms, earnestly demanding constitutional freedom, and the authorities at Berlin, Vienna, Munich, and other capitals, were compelled to concede unfettered liberty of the press, a representative form of government, and a general extension of public privileges. This popular movement involves many probable and important changes in the previous political relations of Germany, which time alone can fully develope.

-----

#### Questions for Examination.

5. What were *burgs*? 6. What was the character of Charles the Fat?
7. Who was the last of the Carlovingian dynasty in Germany?
8. How long did the crown remain elective? What title was added to it?
10. How was Germany divided into several states?
11. What was the Hanseatic league? In whose reign formed? What is

worthy of note in the reign of Frederick I. ? 12. Of Frederick II. ? 13. Who competed for the throne after the death of Conrad, 1254 ? 14. Who founded the present house of Austria ? What was his character ? 15. What happened in Albert the First's reign ?

16. What was the Golden Bull ? 19. In whose reign did the Reformation take place ? 20. With whom was Charles V. engaged in war ? 21. How was Ferdinand the Second's reign chiefly occupied ? What did the treaty of Westphalia produce ? 22. What happened in the time of Leopold I. ? 23. Who continued the line of Hapsburg ? 24. For what was the reign of Joseph II. worthy of note ? 26. When did the title of emperor of Germany cease ? What did the confederation of the Rhine effect ? 27. What system was established by the congress at Vienna ?

---

## SECTION II.

|                                                |                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Contin'gent, <i>s.</i> quota; proportion.   | 10. Parti'tion, <i>s.</i> division of parts.    |
| 5. Predilec'tion, <i>s.</i> liking beforehand. | 11. Vicis'itudo, <i>s.</i> trouble; misfortune. |

### PRUSSIA.

1. WHAT measure led to the foundation of the kingdom of Prussia ? It was originally a province of Poland. The elector of Brandenburg, Frederick William, surnamed the Great, by a treaty with Poland obtained a confirmation of the eastern portion to himself and his heirs, freed from vassalage, and in 1663 was declared independent.

2. How is Prussia bounded ? On the north by Germany and the Baltic; on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland; on the south by Austria and Saxony; and on the east by Russia and Poland. Berlin is the capital.

3. By what princes has Prussia been since governed ? Frederick I., Elector, 1688,—the date of the Revolution in England. In 1684 he married Sophia Charlotte, princess of Hanover, sister of George I., afterwards king of England. In 1689 he sent 20,000 men to aid the imperial army against France, which then laid waste the Palatinate,\* and in 1691 joined the grand alliance between the emperor, England, Spain, and Holland against France, sending to the Netherlands 15,000 men as his contingent.

4. This prince added considerably to his dominions by purchase and negotiations, and assisted the emperor of Germany in the war of the Spanish succession, on condition that he should be allowed to assume the title of king of Prussia. On the 18th January, 1701, he put the crown on his own head, and also on that of his consort. He gave great encouragement to the arts and sciences, and though in some respects weak and vain, was a politic and good prince, and preserved his kingdom from the horrors of war.

\* The Palatinate is an extensive district in Germany, formerly called by this name, which, from its vicinity to the Rhine, was often the seat of war between France and Germany.

5. Frederick William I., son of Frederick, born 1688, ascended the throne of Prussia in 1713. He was educated with George II. of England : simple in his personal habits, and economical to the extreme in his private expenditure, he was yet both austere and arbitrary, and carried to the utmost extent the idea of the divine right of kings. His economy of the public revenues enabled him to gratify his darling predilections for a great military establishment, and he has the credit of introducing into the Prussian army that strict discipline and regularity, for which it has long been distinguished. The exertions he made to procure tall soldiers are well known ; no expense was spared, and men of gigantic stature were picked up wherever they could be found. He particularly encouraged the introduction of manufactures into his dominions, but was an enemy to literature.

6. Frederick II., surnamed the Great, 1740. His career was brilliant and extraordinary. He claimed Silesia, and defeated the Austrians, who opposed him, at Mollwitz in 1741 ; took possession of East Friesland in 1743, and captured Prague, the capital of Bohemia, in 1744, but was obliged to retire from that country the same year ; in 1745 he defeated the Austrians and Saxons at Hohenfreidburg, in Silesia, and afterwards at Sorr.

7. The third war for Silesia, in which he was engaged, is called the seven years' war, and embraces, for that period, the chief events of European history. France, Austria, Saxony, and Russia were united against him. In 1755 he defeated the Austrians at Lowositz, and in 1757 near Prague, in Bohemia. Being compelled to raise the siege of Prague, he met the French and Austrian army, twice as numerous as his own, and defeated them at Rosbach, and shortly afterwards the Austrians at Lissau. In 1758 he triumphed over the Russians at Zorndorf, but was soon after himself worsted by them in the battle of Kunnersdorf.

8. He again overthrew the Austrians at Torgau, in Saxony. The death of the empress Elizabeth, of Russia, now relieved him from a powerful enemy, as her successor, Peter III. was one of his warmest admirers. Sweden also made peace with him, and Austria, deserted by her allies, was obliged to give up the contest.

9. At the end of this memorable war the political relations of Europe, after the expenditure of much blood and treasure, remained almost the same as before. The private character of this king has been variously regarded ; but as a politician and military commander, he ranks among the first of his day.

10. Frederick William II., 1786, the nephew of the preceding. In 1792 he sent an army against the French, which was obliged to retreat. He joined with Russia and Austria in the final partition of Poland, 1795.

11. Frederick William III., 1797. The events of this monarch's reign belong rather to the general history of Europe than any one particular kingdom, and have been already briefly sketched. Amidst all his vicissitudes he exhibited great firmness and consistency. The Prussians under Blucher contributed essentially to the victory of Waterloo, by their timely arrival towards the close of the engagement.

12. He died in 1840, and was succeeded by his son, Frederick William IV. His reign has hitherto been marked by the exercise of a mild and paternal sway, and is further distinguished by the voluntary grant of a constitutional form of government. The eventful revolution at Paris, however, imparted an irresistible impulse to German sympathy, and the violent popular demonstrations which followed in various European capitals, caused this monarch to place himself at the head of a movement, which aims at the regeneration and unity of the whole empire.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What was Prussia formerly? Who made it an independent state? 4. Who was the first king? What were the principal acts of this prince? What was his character? 5. Who succeeded him? Mention some particulars respecting his character, and the events of his reign.

6. In what battles did Frederick the Great defeat the Austrians? 7. What does the seven years' war embrace? What were the chief events of this war? 8. How did the alliance against Frederick break up? 9. What was his character? 10. By whom succeeded? 11. What did the Prussians assist in obtaining? 12. Who is the reigning monarch? When did he ascend the throne?

---

SECTION III.

|                                                             |                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Dismem'berment, <i>s.</i> a division into several parts. | 5. Era'se, <i>v.</i> to blot out.                                        |
| 4. Cope, <i>v.</i> to contend with.                         | 6. Goad, <i>v.</i> to stimulate.<br>8. Ab'rogate, <i>v.</i> to disannul. |

POLAND.

1. RELATE some particulars of the early state of this country. Its situation was partly in Germany, and partly in European Sarmatia, and the inhabitants were principally the Vandals and Alains. It was erected into a duchy in 694, and a kingdom A. D. 1000: its first king was Boleslaus.

2. From this period to its dismemberment in 1772, thirty kings in all successively occupied the throne of Poland: one of the most celebrated of these was John Sobieski, who raised the siege of Vienna, and prevented the Turks overrunning Germany.

3. The crown of Poland being strictly elective, internal

feud and intrigue prepared the decline of the state. The confusion these contests constantly engendered, became the pretext for the neighbouring powers to interfere in Polish affairs, and the country was assailed and finally partitioned between the adjoining empires.

4. What powers conquered and divided Poland among them? Russia, Austria, and Prussia. The first partition was made in 1772; the second in 1791; the third and last in 1795. The Poles, under the gallant Kosciusko, defended their country with the utmost bravery, but were unable to cope with the overwhelming numbers of their enemies.

5. Kosciusko was defeated, wounded, and taken prisoner at the battle of Maciejovice; Praga, the suburb of Warsaw, was carried by storm by Suvarroff, and all its inhabitants massacred. King Stanislaus then formally resigned his crown at Grodno, and Poland was erased from the list of independent nations.

6. What further eventful incidents mark the history of this country? The Polish legions, during the career of Napoleon, fought bravely in his support, hoping that he would restore to them their national independence; but in this they were disappointed. Goaded by an oppressive tyranny, and animated with their ancient love of freedom, that part of Poland under Russian sway struck another blow for liberty in 1831.

7. The first combats were favourable to the patriots. The Russian commander-in-chief Diebitsch, with vastly superior forces, was unable to reach Warsaw; but Paskewitch, who superseded him in the command, effected this object, attacked and took the capital on the 6th September, and put an end to the insurrection.

8. This memorable struggle attracted the attention and sympathy of all Europe. Many of the Poles who had taken a part in it were banished to Siberia to work in the mines, or sent to serve as soldiers in the Asiatic provinces of Russia; and the constitution, which had been granted to Poland by Alexander, was formally abrogated by his successor, the emperor Nicholas.

---

#### Questions for Examination.

1. Who were the early inhabitants of this country? Where did it lie? When made a duchy? a kingdom? Who was its first king?
2. How many reigned in all? Who was famous among these? What did he do for Europe?
4. When did the several partitions of this kingdom take place? Who led the Poles in their struggle?
5. What was the result? What befell Warsaw? How did the contest terminate?
6. Why did the Poles fight for Buonaparte? What led to their last insurrection?
7. What Russian general did they foil? By whom was Warsaw taken? When?
8. How was the vanquished party treated?



## SECTION IV.

- |                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Frus'trate, <i>v.</i> to defeat; to balk.<br>Greek fire, <i>s.</i> an explosive combustible, known only to the Greek rulers of Constantinople. | 10. Imbecil'ity, <i>s.</i> mental weakness.<br>13. Au'tocrat, <i>s.</i> one who rules alone.<br>15. Partici'pator, <i>s.</i> a partaker.<br>18. Coali'tion, <i>s.</i> union in a mass. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## RUSSIA.

1. How is Russia bounded? On the north by the Northern Ocean; on the east by the northern Pacific Ocean; on the south by Tartary, the Caspian and Black Seas, Turkey, and Austria; and on the west by Sweden, the Baltic Sea, and Germany. The European portion of Russia is separated from the Asiatic by the Ural mountains. Its chief cities are Petersburgh and Moscow.

2. When does the authentic history of Russia commence? About the middle of the ninth century of the Christian era. The Scythian and Sclavonian tribes that roamed over its vast territory were little known to the rest of Europe before this time. The first dynasty formed was by Ruric, 850, and it continued to rule uninterruptedly till 1598.

3. What events of note occurred in the reigns of his immediate successors? Oleg, guardian of his sons, attacked Constantinople with a fleet carrying 80,000 men, but his attempt was frustrated by a tempest, A. D. 904: and a second expedition by Igor, the son of Ruric, was defeated by the Greek fire, which destroyed the Russian flotilla in 941.

4. When was Russia converted to Christianity? In the reign of Vladimir (or St. Vladimir) the Great. He married Anna, sister of the emperor of Constantinople, Basil II., embraced the Christian religion, and persuaded his nobles and the rest of his subjects to do so likewise, A. D. 1015.

5. What was the state of Russia between this period, and the invasion of the Tartars and their expulsion, A. D. 1223? It was engaged in frequent wars with Poland, and internal dissensions. The Poles held it in vassalage for more than two centuries and a half. Moscow was made the capital in 1321, and was burnt by the Tartars, first in 1382, and a second time in 1441. Russia recovered its independence under Ivan or John Basilowitz, the first Czar, in 1462, who united under his authority most of the minor Russian principalities. His more immediate successors were engaged in frequent wars with the Poles, who pillaged and burnt Moscow, A. D. 1578. Siberia was added to the Russian empire in 1581.

6. Fifty-six sovereigns of the family of Ruric reigned in Russia. This line became extinct by the death of Feodore, in 1598; and, with the intervention of an usurper named Boris, was succeeded by the house of Ronianoff, which was descended in the female line from that of Ruric, and still holds the imperial sceptre.

7. Who was the first of this line? Michael Romanoff, 1613. He reigned thirty-two years, during which he raised Russia to its proper rank among the states of Europe. He was unfortunate in his wars, but prudent in the internal management of his government.

8. By whom was he succeeded? Alexis, his son, 1645. He was successful in his wars against the Poles and Turks, and incorporated the Cossacks of the Ukraine with the empire. The Cossacks of the Don revolted; but their army, amounting to 200,000 men, was defeated, and great numbers put to death. The last years of this monarch were devoted to internal improvements, and the promotion of civilization.

9. Who was the successor of Alexis? Feodore, in 1676. This reign was chiefly remarkable for the first war between Russia and Turkey. All the charters and title-deeds of the nobility were destroyed at Moscow, and they were henceforth obliged to take precedence according to military rank.

10. Who reigned next? Ivan and Peter, 1687, sons of Alexis, governed conjointly for a short period; but the

former was set aside on account of his imbecility, and Peter became sole sovereign.

11. What events distinguished his reign ? Peter, surnamed the Great, ruled alone from 1689. He travelled for two years through England, Holland, and other parts of Europe, to make himself personally acquainted with mechanics and ship-building ; and on his return, built a fleet on the Don, 1694. This was the first Russian navy. He also introduced the European mode of discipline into the Russian army.

12. With a view to acquire territory on the Baltic, Peter attacked Sweden ; and though signally defeated by Charles XII. at the battle of Narva, 1700, conquered the provinces of Ingria and Carelia : on this newly acquired territory he built Petersburg, the modern capital, at the mouth of the river Neva, 1703. His great opponent, Charles XII., was defeated by the Russians in a decisive battle at Pultowa, 1709, and compelled to take refuge in Turkey.

13. Peter next succeeded in humbling both Turkey and Sweden, and acquiring great extension of his territories. He now exchanged the title Czar, which had been held by his predecessors, for Emperor and Autocrat of all the Russias. The foundation of this empire's military, naval, and political greatness, of its commerce and its legislature, was laid by this monarch.

14. By whom was he succeeded ? By his widow, Catharine, 1725. She reigned two years, and was followed by Peter II., grandson of Peter the Great, 1727 ; these reigns present little of interest. Anne, daughter of Ivan, eldest brother of Peter the Great, next ascended the throne. In alliance with Austria, she made war on the Turks.

15. Who followed Anne ? Elizabeth, daughter of Peter the Great, 1741. Russia took part in the seven years' war against Frederick the Great of Prussia ; and now, for the first time, appeared as a direct participator in the wars of western Europe.

16. Who was the next emperor ? Peter III., her nephew, 1762. He made peace with Prussia, and was endeavouring to introduce many improvements into the affairs of both church and state, when his career was cut short by deposition, imprisonment, and death, (as is supposed by violence) ; and Catharine II., his wife, who intrigued against him, was placed on the throne in the same year.

17. What was her character, and what events distinguished her reign ? She was a woman of masculine understanding and great ambition, but very unscrupulous in her public and private conduct. From this period may be dated that steady policy of enlarging the boundaries of the empire which Russia has since pursued. War was carried on against Turkey, and an extensive tract of territory won

from that power, together with the protectorate of Moldavia and Wallachia. Potemkin was one of her celebrated ministers, and Suvarrow her greatest general. The first partition of Poland took place in 1772, the second in 1791, and the third in 1795, by which Russia gained the greater portion of that unhappy kingdom.

18. What were the chief events of the next reign? Paul, her son, 1796, was a weak and fickle monarch. In the grand coalition of Europe against France, Paul for some time took a part, and his armies assisted in the campaigns of Italy and Switzerland; but he soon abandoned the alliance, and concluding a peace with Napoleon, put himself at the head of the Convention of the North, which was an union of the northern states of Europe, on the principle of armed neutrality, against the maritime supremacy of Great Britain. His tyranny was so intolerable, that a conspiracy was formed against him, and he was murdered in his palace in 1801.

19. What were the principal occurrences in the reign of his successor? Alexander, his son, 1801, made peace with England, joined Austria against Napoleon, and was personally present at the defeat of Austerlitz: by the losses he sustained at Eylau and Friedland, he was reduced to the necessity of making peace with the conqueror, and of joining the continental system against England. Meanwhile, Russia was at war with Turkey, and forced Sweden finally to give up Finland, East Bothnia, and Aland. In 1812 he made peace with England, Sweden, and Turkey.

20. In the autumn of the same year Napoleon invaded Russia at the head of 500,000 men, defeated Kutusoff at the Borodino, and advanced to Moscow; but the country was every where laid waste; this ancient capital was burnt by order of its governor, Rostopchin; and the French were compelled to retire to the frontiers of Poland. The winter had set in early, and with unexampled rigour: the greater part of Napoleon's army perished in their disastrous retreat, and the victorious Russians, aided by the Prussians and Austrians, in the campaigns of 1813-14, after several sanguinary engagements, entered Paris in triumph. Alexander died at Taganrog, on the Don, 1825.

21. Who succeeded him on the throne? Nicholas, third son of Paul, his elder brother Constantine having renounced his claims. In 1828 the Russians invaded Turkey, crossed the Balkan in 1829, and compelled the sultan to surrender several frontier provinces on the Black Sea, and confirm the Russian protectorate of Moldavia and Wallachia.

22. The government of this country is a pure despotism, the sovereign ruling in the most absolute manner, and having the lives and fortunes of his subjects wholly at his disposal.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What separates Russia in Europe from Russia in Asia? 3. What Russian prince was defeated by the Greeks, and how? 4. Whom did Vladimir marry? What did this event promote? 5. Who burnt Moscow? when? Who consolidated the Russian empire? When was Siberia added to the empire? 7. How many sovereigns were there of the first Russian dynasty? What family succeeded?

8. Who subdued the Cossacks? 9. What happened in the reign of Feodore? 10. Why was Ivan set aside? 11. Why did Peter travel? What did he do for Russia? 15. When did Russia first meddle with the affairs of the west? On what occasion? 16. Why was Peter III. deposed? 16. What addition did Catharine II. make to the empire? 18. How did Paul die? 20. What was the amount of the French army that invaded Russia? What its fate? When did Alexander die, and where? 21. What did Nicholas gain from Turkey? 22. What is the Russian form of government?

---

## SECTION V.

|                                                |                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 2. Semir'amis, <i>s.</i> a masculine queen.    | 15. Superse'ded, <i>part.</i> put aside. |
| 8. Neutral'ity, <i>s.</i> siding with neither. | 18. Ces'sion, <i>s.</i> giving up.       |

## SWEDEN, NORWAY, AND DENMARK.

1. WHAT is the geographical position of Sweden, Norway, and Denmark? Sweden and Norway include the countries bounded by the Baltic, the Gulf of Bothnia, and the Northern Ocean. Stockholm is the capital of Sweden. Denmark consists of the islands of Zealand, Funen, and others, with the duchies of Holstein, Sleswick, and Lauenburg, and the distant islands of Iceland and Ferroe: West Greenland is subject to Denmark. Copenhagen is the capital.

2. Mention some particulars of the early history of Sweden. This country formed part of the ancient Scandinavia. Under Biorn II., a descendant of Odin, Christianity was introduced, 794, and established under Olaf, 1026. In 1397 Margaret, surnamed the Semiramis of the North, the daughter of the last male of the ancient Danish kings, and widow of Hakon, king of Norway, united under her sway Sweden, Denmark, and Norway by the union of Calmar; but in the time of her grandson, the Swedes threw off the Danish yoke, 1439.

3. Did the Danes make any efforts to recover their supremacy? Yes: they employed force and policy alternately for that purpose. Christian II. defeated the Swedes 1520, and put several of their nobles and prelates to death; but Gustavus Vasa restored Swedish independence, and was made king. In 1552 Lutheranism became the established religion. In this reign Sweden made great progress in commerce and civilization.

4. Who was the next famous monarch of Sweden? Gus-



tavus Adolphus, 1611. He enlarged the Swedish territories at the expense of Russia and Poland; was the chosen champion of the Protestants in Germany during their wars with Austria, and called the Lion of the North, and in several battles defeated the imperial armies. He fell in the moment of victory at the battle of Lutzen, 1632.

5. This prince was moderate in private life, prudent in the administration of his government, and an able and victorious commander. He was succeeded by Christina, his daughter, 1632, who abdicated in favour of Charles Gustavus, 1654: he waged war with Poland and Denmark, and gained many advantages.

6. By whom was he followed? Charles XI., 1660, who carried on war with Prussia and Denmark. In this reign commenced the struggle between the crown, supported by the people, and the powers of the nobles. The king was proclaimed absolute in 1693.

7. What were the events of his successor's reign? Charles XII., 1697: reduced Denmark, defeated Peter the Great at Narva, conquered the Poles, and invaded Russia, 1709. His failure in that enterprise, and the loss of his army at Poltowa, led to further misfortunes: all his conquests were lost one after the other, and he fell at length at the siege of Fredericshall, in Norway. In 1721 the treaty of Nystad with Russia, under Frederick his successor, gave peace to Sweden; but not without the cession of a considerable portion of her territory.

8. What events of note occurred in the subsequent history of Sweden? The royal power was considerably abridged in the succeeding reigns. The factions of the Hats, who intrigued for France, and the Caps for Russia, disturbed the state till the reign of Gustavus III., 1771. In 1780 Sweden joined the armed neutrality of the northern powers against England, and the coalition against France, 1792. Gustavus reduced the power of his nobles, and was assassinated by one of their agents, Ankerström.

9. Gustavus IV. joined the armed convention of the north in 1800. Sweden was at war with Russia after the treaty of Tilsit, and lost Finland. This king was deposed (for incapacity) by a conspiracy of military officers, and his uncle,

10. Charles XIII. succeeded, 1809. In 1810 Bernadotte, one of Napoleon's marshals, was elected Crown Prince, and assumed the reins of government, as the king was old and incompetent. His services to England and the northern powers, 1813, against Napoleon, were rewarded by the annexation of Norway to Sweden. The king died in 1818, and Bernadotte mounted the throne as

11. Charles XIV. His long reign was one of peace, improvement, and prosperity. He died in 1844, and was succeeded by his son Oscar.

12. Mention a few facts in the history of Norway. This people were first known to Europe as pirates, who led the way to the devastation and plunder of the northern and western coasts of Europe. They accompanied the Danes under Sweyn and Canute in the conquest of England, but the two kingdoms were soon after separated, and remained so until their re-union under Margaret. It now belongs to Sweden.

13. At what period did Denmark reach the zenith of its greatness, as far as the extent of dominion may be understood by that term? In the eleventh century, under Canute the Great, when the Normans or Angles, a name which was applied to the Swedes, Norwegians, and Danes in common, had established their dominion over England; made themselves masters of Normandy under Rollo; colonized the Orkneys and Hebrides, the Isle of Man, Iceland, and part of Ireland; and pushed their settlements as far

south as Spain, Italy, and Sicily. Christianity was introduced, and the laws and government of the kingdom greatly improved by this able monarch.

14. What was the next epoch in Danish history? The accession of Margaret to the throne, 1387, and the union of Sweden and Norway, with Denmark, under her sceptre.

15. Mention some of the more remarkable reigns that followed. In 1523 Christian II., one of the most complete tyrants that ever filled a throne, was deposed for his cruelty. Christian IV. was chosen the head of the Protestant league against the house of Austria, but superseded by Gustavus of Sweden.

16. Frederick III. was made an absolute monarch in 1660. The Danes acquired the islands of St. Thomas, St. Croix, St. John in the West Indies; and Tranquebar in the East, in 1671.

17. What part did Denmark take in the wars of the French revolution? She observed a strict neutrality; but in contesting the right of search as to her mercantile shipping, was led into an alliance with Russia, Prussia, and Sweden against England, who deprived her for a time of her colonies; and in the memorable sea-fight off Copenhagen, in 1801, destroyed a great part of her navy.

18. Denmark now entered into an alliance with France. Copenhagen was severely bombarded by the British under Lord Gambier, a considerable portion of it burnt, and the Danish fleet carried away to England. By the treaty of Kiel, 1814, Frederick VI., who had obstinately maintained to the last his alliance with Napoleon, was obliged to make peace with England,—submitting to the loss of the Danish fleet and colonies, and the cession of Norway to Sweden.

19. Christian VIII. ascended the throne in 1839, and dying in 1848, was succeeded by his son Frederick VII.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What do Sweden and Norway include? What does Denmark? What is the capital of Sweden? of Denmark? 2. When was Christianity introduced into Sweden? established? Who was Margaret? What did she achieve? 4. What was Gustavus Adolphus called? When did he fall? 5. What was his character? 6. When was the throne made absolute?

7. What battle ruined Charles XII.? How did he die? 8. What were the factions that disturbed the kingdom? When put down? By whom? What was his end? 9. What occurred in the reign of Gustavus IV.? 10. Of Charles XIII.? Who was Bernadotte? 13. What was the utmost extent of the Danish dominions? When christianized? 16. What colonies had she in the west? in the east? 17. What led to their loss? What befell the Danes in 1801? 18. What occurred subsequently?

## HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.



## KEY TO THE MAP.

## PROVINCES OF HOLLAND.

- i. Friesland.  
ii. Groningen.  
iii. Overijssel.  
iv. Gelderland.

- v. Utrecht.  
vi. Holland.  
vii. Brabant.

Islands at the Mouth  
of the Meuse.

1. Voornland.  
2. Ysselmond.  
3. Stryen.  
4. Over Flackee.

Islands at the Mouth  
of the Scheldt.

5. Schouwen.  
6. Duiveland.  
7. North Beveland.  
8. South Beveland.  
9. Walcheren.

## SECTION VI.

3. Stadt'holder, s. protector of the state. | 4. In'tegral, a. whole; undivided.

## HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.

1. WHAT were Holland and Belgium formerly called? The Netherlands. Anciently they formed part of Belgic Gaul, and at a later period, of the circle of Belgium, or Burgundy. They obtained the name of Netherlands from their situation in respect to Germany.

2. By whom was Holland formerly ruled? The seven united provinces (or Holland) were successively governed by the Franks, its own counts, the earls of Hainault, and

the house of Burgundy. Rather than submit to the bishop of Utrecht, the people placed themselves under the protection of Charles V. of Germany, in 1534; but revolted under the oppression of his successor, Philip of Spain, whom they compelled to resign all authority over them, yet not till after a terrible devastation of their country, and the most direful bloodshed.

3. What followed worthy of note in the history of the Dutch republic? The seven provinces were formed into a federal republic, and governed by a chief magistrate called the Stadholder. By their industry, prudence, enterprise, and religious and commercial freedom, they rose to be a great mercantile and maritime power, and were for a time the rivals of England on the sea. In 1794 the French republican armies made themselves masters of the country, and annexed it to France. The consequence was war with England, in which the Dutch lost their fleets, trade, and colonies.

4. In 1806 Napoleon formed Holland into a kingdom, placing his brother Louis Buonaparte on the throne, which he resigned in 1810, and it then became an integral part of the French empire, till 1813. The fall of Napoleon led to the return of the prince of Orange, the former head of the state, who governed as sovereign prince till 1815, when it was re-united to Belgium, after a separation of two hundred years. The kingdom of the Netherlands, as it was then called, was not however of long duration. Amsterdam is the capital of Holland.

5. What is worthy of note in the history of the ten provinces that remained after the acquisition of independence by the Dutch? The Spaniards continued in possession of them, till the duke of Marlborough, general-in-chief of the allies, gained the victory of Ramilles, in 1706. After this Brussels, the capital, and a great part of these provinces acknowledged Charles VI., emperor of Germany, for their sovereign. The house of Austria held them, with the exception of a few interruptions by the French, till the year 1794, when they were overrun by the French revolutionary armies, and retained till 1813.

6. On their re-union with Holland, 1815, William prince of Orange was made king of the Netherlands; but in 1830 the Flemings revolted, and were formed into a separate kingdom, under the name of Belgium, when Leopold, prince of Saxe Coburg, was raised to the throne, which he has since filled in a manner highly satisfactory to his subjects.

7. In 1840 the king of the Netherlands abdicated the throne, and was succeeded by his son, William II.

8. About twelve miles south of Brussels is Waterloo,—a name that will ever be memorable for the great battle in which Buonaparte met his final overthrow.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. Of what did the Netherlands anciently form a part? 2. Why did Holland revolt? When? 3. When occupied by France? How long? 4. Who was made king? To what united in 1815? What is the chief city?

5. When was Belgium rescued from the Spaniards? Who next ruled this country? What happened after the French revolution? 6. When separated from Holland? Who obtained the crown of Belgium? 8. Where is Waterloo?

---

## SECTION VII.

|                                            |                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Rav'age, <i>v.</i> to lay waste.        | 7. Nom'inal, <i>a.</i> by name merely.           |
| 7. Dy'nasty, <i>s.</i> a family of rulers. | 9. Collat'er-al, <i>a.</i> not in a direct line. |

## FRANCE.

1. How is France bounded? On the north by Belgium and the English Channel; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean; and on the east by Switzerland and Germany. This country, in political importance, is one of the first in the world. Paris is the capital.

2. By whom was it anciently inhabited? By the Gauls, which was the general name for three different races called the Aquitanians, Celts, and Belgians, with a mixture of some Germans and Greeks. Marseilles was founded by a colony from Greece, about B. C. 600.

3. What befell this country on the decline of the Roman power? It was ravaged by the Franks, Burgundians, and other German tribes.

4. Who were the Franks? The name signifies freemen. They were a confederacy of German nations, who in the fourth century settled on the right bank of the Rhine. In A. D. 481, Clovis commenced his career as king of the Salians, one of the Frank tribes. He procured the assassination of the chieftains of the other tribes, became their sole monarch, subdued the Visigoths and Burgundians, and extended his sovereignty over nearly the whole of Gaul.

5. By what name were the kings of this line known? They were called the Merovingian kings, and reigned till the year 752; when they were supplanted by a new family, afterwards called the Carlovingian, from Charlemagne, whose father, Pepin, was the founder of it.

6. Who were the Mayors of the Palace? These great officers, at the courts of the latter Merovingian kings, exercised the supreme power both in civil and military matters, the sovereign being merely nominal. Pepin, who was the last of these mayors, deposed Chiladeric III., and made himself king in name as well as in reality.

7. When did his descendants cease to reign? This dynas-

of Henry VIII. ? That of the Thistle, by James V. king of Scotland : the knights wear a green riband.

22. By whom was the religious order of the Jesuits founded ? By Ignatius Loyola, a Spaniard, in the reign of Henry VIII. This order was dissolved on account of the great confusion caused by the various intrigues of its members, who interfered in political matters : its dissolution took place in Rome, in 1773.

23. Europe, during the reign of Henry VIII., was the theatre of many great events. Charles V., king of Spain and emperor of Germany, enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Mexico, and the possession of Peru ; the Portuguese, after the discovery of Brazil, erected forts, subdued the surrounding nations, and waged a bloody war in Africa.

24. Francis I. of France, who has been called the father of learning, was the formidable competitor of Charles V. for empire, renown, and power : the fatal battle of Pavia, in Italy, established the ascendancy of Charles over his rival Francis.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What remarkable events took place in Edward the Fourth's reign ? 3. What was the earl of Warwick called, and why ? 4. What noblemen suffered in the reign of Richard III. ? 5. What was the end of Richard ? 6. Who was the discoverer of the continent of America ? In whose reign did it take place ? 7. What rebellion in England occurred at this period ? By whom was it headed ? What were his pretensions ? 8. Name some of the inventions in the time of Henry VII.

9. What titles did Henry VIII. assume ? 10. To what descent could he lay claim ? 11. Who fell at Flodden Field ? 14. What did Gregory VII. claim ? What were his words ? 16. What islands were discovered at this period ? 19. On what conditions did Charles V. grant Malta ? 22. Who founded the Jesuits ? When were they put down ? Why ? 23. What great events took place in Europe in the reign of Henry VIII. ? 24. What battle proved fatal to Francis I., and who was his rival ?

#### SECTION V.

- |                                                |                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Anat'omy, <i>s.</i> the art of dissecting ; | 22. Transporta'tion, <i>s.</i> banishment to<br>the science of animal structure. |
| 12. Arma'da, <i>s.</i> a large fleet of ships. | some place beyond the sea.                                                       |

26. Tel'escop, *s.* glass for distant views.

1. WHEN was the battle of Pinkey, or Musselburgh, fought with the Scots ? In the reign of Edward VI. Who was Protector during the minority of Edward ? Seymour, duke of Somerset.

2. Name Edward the Sixth's best public action. Promoting and establishing the Reformation by act of parliament. What insurrection was there during his reign ? One headed by Ket, a tanner, a discontented seditious fellow : he raised



## FRANCE.



## KEY TO THE MAP.

- |                |                  |                       |                  |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. Laon.       | 9. Chartres.     | 17. Lons le Saulnier. | 25. Gap.         |
| 2. Mezieres.   | 10. Colmar.      | 18. Saintes.          | 26. Mende.       |
| 3. Beauvais.   | 11. Blois.       | 19. Angouleme.        | 27. Auch.        |
| 4. Carentan.   | 12. Auxerre.     | 20. Montbrison.       | 28. Alby.        |
| 5. Evreux.     | 13. Versoul.     | 21. Bourg.            | 29. Carcassonne. |
| 6. Bar le Duc. | 14. Niort.       | 22. Le Puy.           | 30. Perpignan.   |
| 7. St. Brieux. | 15. Chateauroux. | 23. Privas.           | 31. Draguignan.  |
| 8. Laval.      | 16. Nevers.      | 24. Valence.          | 32. Bayonne.     |

ty expired on the death of Louis V., A.D. 987, and was succeeded by the Capetian line, the founder of which was Hugues Capet, the son of Hugues le Grand, count of Paris. The power of the crown was, for a long time after, little more than nominal. The feudal lords in the different provinces governed as they thought fit, without reference to the king: the most powerful of these were the dukes of Bourgogne and Normandy.

8. What was the origin of the French communes? These took their rise in leagues of the inhabitants of towns for defence against the oppressions of the barons: they were formed in the reign of Louis the Fat, 1108.

9. When did the direct Capetian line end? With Charles IV., and was succeeded by the collateral branch of Valois, 1328, which reigned in a direct line till the death of Charles VIII., 1498. Two collateral branches then successively wore the crown, till the assassination of Henry III. 1589, when the house of Bourbon, another branch of the same

family, occupied the throne, which it retained, until the period of the Revolution and the Empire. On the fall of Napoleon the Bourbon dynasty was restored, but their rule was of short duration, and in 1830 Louis Philippe, duke of Orleans, assumed the sovereignty. His reign was terminated in 1848, when a new revolution effected the extinction of royalty, and the establishment of a French republic. The house of Orleans is descended from a younger brother of Louis XIV.\*

\* For further incidents and particulars relating to the history of France, *vide* "Abstract of the French Reigns," Chap. IX.

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How does France rank among nations ?
2. What races inhabited ancient Gaul ? Who built Marseilles ?
4. Who was the first king of France ? What did he do ?
5. Mention the dates of the different French dynasties in succession.
9. What is the present form of government ?

### SECTION VIII.

- |                                                                                               |                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Subli'me, <i>a.</i> high; the grand in na-<br>ture as distinguished from the<br>beautiful. | 1. Picturesque, <i>a.</i> that peculiar kind<br>of beauty which is agreeable in a<br>picture. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### SWITZERLAND.

1. WHAT is the geographical situation of Switzerland? It lies among the Alps, between Germany, France, and Italy, in the midst of the most sublime and picturesque scenery in Europe.

2. Relate some particulars of its early history after the breaking up of the Roman empire. It was partially and successively occupied by the Burgundians, Alemanni, and Franks: the old inhabitants became serfs to these various masters. The feudal system was established under the weak government of Charlemagne's successors. Switzerland was chiefly included in the Burgundian territories from 889 to 1016, when it was annexed to the German empire.

3. What took place worthy of note about the year 1300 ? The emperor, Albert I., treated the Swiss with so much rigour, that a conspiracy was formed against his oppressive governors, Gesler and Beringer. Gesler, in the wantonness of his tyranny, set up a hat upon a pole, to which he ordered the natives to pay as much respect as to himself.

4. The famous William Tell, being observed to pass frequently without taking notice of the hat, was condemned to be hanged, unless he cleft an apple, placed on his son's head at a certain distance, with an arrow. This Tell effected, and upon being asked by Gesler what he meant to do with a second arrow which was observed to be stuck in his

belt, he boldly replied, had he killed his son, it would have been sent to the tyrant's heart.



5. What followed? An insurrection. Albert's officers were driven away, and their castles razed to the ground. The people now began to be called Schwyz, from the name of one of the revolted cantons. By degrees all Switzerland won its independence from Austria, 1499.

6. With what other power had they to contend in 1475? With that of Burgundy: duke Charles the Rash was defeated by them in the battles of Granson, 1476, and Morat, 1478. The emperor of Germany, Maximilian, made a last attempt to reduce them to subjection, but was unsuccessful.

7. They were afterwards engaged in frequent civil wars in consequence of religious disputes, but maintained their independence till the period of the French revolution, when the cantons were overrun and subdued by the armies of France, under whose protection they remained till 1813. Their independence was finally re-established in 1815, by the congress of Vienna.

-----

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What is the general character of the scenery of Switzerland?
2. On the fall of Rome, what tribes overran it? What system was established? By whom ruled? How long? What ensued? 4.
3. Why did Gesler order Tell to shoot at the apple on his son's head? How did Tell rebuke Gesler?
4. 5. Why were the people called Swiss? When freed from Austria?
6. In what battles did they defeat Charles of Burgundy?
7. What other wars did they engage in? What befell them at the French revolution? Who restored their independence?

## AUSTRIA AND ITALY.



## SECTION IX.

4. *Muni'cipal, a.* pertaining to a city. | 5. *Compa'ct, a.* firm; held close together.

## ITALY.

1. **WHAT** was the origin of the present Italian states? Under the weak rule of the successors of Charlemagne this country was parcelled out into numerous principalities by the great feudal counts, marquises, &c.; and as the principal towns rose in wealth and population, they also made themselves independent, and formed so many commonwealths; so that the title of 'King of Italy,' assumed by the German emperors, was often merely nominal. Thus arose the republics of Venice, Florence, and Genoa, the

Papal states, the kingdom of Naples, and the duchies of Savoy, Milan, &c.

2. Where are the Papal states situated? They are placed in the centre of Italy, extending from sea to sea, crossed by the Apennines. Rome is the capital, situated on the Tiber, in the wide plain of the Campagna.

3. By what pope were they first formed into a separate and independent temporal power? Though a territorial grant had been made to the popes by Charlemagne, and to some extent confirmed by his successors, they did not acquire complete authority, as temporal princes, until the time of Innocent III., about 400 years after Charlemagne.

4. During this long period, the emperor of Germany, who was also king of Italy, was considered as sovereign of the whole country; and the duchy of Rome, as it was then called, was held by several powerful nobles, or barons, of whom the pope was, in a temporal capacity, the chief. Rome itself ranked as an imperial city, and had its municipal government and senate.

5. How did Innocent III. establish his authority? By force of arms: he compelled these nobles to acknowledge his authority and that of the succeeding popes. Still, it was not till after the lapse of nearly three centuries that the papal see formed so compact a state as it appears in our days.

6. Who was Rienzi? A Roman of obscure birth, but great eloquence and enthusiasm, who, in the fourteenth century, attempted to restore the republic. He became popular, and for a time useful to the state; but growing intoxicated with power he abused his authority, was imprisoned for three years by Clement VI.; again released by Innocent VI., by whom he was made governor, and at last was murdered in a popular tumult, 1354.

7. What befell Rome during the last French wars? In 1797 part of the papal states were annexed to the Cisalpine republic; in 1798 Napoleon expelled pope Pius VI. from Rome, but restored him in 1801; and again, in 1809, deprived him of his territories, making them part of his kingdom of Italy. In 1814 pope Pius VII. resumed possession of the papal states.

8. What forms the kingdom of Naples? It is the name commonly given to the continental part of the united kingdom of the Two Sicilies. It occupies the southern half of the Italian peninsula, being bounded on the north-west by the papal states, and on every other side by the sea: Naples, the capital, is the largest city in Italy. Its situation is delightful: rising like an amphitheatre, it forms, with its verdant shores and magnificent bay, a scene of almost unrivalled beauty. The chief city of the island of Sicily is Palermo.

9. When did this kingdom originate? In the eleventh century, with the conquest of Sicily and Apulia by the Normans, whose dynasty lasted till 1194. It was succeeded by the Suabian family, the first of whom, Henry emperor of Germany, overran the kingdom, put William son of Tancred to death, and assumed the sovereignty.

10. What line next held it? The house of Anjou, 1266. Charles of Anjou, with a French army, defeated Manfred at Benevento, and was acknowledged king.

11. What events mark its subsequent history? The Spaniards expelled the French in 1504, and annexed Naples to Spain. Under the yoke of Spanish viceroys the country rapidly declined in prosperity and population. The tribunal of the Inquisition was established in Sicily, but firmly rejected by the Neapolitans. The Austrians expelled the Spaniards in 1708. The kingdom was reconquered by the latter power in 1734, and Don Carlos, son of Philip V. of Spain, ascended the throne, in whose family it still remains.

12. What occurred during the wars of the French revolution, and since? Naples was conquered by the French, and its king obliged to take refuge in Sicily, under the protection of Great Britain. Murat, one of Napoleon's generals, was made king in 1809, but expelled in 1815. Ferdinand I. was now restored. A military revolution took place in 1820, which had for its object the establishment of a free constitution, but it was soon crushed by the intervention of Austria. Ferdinand II. succeeded in 1830, and governed the two kingdoms until the revolution of Paris in 1848, when the Sicilians revolted, and after another unsuccessful demand for free institutions, declared their independence.

13. When, and how, is Venice situated? Venice is situated at the head of the Gulf of Venice on seventy small islands, which are connected by 450 bridges. It was for several ages a republic, and one of the greatest commercial cities on the globe: though much reduced, it still retains evidence of ancient greatness.

14. Mention some particulars of the history of Venice. The Venetians were formerly a great naval power, and acted an important part in the Crusades: they were frequently at war with Genoa, a rival republic, and with Turkey. Greece, and the islands of the Levant, were alternately lost and reconquered by the Turks.

15. During the eighteenth century, Venice took no part in the wars which disturbed Italy. The French and Austrians frequently occupied its territories during the revolutionary war; and at its conclusion, after existing as an independent state for more than 1000 years, they were annexed to the Austrian dominions, and with the duchies of Milan and Mantua constituted the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom.

16. Of what states does the kingdom of Sardinia consist?

The duchy of Savoy, the principality of Piedmont, the duchy of Genoa, the county of Nizza, and the island of Sardinia. The kingdom was first formed by Victor Amadeus, duke of Savoy, in 1715. Genoa was added by the congress of Vienna in 1815. The house of Savoy still occupies the throne.

17. Who founded the grand-ducal dynasty of Tuscany ? Cosmo de Medici, 1537 : seven dukes of this family followed, and the line became extinct 1737. Francis, duke of Lorraine, who married Maria Theresa, succeeded, and, except during the interruption of the French wars, the princes of the house of Austria have since retained it.

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. By whom was Italy divided into small principalities ? When ? What power had the German emperors in Italy ? What states arose ? 3. How long after Charlemagne's grant were the states of the church made subject to the Popes ? 6. Why was Rienzi imprisoned ? What was his end ? 8. Where does the kingdom of Naples lie ? 9. Who succeeded the Normans ? 10. Whom did Charles of Anjou defeat ?

11. How long did the Spaniards hold Naples ? When did they again recover it ? 12. What took place in 1820 ? 13. What was Venice formerly ? What still ? 14. In what wars engaged ? 15. How long did it preserve its independence ? 16. Who founded the kingdom of Sardinia ? What family now governs that country ? 17. How long did the house of Medici rule in Tuscany ? Who succeeded them ?

### SECTION X.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Hespe'ria, <i>s.</i> the land of the west.<br>Ibe'ria, <i>s.</i> the land of the Iberi, the<br>ancient habitants of the peninsula.<br>Celt'iberia, <i>s.</i> the land of the Celts<br>and Iberi mingled. | 5. Penin'sula, <i>s.</i> almost an island.<br>12. Big'otry. <i>s.</i> blind zeal; prejudice.<br>13. Moris'coes, <i>s.</i> converted Moors, who<br>remained in Spain after the con-<br>quest of Moorish Granada. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### SPAIN.

1. How is Spain bounded ? On the north by the Bay of Biscay and the Pyrenees ; on the west by Portugal and the Atlantic Ocean ; on the south and east by the Mediterranean. Madrid is the capital.

2. Into how many periods may the history of Spain be divided ? Four: 1st. Before its invasion by the Saracens ; 2nd. When divided into kingdoms ; 3rd. Under the Austrian dynasty ; 4th. Under that of the Bourbons.

3. Mention some particulars of its early state. It was called Hesperia, Iberia, Celtiberia, and Hispania, by the Greeks and Romans. Settlements were made in it by the Greeks ; the Carthaginians attempted to subdue it, and



## KEY TO THE MAP.

|                 |                  |                   |                      |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Ponte Vedra. | 15. Almazan.     | 29. Vera.         | 6. Mirandella.       |
| 2. Lugo.        | 16. Butrago.     | 30. Almeria.      | 7. Feira.            |
| 3. Ponferrade.  | 17. Forcall.     | 31. Almuñecar.    | 8. Almeida.          |
| 4. Sanabria.    | 18. Tortosa.     | 32. Velez Malaga. | 9. Castel Branco.    |
| 5. Benevente.   | 19. Aranjuez.    | 33. Malaga.       | 10. Thomar.          |
| 6. Alsaro.      | 20. Oropesa.     | 34. Velerde.      | 11. Portalegre.      |
| 7. Urgel.       | 21. Coria.       | 35. Moguer.       | 12. Estremoz.        |
| 8. Gerona.      | 22. S. Clemente. | —                 | 13. Arravoloz.       |
| 9. Marresa.     | 23. Albacete.    | PORTUGAL.         | 14. Evora.           |
| 10. Lerida.     | 24. Jumilla.     | 1. Camina.        | 15. Beja.            |
| 11. Huessa.     | 25. Jean.        | 2. Vianna.        | 16. Villa Nova.      |
| 12. Tarragona.  | 26. Ubeda.       | 3. Braga.         | 17. Serpa.           |
| 13. Calatayud.  | 27. Huescar.     | 4. Conde Lamego.  | 18. Cintra.          |
| 14. Alhama.     | 28. Vete.        | 5. Regoa.         | 19. Berlengas Isles. |

failed : subsequently it fell completely under the power of all-conquering Rome, in the reign of Augustus.

4. The poets Lucan and Martial, the philosopher Seneca, and the emperors Adrian and Trajan, were natives of this country.

5. On the fall of the Roman empire, what tribes settled in it? First the Suevi, the Alans, and the Vandals; these were followed by the Visigoths, A. D. 411, who drove the Vandals and Alans before them into Africa. The Goths became complete masters of the peninsula in 483, and the first Gothic king was Euric. It remained under the Gothic rule until 711, when the Saracens crossed the Straits of Gibraltar, and defeated the whole force of the Gothic monarchy, under their king Roderic.

6. The whole of Spain was conquered by the invaders, except the mountainous districts of the Asturias, where the fugitive Goths founded a kingdom in 797.

7. Relate some particulars of the early minor Christian kingdoms in Spain. A small Christian kingdom was now gradually rising into existence in the recesses of the Pyrenees. The foundation of the kingdoms of Arragon and Navarre was laid by Garcia Ximenes, a Cantabrian noble, about this period. Shortly after, Wifrid, a governor of the Spanish March for the French, assumed the title of Count of Barcelona, capital of Catalonia.

8. In 1005 the kingdom of Castile was founded : Leon and Galicia were united to Castile in 1095, and about the same time also the kingdom of Portugal (the ancient Lusitania) by Henry de Besançon. These states, though frequently at war with one another, now began seriously to attempt the entire expulsion of the Mahometans from the peninsula; and after various successes, in which the principal cities were taken in detail, that people were driven to the mountains of Granada, where they founded a new kingdom in 1248, called the kingdom of the Moors, from which they were finally expelled in 1492, by Ferdinand.

9. Under whom were the various petty kingdoms united? Ferdinand V. of Arragon, by his marriage with Isabella queen of Castile, founded their union. In this reign America was discovered, and the Inquisition introduced into Spain.

10. How did the throne fall to the house of Austria? Charles I. of Spain, who was son of Philip archduke of Austria by Joanna, Isabella's daughter, in right of his mother succeeded to the Spanish throne on the death of Ferdinand, 1516, and was elected emperor of Germany, 1519, under the title of Charles V.

11. This monarch, after a long and active reign, during which Europe was seldom at peace, resigned the throne of Spain to his son Philip II. in 1554. In 1557 he retired to the monastery of St. Just, in Estremadura, where he passed the remainder of his days. It was during this reign that Mexico was conquered by Cortez, 1521 ; Peru by Pizarro, 1531, and the Straits of Magellan discovered by a Spanish navigator of that name, by which the rich trade of India and China were opened to Spain.

12. What were the principal occurrences of Philip's reign? He married Mary, queen of England, who assisted him with her troops in Italy, in a war against France for the possession of the kingdom of Naples in 1557, when the united forces of Spain gained the battle of St. Quentin. He persecuted with the utmost cruelty, by means of the Inquisition, all who would not conform to the Roman religion in Spain ; and on attempting to pursue the same course in the Netherlands, provoked an insurrection, which ended in their

separation from the Spanish monarchy. He equipped a powerful fleet, well known as the Spanish armada, for the conquest of England, but it was utterly destroyed. His bigotry was excessive.

13. Who succeeded him? Philip III., 1598. He was a weak, indolent monarch. In his reign the Moriscoes were expelled from Spain, which drained away a considerable part of the population, in whose hands a great deal of the wealth and commerce of the country had concentrated. The duke of Lerma, his favourite, had the chief management of the affairs of state.

14. What were the chief events of his successor's reign? Philip IV., 1610, entrusted the government to Gaspar de Guzman, duke of Olivarez; Portugal, which was united to Spain in 1580, rebelled, and placed John Braganza on its throne, 1640; Spain recognised the independence of the Netherlands by the treaty of Westphalia, 1648; and after many years war with Spain and Austria against France, the peace of the Pyrenees was concluded 1659, and the marriage of Louis XIV. with a Spanish princess concerted.

15. What was the state of Spain in the reign of his son? Charles II., 1665, was but three years old when his father died: the regency was administered by his mother. Spain was engaged in continual wars with France, and sustained severe reverses, while internally the kingdom was in a miserable condition through bad government. This king died without issue.

16. Who now ascended the Spanish throne, and in what state did he find the monarchy? Philip d'Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. of France; but a war arose respecting the succession, which lasted thirteen years; the house of Austria, and William III. of England, advanced claims to the vacant throne. Philip defeated the allies in the battle of Almanza in 1707, and became undisputed king. Spain had by the treaty of Utrecht been stripped of Belgium, Naples, Sicily, and Milan, which were given to Austria; Sardinia to Savoy; Minorca and Gibraltar to England.

17. What occurred in the two following reigns? That of Ferdinand VI., 1746, presents little worthy of notice. Charles III., 1759, raised Spain to a higher rank than she had for some time held in Europe. Many internal improvements were likewise effected; the Inquisition was restricted, and the Jesuits banished, 1767, from all the Spanish dominions.

18. By whom was he succeeded? Charles IV., 1788. Godoy, the queen's favourite, led the kingdom into a new career of misfortune. Spain joined in the general crusade against the French republic; but through the bad management of this minister, was unsuccessful, and obliged to conclude the dishonourable peace of Basle.

19. Under the influence of Godoy, now styled the Prince of Peace, Spain next formed an alliance with France, 1796, and declared war against England; her fleet was defeated by Sir John Jervis, off Cape St. Vincent, 1797; and in 1805 her navy was destroyed, with that of France, in the ever-memorable battle of Trafalgar.

20. In 1807 the French troops treacherously took possession of several fortified places in Spain, and entered Madrid. Charles abdicated in favour of his son Ferdinand VII. who, being decoyed into France under specious pretexts by Napoleon, was made prisoner, and Joseph Buonaparte, brother of the emperor of the French, placed on the Spanish throne.

21. What followed this act of perfidy and violence? The Spaniards refused to receive him; but after many sanguinary conflicts, Joseph made a triumphant entry into Madrid in 1808, and was maintained on the throne for six years by the force of French bayonets.

22. How was he expelled? The Spanish nation sought the alliance of England. The French were overthrown in a series of battles and campaigns by the British forces under lord (now duke of) Wellington and his generals: among these may be mentioned the battles of Talavera, Salamanca, and Vittoria. Joseph and the French were forced to retreat across the Pyrenees in 1813, and Ferdinand VII. was restored to the throne 1814.

23. Mention some of the chief events of his reign. He governed at first as an absolute monarch, but in 1820 was compelled to give the kingdom a constitutional form of government. This, however, was soon after repressed by the armed interference of the French.

24. The Spanish colonies in South America threw off their allegiance to the mother-country, and established their independence 1825-6.

25. Ferdinand, at a special convocation of the Cortes, revoked the operation of the Salic law, which had hitherto prevailed in Spain; and dying soon after, was succeeded by Isabella II., his infant daughter by Maria Christina, sister to the king of Naples, 1833. This disposal of the crown being resisted by Don Carlos, Ferdinand's brother, a long and sanguinary civil war ensued, which, with British aid, at length terminated in the triumph of the young queen, and the establishment of free institutions.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

3. Who settled in Spain? Who vainly tried to subdue it? At what period?
4. What great men were born in Spain?
5. Who supplanted the first hordes of barbarians? Who was the first Gothic king? By whom were the Goths defeated? How far did the Saracens carry their conquests?
8. When was the kingdom of Castile founded? that of Portugal? By whom? Whither were the Moors

driven ? When were they finally expelled ? 9. What signalized the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella ? 10. Who was the first of the Austrian line of kings ? 11. When did he die ? What happened in his reign ? 12. Whom did Philip II. marry ? What battle did he win, supported by the English ? How did he show his cruelty and bigotry ? What became of his armada ?

13. What happened in the reign of Philip III. ? What was his character ? 14. Who was prime-minister to Philip IV. ? In whom did the Austrian line end ? In whom that of Bourbon commence ? 16. What did Spain lose by the treaty of Utrecht ? 18. What were the chief events of the reign of Charles IV. ? Who controlled the affairs of state ? 20. How did Joseph Buonaparte obtain the Spanish throne ? 22. How did he lose it ? 23. What was Ferdinand obliged to grant his subjects ? How was he enabled to recall it ? 24. What possessions did Spain now lose ? 25. What caused a civil war in Spain ? What the result ?

---

### SECTION XI.

- |                                                  |                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 2. Assump'tion, <i>s.</i> the act of taking.     | 6. Specula'tion, <i>s.</i> a trading venture. |
| 3. Ep'ithet, <i>s.</i> term denotive of quality. | 7. Rapa'city, <i>s.</i> pursuit of plunder.   |

### PORTUGAL.

1. How is Portugal bounded ? On the north and east by Spain : and on the south and west by the Atlantic. Lisbon is the capital.

2. What are the chief events in the early portion of the history of Portugal ? Its first king was Alphonso, son of Henry of Besançon : he defeated the Moors in the decisive battle of Ourique, 1139, and was proclaimed king by his army. His reign was chiefly spent in wars with the Moors, and with the kings of Leon and Castile, who disputed his assumption of the regal title.

3. The principal feature in the reigns of his successors down to Dinis, was the warfare carried on against the Moors, whom they expelled. Dinis was a good and enlightened monarch, and received the epithet of "father of his country." He died in 1325.

4. When did Portugal rise to eminence ? In the latter part of the fourteenth century. John I. wrested the fortress of Ceuta, in Africa, from the Moors, 1415. His son Henry (the navigator) in 1420 reached the Madeiras, which had been previously discovered by Machin, an Englishman, and sailed as far south as Sierra Leone, which is within a few degrees of the equator. Lisbon was made the capital of Portugal in this reign.

5. What occurred in the reign of Alphonso V., his grandson ? The Portuguese vigorously prosecuted the war on the African coast against the Moors, and took Tangiers. The Azores and Canary Islands were discovered and colonized, and literature promoted.

6. What occurred in the reign of his successors, John II.

and Manoel? The spirit of maritime discovery was carried to its highest pitch; the coast of Africa explored, and certain points colonized; the Cape of Good Hope reached, and the commerce of Portugal greatly extended. John died in 1395, and was succeeded by his son Manoel, in whose reign the Portuguese fleet rounded the Cape, and proceeded by that route to India, where they formed several establishments for commerce, and carried on their speculations with such enterprise and success, as to raise Portugal to great commercial and political importance.

7. When did this country decline? When Philip II. of Spain took possession of the throne, on failure of the direct line of its kings, England and Holland attacked and conquered her maritime possessions, one after the other; and the rapacity and ill-management of the Spanish governors threw the affairs of the kingdom into discord.

8. By whom was Portugal rescued from the Spanish yoke? By John, duke of Braganza, 1640. Brazil, which had been seized upon by Holland, was restored in the reign of Alphonso VI., his son, but the kingdom never recovered its former prosperity. The Jesuits, who were admitted into Portugal by John III., were banished 1759.

9. What events of note took place at the beginning of the present century? The Spaniards, then in league with the French, invaded Portugal, 1801. The French under Junot entered it in 1807, when John VI. embarked for Brazil, under the protection of an English fleet. The battles of Vimiera and Cintra, in which the English under Sir Arthur Wellesley defeated the French, again set the country free; but it was for a considerable period afterwards the occasional theatre of warlike operations.

10. What events of note have since occurred? The Revolution in 1820; the return of king John in 1822; his death in 1826; the usurpation of Don Miguel; his expulsion by his brother Don Pedro; the accession of Donna Maria, the daughter of the latter, to the throne, 1835; and the restoration of tranquillity.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

2. In what battle were the Moors dislodged from Portugal? By whom? In what wars was he engaged? 3. What was the character of the interval between this reign and that of Dinis? What was he called? 4. What occurred in the reign of John I.? 5. When, and by whom, was Tangiers taken? What islands were now colonized?

6. What distinguished the reign of John II.? of Manoel? 7. What misfortunes happened to Portugal in Philip's time? 8. Who restored her independence? Who were banished the kingdom? 9. By whom, and in what battles, were the French defeated? 10. Who usurped the throne? Who expelled him? Who obtained the crown?



## SECTION XII.

5. *Tri'but'e, s. payment to a superior.* | 16. *Pre'to'rian guard, s. state troops to 10. Innova'tions, s. reforms; changes.* protect the person of the king.

## TURKEY.

1. How is Turkey in Europe bounded? On the north by Austria and Russia; on the west by Dalmatia and the Adriatic; on the south by Greece, the Archipelago, and the Sea of Marmora; and on the east by the Black Sea. Constantinople is the capital, and Adrianople the city next in importance.

2. After the capture of Constantinople by the sultan Mohammed II., what events of importance marked his reign? Servia was conquered by the Turks, who also made incursions into Wallachia, Moldavia, Transylvania, Hungary, and Germany. Otranto in Italy was taken 1479, Scanderberg defeated, and Epirus added to the empire.

3. Who was the next sultan worthy of note? Selim I., 1512, a cruel, but active and brave monarch. He defeated the Persians, and added Egypt to the empire.

4. Who succeeded him? Solyman I., surnamed the Great. He took Belgrade, the key of Hungary, and reduced Wal-

lachia. Louis, king of Hungary, lost his life in the battle of Mohatz, 1526, against Solyman, who now advanced to Vienna, but was forced to retreat.

5. He then sent an army to chastise the schah of Persia, another supported by a fleet against the Venetians, and with a third again took the field against Ferdinand of Austria, from whom he wrested part of Hungary, and exacted tribute for the remainder. During this reign Turkey reached the summit of her power and prosperity, and the death of Solyman is regarded as the commencement of the era of her declension.

6. Who succeeded? Selim II., 1566; he conquered the province of Yemen in Arabia, took Cyprus from the Venetians, and Tunis from the Spaniards. The Turkish navy commanded by Ali Moezzin was almost annihilated by Don Juan of Austria in the battle of Lepanto, 1571, but was soon rebuilt.

7. What is worthy of note in the reign of Amurath III., 1574? The Turkish territories were extended, and ambassadors sent to him from all the nations of Europe. The Byzantine empire, under Justinian, was not so extensive as the Turkish at this period.

8. Mention a few of his successors next in order, and some of the leading facts of their reigns. Mohammed III., 1595, son of the preceding; he put his nineteen brothers to death. The war with Austria continued: Transylvania submitted to the Turks.

9. Ahmed I., 1603, was unsuccessful in his wars with Persia and Austria. The latter power defeated the Turks in many bloody battles, and compelled them to conclude the peace of Sitvatorok, 1606: this was the first trace of an international law between Turkey and the European powers.

10. Osman III., 1617, was put to death by the Janissaries for attempting innovations, in 1622. His successors, Mustapha and Hussein Pacha, were also deposed by them. In the reign of Amurath IV. Turkey was chiefly occupied in a war with Persia, which was obliged to give up Bagdad.

11. Mention some particulars of the reigns next in order. Ibrahim I. took part of Candia from the Venetians: he was put to death by the Janissaries. In the reign of his son Mohammed IV., 1654, war was renewed with Austria, Venice, and Poland. With 200,000 men he encamped under the walls of Vienna, 14th July, 1683, and that capital would have shared the fate of Constantinople, but for the heroic resistance of the citizens and the feeble garrison commanded by count Starhemberg.

12. Succours from different quarters arrived in September: the Turks were completely defeated, and the victory was mainly due to the military talents of John Sobieski, king of Poland. Hungary was recovered from Turkey.

The Venetians captured several places in Epirus and Greece, and at last Morosini took Athens from the Turks, and forced them to evacuate Greece. Mohammed was then deposed by the Janissaries, 1687.

13. What are the main features of the subsequent history of Turkey? Frequent wars with the European powers and Persia, and gradual decline. Venice was confirmed in possession of the Morea, as far as the Isthmus of Corinth, 1699, but lost it again in 1714. The renowned Nadir Kouli Khan usurped the throne of Persia, and about 1746 compelled the Turks to restore the provinces which had been wrested from Persia in previous wars.

14. In the wars with Russia, commencing in 1768, Turkey lost a considerable portion of her territory, and was brought to a state of political dependence on that power, which she has never since been able to shake off.

15. How many sultans reigned, from Mohammed IV. to the accession of the present sultan? Nine in all. The most energetic of these was Selim III., 1789, who commenced several reforms, in which, however, he was disturbed by wars with foreign powers, and rebellion in his own territories. He endeavoured to introduce European discipline among his troops, but was opposed by the Janissaries, made a prisoner in the seraglio, and afterwards murdered.

16. Who were the Janissaries, and how were they finally crushed? They were a military body, originally consisting of Christian slaves, who were educated in Mahometanism from infancy. They formed the household troops, or pretorian guard, of the sultans, many of whom they raised to the throne, or deposed at pleasure.

17. Mahmud II., 1808, was the only prince who was at length successful in his attempts to crush this formidable body. By a bold and decided movement he surprised and surrounded them in 1822, and effected their total destruction. This sultan introduced many radical reforms into the army and government, but was unfortunate in his wars with Russia, Greece, and Egypt, and lost much territory. At his death, 1839, his son Abdul Medjid succeeded to the throne at the early age of sixteen.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What are the two chief cities of Turkey in Europe? 3. What was the character of Selim I.? 4, 5. What were the exploits of Solyman? 6. What conquests did Selim II. make? What did he lose? 9. What peace was made? 10. Who put Osman III. to death? Why?

11. What did Ibrahim I. take from the Venetians? What was his end? 12. By whom was Athens taken? 13. What did Nadir Schah do? 14. Under what influence did Turkey fall? 15. What did Selim III. attempt? What his end? 16. What was the origin and power of the Janissaries? 17. What did Mahmud II. effect?



## KEY TO THE MAP.

|               |                 |                 |                |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. Surbis.    | ISLANDS.        | 15. Tinos.      | 27. Nio.       |
| 2. Kuno.      | 2. Agio Strato. | 16. Gt. Delas.  | 28. Antiparos. |
| 3. Scala.     | 6. Pelagonia.   | 18. Syra.       | 29. Paros.     |
| 4. Thebes.    | 7. Scopelo.     | 19. Therma.     | 30. Naxia.     |
| 5. Calamo.    | 8. Skiatho.     | 20. Serpho.     | 31. Amorgo.    |
| 6. Lessina.   | 9. Scangero.    | 21. Siphno.     | 33. Stanpalia. |
| 7. Mycenæ.    | 10. Skyros.     | 22. Argentero.  | 34. Scarpanto. |
| 10. Leontari. | 11. Psera.      | 23. Milo.       | 36. Cerigo.    |
| 11. Olympia.  | 12. Zea.        | 24. Polycandro. | 37. Cerigono.  |
| —             | 14. Andros.     | 25. Santirini.  | 39. Egina.     |

## SECTION XIII.

6. Concede, *r.* to grant; yield.  
7. Ar'bitrary, *a.* despotic; absolute. | 7. Con'gress, *s.* a national meeting.  
Diplomat'ic, *a.* respecting an envoy.

## GREECE.

1. How is modern Greece bounded? On the north by Turkey; on the west and south by the Mediterranean; and on the east by the Archipelago. Athens is the capital.

2. What befell Greece on the downfall of the Roman empire? It was overrun by the Goths A.D. 267, and again in 398, under Alaric; after being occupied by the Crusaders and Venetians, it fell at last into the power of the Turks, on the conquest of Constantinople.

3. What was the state of Greece under the Turkish rule? It was subject to the most grievous oppression from its tyrannic masters, and reduced to a state of extreme degradation, which it bore tamely for centuries: but at length

the Greeks, roused from their debasing lethargy, and fired with an emulation of the heroic deeds and free condition of their ancestors, took arms against their oppressors, and for several years maintained an arduous and sanguinary contest, which finally ended in their emancipation.

4. How did the rest of Europe regard this struggle? The young and enthusiastic spirits of Europe viewed it as a just revolt, and hoped for its success in the restoration of this fallen country to its ancient classical and political eminence. Among the many volunteers who went to aid them by their personal exertions, was the celebrated poet Lord Byron, of whose services, however, they were soon deprived by his death, of a fever, at Missolonghi.

5. Mention some particulars of the revolution by which this country was rescued from the Turkish yoke. It commenced in 1820. The Greeks succeeded in defeating the Turks by sea, and driving them out of the Morea. The sultan of Turkey called the Egyptians to his aid, and these, under Ibrahim Pacha, had nigh made themselves masters of the Peloponnesus, when Great Britain, France, and Russia interfered to put an end to the war.

6. What contributed essentially to the restoration of Greek independence? The Egyptian and Turkish fleets were destroyed in the battle of Navarino, 1827, and their land forces compelled to quit Greece: its independence was recognised by the allied powers, 1829; which the sultan also conceded in 1832.

7. In the mean time what had been going forward in Greece? The Greeks assembled a congress at Træzen, to settle the basis of their internal government. John Capo d'Istria, a diplomatic agent of Russia, was chosen president; but his arbitrary measures provoked an insurrection, and he was murdered in open day at Nauplia.

8. How were these disturbances quelled? His brother assumed the presidency, but was soon compelled to resign. The crown of Greece was conferred by the allied powers on Otho, younger son of the king of Bavaria, in 1833; but his administration not proving satisfactory to the Greek nation, a peaceful revolution took place in 1843, when the free constitution originally promised was established, and he now reigns as a limited monarch.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

5. Who interfered for the Greeks? What had they done for themselves before this?
6. By what powers were they recognised as independent? When? When acknowledged by the sultan?
7. Who was Capo d'Istria? What his end? Why?
8. Who obtained the crown of Greece? When? What followed?

## CHAPTER IX.

## English, Scottish, and French Sovereigns.

## SECTION I.

## ENGLISH REIGNS.

1. Appen'dage, *s.* an addition. | 1. Hep'tarchy, *s.* a kingdom subdivided  
6. Len'ity, *s.* mildness; mercy. | into seven governments.

*From the Heptarchy to the Norman Conquest.*

BRITAIN, before its invasion by the Romans, B. C. 55, was in a state of warlike barbarism. Julius Cæsar, allured by the beauty of the island, directed his ambitious views to our coasts; but the hardy natives, though attacked, were not subdued by him: at length Agricola, general under the emperor Domitian, secured and extended the Roman conquests. South Britain then became an appendage to that extensive empire.

About three centuries after this, the Goths, and other barbarous nations, threatened Rome herself with destruction; her legions were then removed from Britain, and the Scots and Picts, availing themselves of the defenceless state of the country, plundered it without mercy. In vain did the Britons implore assistance from their former masters; Rome feared for her own safety, and, repulsed there, they sought protection from the Saxons, a fierce, turbulent people, who had settled in Denmark and the north of Germany. Hengist and Horsa, two Saxon chiefs, attended by a needy train of freebooters, checked the progress of the enemy, and the Britons, grateful for the supposed favour, allowed the Saxons a residence in the Isle of Thanet. But preferring the smiling plains of Albion to their own barren soil, they soon enlarged this boundary, resolved upon conquering the Britons, and after many struggles, succeeded in their attempts, finally establishing upon the island seven kingdoms, well known by the title of the Saxon Heptarchy.

*Saxon Line.*

1. EGBERT, first king of all England: he was the descendant of the West Saxon kings, and after obtaining their throne in the year 800, by turns subdued the kingdoms of the Heptarchy, and was acknowledged sole monarch in 827, about four hundred years after the first landing of the Saxons in Britain: he was a brave and wise prince, and had frequent battles with the Danes. The arts now dawned in Europe, but the little learning of the times was confined

to the monks : the Church History of Bede was written not long before this period.

2. Ethelwolf, the son of Egbert, 838 : he occasionally defeated the Danes, but possessed not his father's abilities. He was the slave of monkish superstition, compelling each British family to pay to Rome annually the tribute called Peter's pence, which was abolished by Henry VIII. Ethelbald, the eldest son of Ethelwolf, conspired against the peace of the kingdom ; the dispute was settled by the offer which Ethelwolf made to share his dominions with his rebellious son : it was accepted, and the king died soon after.

3. Ethelbald and Ethelbert, sons of king Ethelwolf, reigned jointly, 858 : tithes were now first collected by the clergy. Ethelbald died in 860, and his brother, from that period to his death, reigned alone, defeating and repulsing the Danes, who ravaged the country and burnt the city of Winchester.

4. Ethelred, the younger brother of Ethelbert, ascended the throne 866 : he was engaged in continual wars with the Danes, who in this reign plundered the city of York. He lost his life in battle, leaving the crown to his brother Alfred.

5. Alfred the Great, 872, was adorned with many virtues and magnanimous qualities. Rollo, the Norman chief, flourished at this period. Alfred fought many successful battles with the Danes, whom he at length completely reduced, though in the beginning of his reign he had experienced many reverses of fortune from them : he was one of the wisest and best of princes ; his prudent and judicious regulations secured the willing homage of his subjects. He increased the British fleet, rebuilt the city of London, carefully cultivated the arts, and founded or restored the university of Oxford.

6. Edward the elder, son of Alfred, succeeded in 900, when under age : he obliged the Scots to sue for peace, and reduced the revolted Welch to obedience. He possessed his father's strength of mind and unquestioned valour, but wanted his taste for learning and the arts, his justice and lenity.

7. Athelstan, natural son of Edward the elder, 925 ; a good and great prince : he ordered the Scriptures to be translated into the Saxon language, and was the decided friend of commerce, promoting navigation by several wise regulations : he had many wars with the Scots. Guy, earl of Warwick, lived in this reign.

8. Edmund the Pious, son of Edward the elder, 941 : religion and valour were in him united. He instituted capital punishments for crimes in his kingdom ; and enacted, that gangs of robbers being discovered, the oldest among them should be selected from the rest to suffer death.

Leolf, the robber, resenting this law, entered the king's presence at the feast celebrated in memory of the Saxon conversion to Christianity; the exasperated king, who had formerly banished him, insisted on his leaving the room; Leolf drew a dagger, and stabbed the monarch to the heart.

9. Edred, son of Edward the elder, and nephew to Edmund, was elected to the throne, 948, the sons of Edmund being judged too young to support the cares of government. He reigned ingloriously, dedicating the greatest part of his time to the monks; and by their persuasion founded some monasteries and abbeys—Glastonbury in particular. Dunstan, the monk, obtained complete ascendancy over him.

10. Edwy, the nephew of Edmund the Pious, 955: he showed great antipathy to the monks, and ejected some of them from their benefices. Dunstan was banished the kingdom by him: the clergy, highly incensed, fomented a rebellion, and in the fifth year of Edwy's reign, his brother Edgar, a boy twelve years of age, was placed on the throne by them. Edwy died of grief shortly after.

11. Edgar, 959, though occasionally under the dominion of the priests, who fixed him on the throne, yet revived the naval glory of England; and his reign was one of the best at this period. He overawed the Scots and Northumbrians, quieted domestic troubles, and repelled foreign invasion with uniform success.

12. Edward the Martyr, son of Edgar by his first wife, 975: he succeeded his father at the age of twelve. His short reign was passed in peace; but his mother-in-law, Elfrida, wishing to raise a party in favour of her own son, Ethelred, watched her opportunity, and when the king called upon her at Corfe Castle, she basely caused him to be stabbed in the back, while drinking to her health in a glass of wine.

13. Ethelred the Second, son of Edgar and Elfrida, succeeded, 979, aged twelve: he was an indolent prince; his subjects rebelled, and Sweyn, king of Denmark, being his declared enemy, Ethelred treacherously commanded the massacre of all the Danes who had settled in England. Upon this, Sweyn entered the kingdom and defeated the English monarch, who was compelled to pay him a considerable sum to induce him to return to Denmark: he complied, but soon came back again, and Ethelred had no alternative but to fly the kingdom. On the death of Sweyn the English prince ventured back, and found that Canute, the son of Sweyn, had seized upon the throne: Ethelred compelled him to retire, but he made another successful effort, and had subjugated the greatest part of England, when Ethelred died.

14. Edmund Ironside, the warlike son of the weak Ethelred, succeeded his father, 1016: he was opposed by Canute,

who besieged London; Edmund obliged him to raise the siege, and twice defeated him. Canute after this obtained a victory, and it was finally agreed to share the kingdom between them. Edmund, after reigning one year, was assassinated, and Canute then ruled alone.

*Danish Line.*

15. Canute the Great, son of Sweyn, 1017: he endeavoured to gain the affection of the English people by many acts of clemency; rebuilt the devastated monasteries and abbeys, and was feared and respected by neighbouring powers, being king of England, Denmark, and Norway. After a long and glorious reign, he left by will the kingdom of Norway to his natural son, Sweyn; to Hardicanute, Denmark; and to Harold, England.

16. Harold Harefoot, or Harold the First, son of Canute, 1036: he reigned only three years, and was ever on bad terms with his brother Hardicanute, who fancied he had a superior claim upon the English crown. Harold was dissipated and weak, and justly odious to his subjects, who rejoiced in his death.

17. Hardicanute, the brother of Harold, 1039: his reign was disgraceful and short; his days were spent in riot and debauchery, and he fell a martyr to excessive gluttony. The day of his death was for some time kept as a festival among the English, by the name of Hock holiday. Earl Godwin lived in this reign.

*Saxon Line restored.*

18. Edward the Confessor, 1041: the vices of Hardicanute had so alienated the minds of his people, that they determined on the restoration of the Saxon line in the person of Edward the Confessor. Earl Godwin, whose court intrigues and crimes had already made him conspicuous, offered his assistance to secure the crown to Edward, on condition that he would marry his daughter. The king complied from necessity, but could never treat Godwin with cordiality, having strongly suspected him, in Harold's reign, of murdering his younger brother; he kept up appearances with Godwin: and after defeating the Danes and Welch, he converted Westminster church into an abbey, where he built his own tomb. He was the last king of Egbert's race, though Harold, his successor, was also a Saxon.

19. Harold II., 1066, son of earl Godwin. He resembled his father in his ambitious views, but in virtue and ability was his superior. Harold gained the affection of the English by his insinuating manners, and on the death of Edward found little difficulty in ascending the throne. He revised the laws, and administered justice with impartiality; defeated Halfagar, king of Norway, and seized upon the

Norwegian fleet; but the invasion of William, duke of Normandy, changed his brilliant prospects, and engaging his rival at the battle of Hastings, Harold was killed, sincerely regretted by his subjects.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. How many kings were there in all of the Saxon line? Who were the best of the Saxon kings? When did Egbert ascend the throne of England?
  2. What was the character of his successor? What happened in his reign?
  3. What in that of his son's?
  4. What disturbed the reign of Ethelred?
  5. What signalized that of Alfred?
  6. What was the character of Edward the elder?
  7. What were the acts of Athelstan?
  8. Of Edmund the Pious, and his end?
  9. Who gained undue influence over Edred?
  10. What befell Edwy?
  11. What was the character of king Edgar's reign?
  12. Of Edward the Martyr's, and his end?
  13. What happened in the reign of Ethelred to the Danes?
  14. What occurred in the reign of his successor?
  15. Over what kingdoms did Canute rule?
  16. What was the character of Harold, his son?
  17. Of Hardicanute?
  18. How many kings were there in all of the Danish line?
  19. Who were the best of the Danish race?
  20. How, and with whom, did the renewed Saxon line of kings terminate?
- 

### SECTION II.

#### *From the Norman Conquest to the Reformation.*

- |                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Curfew-bell, <i>s.</i> a bell which rang at eight o'clock every evening, when all domestic lights and fires were to be extinguished. | 7. Magna Charta, <i>s.</i> literally, 'a great paper.'—It contained the grant of important rights and privileges to the English nobles and people. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. WILLIAM the Conqueror, 1066, natural son of Robert duke of Normandy, possessed a capacious mind and irrepressible courage. He claimed the English crown of right, as being bequeathed to him by Edward the Confessor: to enforce his ambitious views he collected a warlike and well-equipped force, and landed at Pevensey, in Sussex, when a severe and obstinate conflict secured him the conquest of the realm. He caused a general survey of the lands to be made; in his reign began the first wars with France, the Norman laws and language were introduced, and many forts built. He reigned with arbitrary sway, and instituted the curfew-bell.

2. William Rufus, 1087, was cruel and irreligious. He invaded Normandy, the dukedom of his brother, who was engaged in the crusades; and was killed by an arrow in the New Forest, Hampshire.

3. Henry I., 1100: he purchased the throne by seizing upon his brother's treasures; suffered the clergy to assume excessive power, and having conquered Normandy from his

brother Robert, cruelly confined him in prison. Henry's abilities were great, but his conduct exceptionable.

4. Stephen, 1135, seized upon the throne; a long and bloody war ensued; many forts were built by the barons: his crown, after several battles, settled upon Henry, grandson to Henry I., but Stephen was allowed to enjoy it for life. He was famed for personal valour.

5. Henry II., 1154: a wise and great prince. Thomas à-Becket was first his favourite, afterwards his tormentor. Henry endeavoured to reduce the power of the pope and clergy; he conquered Ireland; appointed assizes and circuits. The well-known *fair Rosamond* lived in his reign.

6. Richard I., 1189: he engaged in the crusades, took the town of Askalon, and performed many acts of valour. He was afterwards detained prisoner by the emperor of Germany, but ransomed by his subjects. During his wars with France, he besieged the castle of Chalons, and was killed there by an arrow.

7. John, 1199: he murdered his nephew; quarrelled with the pope, and was excommunicated; signed Magna Charta, the bulwark of English liberty; entered into a war with France and his own barons; and died deservedly detested.

8. Henry III., 1216, was weak and irresolute: his was a long minority; he was prevailed upon to violate Magna Charta; his barons rebelled, a civil war followed, but an accommodation took place, and they returned to their allegiance. The famous earl of Leicester was his chief opponent.

9. Edward I., 1272: he conquered Wales, massacred the Welch bards, enacted useful laws, and was called the English Justinian: he granted the Cinque Ports their peculiar privileges. The renowned William Wallace, and the English Roger Bacon, flourished. Edward's heart was buried in the Holy Land.

10. Edward II., 1307, encouraged favourites, and lost the affections of a loyal people: he wanted his father's strength of mind to keep the barons in obedience. His queen, at their head, made war upon him; he was compelled to abdicate the throne, and was afterwards murdered in Berkeley-castle, Gloucestershire.

11. Edward III., 1327. He subdued Scotland, and defeated the French in the battles of Cressy and Poictiers; had two kings prisoners in his court; encouraged the various manufactures. His conquests added more to the glory than the real happiness of his subjects, and he left his kingdom in an impoverished condition.

12. Richard II., 1377, was thoughtless and prodigal: the insurrection, headed by Wat Tyler, on account of the poll-tax, was in his reign; the king suppressed it in person. The earl of Hereford, son of the duke of Lancaster, was banished, but returned before the expiration of the time, seized upon

the throne, and confined Richard in the castle of Pontefract, where he was starved.

13. Henry IV., 1399, reigned with wisdom and prudence: the earl of Northumberland, who had assisted him in gaining the throne, rebelled, but was defeated, and his son, Henry Hotspur, slain. The English marine was greatly increased, but learning in general was at a very low ebb.

14. Henry V., 1413, was powerful and victorious: his conquests in France were numerous and splendid; he gained the battles of Harfleur and Agincourt, and was declared next heir to the French monarchy. In his reign the followers of Wickliffe were severely persecuted. Henry died in the midst of victory.

15. Henry VI., 1422: he was crowned king of France and England. During his minority France was lost, by the misconduct of his generals. Joan of Arc, the maid of Orleans, lived in this reign. The first quarrels between the houses of York and Lancaster; civil wars followed; Henry became the tool of each party in turn, till he was at length murdered in the Tower, by Richard, duke of Gloucester.

16. Edward IV., 1461. The civil wars continued, which destroyed the flower of the English nobility; trade and manufactures, however, notwithstanding these disadvantages, gradually increased; Margaret, wife of Henry VI., died in extreme misery; her son, prince Edward, was killed; and Edward's claim to the throne remained undisputed.

17. Edward V., 1483, succeeded. Being a child, his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, was chosen protector; he murdered the young king, and his brother the duke of York, in the Tower; and seized upon the vacant throne, six months after the death of Edward IV., as

18. Richard III., 1483: he waded to the throne through the blood of his nearest relations: his private character was detestable; but, as a king, he managed the helm of state with success, being valiant and prudent. The earl of Richmond asserted his superior right to the throne; Richard was killed at the battle of Bosworth, and Richmond proclaimed king as

19. Henry VII., 1485: he was prudent and avaricious. America was discovered in his reign by Columbus. Henry suppressed the insurrections headed by Perkin and Simnel, protected the people, humbled the power of his barons, and left his kingdom in a flourishing condition.

20. Henry VIII., 1509: he separated from the Roman church, and was excommunicated; took the title of supreme head of the church of England, and dissolved the religious foundations. Calvin and Luther, the reformers, lived; the famous Wolsey exercised unlimited power, as prime-minister. Henry encouraged the arts and sciences; was cruel and tyrannical; married six wives, and beheaded two.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. What historical events distinguished the reign of William the Conqueror ?
  2. Of William Rufus ? What was his character ?
  3. Of Henry I. ? What was his conduct to his brother Robert ?
  4. What occurred in the time of king Stephen, and of his immediate successors respectively ?
  10. What was the end of Edward II. ?
  11. What the events of the reign of Edward III. ?
  12. Of Richard II. ?
  13. Of Henry IV. ?
  14. What did Henry V. achieve ?
  15. When did the wars between York and Lancaster commence ?
  16. Whom did they destroy ?
  18. What was the character of Richard III. ? What his end ?
  19. What was discovered in the time of Henry VII. ?
  20. What took place in the reign of Henry VIII. ?
- 

## SECTION III.

5. Prerog'ative, *s.* a peculiar privilege. | 15. Disfran'chise, *v.* to deprive of elect.   
6. Spe'cious, *a.* showy; plausible. | toral privileges.

*From the Reformation to the present Time.*

1. EDWARD VI., 1547, had great natural abilities : Seymour, duke of Somerset, governed the kingdom during Edward's minority. He encouraged the Reformation, and died very young, leaving the crown to lady Jane Grey, his cousin, she being a Protestant.

2. Mary succeeded, 1553, after deposing Jane Grey, who reigned only ten days, and was afterwards beheaded by Mary's order. Her reign was cruel, and stained with blood : she restored the Catholic religion ; persecuted and burnt the Protestants ; married Philip king of Spain, son of the famous Charles V. ; and died, after a short reign marked with every kind of barbarity.

3. Elizabeth, half-sister to Mary 1558 : she was prudent, accomplished, and skilled in the art of governing a mighty empire. The Spanish armada was defeated by her admirals ; she established the reformed religion ; supported the Protestant interest abroad. In her reign the East India Company was established ; but her glory was tarnished by the unjust death of her rival, the unfortunate Mary queen of Scots.

4. James, the first of England and the sixth of Scotland, 1603, had high notions of kingly power ; he was a learned pedant, and particularly attached to peace. The famous gunpowder-plot occurred in his time. His reign was inglorious ; and his favourites managed the affairs of the state with little reputation.

5. Charles I., 1625, received from his father the same unconstitutional ideas of royal prerogative. His people began to feel their own weight in the scale of empire, and refused to pay the taxes he imposed ; a civil war ensued.

Charles was defeated, taken prisoner, and beheaded by the parliament, in the year 1649.

6. Oliver Cromwell then usurped the regal power, under the specious title of Protector of the realm. He rose from a low station to the high office he at last attained ; defeated the wandering son of king Charles ; raised the English name among foreign nations ; and at his death his son Richard was proclaimed in his room, 1658.

7. Charles II. restored the monarchical power, 1660, the unambitious Richard being unequal to the arduous task of government. Charles was profligate and capricious, but reigned with almost absolute sway : his brother James, though a professed Roman Catholic, succeeded him. This reign was memorable for many imaginary plots against the government, the machinations of the infamous Titus Oates, and the unjust deaths of Algernon Sydney and lord Russell.

8. James II. ascended the throne 1685, with a determined resolution to abolish the national religion. He was reconciled, in the name of the people of England, to the pope ; and wished to make his own will, not the laws of the land, his rule for governing. The nation unanimously resolved to oppose his arbitrary designs, and called over William, prince of Orange, to defend and protect their rights and religious opinions. James was obliged to abdicate the throne, and died in France.

9. William III., and Mary, the daughter of James II., were called to fill the English throne, 1688. William humbled France, and made himself formidable to the European powers ; the Bill of Rights received the sanction of parliament, and the laws in general were revised and amended.

10. Anne, daughter of James II., succeeded in 1702. Her reign was rendered famous by the splendid victories of Marlborough. The distinction between Whig and Tory first took place. Her administration increased the nominal glory but not the real happiness of her subjects. The union with Scotland was effected, and this reign is remarkable for the number of learned men which then enlightened Europe.

11. George I., of Hanover, succeeded Anne, 1714. He was prudent, wise, and cautious in the choice of ministers. A rebellion broke out headed by the Pretender, in 1715 ; it was happily quelled, and the heads of the party suffered death. The South Sea scheme was set on foot in this reign, and caused the ruin of thousands.

12. George II., 1727. Another rebellion, in the year 1745, was set on foot by the young Pretender, who was finally defeated at the battle of Culloden. The greater part of North America became dependant upon Britain, and the English arms were every where victorious. Sir Robert Walpole, and the immortal Chatham, were successively prime-ministers.

13. George III., 1760. War broke out between Great Britain and the greater part of her North American colonies, which ended in the establishment of their independence. The French settlements in the East Indies were conquered by the English, and the British possessions in Hindostan considerably enlarged. The legislative independence of Ireland was acknowledged in 1782, and merged in that of England in 1801. The great war between France and the rest of Europe, in which England bore so distinguished a part, and finally triumphed, renders this reign one of the most remarkable in British history. From the year 1811 to his death, George III. was afflicted with insanity, and the prince of Wales was invested with regal authority under the title of Prince Regent; he succeeded to the throne as

14. George IV., in 1820. In this reign the Test and Corporation acts were repealed. His predecessors had firmly resisted the repeal of the penal laws affecting the Roman Catholics of the empire; but in 1829 this important measure was conceded, by which various vexatious penalties and disabilities were removed, and equal political rights secured to all classes of British subjects. England, during this reign, generally enjoyed peace.

15. William IV., 1830. The Reform bill was passed, by which many of the old decayed boroughs were disfranchised, and the power of sending members to parliament conferred on several towns that had risen into importance in modern times: the right of voting was also considerably extended. Negro slavery was abolished in the British dominions, the nation munificently granting the sum of twenty millions sterling to effect this righteous object. By the aid of England, France, and Russia, Greece recovered her independence.

16. Alexandrina Victoria, 1837. The chief events of the present reign have been already enumerated. The accession of our most gracious queen was hailed with universal satisfaction, and she deservedly enjoys the esteem and attachment of her subjects. She was married to prince Albert Francis Augustus Charles Emanuel, second son of Ernest, late duke of Saxe Coburg and Gotha, February 10th, 1840, and their felicity has been crowned by a numerous offspring.

---

*Questions for Examination.*

- 1, 2. Relate some particulars of the period of Edward VI. and Mary.
3. What were the events of Elizabeth's reign?
4. What celebrated plot was frustrated in the reign of James I.?
8. What monarch attempted to subvert the Protestant religion?
11. When did the Pretender's rebellion take place?
12. When that headed by the young Pretender?
13. When did America acquire her independence?
15. In whose reign was the Reform Bill passed?

## SECTION IV.

- |                                              |                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Aborig'inal, <i>s.</i> earliest; primary. | 21. Ag'grandize, <i>v.</i> to make great.         |
| 13. Hom'age, <i>s.</i> fealty; submission.   | 22. Jurispru'dence, <i>s.</i> the science of law. |
| 16. Vassal, <i>s.</i> a subject, or slave.   | 24. Syc'ophants, <i>s.</i> flatterers.            |

## SCOTTISH KINGS.

1. THAT part of Great Britain called Scotland, was first discovered by the Romans in the time of Agricola; they gave it the name of Caledonia, which continued till they left the island. The inhabitants were called Picti by the venerable Bede: in the eleventh century the country was called Scotia.

2. The aboriginal inhabitants were a tribe of the great Celtic family, called Cimbri. These, B. C. 200, were driven southward and westward by the Caledonians, a Gothic colony from Norway, and here Scottish history may be said to commence; but the epoch of its authentic annals is generally referred to A. D. 414. The Romans were never able to subdue Caledonia. Christianity was introduced in 565; but civilization made very inconsiderable progress till the reign of Malcolm III., A. D. 1057.

3. Subjoined is a list of the earlier Scottish kings:—

| A. D.             | A. D. | A. D.                   |     |                       |      |
|-------------------|-------|-------------------------|-----|-----------------------|------|
| Goran .....       | 501   | Mordach .....           | 721 | Ethus .....           | 874  |
| Eugene III..      | 535   | Elfinius .....          | 730 | Gregory the Great ..  | 875  |
| Congal II. .      | 558   | Eugene VIII..           | 761 | Donald VI. ....       | 892  |
| Kinathal .....    | 569   | Fergus III. .           | 764 | Constantine III. .... | 903  |
| Aidan .....       | 570   | Salvathus .....         | 767 | Malcolm I. ....       | 943  |
| Kenneth I. .      | 604   | Achaius .....           | 787 | Indulph .....         | 958  |
| Eugene IV. .      | 605   | Congal III. .           | 819 | Duffus .....          | 968  |
| Ferchard I. .     | 622   | Dougal .....            | 824 | Cullen .....          | 972  |
| Maldrum .....     | 668   | Alpin .....             | 831 | Kenneth III. ....     | 977  |
| Eugene V. .       | 688   | Kenneth II. .           | 833 | Constantine IV. ....  | 994  |
| Eugene VI. .      | 692   | (he subdued the Picts). |     | Grimus.....           | 995  |
| Ambes Keleth, 702 |       | Donald V. ....          | 854 | Malcolm II. ....      | 1004 |
| Eugene VII. .     | 704   | Constantine II. .       | 858 | Duncan .....          | 1033 |

4. Duncan was a prince of pacific temper and great virtues; he was treacherously murdered by Macbeth, his general, and distinguished friend.

5. Macbeth, 1040. This tyrant usurped the throne, to the prejudice of Malcolm, son of Duncan, who, with his younger brother Donaldblain, took refuge in England. Macbeth's reign was as short as it was cruel, being killed in a war with the English, who armed in favour of Duncan's children.

6. Malcolm III., 1057, long an exile in England, ascended the throne of his ancestors upon the death of Macbeth: he introduced among the Scots the custom of giving surnames; and during the crusades assisted Godfrey, earl of Boulogne, in the reduction of Jerusalem. This wise and valiant mo-

narch was killed, with one of his sons, at the siege of Alnwick.

7. Donaldblain, or Donald VII., 1092, uncle to Malcolm III.: his reign was short, being dethroned by Duncan, natural son of Malcolm.

8. Duncan II., 1094. The transient authority which this prince possessed, was marked chiefly by his vices: he died without children.

9. Edgar, 1096, son of Malcolm III., was a good king, and cherished the interests of his subjects.

10. Alexander I., 1107; a king of mean capacity and unsteady conduct.

11. David I. was cotemporary with Stephen, king of England, 1124. His valour was unquestioned, and his liberality to churchmen great: he compiled a code of Scottish laws, built many religious edifices, and reigned gloriously.

12. Malcolm IV., 1153, grandson of David. His actions are little celebrated, and his reign is chiefly memorable for the origin of the power engrossed by the Stuart family,—Walter, one of the king's courtiers, being appointed seneschal, or steward of Scotland, from which employment his descendants derived their family name.

13. William, surnamed the Lion, 1165, was frequently at war with England; and being taken prisoner at the battle of Alnwick by Henry II., that monarch refused to release him till he had done homage in his own name, and that of his successors.

14. Alexander II., 1214, son of William the Lion; he was often at war with the Norwegians, who invaded the Scottish isles.

15. Alexander III., 1249; a prince of great virtues. In this reign the Norwegians were completely defeated, and obliged to retire from the isles. Alexander's issue failing, the crown was claimed by the descendants of David earl of Huntingdon, brother to William the Lion.

16. 1285. An interregnum of some years succeeded, whilst the rival candidates asserted their claims, all descended from David in different degrees of affinity. Of twelve competitors the most distinguished were John Baliol, great grandson to David, by his eldest daughter; and Robert Bruce, grandson by the youngest. The nobles agreeing to refer the decision of this question to Edward I. of England, he adjudged the throne to Baliol, as his vassal.

17. John Baliol, 1299, was more the creature of Edward than a monarch possessing uncontrollable authority. Gilbert de Umphraville, earl of Angus, and William Wallace, were the foremost of the few who ventured still to assert the independence of Scotland, refusing subjection to Baliol as the deputy of Edward. Soon after this, Baliol, upon the most frivolous pretences, was dethroned by the English

king, and retiring into England, lived in obscurity upon a pension.

18. Robert Bruce, 1306. On the death of his ancestor, (one of the candidates for the throne,) Robert entertained jealous fears of William Wallace; but the forces of Wallace engaging with the army of king Edward I. at Falkirk, were defeated, and their leader suffered death. Robert, upon this, engaged the Scots in his own interest, the nobles seated him upon the throne, and he was afterwards known as the Bruce of Bannockburn, by his signal defeat there of Edward II.—a victory still remembered by the Scots with triumph. The remainder of Robert's reign was a series of uninterrupted successes.

19. David Bruce, or David II., 1329, son of Robert; his minority was disturbed by Edward, son of John Baliol, who, assisted by Edward III. of England, seized the throne, and compelled David to retire into France. The nobles, however, disgusted with the conduct of young Baliol, reinstated David. Some years after, this Scottish king invaded England, in the absence of its prince: he was made prisoner at the battle of Neville's Cross, near Durham, and detained eleven years in captivity, but was afterwards ransomed. Leaving no issue, the crown passed to the Stuart family.

20. Robert Stuart, 1370, the descendant of Walter, seneschal of Scotland, claimed in right of his affinity by marriage to the daughter of David Bruce, being then only baron of Renfrew. He was a prince of uncommon abilities and prudence.

21. Robert III., 1390, son of Robert Stuart, was weak in intellect, and deficient in courage. He committed the toils of government to his brother, the duke of Albany, who took every method to aggrandize his own family. Robert's second son, James, was detained prisoner in England, on his way to France. During the nineteen years he passed in that country, his father's dominions were subject to repeated commotions, and his eldest brother was assassinated by the duke of Albany's command. Robert soon after died, oppressed with age and misfortunes.

22. James I., 1423. This prince had seen in foreign courts the different systems of jurisprudence, and endeavoured, by abridging the power of the nobles, to assert the just prerogatives of the crown: but though he understood the principles of government admirably, the nation was not prepared to receive them; and in the struggle for power, he was assassinated by some of the nobility in a monastery near Perth, whither he had retired. James instituted the office of lords of session.

23. James II., 1437, pursued his father's plan of humbling the nobility; and, seconded by his ministers, aimed at restoring tranquillity and justice; but himself the slave of tur-

bulent passions, in a sudden fit of anger he stabbed William earl of Douglas to the heart. Taking advantage of the weakness betrayed by the next earl, he proceeded to the ruin of his family, and declared his intention to subvert the feudal law; but the splinter of a cannon-ball put an end to his schemes and life, at the early age of thirty.

24. James III., 1460: he, with inferior abilities, embraced the same object, neglecting those of high birth, and lavishing his favours and affections upon a few court sycophants. The exasperated nobles flew to arms; James met them in battle, his army was routed, and himself slain.

25. James IV., 1488, was generous, accomplished, and brave: war was his passion; and, adored by a people who wished by loyal attachment to his person to expiate their offences to his father, he led a gallant army on to the invasion of England. The battle of Flodden Field proved the superior skill of the English; and James, with thirty noblemen of the highest rank, and a large number of barons, fell in the contest; leaving an infant a year old to wield the Scottish sceptre.

26. James V., 1513. The duke of Albany, his near relation, was declared regent; but the king at thirteen assumed the reins of government: he had a great but uncultivated mind, and while he repressed the arrogance of the nobles, he protected commerce, and remodelled the courts of justice. The reformed clergy in Scotland now first launched their thunders against the papal see, though without the concurrence of James. Quarrelling with Henry VIII., he assembled an army; his barons, piqued by his former contempt, reluctantly complied with his summons; and, more intent upon retaliating their injuries than anxious for their own glory, suffered themselves to be shamefully defeated. James felt this affront so keenly, that he died of grief.

27. Mary, queen of Scots, daughter of James V. and Mary of Guise, succeeded, 1542, when only a few days old. She was educated in France; and during her minority, the earl of Arran and Mary of Guise were successively regents. Mary, who had espoused Francis II. of France, upon his death returned to govern her native country: she then married the earl of Darnley, but soon disgusted with his personal qualities, she countenanced his violent death, and was immediately affianced to earl Bothwell, her confederate.

28. The nobles, incensed to the highest degree, rose against her, and being taken prisoner, she was compelled to resign the crown in favour of her son. Escaping from custody, she fled into England, where Elizabeth, betraying the confidence reposed in her by Mary, unjustly sentenced her to death. The beauty, misfortunes, and we may add, the crimes of this celebrated woman, have rendered the annals of her reign peculiarly and painfully interesting.

leaving one son, who was adjudged by the mayors of the palace unfit to support the weight of government, and therefore set aside by them.

19. Clotaire IV., 718, reigned only one year : his indolence was such that he never interfered in the affairs of state, but left all to his ministers.

20. Chilperic II., 719. He emerged from that indolence in which the former Merovingian kings had been plunged; and asserted his right to govern alone, against Charles Martel, a famous mayor of the palace, but with little success.

21. Thiery II., 721. During his minority Charles Martel continued to hold the sovereign authority, (while Thiery bore the name of king,) and distinguished himself by his wisdom and valour.

22. Childeric III., 734, surnamed the Simple, was the last of the Merovingian race. Charles Martel died in this reign: Pepin and Carloman, the sons of Charles, shared the supreme authority, and dethroned Childeric, who died in the monastery where he was confined.

23. Pepin the Little, 760, son of Charles Martel, succeeded to the undivided authority. He abolished the office of mayor of the palace, and governed alone. Pepin was a celebrated hero, and defeated the Saxons, Sclavonians, and Bavarians.

24. Charlemagne and Carloman, the sons of Pepin, 768. Carloman died suddenly, leaving his brother sole monarch of France. He forced a passage over the Alps, overthrew the Lombards in Italy, and assumed the diadem of their kings; gained a decisive victory over the Saracens at Saragossa, and conquered some of the frontier provinces of Spain; but on re-crossing the Pyrenees, was defeated in the celebrated battle of Roncesvalles, in which Roland, the renowned French hero, fell. Charlemagne was long engaged in war with the Saxons, whom he subdued, but not without much bloodshed.

25. In the year 800, being victorious every where, and master of the greater part of Europe, he was crowned Emperor of the West by pope Leo III. He was called by the historians Carolus Magnus, which the French converted into Charlemagne. His empire included Germany, the Netherlands, France, Italy, Spain, as far as the Ebro: from this river to the mouth of the Elbe; from the Atlantic to the mountains of Bohemia, and the Raab in Hungary; and from the British Channel to the Volturno, was the extent of his dominions. Seven years after his coronation the Normans and Danes first began to make descents on the coasts of France. He died in 814, and was buried with great pomp at Aix-la-Chapelle.

26. Louis I., surnamed Le Débonnaire, 814; the son of

### EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE.



#### KEY TO THE MAP.

- |                     |                  |                  |                    |
|---------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Hamburg.         | 16. Antwerp.     | 31. Tours.       | 48. Turin.         |
| 2. Berlin.          | 17. Brussels.    | 32. Angers.      | 49. Genoa.         |
| 3. Cologne.         | 18. Liege.       | 34. Nantes.      | 50. Parma.         |
| 4. Frankfort.       | 19. Abbeville.   | 35. L'Orient.    | 51. Modena.        |
| 5. Aix-la-Chapelle. | 20. Dieppe.      | 36. Brest.       | 52. Pisa.          |
| 6. Mentz.           | 21. Beauvais.    | 37. Rennes.      | 53. Ravenna.       |
| 7. Hanover.         | 22. Rouen.       | 38. Cherbourg.   | 54. Rome.          |
| 8. Coburg.          | 23. Paris.       | 39. Mouline.     | 55. Capua.         |
| 9. Vienna.          | 24. Amiens.      | 40. Geneva.      | 56. Manfredonia.   |
| 10. Anspach.        | 25. St. Quentin. | 41. Lyons.       | 57. Naples.        |
| 11. Ratisbon.       | 26. Strasburg.   | 42. Montpellier. | 58. Taranto.       |
| 12. Salzburg.       | 27. Troyes.      | 44. Bayonne.     | 59. St. Sebastian. |
| 13. Bruck.          | 28. Verdun.      | 45. Bordeaux.    | 60. Pampluna.      |
| 14. Raab.           | 29. Orleans.     | 46. Beaulieu.    | 62. Saragossa.     |
| 15. Amsterdam.      | 30. Blois.       | 47. Marseilles.  | 63. Barcelona.     |

**Charlemagne.** He was weak and superstitious in the highest degree; was twice deposed and taken prisoner by his children; yet, upon being restored to the throne, he pardoned their offences. Soon after this he died; and his sons, Lothaire, Louis, and Charles contending for empire, fought the first famous battle of Fontenay, in which one hundred thousand men, with the flower of the old French nobility, were killed, 841. The brothers now agreed to divide the empire among them: Germany fell to Louis; Italy to Lothaire; and France to Charles.

27. **Charles the Bald**, son of Louis I., 841. In this reign the Normans invaded and plundered France. Charles was hated by his subjects; had few virtues, and many vices. He was poisoned by a Jewish physician, named Ledecias,

in whom he placed great confidence. From this reign the royal authority rapidly declined, and the power of the feudal lords increased.

28. Louis II., surnamed the Stammerer, 877. From this reign the kings of France ceased to possess the empire of Germany, acquired in that of Charlemagne. Louis lavished the honours and estates of the crown; and his abilities were by no means adequate to his high station.

29. Louis III. and Carloman, the children of Louis the Stammerer, 879; they reigned jointly with great harmony. The Normans again ravaged the French provinces, but were attacked and defeated by the brothers. Louis died first, and Carloman did not long survive, being mortally wounded by one of his servants, who was aiming a javelin at a boar.

30. Charles the Fat, 884, emperor of Germany, was invited to accept the French monarchy. He was pious and devout; but wanting abilities and resolution, incurred the contempt of his people, and was declared incapable of holding the reins of government. His subjects unanimously revolted, and a few months of disease and misery, in which he was compelled to beg his bread, were followed by his death.

31. Eudes, 888, was elected after the death of Charles: his reign was short, turbulent, and glorious. He resigned the throne to Charles the Simple, son of Louis the Stammerer; and died shortly after, beloved and regretted.

32. Charles the Simple, 898; he obtained this degrading name from the little improvement he made of the victories he gained over the duke of Lorraine. Rollo, the celebrated Norman chief, established himself in Neustria, which now received the name of Normandy; he swore allegiance to Charles, who gave him his daughter in marriage. This contributed in a great degree to put an end to the incursions of the northern pirates, which had for more than a century desolated the western parts of Europe. Charles's people deserted him, and set up a new king called Rodolph, or Randolph. Charles died in captivity.

33. Rodolph, who had been crowned before the death of Charles, succeeded in 924. He defeated the Normans and Hungarians. After his death, France was again divided by rival claimants.

34. Louis IV., son of Charles the Simple, 936; he seized upon Normandy, and promised Hugh count of Paris to share it with him; but having broken his word, Hugh became his enemy. His army was afterwards routed by the Danes; Louis was carried prisoner to Rouen, and committed to the custody of Hugh, who obliged him to enter Normandy, and restore it again to Richard, its lawful chief.

35. Lothaire, son of Louis, 964; he possessed courage, activity, and vigilance. Hugh, count of Paris, having ceded

his rights to the throne, Lothaire gratefully acknowledged the favour, by bestowing upon him the province of Aquitaine. Hugh died in this reign, leaving a son, who was afterwards the renowned Hugh Capet. Lothaire is said to have been poisoned by his queen.

36. Louis V., surnamed the Slothful, 986 : he reigned only one year, and was poisoned. Hugh Capet, count of Paris and one of the great feudatories of the kingdom, had been appointed his governor ; but the wise counsels of Hugh were totally thrown away upon this headstrong prince, who was hated for his vices, and despised for his folly. He was the last of the Carlovingian race.

### *Questions for Examination.*

1—5. Who were the predecessors of Childebert I. on the throne of France ? To what dynasty did they belong ? Mention a few particulars respecting them severally. 6. What was the character of Childebert ? 7. Of Clotaire I. ? 8. Of Caribert ? 9. Of Chilperic I. ? 10. Of Clotaire II. ? 12. What did Clovis sell to relieve the poor ? 13. Who were the mayors of the palace ? What power did they exercise ? 17. What was the character of Childebert II. ? Mention some particulars of the five last kings of this dynasty.

20. Who was Charles Martel ? 23. What did Pepin effect ? 24. Whom did Charlemagne conquer ? In what famous battle was he defeated ? 25. Who crowned him emperor ? When ? Whence did he derive his name ? What was the extent of his empire ? 26. What number fell in a battle between the sons of Louis ? What battle ? How was his empire divided ? 27. What happened in the reign of Charles the Bald ? What was his character ? 28. Of Louis II. ? his character ? 29. What in the reign of Louis III. ? 30. What was the character of Charles the Fat ? 32. What misfortune befell Charles the Simple ? 36. Who was the last of the Carlovingian dynasty ?

### SECTION VI.

2. Com'promise, *v.* to compound; agree. | 11. Embroil, *v.* to confuse; to distract.  
8. Lep'rrous, *a.* scaly disease of the skin. | 13. Conta/gious, *a.* caught by approach.

#### *From Hugues Capet to Charles VI.*

1. HUGH CAPET was now raised by the nobility to the throne, 987. His reign was happy and glorious. His people felt and admired his virtues ; but the power of the feudal barons was so great, that his authority was only nominally acknowledged in many parts of France. He was the founder of the Capetian dynasty.

2. Robert, the son of Hugh Capet, succeeded, 996. France experienced the sad effects of a dreadful famine in this reign. The pope threatened to excommunicate Robert for marrying Bertha, who was related to his father. His

sons rebelled, instigated by their mother, but he compromised matters with them, and died highly regretted.

3. Henry I., son of Robert, 1031; he was brave, pious, and had many other good qualities. The custom of duelling was so prevalent in this reign, that Henry enacted a severe law to put a stop to it. His people were frequently led out to war; for as he was jealous of the Normans, he tried every method to check their conquests.

4. Philip I., cotemporary with William the Conqueror, 1060. Baldwin, count of Flanders, was regent in his minority. Avarice, perfidy, and ingratitude were the striking features in this king's character. The Crusades were preached up in this reign, by Peter the Hermit. Philip's quarrels with William of England were frequent, and their issue bloody. In the latter part of his life Philip abandoned himself wholly to voluptuous pleasures; and guided by his queen, an ambitious and wicked woman, incurred the just hatred of his subjects.

5. Louis VI., surnamed the Gross, assumed the government in 1108, on the death of his father, Philip: he had all the qualities necessary to form a good king. He was some time at war with Henry I. of England. On his death-bed he is said to have delivered his ring to his son, with these words: "May the power with which you will shortly be invested, be considered as a sacred trust committed to you by Providence, and for which you must be accountable in a future state."

6. Louis VII., surnamed the Young, to distinguish him from his father, whose authority he had shared, ascended the throne 1137. He commanded a fine army, the flower of France, in the Holy Land: but disease and the calamities of war had so decreased it, that on his return, only the shattered remains accompanied him: during the absence of Louis, his kingdom suffered all the miseries of depopulation. He was continually embroiled with England, and his own barons. In this reign the *Troubadours*, a kind of wandering French poets, resembling our bards, first appeared.

7. Philip II., surnamed Augustus, 1180: he engaged in the crusades with Richard I. of England. The monarchs quarrelled; and on his return home, Philip attacked Richard's French dominions. He then endeavoured to reform the manners of his subjects, protected and embellished those cities that acknowledged his sway, and released the people from the oppressions of the soldiery. The orders of Dominicans and Franciscans were established, and this was the Philip who engaged in the cause of Arthur duke of Bretagne, against John king of England.

8. Louis VIII., son of Philip, 1223. He reigned only three years, and in that time dispossessed the English of some lands in France. He is said to have died by poison;

and left in his will legacies to two thousand leprous persons, as that disorder then raged dreadfully.

9. Louis IX., son of Louis VIII., 1226. He was a good but unfortunate prince. Undertaking an expedition to the Holy Land, he was defeated and made prisoner by the Saracens : he might have escaped, but nobly disdained to forsake his subjects in their distress. On his return, after being ransomed, he foolishly resolved to engage in another crusade ; and, besieging Tunis in person, fell a victim to the plague. His confessor, Robert de Sorbon, instituted the university at Paris called the Sorbonne, which afterwards became the most famous theological school in Europe.

10. Philip III., surnamed the Hardy, 1270. He continued the wars against the infidels, till he compelled the king of Tunis to sue for peace. Thus ended the Crusades, in which two millions of men had been at different times engaged. In this reign was perpetrated that massacre of the French called the Sicilian Vespers : Philip conciliated the friendship of the English Edward I., and engaged in frequent wars with the Sicilians, in order to support the claims of his son to that throne. A general corruption of manners scandalously prevailed at this period.

11. Philip IV., called the Fair, 1285, continued the war with England, and joined Baliol of Scotland against king Edward. Philip was perpetually embroiled with pope Boniface VIII., and Guy count of Flanders : he gained a decisive victory over the latter. In this reign many of the knights Templars, charged with some luxurious excesses, with their grand-master, were burnt alive at Paris, in presence of the king ; and the Swiss asserted their independence, by the three cantons of Switz, Uri, and Underwald throwing off the Austrian yoke.

12. Louis X., surnamed Le Hutin, 1314. He strangled his queen on account of her great enormities. On his accession, finding the treasury in an exhausted state, he accused Marigni, who had been his father's minister, as the source of the national necessities, and Louis seized upon his fortune to defray the expenses of the coronation. This unfortunate nobleman in vain endeavoured to vindicate his honour ; he was condemned to expire on a gibbet ; and the king, after a short reign of two years, died by poison, given him by the friends of Marigni.

13. Philip V., surnamed the Young, succeeded his brother, by virtue of the salic law, which excluded the daughter of Louis, in 1316. A contagious disorder now raged in France, and the superstitious people imputed it to the Jews having poisoned the waters. Philip's kingdom was torn by faction ; and he died after a short reign of six years.

14. Charles IV., 1322. This prince was the last of the direct Capetian line. He expelled the Lombards and Ita-

lians from his dominions, for their extortion; and countenanced Isabella of England, the queen of Edward II. and the sister of Charles, in her opposition to her husband, and his favourites. Charles tried unsuccessfully to reunite the kingdoms of France and Germany. He had neither shining talents, nor great vices.

15. Philip VI., the first king of France of the collateral line of Valois, was the son of Charles count of Valois, brother of Philip IV., 1328. Edward III. of England asserted his claim to the French crown, as a grandson of Philip IV. by his mother. Philip, however, succeeded by the salic law, and called upon Edward to do him homage; but receiving no satisfactory reply, he seized upon Edward's French territories, who, to recover his dominions, performed the subjection required.

16. Discontents now arose, and the English, in a naval engagement, took 230 of the French ships: Philip also lost 30,000 seamen and two admirals. Four years afterwards was fought the memorable battle of Cressy, so fatal to the glory and chivalry of France; 11 of her princes, nearly 100 nobles, 1,200 chevaliers, and 30,000 soldiers, fell in that deadly contest. Hugh count of Dauphiné annexed his dominions to the French crown, on condition that the king's eldest son should bear the title of Dauphin.

17. John, surnamed the Good, succeeded his father 1350. This prince was very unfortunate in his wars with England: in the battle of Poictiers he and his son Philip were taken prisoners, and the French army totally routed. On promise of paying a ransom, amounting to four millions of gold crowns, he was permitted, after four years' captivity, to revisit his native soil; when he found that the miseries of his people had been heightened by civil commotions, the consequence of his son's inexperience. A pestilence carried off thirty thousand of his subjects; and, bowed down by calamity, he returned to expire in England.

18. Charles V., son of John, 1364. Du Guesclin, the celebrated French commander, lived in this reign; and after the death of Edward and the Black Prince, retook most of the English possessions in France. Charles died in the prime of life, from the effects of poison.

19. Charles VI., 1380, son of the late king. He laboured under an unfortunate imbecility of mind, caused by a fright he received. The war with England was renewed: the gallant De Courcy fought on the French side; but the battle of Agincourt gave the English a decided superiority. Henry V., their king, gave his hand to Catharine, the French king's daughter. Charles shortly after died, abandoned by his subjects, who directed their attention to Henry of England, his expected successor. To amuse this monarch under his unhappy malady, cards were first invented.

*Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was Hugh Capet? What dynasty did he found? 2. What happened in his successor's reign? 3, 4. What were the characters of the two next kings? The events that marked their respective reigns? 5. What did Louis VI., when dying, say to his son? 6. What were the chief events of the reign of Louis VII.? 7. Of Philip II.? 8. Of Louis VIII.? 9. What befell Louis IX.? What was the Sorbonne? 10. What numbers were engaged in the Crusades? 11. What were the remarkable events of the reign of Philip IV.? 12. Who was Marigny? how treated by Louis X.? How did this king die? 14. What were the chief acts of Charles IV.? 15. Who was Philip VI.? Why did Edward claim the French crown? What followed this dispute? 16. What great battle was fought? Whence arose the title of Dauphin? To whom given? 17. What misfortunes befell John? 18. What happened in his successor's reign? 19. In that of Charles VI.?
- 

## SECTION VII.

*From Henry of England to the Revolution.*

5. Clem'ency, *s.* mercy; kindness. | 8. Indel'ible, *a.* not to be effaced.  
6. E'r'a, *s.* a particular date or epoch. | 11. E'dict, *s.* a command or prohibition.

1. HENRY of England, upon the death of his father Henry V., was proclaimed king of France, when only nine months old, 1422: but the famous Joan of Arc, maid of Orleans, assisting and heading the dispirited troops of Charles the Dauphin, the English were defeated. Henry was obliged to relinquish his claim; and the Dauphin ascended the throne of his ancestors as

2. Charles VII., surnamed the Victorious. When the rage of civil war had abated, he endeavoured to regulate the disordered finances, and restore commerce. He deprived the English of their dominions in France; but experienced a series of domestic calamities, occasioned by the intrigues and daring spirit of his son, afterwards Louis XI., who proceeded to acts of open rebellion against him. Charles suspecting Louis of intentions to poison him, refused all nourishment for some days: he fell a victim to his distrust, and died in that deplorable situation.

3. Louis XI. succeeded, 1461. The title of *Most Christian King* was given him by the pope, though little suited to his character, as he was dreaded by all his subjects, and hated by his neighbours. This prince assisted the famous earl of Warwick with a fleet and army, to restore Henry VI. of England to his throne. After Henry's death, Louis ransomed Margaret of Anjou from Edward IV. The French monarchy became absolute in this reign. Charles, duke of Burgundy, was the constant opposer of this ambitious king, whose oppression and barbarities must shock every heart not dead to the feelings of humanity.

4. Charles VIII., 1483; being in his minority, Anne, eldest daughter of Louis VI., was chosen regent: she possessed strong powers of mind and great prudence. Charles, on his marriage with Anne of Bretagne, took the cares of state upon him; and complying with the entreaties of the ambitious Ludovico Sforza, he attempted the conquest of Naples, whose king was oppressed by age and infirmities. The French king besieged that city in person, defeated the Neapolitans, and obliged their monarch, Ferdinand II., to fly: he soon, however, by force of arms, regained his throne, and Charles died not long after.

5. Louis XII., surnamed the "Father of his people," 1498. He engaged in wars with the Venetians and Milanese, Ludovico Sforza having usurped the government of Milan, Louis defeated and sentenced him to perpetual imprisonment. This king was beloved by his subjects, as he showed his clemency on many remarkable occasions, and repealed some severe taxes. He married the princess Mary of England, sister to Henry VIII.

6. Francis I., count of Angoulême, who had married the daughter of the late king, ascended the throne 1515. This was the era of French literature. Francis loved and encouraged the arts; he was brave to excess in his own person, but his valour and ambition endangered the safety of the kingdom. He contended unsuccessfully for the German empire. The duke of Bourbon, a powerful lord, who represented the indignities he had received from the king and his mother, joined Charles V. of Germany and Henry VIII. of England, in a confederacy to place Charles V. upon the French throne. Francis, by his valour and address, delivered his kingdom from the threatened danger; but being unable to perform the conditions insisted upon by Charles after the fatal battle of Pavia, he was engaged in a war with the emperor till his death.

7. Henry II., son of Francis, 1547. The reign of this prince was chiefly distinguished by his wars with pope Julius III. and the emperor. Henry married Catharine de Medicis, daughter of the duke of Urbino. The battle of Saint Quentin, fought with the Spaniards, was lost by the French; but Henry's celebrated general, the duke of Guise, preserved the lustre of the French arms against the united powers of England, Spain, and Flanders: he took Calais from the English. Henry was unfortunately killed at a tournament, while celebrating the nuptials of the princess Elizabeth with king Philip of Spain.

8. Francis II., son of Henry, 1559. The government of the kingdom, during this reign, was intrusted to Catharine de Medicis. The king married Mary queen of Scots; and, wholly guided by his mother and his uncles, the Guises, persecuted the Protestants, then known by the name of

Huguenots. Worn out by the oppressions of the Catholic party, they at length took up arms; and this was the epoch of those dreadful civil—falsely termed religious wars, which desolated France, and stained with indelible infamy the rulers of the French nation. Francis died, after a short reign of two years.

9. Charles IX., second son of Henry II., succeeded, in his minority, 1560. Catharine de Medicis governed him; and joining to great abilities boundless ambition and keen revenge, she prevailed upon the king to arm against the Protestants, whose growing numbers she dreaded. Civil wars followed: after which, (on the memorable 24th of August, 1572,) began that horrid massacre, which extended through Paris, Lyons, Orleans, Rouen, Angers, and Toulouse. Thus, merely for difference in opinion, thirty thousand Frenchmen were inhumanly put to death by their vindictive enemies. Charles, after this, concluded a peace with the Huguenots; and a prey to severe remorse and the effects of a dreadful disorder, he expired, being only twenty-three years of age.

10. Henry III., brother of Charles, 1574. He had been elected king of Poland; but on the death of Charles, the Poles chose another king. Henry, fond of pleasure, fickle and irresolute, was governed by Catharine de Medicis. The civil wars were renewed between the Catholics and Protestants, one of which was called the holy league, and headed by the duke of Guise. Henry, fearing this nobleman had designs upon the crown, basely caused him to be assassinated, with his brother the cardinal of Guise; and the king, shortly after, experienced the same fate from the hands of Clement, the monk. The detestable Catharine de Medicis died just before her son, aged seventy.

11. Henry IV., surnamed the Great, first of the house of Bourbon, 1589. His father, Anthony of Bourbon, was descended from Louis IX., and his mother was the daughter of Henry, king of Navarre. He was bred a Protestant, and gallantly defended that cause when king of Navarre; but wishing to heal disturbances, and conciliate the affections of his people, in 1593 he went openly to mass, though he was always supposed to be attached to his old opinions. Soon after this he published the edict of Nantes, which granted to the Protestants the exercise of their religion, the enjoyment of their estates, and made them eligible to public offices. After a glorious reign, Henry was assassinated by Ravaillac, in the streets of Paris.

12. Louis XIII. succeeded his father, 1610, when only nine years of age. Mary of Medicis, his mother, was appointed regent; they renewed the civil wars, which had continued during the reigns of five princes, and destroyed nine cities, four hundred villages, and two thousand monas-

teries, by their horrid ravages. Richelieu then became minister: he humbled Spain and the spirit of the French nobility, defeated the Huguenots, and checked the ambitious views of Austria; to him Louis owed his authority, for, on his own account, the king was little feared or loved by his people.

13. Louis XIV. succeeded his father, when only five years old, in 1643. His mother, Anne of Austria, with cardinal Mazarine, conducted public affairs. This reign was the longest, and, in its first part, the most splendid of any in the French annals. Turenne and the prince of Condé multiplied the conquests of Louis, and obtained the most brilliant victories. Louis revoked the edict of Nantes, and granted protection to James II., king of England.

14. After the death of Mazarine, Colbert became prime-minister, whose exertions in his country's service are never to be forgotten. Louis was the munificent patron of the arts, and twice defeated William III.; but Marlborough tore the laurels from his brow, and humbled his pride. He lived to see the English government in the hands of Charles I., Cromwell, Charles II., James II., William and Mary, Anne, and George I.

15. Louis XV. succeeded his great-grandfather in 1715. The duke of Orleans was appointed regent, who endeavoured to relieve the miseries of war, and restore commerce and agriculture. When the king became of age, the duke de Bourbon and Cardinal Fleury were successively ministers. When Fleury died, Louis reigned alone; and, at the head of his army, obtained some signal victories in Flanders.

16. Peace succeeded, and for seven years the arts and literature flourished in France. This king assisted the Pretender in his schemes upon England. The conclusion of his reign was unfortunate: his people, exhausted by war, loudly murmured; but Louis was deaf to their complaints, and pursued his arbitrary measures till his death.

#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. Who was the successor of Charles VI.? How did he lose France?
2. How did Charles VII. die?
3. What was the character of Louis XI.?
4. In what wars did he engage?
5. What was the character of Louis XII.?
6. Whom did he marry?
7. For what was Francis I. and his reign remarkable?
8. What battle did he lose?
9. Who was his great opponent?
10. By what is the reign of Henry II. distinguished?
11. What did the French take from the English?
12. Who ruled in the time of Francis II.?
13. Whom did he marry?
14. What wars arose in this reign?
15. And what horrible event attended the following?
16. What was the character of Henry III.?
17. Who was the first of the Bourbon line?
18. What edict did he issue?
19. What was its purport?
20. How did he die?
21. What did Richelieu then become minister?
22. He humbled Spain and the spirit of the French nobility, defeated the Huguenots, and checked the ambitious views of Austria; to him Louis owed his authority, for, on his own account, the king was little feared or loved by his people.
23. After the death of Mazarine, Colbert became prime-minister, whose exertions in his country's service are never to be forgotten.
24. Louis was the munificent patron of the arts, and twice defeated William III.; but Marlborough tore the laurels from his brow, and humbled his pride.
25. He lived to see the English government in the hands of Charles I., Cromwell, Charles II., James II., William and Mary, Anne, and George I.
26. Peace succeeded, and for seven years the arts and literature flourished in France.
27. This king assisted the Pretender in his schemes upon England.
28. The conclusion of his reign was unfortunate: his people, exhausted by war, loudly murmured.
29. But Louis was deaf to their complaints, and pursued his arbitrary measures till his death.

lieu effect ? 13. What characterized the reign of Louis XIV. ? Name his most celebrated ministers and generals. 15. What is worthy of note in the time of Louis XV. ? In what condition did he leave France ?

---

## SECTION VIII.

- |                                                |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Alle'viate, <i>v.</i> to ease ; to soften.  | 11. Lib'er-alism, <i>s.</i> freedom of opinion.  |
| 3. Sum'marily, <i>ad.</i> in the shortest way. | 14. Suffrage, <i>s.</i> vote given at elections. |

*From the Revolution to the second Republic.*

1. LOUIS XVI., 1774, was grandson of the late king. On him fell the weight of those miseries which his predecessors had accumulated. At the commencement of his reigu he endeavoured to alleviate the distresses of his subjects ; but guided by the suggestions of his queen, Marie Antoinette, his anxiety to preserve his absolute authority was the rock upon which he was shipwrecked.

2. His people rebelled ; an ardent and active spirit pervaded all ranks ; Louis was compelled to submit to the conditions imposed by the National Assembly, who, not content with abolishing royalty, beheaded their king, January 21st, 1793 : his queen shared the same fate, October 16th, 1793.

3. The Republic, 1792, was established on the ruins of the monarchy. The Austrians and Prussians invaded France, but were enthusiastically opposed by the republicans, and forced to retreat. The contending factions in Paris now committed most revolting excesses. The Jacobins proscribed their adversaries, and after the inockery of a trial, sent them to the guillotine. Wholesale massacres were perpetrated in La Vendée, which resisted their authority : in Lyons alone, 4000 were summarily executed.

4. This sanguinary party, however, after deluging France with the blood of her best citizens, suffered a just retribution. Their principal leaders were Marat, Danton, and Robespierre. Marat was assassinated, and Danton guillotined by order of his colleague Robespierre, who himself was soon after dragged to the scaffold amidst the execrations of the populace.

5. Meanwhile the French armies were generally victorious, though their navies suffered severe defeats from the British. Generals Pichegru and Moreau subdued Holland. The coloured population of St. Domingo, one of their finest colonies, rose and massacred vast numbers of the whites : the remainder fled, and the island was thus lost to France. The French, under Napoleon Buonaparte, a Corsican, drove the Austrians from Italy, and took possession of Egypt, from which they were afterwards expelled by the British troops commanded by Sir Ralph Abercromby.

6. Napoleon, meanwhile, had returned to France after his failure before the fortress of Acre, in Syria. Being popular with the army, he abolished the Directory, then at the head of the state, and appointed three Consuls, of whom he made himself the chief, A. D. 1800, and thus became virtually the monarch of France. He then led an army over the Alps, and by the decisive battle of Marengo regained the possession of Italy, which had been re-occupied by Austria during his absence, and extended the French dominion in various directions.

7. The EMPIRE. Napoleon Buonaparte was made emperor of the French, A. D. 1804, and soon after king of Italy. The French navy was destroyed in the battle of Trafalgar, 1805; but he was indemnified for this loss by a series of successful campaigns in Germany. He defeated the combined Austrian and Russian armies in the battle of Austerlitz, and the Prussians in the battle of Jena; and subsequently the Russians in the battles of Eylau and Friedland. The emperor Alexander, of Russia, was now induced to come to terms with the conqueror, and peace was for a short time restored by the treaty of Tilsit.

8. By means of intrigue and treachery, he succeeded in placing his brother Joseph on the throne of Spain in 1808, and maintained him in power for a period by military force, till the French armies were overthrown by the British under the duke of Wellington. In 1809 the Austrians again asserted their independence, but were signally defeated at Wagram, and obliged to accept peace on such terms as the conqueror thought proper to grant.

9. In 1811 his legions crossed the Niemen, and overthrew the Russians at Kowno, Smolensko, and Moskwa, but were forced to make a rapid retreat, the Russians having burnt Moscow, and left the French without a shelter or the means of subsistence during one of the severest winters ever known in Russia. The greater part of his troops either perished, or were disorganized during this retreat; and he never after was able to make a successful stand against the allied armies of Germany and Russia, which pursued him to France, entered his capital March 31, 1814, and obliged him to abdicate.

10. Louis XVIII., the brother of Louis XVI., returned to France from his long exile on the 3rd of May, 1814; but Napoleon, who had been banished to Elba, determined to make a bold effort for the recovery of his throne, and landed in France, on 1st of March, 1815. The soldiery soon espoused his cause; and Louis was a second time obliged to escape across the frontier.

11. The loss of the battle of Waterloo finally ruined Napoleon's cause; and he was banished to St. Helena, where he died in 1821. Louis was reseated on the throne of France

by the allied powers, July 3rd, 1815. His reign presents nothing very remarkable, except the occupation of Spain by an army under the duke of Angoulême, for the purpose of putting down liberalism in the peninsula. He died 1824, and was succeeded by his brother,

12. Charles X., who proved a weak and arbitrary monarch. He attempted to restore despotic government in France, when the populace of Paris rose against his troops, and after a sanguinary conflict of three days, compelled them to retire from the capital. The king was expelled from France, and died in exile at Goritz, 1837. Algiers was attacked and captured by the French in 1829, of which they still retain possession, having extended their rule over several districts of Northern Africa.

13. Louis Philippe, 1830. The vacant crown was conferred on the duke of Orleans, with the title of "King of the French." He at first governed his people with much prudence and sagacity; but gradually retreating from the principles which called him to the throne, he excited the ill-will and disaffection of his subjects. His eagerness for family aggrandizement and the security of his dynasty, the continuous and immoderate increase of the national debt, the corrupt conduct of public functionaries, and the attempt to suppress freedom of speech and political discussion, severally contributed to lessen the confidence of the people, and in February 1848 a formidable reaction was consummated. Deeply incensed at the retrograde policy pursued by the government, the Parisians congregated in open revolt, assailed the authorities, and overpowering the feeble resistance offered, in the brief space of three days effected the expulsion of the monarch, the abolition of royalty, the suppression of titular distinctions, and the establishment of

14. A REPUBLIC. Liberty and equality, universal suffrage, and the sovereignty of the people decreed, a National Assembly was immediately convoked, which ratified the principles and proceedings provisionally announced, and appointed M. Lamartine first executive officer. But a state of anarchy and subverted order, the sudden dissolution of existing institutions and all established authority, must have attendant perils and difficulties, and the permanent result of changes so extreme, both to France and surrounding nations, remains yet to be developed.

15. The French royal dynasties were,—the Franks, the Merovingians, the Carlovingians, the race of Capet, of Valois, and of Bourbon. The four French kings most famed in history were Charlemagne, cotemporary with our Egbert; Philip II. with our Richard I.; Francis I. with our Henry VIII.; and Henry IV., or the Great, with our queen Elizabeth. Philip de Comines, Davilla de Thou, and Mezera, are among their best historians.

16. The principal epochs in the history of France are,—the introduction of Christianity; the victorious career of Charlemagne; the conquests achieved by Henry V. of England; the massacre of the Protestants on St. Bartholomew's day; and the revolutions of 1792, 1830, and 1848.

---

### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What important event took place in the reign of Louis XVI.?
  2. What was his end? 3. How did the French republicans act when in power? 4. Who were the chiefs of the Jacobins? What deaths did they suffer? 5. Who subdued Holland? What happened in St. Domingo? 7. What succeeded the republic? Mention a few of Napoleon's great battles? 9. What disaster befell him in Russia?
  10. Who was Louis XVIII.? 11. What was the fate of Napoleon?
  12. What country have the French colonized? Why was Charles X. banished? 13. Who succeeded him? How did he govern his people? How did his reign terminate? 14. What form of government succeeded the monarchy? 15. What were the several French dynasties? Name their most celebrated monarchs and historians.
- 

## CHAPTER X.

### Celebrated Classical and Historical Characters.

#### SECTION I.

##### ROMAN KINGS, AND DISTINGUISHED HEROES.

**Rom'ulus**, founder of the Roman state and senate.

**Nu'ma Pompil'ius**, the institutor of religious ceremonies.

**Tul'lus Hostil'ius**. In his reign was fought the battle between the Horatii and the Curiatii. Tullus was burnt to death in his palace.

**An'cus Mar'tius**. He built many fortifications, and greatly improved the city.

**Tarquin'ius Pris'cus**: he increased the number of the senate, and built a magnificent temple to Jupiter.

**Ser'vius Tull'ius**: he was slain by Tarquin the Proud, after a useful reign.

**Tarquin'ius Superbus**: he was dethroned and expelled Rome on account of his enormous vices.

**Lucius Junius Brutus**, the first consul: he brought his own sons to justice, for a conspiracy in favour of Tarquin.

**Ti'tus Lar'tius**: the first dictator who enjoyed absolute power.

**Mene'nus Agrip'pa**. In his time the first tribunes were chosen. He was famed for his eloquence.

**Teren'tius Arsa**. He was a famous tribune, and the active friend of the people.

**Caius Martius Coriola'nus.** He was unjustly banished Rome, and returned with an army to besiege it; but his mother's entreaties prevailed upon him to spare the city. In his time the first ediles were chosen.

**Lucius Quintius Cincinnat'us,** a celebrated dictator, taken from the plough to command the Roman armies. In his time the decemviri were appointed.

**Virgin'i'us.** In his time the unjust authority of the decemviri was abolished. He killed his own daughter, to prevent her falling a sacrifice to the villainy of Appius Claudius.

**Marcus Man'lius,** the brave defender and saviour of his country in the war with Brennus, king of the Gauls.

**Camil'lus,** a renowned dictator, who led the Romans on to victory.

**Mar'cus Cur'tius,** famed for his patriotism, by throwing himself as a sacrifice into a chasm which had opened in the streets of Rome.

**Man'lius Torqua'tus:** he put his son to death for contempt of his consular authority, and as an example of military justice.

**Fabri'cius,** one of the poorest and most virtuous of the Romans. His integrity was unshaken amidst every attempt to bribe him; and his noble spirit will transmit his name and merits to the latest ages.

**Reg'ulus.** In his time the first Punic wars began. He was doomed by the Carthaginians to suffer the most cruel tortures.

**Marcell'us.** He vanquished the Gauls in their war with Rome; and, for his valour, was called "the sword of his country."

**Fab'i'us,** famed for his wisdom and prudence. He has been styled "the buckler of Rome."

**Scip'io Africa'nus,** the great conqueror of Spain and Africa, and the opposer of Hannibal, the Carthaginian leader.

**Scip'io Æmilia'nus,** the destroyer of Carthage. He shone equally in learning as in arms.

**The Grac'chi;** the friends of liberty and virtue: they endeavoured to stem the rising torrent of corruption, but fell a sacrifice to the attempt.

**Metel'lus Numid'icus;** famous in battle, and a man of strict integrity.

**Caius Ma'rius:** noted for his insatiable pride and ambition: he brought great calamities upon his native city.

**Sylla,** a great conqueror, and tyrannical in command: but he had at last the moderation to resign all his dignities, and retire to a private station.

**Marcus Tullius Ci'cero:** the great Roman orator, and the distinguished friend of liberty.

**Pompey:** a brave general, but whose ambition led to his country's slavery.

Ju'lius Cæ'sar: the greatest hero of his time. He was chosen perpetual dictator of Rome, but trampling upon the liberties of the Roman people, they assassinated him.

Mark Antony: the friend of Cæsar, famed as a general, but still more noted for his attachment to Cleopatra, queen of Egypt.

Augustus Cæsar: the first Roman emperor, and the nephew of Julius. In his reign the Romans enjoyed peace, and JESUS, the long-promised MESSIAH, appeared in Galilee

## SECTION II.

### CELEBRATED GREEKS.

Ce'crops, the first king of Athens.

The'seus, cotemporary with Romulus, and a king of Athens; memorable for his courage and conduct: he killed the minotaur, a monster kept by Minos, and achieved many great exploits.

Ja'son, a noble Thessalian, who is said to have sailed with forty-nine companions to Colchis, in search of the golden fleece: this expedition is, however, more properly in the region of fable than true history, as is also that of Theseus.

Agamem'non, general of the Grecian armies at the siege of Troy, and king of Mycenæ, in the Morea.

Co'drus, king of Athens: he devoted himself to death for the benefit of his country, which was immediately after governed by archons.

Cad'mus, king of Thebes, and the inventor of letters.

Ulys'ses, king of Ithaca, and one of the wisest among the Greeks: Ajax and Achilles joined him, and the collective force of the Greeks, in the Trojan war.

Lycur'gus, the celebrated Spartan law-giver: he totally re-modelled the constitution, and composed a code of jurisprudence, selected from the best laws made by Minos and others.

Ho'mer, the prince of poets; born at Smyrna. Hesiod was his contemporary.

Tha'les, a Grecian philosopher, astronomer, geographer, and geometrician.

Dra'co, the rigid legislator of Athens: he punished all offences indiscriminately.

So'lon, the wise reformer, and improver of the Athenian laws.

Alcæ'us and Sap'pho, a Greek poet and poetess, who wrote chiefly in lyric numbers.

Si'mon'ides, a famous Grecian poet.

Æs'chylus, a Greek tragic poet.

Pisistratus, an aspiring Athenian, who, while Solon travelled into Egypt, took advantage of his absence to usurp the government of Athens.

Cleisthenes, the introducer of the ostracism : he was endowed with great penetration and abilities, which were but seldom properly directed.

Miltiades, an Athenian general, who gained the battle of Marathon, fought against the Persians.

Harmodius and Aristogiton : two young Athenians, who delivered their country from the tyranny of the sons of Pisistratus, and were honoured with high marks of esteem and admiration.

Anacreon, of Teos, a celebrated poet : his works are distinguished by their elegance and simplicity of expression.

Leonidas, the Spartan king, who fell at the battle of Thermopylae in defence of his country's dearest rights.

Themistocles, an Athenian general, famed for his valour and address : he gained the signal victory at Salamis ; but being afterwards banished by his ungrateful countrymen, he sought refuge at the court of Xerxes, king of Persia ; and soon after, to avoid bearing arms against the Athenians, poisoned himself.

Sophocles and Euripides : two Grecian poets.

Cimon, son of Miltiades, a famous general : he too was banished, but at the expiration of five years returned to Athens, and his gallant spirit forgetting former injuries, he once more animated the Greeks to fame and conquest.

Pericles, an Athenian general, celebrated for his love of the fine arts : the age in which he flourished is called that of luxury, as he introduced a taste for expensive pleasures at Athens. In his time began the famous Peloponnesian war.

Lysander, the renowned Spartan conqueror of Athens : the treasures which he then brought to Lacedemon insensibly corrupted the pure morals of its citizens.

Alcibiades, a brave Athenian, who had some splendid virtues, counterbalanced by great vices : his character was peculiarly magnificent and ostentatious. He was killed by command of the thirty tyrants, or kings.

Thrasyllos, the Athenian, who overturned the power of the thirty tyrants, and restored peace to his bleeding country.

Xenophon, a warrior and historian.

Socrates, an Athenian philosopher, whose mind being too enlightened for the times in which he lived, the Athenians falsely accused him of disrespect to their gods, and he soon fell a martyr to their suspicion and vengeance.

Agesilaus, a Spartan king, who gained many important victories.

Pelopidas, a Theban general, who, assisted by the valour of his friend Epaminondas, rescued his country from the Spartan yoke.

**E**paminon'das, a Theban warrior, who joined to the duties of his station a taste for philosophy and the sciences. He gained two celebrated victories, Leuctra and Mantinea; at the latter of which he fell.

**P**hilip, king of Macedon, and father of Alexander the Great. He gained the famous battle of Chæronea, and obtained various successes against the Thebans and Athenians. The Greeks chose him for their general against the Persian force. He was soon after killed by one of his own guards.

**A**lexander the Great, a renowned conqueror. He ran a rapid career of what the world calls glory; and, after defeating the Persians, and destroying their empire, he died at Babylon, as is supposed from the effects of a fit of intemperance.

**A**ristotle, a celebrated philosopher, the tutor of Alexander the Great.

**D**emos'thenes, the Grecian orator. **E**schines was his contemporary and rival.

**P**yrrhus, a king of Epi'rus. He conquered Macedonia from the successors of Alexander. His life was one continual scene of war and tumult.

### SECTION III.

#### EMINENT HISTORICAL CHARACTERS.

*From the third Century before, to the sixth after Christ, inclusive.*

**C**ha'res, a Rhodian statuary; he made the celebrated Colossus, which was destroyed by the Saracens A.D. 667.

**E**uclid, an Egyptian mathematician, famed for his "Elements of Geometry."

**Z**o'ilus, a snarling grammarian, whose severe and illiberal criticisms on Homer, Isocrates, and Plato, made him generally dreaded.

**T**heoc'ritus, of Syracuse; his pastoral poems are written in the Doric dialect, and have been imitated by Virgil.

**C**allim'achus, an ancient Grecian poet; a few of his hymns only are extant.

**A**rchime'des, of Syracuse, celebrated for his skill in mathematics and mechanics.

**P**lau'tus, a Latin dramatic author, famed for his comedies, his poetry, and eloquence.

#### *Second Century before Christ.*

**B**ion, of Smyrna, a Grecian poet; his Idyls were written with delicate simplicity.

**T**erence, a highly celebrated dramatic Latin writer: six of his plays only remain.

Aristar'chus, a critic and excellent grammarian; his strictures on Homer were severely just.

Polyb'iis, the Grecian historian; he accompanied Scipio in his military expeditions, and described his scenes from actual knowledge.

*Last Century before Christ.*

Ros'cius, a celebrated Roman actor, never yet surpassed.

Var'ro, a learned Roman writer: there are extant three books of his "Treatise on Husbandry," five on the Latin tongue, and a few epigrams, preserved by Scaliger.

At'ticus, a noble Roman, the friend of Cicero, famed for the urbanity of his manners, and his acquaintance with the niceties of his mother-tongue.

Ca'to the younger, one of the Stoic sect, rigid in his morals, and the firm friend of independence; after the battle of Pharsalia, which made Cæsar master of Rome, Cato stabbed himself at Utica, in Africa.

Catul'lus, a good Latin poet, and the friend of Cicero; his poetry is too licentious for a refined taste.

Lucre'tius, a Roman philosopher: he wrote a poem on natural philosophy.

Sa'lust, a Latin historian; all the remains of his works are "Catiline's Conspiracy," and the "Wars of Jugurtha."

Julius Cæsar, author of the celebrated "Commentaries;" seven books upon the Gallic war only remain. Cæsar was stabbed at Rome, forty-four years B. C.

Virgil, prince of the Latin poets; his works are the Æneid, the Georgics, and the Bucolics.

Tibul'lus, the contemporary of Virgil and Horace; four books of his elegies are extant, which display all the graces of style and sentiment.

Diodo'rûs Sic'ulus, author of the Egyptian, Persian, Median, Grecian, Roman, and Carthaginian history: a valuable work, but many books are lost.

Vitru'vius, the celebrated Roman architect: he flourished under Augustus.

Cornelius Nepos, a Latin historian; his lives of Roman and Grecian generals is a valuable school-book.

Horace, a Latin poet; his works are moral and satirical: he was the friend of Virgil.

Ovid, a Latin poet of lively genius; his works are numerous, but his delicacy of sentiment by no means equals the purity of his diction.

*First Century after Christ.*

Liv'y, the Latin historian of the Roman empire; part of his work is lost, but has been supplied by a modern German.

Stra'bo, eminent in the science of geography, and author of a very valuable treatise upon it.

Phædrus, author of some fables, written with elegant simplicity.

Valerius Maximus, author of a collection, or compilation, of celebrated anecdotes and maxims.

Velleius Pater'culus, a Roman historian, who composed an epitome of the Roman history.

Cel'sus, celebrated as a physician in Rome; he wrote on medicine, agriculture, rhetoric, and military affairs; all his works, except that on medicine, are lost.

Seneca, eminent at Rome as a moralist, and the preceptor of Nero, who basely condemned him to death.

Lu'can, the nephew of Seneca, famed for his *Pharsalia*, a poem descriptive of the wars between Cæsar and Pompey.

Persius, a Latin satirical poet.

Jose'phus Fla'vius, the celebrated Jewish historian: he wrote an account of the wars of the Jews, the history of their antiquities, &c., and has been admired for his animated style, the propriety of his expressions, and the accuracy of his descriptions. He was present at the siege of Jerusalem by Titus.

Epicte'tus, a Grecian philosopher, author of the *Enchiri-dion*, or "Compendium of Stoic Philosophy," a work much esteemed.

Petro'nius Arbiter, the dissolute but accomplished friend of Nero; he was a man of great abilities, but of very lax morality.

Plin'y the elder, celebrated for his "Natural History;" he was suffocated by the vapour emitted from an eruption of Mount Vesuvius.

Ju'venal, a Latin poet, who lashed the vices of his age.

Mar'tial, a Roman poet, chiefly noted for his epigrams.

Quintil'ian, an orator and rhetorician, the celebrated instructor of youth; his "Institutes of Oratory" are deservedly in high estimation.

Tacitus, a noble Roman historian: he wrote a treatise on the manners of the Germans, the life of Agricola, and the lives of the Roman emperors Tiberius, Nero, and Caligula.

Pliny the younger, nephew of the elder Pliny, famed for his love of polite literature; he wrote ten books of elegant letters to his friends, still extant.

### *Second Century after Christ.*

Plu'tarch, an eminent Grecian biographer; his "Lives of Illustrious Characters" will ever be read with pleasure, and admiration.

Sueto'nius, a rhetorician and grammarian; he wrote the "Lives of the Twelve Cæsars," but his style is indifferent.

Aulus Gellius, a Roman grammarian and rhetorician; author of the "Attic Nights," which is a selection of detached remarks written at Athens, whence it takes its name.

Lucian, a Greek satiric writer ; he composed " Dialogues of the Dead," and other works, which were enlivened by wit, but disgraced by profaneness and indecency.

Ga'len, a Greek physician, unrivalled by his contemporaries in surgery and medicine ; he wrote many volumes on physic : five only have been transmitted to posterity.

Celsus, an epicurean philosopher, and writer against Christianity.

Diog'enes Laer'tius, author of the " Lives of the Philosophers."

Pausa'nias, a Grecian historian, celebrated for his geographical knowledge : he wrote a description of Greece, its antiquities and curiosities.

### *Third Century after Christ.*

Hero'dian, a Greek writer, author of a Roman history, in eight books : the style is peculiarly elegant, but it is inaccurate in its statements.

Justin, a Latin historian, and abridger of an universal history, which is replete with judicious reflections.

Longi'nus, a Greek critic and philosopher, author of a " Treatise on the Sublime," part of which is extant ; he was secretary to the celebrated Zenobia, queen of Palmyra, in Asia Minor.

### *Fourth Century after Christ.*

Euse'bius, a Christian bishop of Cæsarea, born in Palestine, and author of an ecclesiastical history.

Aure'lius Victor, a Roman biographer of the lives of the Cæsars, from Julius to Julian ; this writer is minute and faithful.

Quin'tus Cur'tius, a Latin historian, celebrated for his " Life of Alexander the Great," compiled with much elegance of style, but great inattention to chronological arrangement : his history was in ten books ; the two first being lost, have been well supplied by Frienshemius, a learned German historian to Christina, queen of Sweden.

Macro'bius, a Latin writer, whose criticisms and miscellaneous observations are thought valuable by the learned.

### *Fifth Century after Christ.*

Claud'ian, an Egyptian and Latin poet : his works were miscellaneous.

Musæ'us, a Greek poet, famed for his " Lives of Hero and Leander," a poem sometimes erroneously attributed to the Musæus who flourished in the time of Cepheus.

Boe'thius, a Roman, who flourished in the sixth century after Christ, and having been banished to Milan by Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, wrote there his celebrated " Consolations of Philosophy."

## CHAPTER XI.

## Select British and General Biography.

## SECTION I.

## BRITISH BIOGRAPHY.

## A.

*Roger Ascham*, born in Yorkshire, 1515; died 1568. He was Latin secretary and tutor to queen Elizabeth, an excellent Greek scholar, and wrote a treatise on the education of youth, for which he was eminently qualified.

*Lancelot Andrews*, bishop of Ely, born in London, 1565; died 1626. He was a prelate of great abilities and extensive learning: he assisted in the present translation of the Bible, and wrote several sermons, which were published after his death.

*Elias Ashmole*, born in Staffordshire, 1617; died 1692. A celebrated antiquary and natural philosopher; he founded the Ashmolean Museum at Oxford, and was author of the "Institutes and Ceremonies of the Order of the Garter."

*Joseph Addison*, born 1672; died 1719. He was one of the ornaments of British literature. The "Tatler," "Spectator," and "Guardian," were much enriched by his contributions; he wrote the tragedy of "Cato," which was so popular as to be performed thirty-five nights in succession: in his latter years he wrote "A Defence of the Christian Religion." In 1706 he was made secretary of state, in queen Anne's reign, but did not long retain the office. His style of writing is universally regarded as easy and elegant: Dr. Johnson designates it as "easy, but not coarse; elegant, but not ostentatious."

*George, Lord Anson*, a brave British officer, born in Staffordshire, 1697; died 1762. He was celebrated for his naval victories, and his voyage round the world.

*Mark Akenside*, a physician and poet, born in Northumberland, 1721; died 1770. His chief work is the "Pleasures of Imagination," a beautiful poem.

*Sir Ralph Abercromby*, born 1738; died 1801. He rose through the gradations of rank to that of major-general in 1787: after considerable service, both on the continent and in the West Indies, he was appointed to dispossess the French of Egypt; and at the battle of Alexandria, March 21st, 1801, so glorious to the British arms, he received a mortal wound, of which, after languishing for eight days, he died.

*Thomas Howard*, earl of Arundel, a nobleman who possessed a highly cultivated classic taste. The celebrated

Arundelian marbles, with many other valuable antiquarian relics, were brought by him from the Levant to England, and afterwards presented by his grandson to the university of Oxford: he lived in the reigns of James I. and Charles I., and died in 1646.

*Robert Ainsworth*, born 1660; died 1743. He wrote some learned tracts and poems, but is best known by his Latin and English dictionary, first printed in 1736.

*Lord Amherst*, born 1717, in Kent; died 1797. He served in the actions of Dettingen and Fontenoy, and contributed eminently by his successful campaigns in Canada towards the reduction of that province: he was made commander-in-chief, which post he resigned to the duke of York in 1795.

*Sir Richard Arkwright*, born at Preston, in Lancashire, 1732; died 1792. To him we are indebted for the machinery employed in the manufacture of cotton. He was originally a poor man, but acquired a large fortune by his unrivalled inventions and great perseverance.

*Thomas Arnold*, M. D., born 1739; died 1816. He was chiefly distinguished by his skill in the treatment of insanity; he wrote an excellent treatise on this subject, and was also the author of other much-esteemed medical observations.

*Sir Samuel Auchmuty*, an English general officer, who served with great ability in various parts of the globe. He took Java and Batavia from the Dutch: he died in 1822.

*John Abernethy*, born 1764; died 1831. An eminent surgeon of eccentric manners: he was particularly celebrated for his skill in the treatment of disorders of the digestive organs, and his success in surgical operations.

*Thomas Arnold*, D. D., was born at Cowes in the Isle of Wight, in 1795, and died in the year 1842. He was appointed head-master of Rugby school in 1828. This successful teacher and eminent scholar raised the school very high in public estimation: his "History of Rome" (so far as it is carried) is a work of sterling value.

## B.

*Venerable Bede*, born in the bisoprie of Durham, in 673; died 735. He was a monk of very superior learning for that period, and wrote an ecclesiastical history of Britain, from the invasion of Cæsar to his own times.

*Thomas à-Becket*, archbishop of Canterbury, born in London, 1119; died 1170. This prelate has been noted in history for unbounded ambition, and excessive pride: he was assassinated at the altar in Canterbury cathedral, and canonized not long after.

*Roger Bacon*, a Franciscan monk, born in Somersetshire, 1214; died 1294. He was a natural philosopher and mathematician: he introduced some curious chemical experiments into Europe, and made the first approaches to the discovery

of gunpowder, the camera obscura, the telescope, and the errors of the calendar.

*George Buchanan*, born in Scotland, 1506 ; died 1582. He was a Scottish historian and Latin poet, and the tutor of James the first of England and sixth of Scotland.

*Sir Thomas Bodley*, born in Devonshire, 1544 ; died 1612. He was a learned statesman, and founded the Bodleian library at Oxford.

*Francis Bacon*, viscount St. Alban's, born in London, 1561 ; died 1626. He was a man of universal genius, an illustrious philosopher, an eminent statesman, and lord high chancellor of Great Britain in the reign of James I. ; he has been called the light of science, and the father of experimental philosophy. His work, styled " *Novum Organum Scientiarum*," has earned for him immortal fame.

*Robert Blake*, a celebrated English admiral, born in Somersetshire, 1599 ; died 1657. He fought very successfully under Cromwell.

*Isaac Barrow*, born in London, 1630 ; died 1677. He was a great mathematician and divine, and the master of Trinity College, Cambridge.

*Samuel Butler*, born in Worcestershire, 1612 ; died 1680 : he was a good poet, and author of " *Hudibras* ;" but lived and died in obscurity.

*John Bunyan*, born in Bedfordshire, 1628 ; died 1688. His name is perpetuated by his famous allegory called " *the Pilgrim's Progress*. "

*Robert Boyle*, born in Ireland, 1627 ; died 1691. He was a celebrated natural philosopher.

*Gilbert Burnet*, bishop of Salisbury, born in Edinburghshire, 1643 ; died 1715. He is memorable as an historical and political writer.

*Charles Boyle*, earl of Orrery, born 1676 ; died 1731. He was a great mathematician ; and the machine representing the solar system having received his approbation, was called, after his title, an orrery.

*Richard Bentley*, born at Wakefield, 1662 ; died 1742. His literary character, as a critic and divine, is known throughout Europe.

*James Brindley*, born in Derbyshire, 1716 ; died 1772. He was the planner of the duke of Bridgewater's canal from Worsley to Manchester, and one, of still greater extent, from the Trent to the Mersey.

*Sir William Blackstone*, born in London, 1723 ; died 1780. He was very eminent as a lawyer, and wrote " *Commentaries on the Laws of England*," an analysis of the laws, and other legal treatises.

*Robert Burns*, the Ayrshire ploughman, born 1759 ; died 1796. His poems, written in the provincial dialect, are uncommonly beautiful.

*Edmund Burke*, born in Ireland, 1729; died 1797. One of the most elegant writers his age produced; he wrote many political tracts, but his "Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful" has stamped his fame as an author: his oratory was distinguished in the senate.

*Dr. Blair*, born in Edinburgh, 1718; died 1801. This celebrated divine was the ornament of the Scottish church, and has immortalized his name by his sermons, and rhetorical lectures.

*Francis Beaumont*, born 1585; died 1615: a dramatic poet, who, in conjunction with his friend *Fletcher*, produced many excellent plays.

*Richard Baxter*, born 1615: died 1691. He was a non-conformist preacher, and wrote many excellent works, amongst which "the Saint's Everlasting Rest" is the most popular. He suffered great persecution for his religious tenets.

*James Bruce*, born in Stirlingshire, 1730; died 1794. He was one of the most distinguished of our modern travellers. He made a tour of Asia Minor, and travelled into Abyssinia to discover the source of the Nile: his statements at the time appeared extravagant, and called forth much illiberal criticism; but subsequent observations have proved their general correctness.

*Lord Byron*, George Gordon, born in London, 1788; died in 1824. As a poet of description and passion he will always occupy a high place, but in some of his works he exhibits a want of purity and right feeling, which detracts from their poetic merit, justly exposing him to the severest censures of criticism, and the condemnation of the moralist and divine. He died at Missolonghi, in Greece, of a brain fever, brought on by mental anxiety and bodily fatigue, during his efforts to assist the Greeks in the struggle for their independence.

*Anna Letitia Barbauld*, born 1743; died 1825. A pious and popular authoress of several works for children. She also wrote some highly esteemed novels.

*Jeremy Bentham*, born 1749; died 1832. A writer of some celebrity on politics and jurisprudence. His principles were what are called utilitarian: he considered those measures best which were most useful, i. e. which brought the greatest happiness to the greatest number. His works are voluminous, and better understood by political economists than by general readers.

*Sir David Baird*, born 1757. A British general officer of distinction: he was engaged at the taking of Seringapatam and the Cape of Good Hope, and also at the siege of Copenhagen. He took part in the battle of Corunna, and the command devolved on him after the death of sir John Moore: he died 1829.

*Matthew Baillie*, M. D., born 1761. A celebrated writer and lecturer on morbid and general anatomy. He presented a valuable museum of anatomical specimens to the College of Physicians : died 1823.

*Sir William Beechey*, born in 1759 ; died 1839 : was eminent as a portrait painter, (in which he excelled most of his contemporaries,) and also produced some historical compositions of superior merit.

### C.

*Geoffrey Chaucer*, born in London, 1328 ; died 1400. He has been called the father of English poetry, and his works evince the propriety of the appellation.

*William Caxton*, a printer, born in Kent the latter part of the reign of Henry IV. ; died 1491. He was the first who set up a printing-press in England, in the reign of Edward IV.

*Thomas Cranmer*, archbishop of Canterbury, born in Nottinghamshire, 1489 ; died 1556. He suffered martyrdom for the protestant cause in Mary's reign.

*Sebastian Cabot*, a celebrated navigator, born at Bristol, 1477. He discovered Newfoundland, and great part of America, before it was visited by Columbus : he died about 1557.

*James Crichton*, called the admirable Crichton, born at Perth, 1560 ; died 1582. He is said to have run through the circle of the sciences by the time he was twenty, and his attainments almost exceed credibility : he disputed in the foreign universities with the most learned professors, and came off victorious : he was assassinated by ruffians.

*William Cecil*, lord Burleigh, a celebrated statesman, born in Lincolnshire, 1521 ; died 1598. He was lord high treasurer to queen Elizabeth for twenty-seven years, and one of the chief supporters of her government.



*John Churchill*, duke of Marlborough, born in Devonshire, 1650 ; died 1722. This renowned general and hero commanded queen Anne's forces in Holland, and gained the victories of Blenheim, Ramilles, Oudenarde, and Malplaquet, aided by her allies. Blenheim-house was erected by the nation to perpetuate his gallant services.

*William Camden*, an antiquary, born in London, 1551 ; died 1623. He was author of the "Britannia," a work which contains the history of the ancient British, their origin, manners, and laws. Camden was not less illustrious for his virtues than his learning.

*Abraham Cowley*, a celebrated poet, born in London, 1618 : died 1667. He had great genius, and an amiable character. Loyalty was its striking feature.

*Sir Robert Bruce Cotton*, born in Huntingdonshire, 1570; died 1631. He was a celebrated collector of records, charters, and other MSS. His works are numerous, and his valuable library now forms a part of the British Museum.

*Sir Edward Coke*, lord chief justice of England, born in Norfolk, 1549; died 1634. He was an excellent lawyer, and had studied his profession thoroughly: his best work is "Institutes of the Laws of England."

*Samuel Clarke*, D.D. born in Norfolk, 1675; died 1729. A divine of the deepest learning, and most amiable character.

*William Collins*, a poet, born in Sussex, 1720; died 1756. His oriental eclogues are models of pastoral poetry. The greatest part of his life was passed in disease and misery; and when fortune favoured his wishes, he became a lunatic.

*Robert, Lord Clive*, baron of Plassey, born in Shropshire, 1725; died 1774. He was a celebrated English general in the service of the East India Company; by his valour and conduct he secured to the India Company a vast access of territory, and Clive's laurels are unfading.

*John Campbell*, LL.D., born at Edinburgh, 1708; died 1775. Author of several valuable works; particularly the "Ancient Universal History," "Modern Universal History," the "Lives of the English Admirals," and the "Present State of Europe."

*Captain James Cook*, born in Yorkshire, 1728; died in 1779. He was a celebrated navigator, sailed three times round the world, and his discoveries have been of the most essential service to nautical and geographical knowledge. Captain Cook was killed at one of the Sandwich Isles, in a skirmish with the natives.

*Sir William Chambers*, born in Sweden, but of English parentage, 1726; died 1796. He was celebrated as an architect; Somerset-house was built under his direction; and he published a treatise upon civil architecture. Robert and James Adam, natives of Scotland, were also the contemporaries of Sir William, and shone in the same profession: the new university of Edinburgh, the Adelphi-buildings, and Portland-place, were designed by them.



*George Canning*, of Irish extraction, but born in London, 1770; died in 1827. This eloquent orator and distinguished statesman occupied a prominent position in the political history of his day. He was a member of successive cabinets; in 1807, secretary of state for foreign affairs; in 1816, president of the board of control; and in 1827, was appointed prime-minister, shortly before his death.

*William Cowper*, the bard of truth and feeling; born in Hertfordshire, 1731; died 1800. He was a man of original

genius, and his works, while they possess all the imagery and fire of true poetry, are the most persuasive sermons, bringing the great truths of Christianity, and the moral duties, home to the hearts of his readers.

*Charles Cornwallis*, marquis Cornwallis, born in England, 1738 ; died in India, 1805. When governor-general of the East India Company's territories, and commander-in-chief of the land forces there, he eminently shone as the patriot, warrior, and man. To British India he was particularly endeared, having spent there many years of a long and active life.

*Adam Clarke*, LL.D., born in Ireland, 1762 ; died 1832. He was a popular minister of the Wesleyan connexion for upwards of half a century, and one of the most eminent men of his day for his acquirements in biblical knowledge and oriental literature. He wrote many valuable works, among which his "Commentary on the Bible" deserves particular notice, as one of the standard works of the kind, and a monument of his great industry and learning.

*Sir Francis Chantrey*. This eminent sculptor was born in 1781, near Sheffield, and died in 1841. He was first brought into note, in 1809, by his four colossal busts of Howe, St. Vincent, Duncan, and Nelson, in the Trinity House. There is an exquisite group of his in Lichfield cathedral, (the sleeping children). The busts, &c. he subsequently executed include some of the first names of the last and present age.

*Sir Astley Cooper*, a celebrated anatomist and surgeon, was born at Brooke in Norfolk, in 1768 ; died in 1841. As a lecturer, an author, a skilful surgeon and dexterous operator, he ranks among the first in the medical profession.

*Thomas Campbell*, born in Glasgow, 1777 ; died 1844. When twenty-one years of age he published his celebrated poem, "the Pleasures of Hope," which placed him high in public estimation ; in 1809 appeared "Gertrude of Wyoming," and in 1819 his "Specimens of the British Poets." He was elected rector of Glasgow university for 1827 and the two following years. Among his works may be mentioned, a "Life of Petrarch," "Life and Times of Frederick the Great," and a "Life of Mrs. Siddons."

## D.

*Robert Dudley*, earl of Leicester, born 1532 ; died 1588. Pride, insolence, and venality were the most prominent features of Leicester's character ; but queen Elizabeth was blind to his vices, and he continued in high favour at her court to the time of his death.

*John Dryden*, an excellent English poet, born in Northamptonshire, 1631 ; died in 1700. His plays, poems, and translations are universally known and admired.

*Sir Francis Drake*, born in Devonshire, 1545; died 1596. He was a distinguished naval officer, and served under Queen Elizabeth with high reputation; he made also a voyage round the world.

*Robert Devereux*, earl of Essex, born in Herefordshire, 1567; died 1601. This gallant nobleman was the favourite of Elizabeth after Leicester's death; but falling under her displeasure he was seized, tried, and beheaded: Elizabeth from that day lost her cheerfulness, and continually regretted his death.

*Daniel De Foe*, born in London, 1661: died 1731. He was a political writer, and tolerable poet; but is best known as the author of "Robinson Crusoe," a pleasing and instructive romance, founded on the real history of Alexander Selkirk, who lived four years upon the desolate island of Juan Fernandez.

*John Dalrymple*, earl of Stair, born in Scotland, 1673; died 1747. He early distinguished himself in his native country in favour of king William, and fought bravely under George II. at the battle of Dettingen.

*Philip Doddridge*, D.D., an eminent dissenting minister, was born in London, 1702; died 1751. He wrote many valuable religious works of a practical kind.

*John Dyer*, a divine and poet, born in Caermarthenshire, 1700; died 1758. His poems of "Grongar Hill," "the Ruins of Rome," and "the Fleece," are specimens of an original genius for poetry, and the most beautiful simplicity of expression.

*Erasmus Darwin*, M.D., of Derby, born in Nottinghamshire, 1732, a physician and poet; died 1802. Among his many beautiful poems, the "Botanic Garden" is particularly worthy of notice.

*Viscount Duncan*, a distinguished naval officer, was born in Dundee, in 1731; died in 1804. He defeated the Dutch fleet off Camperdown, 1797.

*Sir Humphrey Davy*, one of the most eminent of modern chemists, was born, 1778; died in 1829. He invented the safety lamp, discovered that the alkalies and earths had metallic bases; and was the author of many other useful discoveries and inventions, and several scientific publications.

## E.

*John Evelyn*, born in Surrey, 1620; died in 1706. He was famed as a natural philosopher, and his "Silva, or an account of Forest Trees," is well known: he was one of the first fellows of the Royal Society, and closed a most useful life in peace and honour.

*George Edwards*, called the father of ornithology, born in Sussex, 1694; died 1773. He published "the History of Birds," and "Gleanings of Natural History."

*George Augustus Elliott*, born in Roxburghshire, 1718; died 1790. A gallant British general, and the noble defender of Gibraltar against the united efforts of France and Spain: he was raised to the peerage, by the title of lord Heathfield, and baron Gibraltar.

*Thomas, Lord Erskine*, an able and accomplished lawyer and orator, was born in 1750; died in 1823. In 1806 he was made lord high chancellor of Great Britain.

*Viscount Exmouth*, Edward Pellew. A distinguished naval commander, was born at Dover, in 1757; died in 1833. His greatest naval exploit was the bombardment of Algiers, one of the most destructive on record.

## F.

*Sir Martin Frobisher*, an English navigator, born in Yorkshire, time uncertain; died 1594. He fought against the Spanish armada with determined bravery.

*George Fox*, born in Leicestershire, 1624; died 1690. He was the founder of the sect called Quakers.

*John Flamstead*, born in Derbyshire, 1646; died 1719. He was celebrated for astronomical and mathematical knowledge: he composed the British catalogue of fixed stars, and published several works both on astronomy and the mathematics.

*Henry Fielding*, born in Somersetshire, 1707; died 1754. He wrote twenty-six plays, and his humorous works are justly celebrated for their accurate descriptions of life.

*James Ferguson*, born in Scotland, 1710; died 1776. He was a self-taught genius; his great work is "Astronomy explained on sir Isaac Newton's Principles."

*Samuel Foote*, born in Cornwall, 1722; died 1777. He was a distinguished wit, wrote for the stage, and occasionally performed in his own pieces.

*Charles James Fox*, born 1748; died 1806. He was a statesman and orator of no common celebrity.

## G.

*Sir Thomas Gresham*, born in London, 1519; died 1579. He was a princely merchant in queen Elizabeth's reign, and erected the Royal Exchange at his own expense: he converted his own house into a college for the cultivation of the seven liberal sciences, and left perpetual salaries for the professors.

*Thomas Guy*, son of a lighterman in Horselydown, Southwark, born 1643; died 1724. He was apprenticed to a bookseller, and afterwards began the world with two hundred pounds; but by attention to business, and extreme parsimony, accumulated immense riches; he built Guy's Hospital, in Southwark, which cost £18,793; he left by will £219,499 to endow it; to Christ's-Church Hospital he

bequeathed £400 a-year for ever ; and £80,000 (the residue of his estate) was distributed among those who could claim any affinity to him.

*John Gay*, an eminent poet, born in Devonshire, 1688 : died 1732. He was intimate with all the great men of his age ; and his fables, poems, and dramatic pieces were well received by the public.

*Thomas Gray*, born in London, 1716 ; died 1771. His learning and taste were great, and he published a small collection of excellent poems, of which the "Elegy in a Country Churchyard" is the most celebrated.

*Oliver Goldsmith*, a poet, born in Roscommon, Ireland, 1729 ; died 1774. He subsisted chiefly by his pen, and his varied life may instruct those who are entering into its busy scenes : he was by turns a poet, historian, and natural philosopher : his "Vicar of Wakefield," and "Deserted Village," must ever secure the approbation of true taste.

*David Garrick*, born in Herefordshire, 1716 ; died 1779. The most celebrated actor that ever trod the English stage, and an author of no small eminence in the lighter walks of literature.

*Thomas Gainsborough*, born in Suffolk, 1727 ; died 1788. An eminent portrait and landscape painter, equally distinguished by his talents and his virtues.

*Edward Gibbon*, born in Surrey, 1737 ; died 1794. He was the elegant historian of the "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."

*Henry Grattan*, an eminent Irish statesman, was born in Dublin, 1750 ; died in 1820. The British parliament boasts of few, either before or since his time, who equalled him in powers of oratory : he was a sincere lover of his country, and long and eloquently advocated the cause of Catholic emancipation.

*William Gifford*, born at Ashburton, in Devonshire, was the founder of the "Quarterly Review," and the author of several publications, chiefly distinguished by their keen satire and sound criticisms. He died in 1826.

*William Godwin*, was born at Wisbeach, in 1756 ; died in 1836. He is well known as the author of "Caleb Williams," "Fleetwood," "Mandeville," and other popular literary works.

## H.

*John Hampden*, a celebrated patriot, born in London, 1594 ; died 1643. He was the defender of his country's liberties against the arbitrary measures of Charles I., and fell in the battle of Chalgrove Field, Oxfordshire.

*Sir John Holt*, lord chief justice of the King's Bench, born in Oxfordshire, 1642 ; died 1709. He was an able and learned judge.

*Edward Hyde*, earl of Clarendon, born in Wiltshire, 1608; died 1673. He was famed as a statesman and politician, and was chancellor of England; but is best known by his "History of the Rebellion."

*Sir Matthew Hale*, born in Gloucestershire, 1609; died 1676. This learned lawyer was chief justice of the King's Bench, and wrote several treatises on law, morality, physic, and divinity, which are much esteemed.

*William Harvey*, a celebrated physician and physiologist, was born at Folkstone, in Kent, in 1578; died in 1658. He discovered the circulation of the blood.

*Matthew Henry*, born in Shropshire, 1662; died 1714. A learned non-conformist divine; his piety and excellent publications made him respected by all persuasions; his chief work is "an Exposition of the Bible," which has been frequently reprinted.

*Edmund Halley*, born in London, 1656; died 1742. A celebrated astronomer; his observations and discoveries have been of the greatest use to the astronomical and mathematical world.

*James Hervey*, born in Northamptonshire, 1714; died in 1758. His piety and amiable character are undisputed, and his works, chiefly of the serious kind, have been much admired.

*Stephen Hales*, born in Kent, 1680; died 1761. Botany was one of his favourite studies; he was also a mathematician and natural philosopher, and the inventor of the ventilator.

*William Hogarth*, born in London, 1698; died 1764. This celebrated painter and engraver long continued in obscurity, till his "Harlot's Progress," "Rake's Progress," and "Marriage à-la-Mode," turned the public attention upon him: he published a work entitled "the Analysis of Beauty."

*David Hume*, a philosopher and historian, born in Edinburghshire, 1711: died 1776. He published many tracts, but the most distinguished of his works are, his "Treatise on Human Nature," his "Essays," and his "English History."

*John Howard*, born at Hackney, 1726; died 1790. This great philanthropist who, to borrow the words of the inscription on his monument in St. Paul's, "trod an open but unfrequented path to immortality in the ardent and unremitting exercise of Christian charity," travelled through Europe with the noble design of relieving the miserable state of the suffering prisoners; he published an account of the prisons in England and Wales, with those of foreign states, and spent nearly twelve years in the execution of his god-like plan: he at last died at Cherson, of a contagious disease, caught by generously attending a young lady who was sick there.

*William* and *John Hunter*, celebrated anatomists, brothers, and natives of Scotland. William, the elder, was born 1718; died 1783: John, 1728; died 1793. They contributed largely to the interests of science by their publications, and anatomical and physiological discoveries.

*Richard, Earl Howe*, born 1725; died 1799. This gallant admiral entered the service when very young; in 1782 he relieved Gibraltar; on the 1st of June, 1794, he obtained a signal victory over a powerful French fleet, and received the thanks of both houses of parliament.

*Sir William Herschell* was born at Hanover, in 1738: died in 1822. In 1781 this distinguished astronomer, by means of a powerful telescope which he had constructed, discovered a new planet, which he called the Georgium Sidus, and afterwards made other many additions to astronomical science.

*Charles Hutton*, LL.D., an eminent mathematician, was born at Newcastle-on-Tyne, in 1737: died in 1823. His principal works are his "Mathematical and Philosophical Dictionary," and his "Course of Mathematics."

*Felicia Hemans* was born near St. Asaph, in Wales, 1794; died in 1835. She was the authoress of some of the most beautiful poems that adorn the pages of British literature.

*James Hogg* was born 1772; died in 1835. As "the Ettrick Shepherd," he is the well-known author of several esteemed poetical and other literary publications.

### J.

*Jeffery of Monmouth*, a famous British historian, flourished in the reign of Henry I.; he was archdeacon of Monmouth, and afterwards bishop of St. Asaph.

*Ben Jonson*, an English poet and dramatic author, born in Westminster, 1574; died 1637. He was celebrated for his wit and learning.

*Inigo Jones*, a celebrated architect, born in London, 1572; died 1652. He designed many noble edifices.

*Henry Jenkins*, a native of Yorkshire, remarkable for having attained the extraordinary age of 169 years. He retained his faculties to the last, and died in 1670.

*Samuel Johnson*, LL.D., one of the brightest luminaries of the eighteenth century, born in Staffordshire, 1709; died 1784. He was a man of great abilities: his poetry, Rambler, Idler, English Dictionary, Rasselas, and the Lives of the Poets, are all excellent in their kind.

*Sir William Jones*, born in London, 1746; died 1794. His literary powers were great, and his industry indefatigable; he was skilled in the oriental languages, and published a grammar of the Persic; he practised for some time as a lawyer, and in 1783 was appointed judge of the supreme court of Bengal; he published several law tracts, Arabian poems, a translation of Isæus, and many valuable papers.

*John Jervis*, Earl St. Vincent, a celebrated British admiral, was born in 1734; died in 1823. He defeated the Spanish fleet, which was vastly superior in numbers, off Cape St. Vincent, on the 14th February, 1797, and was rewarded with a peerage for this brilliant victory.

*Edward Jenner*, a physician, was born at Berkeley in Gloucestershire, 1749; died in 1823. He is well known as the discoverer of vaccine inoculation, by which he has conferred a great benefit upon mankind.

K.

*John Knox*, born in 1505; died 1572. He was an eminent Scottish preacher in favour of Protestantism, and his memory is revered as one of the chief instruments and promoters of the Reformation. Boldness and intrepidity mark his character.

*John Kemble* was born at Prescot, in Lancashire, in 1757; died in 1823. He is regarded as one of the best tragedians that ever performed on the British stage.

*Edmund Kean* was born in London, in 1787; died in 1833. From a very humble beginning, he rose to the greatest eminence and popularity as a tragedian.

L.

*William Lily*, born in Hampshire, 1466; died 1522. He was celebrated as a grammarian.

*Hugh Latimer*, bishop of Worcester, born in Leicestershire, 1470; died 1554. He was an excellent prelate, and one of those who were condemned to the stake in the reign of queen Mary.

*William Laud*, archbishop of Canterbury, born in Berkshire, 1573; died 1644. This prelate lived in the turbulent times of Charles I.; his intolerant and persecuting conduct made him obnoxious to the parliament, which passed a bill of attainder against him, and he was beheaded on Tower-hill.



*John Locke*, born at Wrington in Somersetshire, 1632; died 1704. He was one of the most celebrated philosophers of his own or any other age, and made a distinguished figure in polite literature: his chief works are "Letters on Toleration," "Essay on the Human Understanding," "Thoughts on Education," and a "Treatise on Civil Government."

*George, Lord Lyttelton*, born in Worcestershire, 1708; died 1773. A man of the most amiable character: he published "Dialogues of the Dead," "History of Henry II.," and "Observations on the Conversion and Apostleship of St. Paul," a work superior to all praise.

*Earl of Liverpool*, Robert Banks Jenkinson, was born in 1770; died in 1828. This eminent statesman was prime-minister from 1812 to 1827.

*Sir Thomas Lawrence* was born at Bristol in 1769; died in 1830. He was the most eminent portrait-painter of the age, and president of the Royal Academy.

### M.

*Sir Thomas More*, lord chancellor of England, born in London, 1480; died 1535. This great man was an able lawyer and an honest statesman: when the divorce between Henry VIII. and queen Catharine of Arragon was agitated, sir Thomas resigned the high office which he had filled with such honour to himself and advantage to his country; and upon his refusal to take the oath of supremacy, he was committed to the Tower, and beheaded.

*Sir Hugh Middleton*, born in Denbighshire, time uncertain; died about 1636. He projected and carried into effect a scheme for supplying the metropolis with water, by bringing the New River up to Islington.



*John Milton*. This literary luminary was born in London, 1608; died 1674. He was the author of the epic poems called "Paradise Lost," and "Paradise Regained," of "Comus," and many others; he also wrote some political works; his character is best portrayed in Dryden's celebrated stanzas, written under Milton's picture, which are subjoined:

"Three poets, in three distant ages born,  
Greece, Italy, and England did adorn:  
The first in loftiness of thought surpass'd,  
The next in majesty,—in both the last;  
The force of nature could no farther go,  
To make a third, she joined the former two."

*William Mason*, a poet, and the intimate friend of Gray, born in Yorkshire, 1725; died 1797. He published plays, the poem called "the English Garden," several smaller poems, and translated Du Fresnoy's "Art of Painting" into elegant English verse, which was farther enriched by the notes of Sir Joshua Reynolds.

*Nevil Maskelyne* D.D., F.R.S., born in 1731; died 1811: he was educated in, and fellow of, Trinity College, Cambridge, and gave early proofs of his genius for the mathematics and astronomy. He was sent to Barbadoes, under the appointment of the Board of Longitude, and was afterwards appointed astronomer royal to the king of Great Britain, which situation he honourably filled forty-six years. In 1776 he published his own "Astronomical Observations

made at Greenwich ; " and in 1792 very correct "Tables of Logarithms," compiled by the late Michael Taylor, (who died while the work was printing,) were given to the world by Dr. Maskelyne ; he had originally granted his advice and assistance, and then finished the work. Dr. Maskelyne's urbanity and humane attention to all were conspicuous.

*George Morland*, born in London, in 1764 ; died in 1804. He was eminent as a painter, and excelled chiefly in delineating rustic scenery and low life.

*Sir John Moore*, a gallant military commander, was born at Glasgow, in 1761 ; fell in battle at Corunna, 1809. He had distinguished himself in several campaigns, and was appointed to the command of a British army in Spain ; but was obliged to retreat before the French, who possessed an overwhelming superiority in numbers and other resources. It was at the close of this masterly retreat that he fought and won the battle in which he fell.

*Sir James Mackintosh*, an eminent statesman, lawyer, and political economist, was born at Inverness, in 1766 ; died in 1832. He wrote a "Discourse on the Study of the Law of Nature and Nations," and a "History of England."

*Hannah More* was born at Stapleton, in Gloucestershire, in 1745 ; died in 1833. She was justly esteemed as the authoress of many moral and religious works, and some dramatic compositions ; among which may be named, the "Cheap Repository," "Christian Morals," "Essay on the Character and Writings of St. Paul," &c.

## N.

*Richard Nevill*, the brave and highly celebrated earl of Warwick, called the king-maker ; he fell at the battle of Barnet, 1471, during the civil wars.

*John, Lord Napier*, born in Scotland, 1550 ; died 1617. An able mathematician and theologian, the forerunner of Newton, and inventor of logarithms for the use of navigators.



*Sir Isaac Newton*, the prince of philosophers, born in Lincolnshire, 1642 ; and died 1727. He made great discoveries in astronomy, optics, and the mathematics : his chief publications were, his "Principia," "Optics," and his "Algebraical Lectures." Sir Isaac's private character was truly amiable. Modest and unassuming, he seemed ignorant that his genius raised him far beyond those who are generally classed as learned men.

*Frederick North*, earl of Guildford, born 1732 : died 1792. Well known in England as prime-minister in the former part of the reign of George III. : he was certainly a man of abilities, but his conduct as a statesman during the dispute

with our American colonies, has subjected him to considerable odium.



*Horatio Nelson*, viscount Nelson, and duke of Bronté in Sicily, born in Norfolk, 1758; died in 1805. Bred to the sea, this hero early evinced that prompt decision of character and intrepidity of conduct by which he was so eminently distinguished. In 1779 he was appointed post-captain; at Toulon, Bastia, and Calvi, he displayed his courage and conduct. When rear-admiral of the blue,

and knight of the Bath, he lost his right arm while gallantly signalizing himself at the siege of Santa Cruz, in the isle of Teneriffe; but the successive victories of the Nile, Copenhagen, and Trafalgar complete the climax of his professional glory. In Lord Nelson's last and greatest achievement, the ever-memorable battle of Trafalgar, the combined fleets of France and Spain were defeated, and twenty ships of the line taken and destroyed; he fell towards the close of the engagement, in life victorious, in death triumphant; and his remains were interred in St. Paul's cathedral, with unexampled funeral pomp, at the public expense.

### O.

*Sir John Oldcastle*, baron of Cobham, born in the reign of Edward III. He collected and transcribed the works of Wickliffe, which he dispersed among the people: this roused the indignation of the clergy; charges of heresy and conspiracy were alleged against him, and he was burnt alive in chains, 1418.

*Thomas Otway*, a dramatic writer, born in Sussex, 1651; died 1685. He excelled in moving the passions.

*John Opie*, a portrait painter, born in Cornwall, 1761. He was apprenticed to a carpenter, but his talents attracting attention he was encouraged to study painting, in which he became very eminent: he died in 1807, and was buried in St. Paul's cathedral.

### P.

*William Penn*, a celebrated quaker, born in London, 1644; died 1718. He colonized the province of Pennsylvania, built the town of Philadelphia, and was deservedly esteemed by the good of all persuasions: he wrote several pieces in defence of his own opinions.

*Thomas Parnell*, D. D., born in Dublin, 1679: died 1718. His elegant poems have ever been highly admired; he was the friend of Swift, Gay, Arbuthnot, and Pope.

*Alexander Pope*, a highly celebrated poet, born in London, 1688; died 1744. He displayed a genius for poetry at a very early period; his *Pastorals* were his first produc-

tions ; he afterwards published "Windsor Forest," the "Essay on Criticism," the "Rape of the Lock," the "Dunciad," and the "Essay on Man;" he also translated the Iliad and the Odyssey of Homer.

*Matthew Prior*, born in London, 1664 ; died 1721. He was eminent as a poet, and though of humble parentage, his abilities raised him to the office of secretary of state, under queen Anne.

*Humphrey Prideaux*, D.D., born in Cornwall 1648 ; died 1724. A learned divine, who published several useful works : the most valuable is "the Connexion of the History of the Old and New Testament."

*William Pitt*, earl of Chatham, born in Wiltshire, 1708 ; died 1778. This illustrious statesman and eloquent orator was, during a successful administration, the pride of Britain : his eloquence has been compared to a mighty torrent ; he had a quick and penetrating genius, and his activity and energy pervaded each department of the state.

*Charles Pratt*, earl Camden, born 1719 : died 1794. He was chief justice of the Common Pleas, afterwards lord chancellor ; as an upright and enlightened lawyer, his name will be ever venerated.

*Richard Porson*, born in Norfolk, 1759 ; died 1808. This very learned man was Greek professor of the Cambridge university, and principal librarian of the London Institution. His mind was stored with all that is worth preserving in ancient or modern literature.

*Joseph Priestley*, LL.D., born in Yorkshire, 1733 ; died in North America, 1804. He was celebrated as a natural and experimental philosopher, and was a zealous controversial writer in divinity. Owing to the ignorant bigotry of the populace at Birmingham, his house there was destroyed, and his valuable library and manuscripts burnt.



*William Pitt*, second son of the illustrious earl of Chatham, born in Kent, 1759 ; died 1806. This great statesman was appointed chancellor of the exchequer when only twenty-three years of age, continuing prime-minister, with very little interruption, till his death. All parties concur in acknowledging his great talents, integrity, disinterestedness, and love of his country. Public funeral honours were decreed him, in testimony of the nation's respect.

*Beilby Porteus*, bishop of London, born at York, 1731 ; died in 1809. He eminently served the cause of genuine Christianity by his sensible, affectionate, and serious exhortations in a course of lectures delivered at St. James's church, London ; he published also sermons, and a "Summary of the Christian Revelation."

*Mungo Park*, was born 1771, near Selkirk, in Scotland : he became celebrated for his travels in the interior of Africa, and was killed by the natives at Boussa, in his second expedition, while exploring the course of the Niger.

*Samuel Parr*, D.D., born at Harrow in 1746 ; died 1825. He had an uncommonly retentive memory, and was one of the first classical scholars and most learned divines of the age.

### Q.

*Francis Quarles*, an English poet, born in Essex, 1592 : he wrote many pieces, the best known of which are his "Emblems." His adherence to the royal cause occasioned him the loss of his property, which, with the destruction of some MSS. he highly valued, is supposed to have hastened his death in 1644.

*James Quin*, a celebrated actor, born in London, 1693 ; died 1766. He was intended for the bar, but a turn for gaiety and dissipation led him to disappoint the wishes of his friends, and he went upon the stage, where he was for some time the rival of Garrick.

### R.

*Nicholas Ridley*, bishop of London, (the friend of Latimer,) born in Northumberland, 1500 ; and died 1555, being burnt at the stake ; he was a learned prelate, and published several tracts.

*Sir Walter Raleigh*, born in Devonshire, 1552 ; died 1618. He was a soldier, a scholar, and a gentleman ; was favoured by Elizabeth, but in the reign of James I. he was accused of high treason, imprisoned in the Tower twelve years, where he wrote his "History of the World," released, and afterwards beheaded (though his offence was never proved) at the instigation of the Spanish envoy.

*John Ray*, a natural philosopher, born in Essex, 1628 ; died 1705. His skill in botany, the languages, and polite literature, is universally allowed : his great work is entitled "the Wisdom of God manifested in the Works of the Creation."

*John Radcliffe*, M.D., born at Wakefield, 1650 ; died 1714. This celebrated physician's name is perpetuated by a fine library, which he founded at Oxford.

*Allan Ramsay*, born in Peebles-shire, 1686 ; died 1758. He was a Scotch poet, famed as the author of the "Gentle Shepherd," which has been generally read.

*George, Lord Rodney*, a gallant admiral, born about 1718 ; died 1792. He obtained a great victory over the French fleet, commanded by the count de Grasse, in 1782, which was rewarded by the peerage, and a suitable annuity.

*Sir Joshua Reynolds*, born in Devonshire, 1723 ; died

1792. He was a celebrated portrait and historical painter, fellow of the Royal and Antiquarian Societies, and president of the Royal Academy. In his valuable discourses on painting, the principles of the art are laid down with perspicuity and elegance.

*William Robertson*, an eminent historian and divine, born in Scotland, 1721; died 1793. His great works are, the "History of Charles V., emperor of Germany," and the "History of America;" he wrote also a "History of Scotland."

*David Ricardo* was born in London, of a Jewish family, in 1772; died in 1823. He was eminent as a writer on finance and statistics.

## S.

*Sir Philip Sidney*, born in Kent, 1554; died 1586. A gentleman whose wit, learning, politeness, and courage were alike distinguished; he was general of the horse under queen Elizabeth, and died of a wound he received at the battle of Zutphen, universally mourned: he wrote "the Arcadia," a romance.

*Edmund Spenser*, born in London about 1553; died 1598. This celebrated poet was patronised by sir Philip Sidney; his chief work is the "Faëry Queen," which is imperfect, six books having been lost by his servant.

*Thomas Sutton*, the founder of the Charter House, born in Lincolnshire, 1532; died 1611. He purchased the Charter House for £13,000, and founded an hospital for the relief of indigent men and children.



*William Shakspeare*, born in Warwickshire, 1564; died 1616: the poet of Nature, "Fancy's child." The recent indefatigable researches of Mr. Collier, Mr. Charles Knight, and others, have furnished many interesting particulars of the life of this great dramatist, but there are still few authentic records of his history. Dr. Johnson thus admirably describes

the genius of Shakspeare :

" When Learning's triumph o'er her barbarous foes  
First rear'd the stage, immortal Shakspeare rose !  
Each change of many-colour'd life he drew,  
Exhausted worlds, and then imagin'd new :  
Existence saw him spurn her bounded reign,  
And panting Time toil'd after him in vain ;  
His powerful strokes presiding Truth confess'd,  
And unresisting Passion storm'd the breast."

*Algernon Sidney*, born 1622; died 1683. This patriot had much of the old Roman in his composition, and during the civil wars in the time of Charles I. he sided with the

parliament. On the restoration of Charles II. his friends wished to intercede for a pardon, but he refused it, and remained seventeen years in exile : he was at length accused of high treason, beheaded on bare suspicion of a pretended plot, and suffered with that serenity and fortitude which innocence alone can give.

*Thomas Sydenham*, M.D., born in Dorsetshire, 1624 ; died 1689. An eminent physician, styled the “father of modern medicine ;” his practice was highly successful.

*Sir Richard Steele*, born in Dublin, 1676 ; died 1729. A distinguished moral and political writer, the friend of Addison : he was the editor, and partly the author of the *Tatler*, *Spectator*, *Guardian*, and *Englishman*.

*Nicholas Saunderson*, LL.D., born in Yorkshire, 1682 ; died 1739. Saunderson was blind from his childhood, but notwithstanding this misfortune, he acquired a perfect knowledge of the dead languages, and became one of the most celebrated mathematicians. He published “Elements of Algebra,” and a “Treatise on Fluxions.”

*Jonathan Swift*, D.D., born in Dublin, 1667 ; died 1745. He was a celebrated wit, and his works have been universally read : he left all his fortune, some legacies excepted, towards building an hospital for idiots and lunatics, and died himself insane.

*Henry St. John*, lord Bolingbroke, born in Surrey, 1672 ; died 1751. A philosopher, statesman, and political writer, a man of great abilities and extensive knowledge : he took an active part in the politics of the day in Anne’s reign, but on the accession of George I. he was disgraced, and retired into France. His letters on the study and use of history are admirably written.

*Sir Hans Sloane*, born in Down, Ireland, 1660 ; died 1752. An eminent physician, naturalist, and botanist. His library, consisting of 50,000 volumes, and his collection of curiosities, he bequeathed to the public, and thus commenced the British Museum, which was opened in 1759.

*William Shenstone*, born in Shropshire, 1715 ; died 1763. His taste for simplicity and elegant rural pleasures appeared in his poems, and on his paternal estate, the Leasowes, which he greatly embellished : he shone in pastoral and elegiac compositions.

*Thomas Secker*, D.D., archbishop of Canterbury, born in Nottinghamshire, 1693 ; died 1768. A pious and most useful primate : he was particularly eminent as a plain, pathetic, practical preacher ; and his sermons are still generally read and admired.

*Laurence Sterne*, born in Ireland, 1713 ; died 1768. He was a lively, witty writer, and author of humorous works, and sermons, letters, &c.

*Tobias Smollett*, M.D., born in Scotland, 1721 ; died 1771.

He practised as a physician, but is chiefly known as an author ; his works consist of history, novels, and political pieces.

*Philip Dormer Stanhope*, earl of Chesterfield, born 1694 ; died 1773. This celebrated character was distinguished as a statesman, wit, and finished courtier. His "Letters to his Son" have been much admired.

*Richard Brinsley Sheridan*, a distinguished orator, wit, and dramatist, was born at Dublin, in 1751 ; died in 1816. His "School for Scandal" gained him a high reputation as a comic writer, and his speech against Warren Hastings was a master-piece of eloquence.

*Sarah Siddons* was born at Brecknock, 1755 ; died 1831. This highly-celebrated tragic actress was a woman of a strong and well-cultivated mind, and possessed every personal requisite for representing successfully the characters she enacted. Her theatrical career was long and brilliant.

*Sir Walter Scott* was born at Edinburgh, in 1771 ; died 1832. His poetical reputation stands high, but it is chiefly as a novelist that he is eminent. In this department of literature he excelled all his cotemporaries.

### T.

*John Talbot*, earl of Shrewsbury, a celebrated English general, whose valour made him proverbially hateful to the French : he flourished under Henry V. and Henry VI., and was killed at the siege of Castillon, in a skirmish with the French troops, 1453.

*William Tyndale*, born in Wales, 1500 ; died 1536. He embraced the doctrines of Luther at an early period, and was the first who gave us an English translation of the Bible : for his noble firmness in religious opinions he was strangled and burnt.

*John Tillotson*, D. D., born in Yorkshire, 1630 ; died 1694. He rose to the dignified station of archbishop of Canterbury : his numerous works form the most solid body of practical divinity which the church can boast of.

*Sir William Temple*, an eminent statesman, born in London, 1629 ; died 1700. He spent twenty years in the service of the state, and then retired for the enjoyment of learned leisure : he wrote on politics and polite literature, and his works are Memoirs, Miscellanies, Letters, and "Observations on the United Provinces."

*Sir James Thornhill*, born in Dorsetshire, 1676 ; died 1732. He was a painter of eminence, and nephew to Dr. Sydenham : he painted the dome of St. Paul's, the hospital of Greenwich, and portions of Hampton-Court palace.

*James Thomson*, born in Roxburghshire, 1700 ; died 1748. A poet whose works are in the highest esteem : they comprise "the Seasons," five "Tragedies," the "Castle of

*Indolence," "Liberty," and various other miscellaneous productions.*

## V.

*Sir John Vanbrugh*, born in Cheshire; died 1726. He was eminent both in poetry and architecture: was the contemporary and friend of Congreve, and wrote several dramatic works: as an architect, his skill was displayed in the erection of Blenheim-house and Claremont.

*Edward Vernon*, born in Westminster, 1684; died 1757. He was a brave and successful English admiral, and in the reign of George II. signalized himself by his bombardment of Cartagena, in South America, and with only six ships took Porto Bello.

*James Usher*, archbishop of Armagh, born in Dublin, 1580; died 1655. He was eminent for his virtues and learning, and the author of many valuable works: he was interred in Westminster Abbey. His chief work is "Sacred Chronology," or "Annals of the Old and New Testament, from the beginning of the World to the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus Vespasian, A. D. 70;" as far as it goes, it forms the chief chronological authority of the learned.

## W.

*John Wickliffe*, born in Yorkshire, 1324; died 1384. He was the first who opposed the authority of the pope, and the jurisdictions of the bishops in England, in the reign of Richard II. Wickliffe's followers, known by the name of Lollards, incurred the persecuting hatred of the Catholic clergy at that period.

*William of Wykeham*, or Wickham, bishop of Winchester, born at Wickham in Hampshire, 1324; died 1404. He held his bishopric under Edward III., Richard II., and Henry IV., and was for some time lord high chancellor of England; he was ever an encourager of learning and virtue, enforcing by his own example the principles he inculcated; he was the founder of New College, Oxford, and that at Winchester. Edward III. built Windsor Castle by his advice.

*Sir Richard Whittington*, a wealthy citizen of London, who lived in the reigns of Richard II., Henry IV., and Henry V.: he was three times lord mayor of London; he built Newgate, part of St. Bartholomew's hospital, and the east end of Guildhall: the time of his death is uncertain, but his last mayoralty was in 1419.

*Thomas Wolsey*, a cardinal and archbishop of York, born in Suffolk, 1471; died 1530: he was long the chancellor, the minister, and the prime favourite of Henry VIII., but his insatiable pride, his exactions, and his opposition to Henry's divorce from Catharine of Arragon, rendered him obnoxious to the king and people; he was therefore im-

peached, and his spirit being broken by the indignities he suffered, he died of a broken heart at Leicester, while under arrest. His income was very great, and he lived in princely state, maintaining 800 servants, among whom were many lords, knights, and esquires.

*Sir Francis Walsingham*, born in Kent, 1536; died 1590. He was a celebrated statesman, and secretary to queen Elizabeth: his integrity was so great, that he died extremely poor. Britons owe much to Walsingham as the zealous supporter of the protestant religion, and the encourager of navigation, arts, and sciences: one of his favourite maxims should be impressed upon the minds of youth, " Knowledge is never too dear."

*Sir Christopher Wren*, born in Wiltshire, 1632; died 1723. The greatest architect of the age, and a good mathematician and astronomer; his philosophical works were approved by the Royal Society, and printed in their transactions: he twice served his country in parliament, and the magnificent fabrics St. Paul's church, the Monument, St. Stephen's, Walbrook, in London, and the Theatre at Oxford, are proofs of his eminence in architecture.

*Sir Robert Walpole*, born in Norfolk, 1674; died 1745. A distinguished statesman under George I. and II., and chancellor of the exchequer to the latter monarch; his abilities have never been questioned, his integrity often. He was created earl of Orford.

*Isaac Watts*, D.D., born in Hampshire, 1674; died in 1748. A celebrated divine, whose life was one continued scene of useful labours; he published many devotional pieces, a treatise on logic, and one on "the Improvement of the Mind."

*William Whiston*, born in Leicestershire, in 1667; died 1752. A divine, and famous mathematician: having lived in habits of intimacy with Sir Isaac Newton, he explained and increased the popularity of the Newtonian system.

*General James Wolfe*, born in Kent, 1726: died 1759. At the taking of Quebec this gallant officer fell in the moment of victory.

*George Whitfield*, born in 1714, at Gloucester; died in New England, in 1770. He was a pious, zealous, and eloquent preacher, and founder of the Calvinistic methodists.

*John Wesley*, born in Lincolnshire, 1703; died 1791. This celebrated divine founded the Wesleyan methodist society in 1735; and by his labours in the course of a long life, this society continued to increase in numbers: his works are numerous.

*Horace Walpole*, third son of sir Robert Walpole, born 1717; died 1797. As a man of wit and taste, Mr. Walpole will long be distinguished: his Letters, "the Mysterious Mother," and his "Anecdotes of Painting," are among his best productions, nor is his poetry undeserving of notice.

*Gilbert White*, a divine and naturalist, born 1720; died 1793. He wrote "The Natural History and Antiquities of Selborne."

*Joseph Wright*, a highly-esteemed painter, born at Derby, 1734; died 1797. His landscapes and historical pictures are excellent; to native genius he added the advantages of travel, and the study of the best Italian masters.

*James Watt* was born at Greenock, in 1736; died in 1819. He is well known as the ingenious inventor of the modern improvements in the steam-engine, by which it has been rendered applicable to machinery. He was also eminent as a philosopher and civil engineer.

*John Wolcot, M.D.*, born in Devonshire 1738; died 1819. Under the name of Peter Pindar he published several satires on the royal academicians, and afterwards assailed the king himself with more wit than truth. His productions were numerous and ludicrous, and very extensively read.

*Benjamin West* was born in Pennsylvania, in 1738; died in London in 1820. He was celebrated as a painter: among his best productions may be mentioned his "Death of General Wolfe," which first brought him into notice in England, "Death on the Pale Horse," and "Christ healing the Sick." In 1791 he succeeded sir Joshua Reynolds as president of the Royal Academy.

*William Wilberforce*, born at Hull in 1759; died in 1833. This distinguished lover of his species commenced his parliamentary career in 1787 by moving the abolition of negro slavery, and never relaxed in his exertions till he succeeded in obtaining it in 1807.

*Sir David Wilkie*, a painter of distinguished merit, was born near Cupar, in Fifehire, 1785; died in 1841. Among his most celebrated pictures are "Distrainting for Rent," the "Penny Wedding," the "Village Festival," "Blind Man's Buff," the "Chelsea Pensioners," &c. He was appointed principal painter in ordinary to the sovereign.

## Y.

*Edward Young, D.D.*, a poet of well-established fame, born in Hampshire, 1681; died 1765. His chief works are, a poem entitled the "Last Day," "Love of Fame the Universal Passion," and the "Night Thoughts," occasioned by the death of his wife.

*Arthur Young*, a celebrated agriculturist, born 1741; died 1820. On succeeding to his paternal estate, he commenced farming, and impoverished himself by experiments. He collected much information on rural economy, both in England and on the continent, and on the establishment of a board of agriculture was appointed secretary. He published the "Farmer's Calendar," the "Annals of Agriculture," and numerous agricultural works.

## SECTION II.

## GENERAL BIOGRAPHY.

## A.

*Avicenna*, an Arabian physician, born 980; died 1036. He attended the caliph's court at Bagdad, and his works, written in Arabic, are in high estimation.

*Guy Arelin*, an Italian musician, who flourished in the eleventh century: he wrote a treatise on music, and invented the gamut.

*Abelard*, a celebrated divine, poet, and theological writer, born 1079; died in 1142. His attachment to Eloisa is well known: he was a Frenchman, and became a monk in the abbey of St. Denis; he afterwards erected an oratory, called the Paraclete, in Champagne, and his learning, with the holiness of his life, drew many followers: he quitted this retreat, and bestowed it upon Eloisa and a society of nuns.

*St. Thomas Aquinas*, an Italian, of royal descent, born 1224; died 1274. He became a monk, and attended the lectures of Albertus Magnus: his fame for knowledge and sanctity of manners increased daily; after his death he was canonized, and his theological works are highly esteemed by the members of the Romish church.

*Albertus Magnus*, a German and Dominican friar, born at the beginning of the thirteenth century; died 1280. His knowledge of natural philosophy was so great that, in the superstitious age in which he lived, this learned man was frequently taken for a magician.

*Albuquerque*, a distinguished Portuguese commander, who was employed by Emanuel, king of Portugal, to make discoveries and plant colonies in the East Indies: he was appointed governor of the Portuguese settlements in those parts, and took Ormus, Goa, and Malacca by assault: he died 1515.

*Michael Angelo* (Buonaroti), a celebrated Italian painter and statuary, born in Tuscany, 1474; died 1564. This eminent artist was patronised by Lorenzo de Medici, and his works are models of taste and expression.

*Ariosto*, an Italian poet, born at Reggio, 1474; died 1533. Charles V., of Germany, distinguished him highly, and honoured him with the laurel. His celebrated poem, "Orlando Furioso," has been elegantly translated by Mr. Hoole.

The *Duke of Alva*, a Spanish general, born 1508; died 1582. He was long in the service of Charles V. emperor of Germany, and his successor Philip II. By the latter monarch Alva was appointed to reduce the Low Countries to obedience. He exercised the greatest cruelties upon the people, yet failed in his endeavours.

*Albani*, an Italian painter, born at Bologna, 1578; died 1660. He was the pupil of the Caracci, and excelled in the delineation of female beauty: his loves and graces are inimitable.

*D'Anville*, a Frenchman, and geographer to the French king, born at Paris in 1697; died 1782. He published an abridgment of ancient geography, and his maps, particularly those upon ancient geography, are excellent.

*D'Alembert*, a Frenchman, born at Paris in 1717; died 1783. This celebrated philosopher and mathematician assisted in compiling the French "Cyclopædia," published the "Elements of Philosophy," and various miscellaneous works, memoirs, &c.

## B.

*Boccaccio*, an Italian poet, cotemporary with Petrarch, born 1313; died 1375. He left some historical works behind him, but his "Decameron," (or collection of Tales,) is the most esteemed of his writings.

The *Chevalier Bayard*, a French warrior, distinguished equally by his active humanity and his heroic bravery; after many signal proofs of courage and conduct, he fell in an action with the Imperialists, in 1524.

*Biron*, marshal of France, a celebrated Frenchman, and general under Henry III. and Henry the Great, of France: his military conduct and uncommon valour have immortalized his name; he was born 1533; died 1592, falling by a cannon-ball at the siege of Epernay.

*Tycho Brahe*, a celebrated Danish astronomer, born at Knudstorp, 1546; died in 1601. He adopted (or rather invented) a system of astronomy, which has been found erroneous: it was opposed to that of Copernicus, now acknowledged to be the only true system of the universe.

*Bayer*, a German astronomer, who flourished in the seventeenth century. He published a celestial atlas, and was the inventor of that method, now in common use, of representing the stars upon the globe by Greek letters, according to their different degrees of magnitude.

*Bonarelli*, an Italian, and pastoral poet, born at Urbino, 1563; died 1608. His poems have been thought to resemble the style of Tasso and Guarini.

*Cardinal Bentivoglio*, an Italian, born 1579; died 1644. He was a good historian, and cultivated the Belles Lettres successfully: his works are, "Letters," "Memoirs," "an Account of Flanders," and "History of the Civil Wars in Flanders." There was another Bentivoglio, 1506–1573, an Italian poet of some note.

*Andrew and John Both*, celebrated Dutch painters. John was born at Utrecht, 1610; died 1650. Andrew died in the same year: he excelled in landscapes and portrait painting:

John copied the manner of Claude Lorraine very successfully.

*Le Brun*, a French painter, born 1619; died 1690. He was first painter to Louis XIV. of France; and painted the principal events of his royal master's reign in allegorical figures, uniting fable with history, in the gallery of Versailles; he adorned the Louvre with Alexander's battles: the church of Nôtre Dame, at Paris, was embellished with two of Le Brun's best paintings.

*Bernini*, an eminent Italian sculptor, born at Naples, 1598; died 1680. At ten years of age he succeeded admirably in carving a marble head, and at seventeen Rome was enriched by many of his works: he was also a good painter and architect.

*Bossuet*, bishop of Meaux, an eminent Frenchman, born 1627; died 1704. He was an excellent preacher, and a good historian; his theological and controversial works have been much read, and he published a "Discourse upon Universal History."

*Bernoulli*, a Swiss mathematician and geometrician, born 1654; died 1705. He resided some time in England, and on his return to his native town (Basil), he read lectures on natural and experimental philosophy, mechanics, &c. He had a brother (John Bernoulli), and a nephew (Daniel Bernoulli), who equalled, if they did not surpass him in mathematical knowledge.

*Bayle*, a Frenchman, born at Carla, 1647; died 1706. He was the author of a celebrated "Biographical and General Dictionary."

*Boileau*, a French poet and eminent wit, born at Paris, 1636; died 1711. His "Satires," and "Art of Poetry," have been universally admired.

*Boerhaave*, born in Holland, at Voorhoot, in 1668; died 1738. He was the most celebrated physician of his time, and ranked high as a botanist and chemist.

*Beccaria*, an Italian monk, professor of philosophy and the mathematics at Rome; died 1781. He was celebrated for his electrical experiments and discoveries: he wrote on philosophical, astronomical, and electrical subjects.

*Bergman*, a Swede, born at Catherineberg, 1735; died 1784. This eminent chemist and naturalist was one of those who first accurately observed the transit of Venus over the sun, and discovered the properties of the different earths, and the true nature of fixed air.

*Count de Buffon*, a French naturalist and philosopher, born 1707; died 1788. His "Natural History" is a work of considerable labour and interest.

*Bailly*, a celebrated French astronomer, born 1736; died 1793. A man of universal talents: he published several historical disquisitions, but his great work is called "the

**History of Astronomy.**" Plunging into the whirlpool of politics, he became mayor of Paris in 1789; but was condemned to suffer under the guillotine, during the French revolution.

**Louis Von Beethoven**, a pupil of Haydn, and eminent as a musical composer. His works are numerous: he was born at Bonn, 1770; died in 1827.

### C.

**James Coeur**, a French merchant, who flourished in the fifteenth century: died 1456. He was the greatest commercial character of his time,—the Gresham of France.

**Columbus** of Genoa, born about 1442; died 1506. A celebrated navigator, to whom we owe the discovery of a new world,—a memorable epoch in the history of man: to him science, geography, and the arts are greatly indebted; he surmounted much opposition and ridicule.

**Philip de Comines**, born in Flanders, 1446; died 1509. He was an upright statesman, and an excellent and impartial historian: his writings are, "the History of France," and "the General Affairs of Europe, from the fifteenth to the beginning of the sixteenth Century."

**Cortez**, a celebrated Spaniard; the time of his birth is uncertain, but it was at Medellin, in Estremadura; died about 1550. In 1518 he sailed for the conquest of Mexico, encouraged by the recent discoveries of Columbus: in this enterprise he succeeded to his utmost wishes; but he perpetrated many shocking cruelties on the unfortunate natives.

**Copernicus**, a Prussian, born at Thorn, 1472; died 1543. This celebrated astronomer and mathematician established the true system of the universe, in opposition to that of Ptolemy, which had till his time been generally received; the great work of Copernicus is entitled, "the Revolutions of the Celestial Orbs."

**Correggio**, an Italian painter of great merit, born at Modena, 1494; died 1534. He excelled in the disposition of light and shade, and his pieces are in high estimation.

**Calvin**, born in Picardy, 1509; died 1564. One of the celebrated reformers of the Romish church: he resigned his benefice upon his change of opinions, and, persecuted by the Catholic party, was obliged to retire into Switzerland, where he published his "Institutes of Christian Religion." Calvin was afterwards chosen one of the ministers of the reformed church at Geneva; there he exercised the most unbounded authority: the church of Scotland regulates her faith by his opinions.

**Coligni**, a French admiral, born at Chatillon, 1516; died 1572. He was chief of the protestant party during the civil wars in France, and was eminently brave and humane. He fell in the atrocious massacre of St. Bartholomew's day.

*Camoens*, a Portuguese poet, died 1579. This excellent author wrote the "Luciad," (well translated by Mr. Mickle into English) : he shone as a scholar and a soldier, and served his country bravely against the Moors.

*Cisalpinus*, an Italian physician, born in the sixteenth century ; died 1603. He introduced botanical knowledge into Europe, and is supposed to have had some ideas of the circulation of the blood, afterwards fully proved by the English doctor Harvey.

*Casaubon*, born at Geneva, 1559 ; died in England, 1614. He was a learned commentator upon, and editor of, the Latin and Greek authors ; he published also an edition of Polybius, and one of the Greek Testament.

*Cervantes*, a Spaniard, born at Madrid, 1549 ; died 1616. A celebrated writer ; renowned also for his valour, which he displayed against the Moors. He wrote for the stage, but his admirable romance, "Don Quixote," has immortalized his name.

The *Caracci*, Italians, all celebrated painters, born at Bologna,—Lewis, Augustine, and Hannibal ; they flourished in the early part of the seventeenth century, none of them survived the year 1619 ; cardinal Farnese employed Hannibal in painting the Farnese gallery at Rome ; Augustine resided at the duke of Parma's court ; and Lewis remained at Bologna. Lewis and Hannibal were brothers ; Augustine was their cousin.

*Des Cartes*, a French philosopher and mathematician, born at La Haye, 1596 ; died 1650. Des Cartes' system of philosophy, though ingenious, was not solid ; and it was completely overturned by the demonstrations of sir Isaac Newton.

*Claude of Lorraine*, an eminent landscape painter, born 1600 ; died 1682. He painted in oils, and his pieces have a peculiar richness of tint.

*Colbert*, a celebrated French statesman, born at Paris, 1619 ; died 1683. Louis XIV. made Colbert his prime minister, and never were honours more properly bestowed : he was the patron of the fine arts ; the navy, commerce, and manufactures were equally indebted to him ; he built arsenals in the best French sea-ports, regulated courts of justice, and improved the finances of the kingdom.

*Corneille*, an eminent French poet ; his dramatic works are, in general, excellent : he was born at Rouen, 1606 ; died 1684.

*Louis, Prince of Condé*, an illustrious French general, born 1621 ; died 1686. He entered the army when a boy, and was distinguished through life by his valour and conduct.

*Cassini*, an Italian astronomer, born 1635 ; died 1712. He discovered four of Saturn's satellites, and having obtained the pope's permission to remain some years in

France, became the first inmate of the Royal Observatory, built under the direction of the celebrated Colbert: he settled the meridian line, and published many valuable works.

*Charles XII.*, king of Sweden, born 1682; died 1718. This monarch's passion for war and conquest gave him a title to the appellation of the modern Alexander. He was killed by a cannon-shot at the siege of Fredericshall.

*Le Clerc*, born at Geneva, in 1657; died 1736. He was professor of philosophy, Hebrew, and the Belles Lettres, at Amsterdam; and for some years bishop Burnet, lord Shaftesbury, and Le Clerc formed in private society a learned triumvirate: he translated the New Testament, and commented upon the Old; wrote the "History of Cardinal Richelieu," and "Annals of the first Centuries of the Church;" with many other learned works.

*Calmet*, a Frenchman and Benedictine monk, born 1672; died 1757. He was an indefatigable writer, and a man of worth: his principal publications were, a "Commentary upon the Old and New Testament," the "History of the Old and New Testament," "Universal History, sacred and profane," and an "Historical, Critical, and Chronological Dictionary of the Bible."

*Antonio Canova*, a celebrated sculptor, was born in the state of Venice in 1757; died in 1822. He was greatly patronised by the potentates of Europe. Among his best productions are his "Cupid and Psyche," "Venus and Adonis," and "Mary Magdalene."

*Baron Cuvier*, a distinguished naturalist, born in the kingdom of Wurtemburg in 1769; died at Paris in 1832. He has made considerable and important additions to our knowledge in various departments of natural history, particularly zoology.

## D.

*Danté*, a celebrated Italian poet, born at Florence, 1265; died 1321. Danté's ambitious spirit led him to quit Parnassian retreats and join a factious party, then prevailing in Florence: but the power of this party decreasing, he was banished, and in his exile wrote many of his best poems.

*Durer*, a celebrated engraver and painter, born in Germany, at Nuremberg, 1471; died 1528. His engravings are numerous and excellent, his pictures are extremely scarce: he was the first who engraved upon wood.

*Doria*, born in Genoa, 1466; died 1560. The greatest naval commander of the age in which he lived, and the deliverer of Genoa from French oppression: the sovereignty of his country was offered him, but he nobly refused to deprive the Genoese of their independence: his grateful countrymen, however, raised a palace for Doria, and erected a statue in honour of their hero.

*Davila*, an eminent French historian, but born in the island of Cyprus; died 1634. He served with reputation in the French army, and afterwards went into Italy, where he was assassinated: he wrote the "History of the Civil Wars in France," which has always been esteemed the most correct reference extant.

*Domenichino*, an Italian painter, born at Bologna, 1581; died 1641. He was a pupil of the Caracci; his paintings are in high estimation, and his architectural designs have been much admired.

*Dow*, a Dutch painter, the scholar of Rembrandt, born in Leyden, 1613; died 1674. His pieces are marked by strong expression and exquisite finish; many of them are now in the Louvre at Paris.

The two *Daciers*, Andrew and Anne,—a celebrated French pair. Andrew was born 1651; died 1722: Anne 1651; died 1720. She translated the Iliad and Odyssey, Anacreon and Sappho, the comedies of Terence, and the works of Plautus: Andrew translated Horace, Plato's works, Plutarch's lives, and Epictetus.

*Diderot*, a French writer, born 1713; died 1784: memorable as the principal author of the famous French "Encyclopédie." His other works scarcely deserve notice.

*Gaetano Donizetti*, a celebrated composer, born at Bergamo, in North Italy, 1797; died 1848. He is said to have written nearly seventy operas, many of them extremely popular, in addition to other musical compositions.

## E.

*Erasmus*, a celebrated Dutchman, born at Rotterdam, 1467; died in 1536. He was the most elegant of the modern Latin authors, and the great restorer of learning in Europe.

The *Elzevirs*, celebrated printers at Amsterdam and Leyden; they flourished between the years 1595 and 1680, and their types were uncommonly beautiful: there were five Elzevirs; Louis, Bonaventura, Abraham, and Daniel were the most noted.

*Prince Eugene*, born in France, 1663; died 1736. This brave general at first served under Louis XIV., and next entered the Austrian service as a volunteer: his valour soon procured him a company, and he defeated the Turks some time after at Peterwaradin: the emperor sent him against the French, and he became one of the most formidable enemies France ever knew; he joined the duke of Marlborough. The laurels reaped by the allied army were innumerable, and Eugene's share of them was considerable.

*Euler*, a great Swiss mathematician, born at Basil, 1707; died 1783. In the reign of Catharine I. he was invited to Russia, and appointed professor of natural philosophy at

Petersburgh; he then accepted an offer made him by Frederick the Great of Prussia, and assisted in the establishment of the academy at Berlin: he published "Observations on the Planets and Comets," "Theory of Magnetism," &c.

## F.

*Ferdousi*, a celebrated Persian poet; died 1020. His epic poems contain the annals of Persian kings; they engaged him for nearly thirty years, and have been highly spoken of by Sir William Jones, whose critical knowledge of Persic enabled him to judge with accuracy of their beauties.

*Froissart*, born in French Flanders, at Valenciennes, 1337; died 1410. He was a very accurate historian of his own times, and his "Chronicles" narrate the transactions and events of Spain, France, and England.

*Du Fresnoy*, a French painter and poet, born in Paris, 1611; died 1665. His poem on the "Art of Painting" has been translated by Dryden and Mason.

*Fontaine*, a French writer, born 1621; died 1695. His tales and fables are highly celebrated, and his miscellaneous works possess, at least, the merit of originality.

*Le Fort*, born in Geneva, 1656; died 1699. The favourite and friend of Peter the Great, czar of Muscovy, who made Le Fort his minister of state, and commander-in-chief of his forces. No man so well knew the art of working upon Peter's mind, and Le Fort could succeed in persuading him to that from which he was most averse; many of Peter's public plans for the benefit of Russia are said to have originated with this brave officer.

*Fenelon*, archbishop of Cambray, a Frenchman, the ornament of his country, born 1651; died in 1715. He was an excellent preacher, and an elegant author: he wrote "Telemachus," "Dialogues of the Dead," "Dialogues on Eloquence," and some other tracts.

*Fahrenheit*, an experimental philosopher, born in Polish Prussia, 1686; died 1736. He was the great improver of the thermometer, and made an entirely new scale for that useful instrument, which has been generally adopted by the English.

*Cardinal Fleury*, a celebrated French statesman, and prime-minister to Louis XV., born 1653; died 1743. He was one of the most able negotiators then in Europe, and for awhile conducted affairs with brilliant success.

*Fontenelle*, an excellent French writer, who lived to complete a century, being born at Rouen, 1657; died 1757. His "Dialogues of the Dead," "Plurality of Worlds," "Moral Discourses," and "History of the Theatre," are among the best of his works.

*Farinelli*, an Italian singer, never yet excelled, born at Naples, 1705; died 1782. He sung on the London and

Italian theatres ; from thence went to Spain, where he obtained the friendship of Philip V., and by his successor, Ferdinand, Farinelli was made a knight of Calatrava.

*Benjamin Franklin*, an American, born at Boston, 1706 ; died 1790. He was apprenticed to a printer, but his superior talents soon appeared ; his discoveries and experiments in natural philosophy recommended him to the notice of the learned all over Europe : his fame was as great in politics as in science.

### G.

*Gratian*, a compiler of the canon law, and Benedictine monk, who flourished in the twelfth century ; he was twenty-four years engaged in collecting and commenting upon the decrees of the popes and general councils : died in 1151.

*Giotto*, an Italian, born at Florence, 1276 ; died 1337. Famed as a painter, architect, and sculptor : he was originally a shepherd's boy, and amused himself with painting the flock under his care : he painted portraits, but excelled in landscapes, cattle, and mosaic work.

*Du Guesclin*, a constable of France, born 1314 ; died 1380. A renowned French commander, who checked the conquests of Edward III., after the defeat and imprisonment of John, king of France.

*Gaza* (Theodore), born in Greece, 1398; died 1478. A very learned man, who, when the Turks invaded Greece, left his native country, visited Italy, and became one of the restorers of literature. Nicholas V., then pope, patronised him ; and in conjunction with others he translated the Greek authors into Latin, having perfected his knowledge of that language.

*Guicciardini*, the historian of Italy, born at Florence, 1482 ; died 1540. He served popes Leo X., Adrian VI., and Clement VII. ; his nephew, Louis Guicciardini, was also an excellent historian, and wrote a description of the Low Countries.

*Gustavus Vasa*, a Swede, born 1490 ; died 1560. Gustavus was the deliverer of his country from the tyrannical oppressions of Christian II., king of Denmark ; the Swedes, in gratitude for this signal service, elected him their king ; and Gustavus had afterwards sufficient influence in the senate to render the monarchy hereditary. He reigned gloriously, and established the reformed religion in Sweden.

*Guarini*, an Italian poet, born at Ferrara, 1537 ; died 1612. He was the author of the " Pastor Fido."

The *Guises*, from 1550 to 1640. Five illustrious heads of that noble house,—Claude, Francis, Henry, Charles, and Louis. Claude was the founder of the house of Guise, and son of the duke of Lorraine ; he married a princess of the

house of Bourbon, and distinguished himself at the battle of Marignan : he died 1550. Francis, with whom commenced the factions between the Guises' and the house of Condé, enjoyed the highest power, headed the Catholic party, and was killed by a pistol shot, 1563. Henry was the son of Francis, head of the league,—an association formed against Henry III. of France : he was assassinated by that monarch. Charles, after his father Henry's death, suffered a protracted imprisonment, but at length came to an accommodation with the king : he died 1640. Louis, the cardinal, the son of the assassinated Henry, and a loyal subject to Louis XIII. of France, died 1621.

*Guido*, a celebrated Italian painter, born at Bologna, 1575 ; died 1642. He studied in the school of Lewis Carracci, and was particularly happy in representing the expression of the eye : Guido's finest painting is " Saint Peter in Prison."

*Galileo*, an Italian astronomer, born at Florence, 1564 ; died 1642. For maintaining that the earth goes round the sun, the fathers of the Inquisition imprisoned him for a year, and compelled a renunciation of his heretical opinions ; he was then released, but having published some of his new discoveries, he was confined two years longer : he greatly improved the telescope. By incessant application to study, and the use of his glasses, Galileo became blind.

*Grotius*, born in Holland, at Delft, 1583 ; died 1645. He was eminent as a civilian, philosopher, mathematician, political writer, and poet ; his best works are " Commentaries on the Scripture," and " a Treatise on the Truth of the Christian Religion."

*Gassendi*, a French philosopher, born 1592 ; died 1655. He was professor of philosophy at Aix, and dedicated his life to intense study, astronomical pursuits and observations : his manuscripts were published at Leyden after his death.

*Gesner*, a poet, born in Switzerland, at Zurich, 1730 ; died 1788. Author of several beautiful poems, particularly the " Death of Abel." Gesner was also a painter of landscapes.

*John Wolfgang Von Goethe* was born at Frankfort, 1749 ; died at Weimar, 1832. He is considered the greatest poet modern Germany has produced ; his " Faust," is much admired : he also wrote voluminously on a great variety of subjects.

## H.

*Huss*, a German martyr, born at Hussenitz, about 1376 ; died 1415. He was one of the earliest reformers, the defender of Wickliffe, and the firm opposer of transubstantiation : his followers were called Hussites. At the council of

Constance he was cited to make his appearance, and a safe-conduct granted him; but he was treacherously thrown into prison, and sentenced to be burnt.

*Holbein*, a German painter, born near Augsburg, 1498; died 1554. He was famed for his portraits and historical pieces; and came over to England, where sir Thomas More patronised him: he was afterwards appointed painter to Henry VIII.

*Heinsius*, born in Austrian Flanders, at Ghent, 1580; died in 1621. Professor of Greek at Leyden when not more than eighteen years of age, he illustrated the Greek and Latin classics. Nicholas Heinsius, his son, born in Holland, was still more eminent: he published editions of the best Latin authors with notes, was an excellent Latin poet, and an acute critic.

*Hevelius*, an astronomer and mathematician, born in Polish Prussia, 1611; died 1687. He built an observatory at Dantzio, and made the most accurate observations upon the heavenly bodies.

*Huygens*, born in Holland, at the Hague, 1629; died 1695: was a mathematician and astronomer, an improver of the telescope and clock pendulum.

*Frederic Hoffman*, an eminent German physician, born 1660; died 1742. He wrote on medical subjects. Maurice Hoffman, and John Maurice Hoffman, of the same family, were prior to Frederic, and celebrated for their skill in medicine and botany.

*Handel*, the greatest musician and composer of his time, born in Germany, at Halle, 1684; died 1759. He went early to the Prussian court, and composed an opera, when only fourteen, at Hamburgh: afterwards he made the tour of Italy, and in 1712 settled in England: his works were collected and published by Doctor Arnold.

*Haller*, a Swiss physician, borne at Berne, 1702; died 1777. He was professor of medicine at Gottingen, and wrote many beautiful moral and poetical pieces.

## I.

*Jerome of Prague*, born in Bohemia; died 1416. He was the disciple of Huss, and sedulously spread his religious opinions in 1408: the council of Constance cited him to answer for his heretical faith, and he was condemned to be burnt. Jerome was a man of considerable talents and learning.

*Joan of Arc*, the maid of Orleans, born 1407; died 1431. Memorable for her heroic courage, and noble defence of her country, in the time of Henry VI. and Charles VII.; after many proofs of military skill and valour, she was at last taken by the English, and, conformably to the superstitions cruelty of the times, burnt at Rouen as a witch.

*Julio Romano*, an Italian painter, the scholar of Raphael, born at Rome, 1492 ; died 1546. He was no bad architect, and was patronised by pope Clement VII. ; but he finally settled at Mantua, where he painted his best pieces.

*Jonas* (Anagrimus), a native of Iceland, born 1545 ; died 1640. He was a learned divine, well skilled in astronomy, and a good historian.

*Jansenius*, bishop of Ypres, born in Holland, at Leerdam, 1545 ; died 1638 : founder of the sect of Jansenists, who differed from the Catholics in some points of faith, and were denounced as heretics by Urban VIII.

*Jordaens*, a Flemish painter, born at Antwerp, 1594 ; died 1678. The pupil of Rubens, and admired for his brilliant colouring.

*John the Third* (Sobieski), king of Poland, elected 1674 ; died 1696. Famed as a warrior : the victories he gained over the Turks and Tartars procured his election to the Polish throne : he was the patron of the learned, and a liberal encourager of the arts.

*Jurieu*, an eminent French protestant divine, born 1637 ; died 1713. Noted by his controversial writings, his "Commentary on the Revelations," and "History of Calvinism."

## K.

*Kempis* (Thomas à), born in Germany, at Cologne, 1380 ; died 1471. An Augustine monk, famous for a treatise called the "Imitation of Christ," and other devotional pieces.

*Kepler*, a German astronomer, born 1571 ; died 1630. He was the friend of Tycho Brahe, whose tables he completed : he published many astronomical works, assisted in reforming the calendar, and was the author of several astronomical discoveries.

*Kunckel*, a German chemist, born 1630 ; died 1702. He improved the art of making glass, and published his chemical observations.

*Sir Godfrey Kneller*, an eminent portrait-painter, born in Germany, at Lubec, 1648 ; died 1726. He was long a resident in England, and enjoyed the favour of William III., Anne, and George I. He studied under Rembrandt, and his portraits were most spirited likenesses.

*Kirch*, a German astronomer, born 1680 ; died 1740. His astronomical works are in high estimation, and his observations very accurate.

*Keysler*, a German antiquary, born 1689 ; died 1743. He published travels through Italy, Lorraine, Germany, Hungary, Bohemia, and Switzerland, and some dissertations on antiquarian subjects.

*Augustus Kotzebue* was born in 1781, at Weimar. He was one of the most voluminous German writers of his day, and underwent various changes of fortune. He wrote a

"History of the German Empire," a "History of Ancient Prussia," &c. In 1817, having been appointed to report on literature and public opinion, he incensed the students of the German universities highly by his strictures, and was murdered by a young enthusiast named Sand, at Manheim, in 1819.

## L.

*Lollard*, a German divine, who, in the year 1315, founded the sect of Lollards: he was burnt as a heretic at Cologne, 1322, and the followers of Wickliffe, upon the death of Lollard, assumed the name in England.

*Launoy*, a celebrated German commander, died 1527. He served in the army of Charles V., and at the battle of Pavia, Francis I., king of France, surrendered to him, and was treated by the victor with the respect due to his rank.

*Luther*, a celebrated German reformer, born at Isleben, 1483; died 1546. Luther was originally intended for the law, but a companion of his being struck dead by lightning, he turned his attention from secular concerns, and became an Augustine monk: in this retreat he studied the Scriptures, and found they widely differed from the tenets of the Roman church. When Leo X. published his general indulgences, or pardon for all sins which the purchaser of them either had committed, or might be led to commit, Luther inveighed against them with all the warmth of honest indignation: his tenets were opposed by the pope's agents; but the veil was now removed, the people clearly saw the shameful perversions of the word of God, and comparing the profligate lives of the Roman clergy with the sanctity of manners and conclusive reasonings of this undaunted champion, the Reformation gained ground daily; and Luther, before his death, had the satisfaction to see great part of Germany espouse his opinions.

*Ignatius Loyola*, born in Spain, 1491; died 1555. He was the celebrated founder of the society of Jesus (or Jesuits). The power and influence of the Jesuits continued from the beginning of the sixteenth to the commencement of the eighteenth century.

*Lanfranco*, an Italian painter, born at Parma, 1581; died 1647. He studied under Augustine Caracci, and excelled in painting domes and ceilings in fresco.

*Sir Peter Lely*, a German painter, born 1617; died 1680. He first practised his art at the Hague, but receiving great encouragement in England, settled there under Charles I. and II.: he painted historical subjects and landscapes, but his portraits were admirable.

*Leibnitz*, a celebrated German philosopher, born at Leipsic, 1646; died 1716. He studied in the university of Leipsic, and afterwards made the law his profession; was patronised

by the elector of Hanover, and the king of Prussia, who made him perpetual president of the Royal Academy at Berlin. Peter the Great also granted him a pension. The works of Leibnitz are numerous.

*Levenhoek*, a Dutch physician, born at Delft, 1632; died 1723. Celebrated as the improver of the microscope: his experiments and discoveries are numerous.

*Lutti*, an Italian painter, born 1666; died 1724. He was famed for historical pieces, and was highly esteemed by the emperor of Germany, who knighted him.

*Lisle*, a French astronomer, born at Paris, 1688; died 1768. He was the contemporary and friend of Newton and Halley; published some good works on geography, and "Memoirs of the History of Astronomy."

*Linnæus*, born in Sweden, 1707; died 1778. A celebrated physician and botanist: his discoveries in that science have immortalized his name. Cisalpinus revived the taste for botany; Alpini, an Italian, discovered the sexual difference of plants; and it remained for Linnæus to class them accurately. The botanical works of this great man are numerous; he traversed Lapland for the purpose of enlarging his scientific discoveries, and published an account of his tour.

*Lavoisier*, an eminent French chemist, born at Paris, 1743; died 1794, by the guillotine. He published "Elements of Chemistry," and opposed Dr. Priestley's chemical opinions, advancing a new theory, which still prevails throughout Germany.

*Marquis de la Place* was born at Beaumont-en-Auge, 1749; died 1827. He was a distinguished mathematician and astronomer. His "Exposition of the System of the World," is a work of great merit.

## M.

*Cosmo de Medici*, a Florentine merchant, born 1389; died 1464. He expended vast sums in advancing learning, was styled the father of his country, the reviver of the arts, and collected an excellent library: from this great man a race descended distinguished for genius, taste, ambition, and love of the fine arts; while some of them were equally noted for profligacy and want of principle. The females of this illustrious house were justly celebrated for their mental and personal charms, their strength of mind and noble alliances.

*Lorenzo de Medici*, called the Magnificent, grandson of Cosmo, born 1448; died 1492. He was the father of Leo X., and the generous patron of literature, being himself a good writer of Italian poetry.

*Magellan*, a Portuguese navigator, who entered the service of the emperor Charles V., and in 1519 discovered the straits between Patagonia and Terra del Fuego. In 1520 he was killed in one of the Ladrone islands.

*Machiavel*, an Italian, born at Florence, 1469 ; died 1527. Famed as a politician : he wrote "the Prince," a treatise which exposes the arts of tyrannical governors.

*Mazzuoli*, an Italian painter, born 1504 ; died 1540. His figures were famed for their elegance and grace, and he is generally supposed to be the inventor of the art of etching with aqua fortis.

*Melancthon*, a German reformer, born at Bretten, 1497 ; died 1560. He was the intimate friend of Martin Luther, whose fiery temper was softened by the moderation of Melancthon in controversy. His works are numerous.

*Montmorenci*, a constable of France, born 1495 ; died 1567. This celebrated general was taken prisoner with Francis I. at the unfortunate battle of Pavia : he was killed at the battle of St. Denis, in the civil war against the Huguenots.

*Malherbe*, a French poet, born at Caen, 1555 ; died 1628. Famed as the first who gave to French poetry any degree of refinement, purity, or elegance ; he furnished future bards with the best rules for fine writing, and extricated his native language from Gothic barbarism.

*Cardinal Mazarine*, an Italian, born at Piscina, 1602 ; died 1661. He was prime-minister of France during the minority of Louis XIV. : on the king's majority he gained such an ascendancy in his councils, that he enjoyed almost unlimited power till his death.

*Molière*, a Frenchman, born at Paris, 1622 ; died 1673. Memorable as an excellent comic author ; he was patronised by Cardinal Richelieu, who himself aimed at the character of a wit. Molière acquired some celebrity as an actor.

*Malpighi*, an Italian anatomist, born 1628 ; died 1694. He was educated in the university of Bologna, and wrote on anatomical and medical subjects.

*Carlo Maratti*, a famous Italian painter, born at Camerino, 1625 ; died 1713. He excelled in painting madonnas and female figures, and was a good engraver.

*Masillon*, a Frenchman, and celebrated divine, born at Hieres, 1663 ; died 1742. Louis XIV. made him bishop of Clermont, in Auvergne, and delighted to hear his sermons, which, contrary to the usual style of court flattery, displayed the horrors of vice, while they allured to the bright paths of virtue.

*Montesquieu*, an eminent French writer, born at Bourdeaux, 1689 ; died 1755. He was counsellor of the Parliament at Bourdeaux, wrote the "Persian Letters," an "Essay on the Causes of the Grandeur and Declension of the Romans," and the "Spirit of the Laws."

*Maupertuis*, a Frenchman, and eminent philosopher, born at St. Malo, 1698 ; died 1759. He was one of those learned men sent in 1736 on an expedition to the Polar circle to determine the figure of the earth, and was afterwards chosen

president of the Royal Academy at Berlin ; his chief works are "Elements of Geography," "Elements of Astronomy," and the "Shape of the Earth determined."

*Metastasio*, an excellent Italian poet, born at Rome, 1698 ; died 1782. He composed operas, oratorios, and wrote some exquisitely beautiful sonnets.

*Mozart*, a famous German musician, born at Saltzburgh, 1756 ; died 1791. He was a good composer, and enjoyed the favour of the emperor Joseph II. Mozart settled at Vienna, where he died loaded with honours, but unencumbered with the gifts of fortune.

*Mendelssohn Bartholdy*, born at Hamburgh, 1809 ; died 1847. In his earliest youth this eminent composer developed great musical genius ; when only eight years of age he is said to have played with wonderful facility and execution, and in his ninth year performed publicly at Berlin. He died in 1847, in the prime of life, leaving a name that will long be remembered and honoured as the author of the oratorios "Elijah," "St. Paul," &c., &c.

### N.

*Nantueil*, a French painter, born at Rheims, 1630 ; died 1678. His miniature paintings and engravings were highly esteemed.

*Niceron*, a French biographer, born at Paris, 1685 ; died 1738. He was a Jesuit, and famed as a preacher ; his great biographical work is called "Memoirs of Men illustrious in the Republic of Letters," which by some recent additions is now printed in forty-two volumes.

*Norden*, a Dane, and celebrated traveller, born 1708 ; died 1742. He was a captain in the Danish navy, an excellent shipwright and navigator, and a good designer and mathematician.

### O.

*Odazzi*, an Italian painter and engraver, born in Rome, 1663 ; died 1731. He was chiefly employed in the decoration of churches and altars, and was famed for the brilliancy of his tints.

*Oudenarde*, an excellent painter, born in Austrian Flanders, 1663 ; died 1743. He was the pupil of Carlo Maratti, and excelled also in engraving ; he embellished most of the churches and great houses at Ghent with specimens of his art.

### P.

*Peter the Hermit*, a Frenchman, born at Amiens, who from a soldier became a pilgrim to the Holy Land, in the year 1093 ; and on his return gave such an account to pope Urban II. of the miseries suffered by the Christians in that part of Asia, that he obtained leave to preach the crusades :

this he did with such energy, that all ranks caught the enthusiastic folly ; and Peter, at the head of an undisciplined multitude, proceeded to Syria, and displayed great bravery at the taking of Jerusalem. He returned to his native land, and died in the abbey of Nourmutier, founded by him.

*Petrarch*, a highly celebrated Italian poet, born at Arezzo, 1304; died 1374. He delighted in literary pursuits ; excelled in rhetoric, history, and moral philosophy : his sonnets are truly beautiful.

*Poggio*, an Italian, born at Florence, 1380 ; died 1459. He was eminently skilled in the learned languages, and to him we owe the discovery of Quintilian's works, and a "History of Florence."

*Paracelsus*, a chemist, born at Einsidlin, Switzerland, 1493 ; died 1534. He was an excellent metallurgist, and highly esteemed in his professional capacity.

*Pizarro*, the famed discoverer and conqueror of Peru, born in the latter part of the fifteenth century at Truxillo, in Spain ; died 1541. His military conduct and courage were above all praise ; but his cruelties make us shudder.

*Peruzzi*, an Italian painter and architect, born 1481 ; died 1556. He thoroughly understood the principles of perspective, and was eminent in painting architectural subjects.

*Palladio*, an Italian architect, born at Vicenza, 1508 ; died 1580. His fame was extended throughout Europe : he gave the models of many celebrated Italian palaces, erected a theatre at Vicenza, and wrote a "Treatise on Architecture," which has been frequently reprinted and translated.

*Paul of Venice*, born 1552 ; died 1622. Known by the name of Father Paul : he was eminently skilled in the civil and canon law, medicine, &c., wrote the "History of the Council of Trent," and some anatomical and political tracts.

*Pascal*, a Frenchman, born at Clermont, 1623 ; died 1662. An excellent geometrician and mathematician : his "Provincial Letters," in favour of the Jansenists, are esteemed models of eloquence and purity of style.

*Poussin*, a Frenchman, and famous painter, born at Andely, 1594 ; died 1665. He excelled in landscapes and historical pieces : the "Deluge," placed by the French king in the Luxembourg gallery, is one of his best paintings. Louis XIII. settled a pension upon Poussin, but the malice of his enemies obliged him to quit France for Rome : previous to his departure, he allegorically appealed to posterity, by painting in the king's cabinet a ceiling, which represented Time delivering Truth from the oppression of Envy.

*Perrault*, a celebrated French architect, born 1613 ; died 1688 : he designed the grand entrance to the Louvre, translated Vitruvius into French, wrote medical essays, and "Memoirs of the Natural History of Animals."

*Petitot*, born at Geneva, 1607 ; died 1691. Memorable as

the inventor of painting in enamel : he was a good chemist, and a man of general knowledge. Charles I. and II. of England greatly esteemed him.

*Puffendorf*, a celebrated German civilian professor, born in Upper Saxony, 1631 ; died 1694. He studied the law at Leipsic, and soon became eminent in his profession : his great work is the “Elements of Universal Jurisprudence.”

*Pigalle*, an eminent French sculptor, born 1714 ; died 1785. His genius and taste were universally acknowledged : he finished some excellent works for the king of Prussia, and a fine statue of Voltaire.

*Perouse*, a celebrated navigator, born in France, 1741 ; died, as is supposed, 1788. He served his country effectually during her war with England, by destroying the English settlements at Hudson’s Bay ; and in 1785 was appointed to command a small squadron fitted out for a voyage of discovery round the world : his ships were never seen after leaving Botany Bay, January 1788, and he, doubtless, unfortunately perished. An account of the voyage of Perouse has since been published.

### Q.

*Du Quesnoy*, Francis and Jerome, brothers, Flemings and celebrated sculptors ; died between 1614 and 1654 : their works are at Brussels and Ghent.

*Quadrio*, a learned Jesuit, born in the Valteline, 1695 ; died 1756. He wrote “Dissertations upon the Valteline,” a “History of Italian Poetry,” and other treatises.

### R.

*Regiomontanus*, a celebrated Prussian astronomer, born at Koningsberg, 1436 ; died 1476. He was the introducer of almanacs, calculated the eclipses of the sun and moon, the motions of the planets, and invented some excellent mathematical instruments.

*Raphael*, the prince of painters, born in Italy, at Urbino, 1483 ; died 1520. The exquisite grace of his figures, and the excellence of his genius in designing, are the admiration of all connoisseurs in the art. Francis I. of France, the popes Julius II. and Leo X., honoured him with invitations to reside in their capitals : for Francis he painted the “Transfiguration ;” his “Jonas” is said to be a master-piece of statuary. Leo X., upon the death of this sublime artist, ordered his body to lie three days in state, in the hall of the Vatican, under his picture of the Transfiguration ; and when his funeral rites were performed, this celebrated piece preceded his remains.

*Rabelais*, a Frenchman, born at Chinon, 1483 ; died 1553. A satirist and priest : his humour and wit were his chief recommendations ; but they were greatly deficient in that

delicacy, without which genius may sparkle for the moment, but can never shine with pure, undiminished lustre.

*Rizzio*, an Italian musician, who, about the year 1563, came in the suite of the Piedmontese ambassador to Scotland, and became the distinguished favourite of Mary queen of Scots: he was barbarously murdered by order of the jealous Darnley, in 1566.

*Ramus*, a celebrated French professor, born at Cuth, 1515; died 1572. In philosophy, rhetoric, and the mathematics, he had few equals. He incurred the hatred of the doctors of the Sorbonne, for refuting some of Aristotle's propositions, and was included in the massacre of St. Bartholomew's day.

*Henry, Duke of Rohan*, a gallant French officer, born 1579; died 1638. The friend of Henry the Great, and chief of the Huguenots in the reign of Louis XIII. He bravely fought for them in the civil wars: his political tracts were at that time in high request.

*Rubens*, born in Germany, at Cologne, 1557; died 1640. A most celebrated painter. To all the requisites for his art he joined extensive knowledge; he understood seven languages, and wrote in Latin on the rules of painting and the costume of the antients: he painted the Luxembourg galleries, and the Banqueting-house at Whitehall. Rubens imbibed the principles of his art from Titian, and Vandyke was the pupil of Rubens.

*Cardinal Richelieu*, prime-minister of France in the reign of Louis XIII., born 1585; died in 1642. A man of great capacity and unbounded ambition; he wrote several theological works, and in the early part of his life obtained great celebrity as a preacher.

*Riccioli*, an Italian astronomer, born at Ferrara, 1598; died 1671. He settled at Bologna, and made many accurate observations there.

*Rembrandt*, a Dutch painter, born near Leyden, 1606; died 1688. His works have the closest resemblance to nature, and his portraits and etchings bear a very high price.

*Racine*, a French poet, born 1639; died 1699. His tragedies are universally admired, and have been translated into most of the modern languages.

*Rapin*, a Frenchman, and excellent writer of the English history, born at Castres, 1661; died 1725. He was a refugee upon the revocation of the edict of Nantes, and came over to England, where he entered the army under William III., and distinguished himself at the battle of the Boyne: not meeting with the encouragement he expected, he retired into Germany, and there wrote his "History of England," down to the Revolution. Tindal continued it to the accession of George III., and translated it into English.

*Rollin*, a French professor, an eminent critic and histo-

rian, born at Paris, 1661; died 1741. The private and public character of this excellent man was truly meritorious; he wrote a "Treatise upon the Belles Lettres," the "Ancient History of the Egyptians, Carthaginians, and Babylonians," and a Roman history, which Crevier brought down to the reign of Constantine the Great.

*Reaumur*, an excellent natural historian, born in France, 1683; died 1757. He published a "History of Insects," improved the thermometer, and is said to have taught his countrymen the art of making steel, which they were accustomed to import from other nations.

*Racine* (Louis), a Frenchman, youngest son of the Racine before mentioned, born 1692; died 1763. He inherited his father's genius, translated Milton, and wrote chiefly on sacred subjects.

*Rousseau*, born at Geneva, 1712; died 1778. A most singular character, who experienced many vicissitudes in life, chiefly owing to his want of steadiness. He wrote the "New Heloise," "Emilius," and other works.

The *Abbé Raynal*, a Frenchman, born in 1712; died 1796. He was a man of science, true patriotism, and humanity: the Abbé's most celebrated work is the "History of the European Settlements in the East and West Indies."

## S.

*Schwartz*, a monk of the order of St. Francis, born at Cologne, in Germany, at the close of the thirteenth century; said to be the inventor of gunpowder, which he discovered while making some chemical experiments with sulphur and nitre.

*Servetus*, a Spanish physician, born 1509; died 1553. He was an Arian. Calvin accused him of heresy, and declaimed against him before the magistrates of Geneva, (whither he had retired); the unfortunate Servetus was condemned, and cruelly burnt alive.

*Scaliger*, the elder, an Italian, born near Verona, 1484; died 1558. He was particularly eminent for his prodigious learning, his Latin poems, and critical writings.

*Robert Stephens*, a Frenchman, born 1503; died 1559. He was the most eminent printer of his time, but offending the university of Paris, by publishing a large Latin Bible, he was no longer safe there, and retired to Geneva, where he printed the works of Calvin, and other learned men.

*Pope Sixtus V.* (or *Felix Peretti*), an Italian, born 1521; died 1590. He was the son of a gardener. Felix discovered an early veneration for learning, and when about ten years old, Father Selleri came to the village where he resided, and inquired the road to the next town: Felix was then taking care of some hogs; the monk, struck with his appearance and solicitations, granted him his protection. He took the

habit of the order, and rose at length to be inquisitor-general at Venice; thence the gradation to a cardinal's hat was easy. On the death of Gregory XIII. the conclave chose him pope, supposing he could not long survive; but a sudden change appeared, Sixtus displayed his real character, reformed abuses, administered justice most impartially, and was the generous patron of learning and the arts.

*Henry Stephens*, son of Robert the celebrated printer, born in France, 1528; died 1598. Equally eminent in his profession, and more deeply learned than his father, he published most elegant and correct transcripts of the Greek authors. His brother and son followed the same employment, and for more than three generations the labours of this family enlightened Europe.

*Socinus*, an Italian, nephew of Lælius Socinus, born at Sienna, 1539; died 1604. Famous in polemics, and leader of the sect of Socinians in Poland.

*Joseph Scaliger*, an Italian, born 1540; died 1609. The colossus of literature, a critic, historian, and chronologist; but his merit is shaded by his excessive vanity. He resided some time at Leyden, where he died.

The *Duc de Sully*, a celebrated French statesman, born at Pau, 1560; died 1641. He was the confidential friend and prime-minister of Henry the Great, his companion in adversity, the sharer and promoter of his master's glory. Sully's character was severely just; he examined every department of government, reformed former abuses, and under his auspices France, as a phoenix, rose from the desolation of a civil war to the height of prosperity and happiness; his "Memoirs," (a most interesting work,) strongly depict the ability and the integrity of this great man, and contain a series of events from the latter part of the reign of Charles IX., to the assassination of his royal patron and lamented friend.

*Scarron*, a French comic poet, born at Paris, 1600; died 1660. Famous for his humour and pleasantry of manners: the celebrated Madame de Maintenon was his wife, and upon his decease, caught the affections of Louis XIV., who privately married her. Scarron's works are numerous.

*Salvator Rosa*, an eminent Italian painter, born at Naples, 1615; died 1673. His landscapes are excellent and very scarce, and his engravings and etchings equally valuable: they consist mostly of landscapes.

*Spinosa*, a Dutchman, born at Amsterdam, 1633; died 1677. The son of a Portuguese Jew; he embraced Christianity, and his own tribe attempted to assassinate him for it: he at last was noted in the world by his atheistical opinions and writings.

*Swammerdam*, a Dutch anatomist and natural philosopher, born at Amsterdam, 1637; died 1680. His works

have been translated into English, but his "History of Insects," and "Treatise upon Animal Respiration," deserve to be particularly mentioned.

The *Duke of Schomberg*, a German, but created an English peer, born 1608; died 1690. This celebrated general at first served the prince of Orange, then entering the service of Louis XIV. was appointed marshal of France; but on the revocation of the edict of Nantes, Schomberg, being a protestant, quitted the French dominions, and at the Revolution attended William the Third to England: he was chosen commander-in-chief of that king's forces in Ireland, and at the battle of the Boyne was shot, while crossing the river, by some refugees in his own army, who mistook his person.

*Saurin*, a Frenchman, and highly celebrated divine, born at Nismes, 1677; died 1730. He early in life entered a regiment in Flanders, and was educated at Geneva; he afterwards became chaplain to the nobility at the Hague, and though Saurin declaimed against the vices of the great, yet his sermons were constantly heard with the most profound attention: queen Caroline of England had a great esteem for this excellent man. He published several volumes of sermons, and "Moral, Historical, and Critical Discourses upon the Bible," which was his chief work.

*Stahl*, a German chemist, born 1660; died 1734. He was professor of medicine in the university of Halle, and was some time afterwards appointed chief physician and state-counsellor to Frederick William II., king of Prussia: he published "Elements of Chemistry," and other works.

*Le Sage*, a French dramatist and novelist, born at Ruys, 1667; died in 1747. He wrote comedies, the "Bachelor of Salamanca," the "Devil upon Two Sticks," and "Gil Blas."

*Count Saxe*, a German, and natural son of Augustus II., king of Poland, born at Dresden, 1696; died 1750. One of the greatest soldiers which the eighteenth century produced. He served under the duke of Marlborough and prince Eugene in the Netherlands; he then went to France, and was appointed general of her armies by Louis XV.: he took Prague, fought the battle of Fontenoy, and gallantly distinguished himself in many other engagements.

*Swedenborg*, a Swedish philosopher, born at Stockholm, 1688; died 1772. His writings contain an exposition of the doctrines of the New Church, said by him to have been prefigured in the book of Revelation, and also an account of the spiritual intercourse which he claims to have had. Receivers of his doctrines are now numerous in England, America, and elsewhere.

*Dr. Solander*, a native of Sweden, and eminent naturalist, born 1736; died 1782. He was the pupil of Linnæus, and on the accession of George III. visited England; he then accompanied captain Cook in his voyage round the world,

and enriched the account of that voyage by his "Botanical and Philosophical Journal."

*John Schiller*, an eminent German poet, was born in 1759; died in 1805. He excelled as a dramatist, a writer of romance, and a historian.

*St. Pierre*, a French writer, born at Havre, 1737; died 1814. A great portion of his youth was spent in rambling from one country to another; and he afterwards acquired considerable celebrity as the author of "Studies of Nature," the "Indian Cottage," and the beautiful tale of "Paul and Virginia."

*Baroness de Staél* was born at Paris in 1766; died in 1817. She was eminent as a writer on politics and general literature. Among her works may be mentioned the romance of "Corinne," "Dramatic Essays," "Ten Years of Exile," "Considerations on the French Revolution," &c.

## T.

*Taffi*, an Italian, born at Florence, 1213; died 1294. This artist and Cimabue are said to have introduced the taste for mosaic work into Italy; Taffi learned the art himself from a Grecian, who superintended the decorations of St. Mark's church, at Venice.

*Titian*, an Italian painter, of high celebrity, born at Venice, 1477; died 1576. He painted portraits, history, and landscapes in a superior style: his colouring is uncommonly brilliant. His best pieces are, a "Last Supper," lately in the king of Spain's palace, and a "Christ crowned with Thorns." The emperor Charles V. conferred on him the honour of knighthood, and a pension.

*Tintoret*, an Italian painter, the pupil of Titian, born 1512; died 1594. He imitated his master's style of colouring, whilst his paintings are sketched in the boldest manner, and he bestowed not much time in finishing his works.

*Tasso*, an Italian poet, born at Sorrento, 1544; died 1595. This celebrated character experienced various changes of fortune; he was imprisoned for killing his adversary in a duel at Naples, and had nearly fallen a victim to want and misery: many other romantic adventures are related of him. "Jerusalem Delivered," an epic poem, is his chief work, but his other poems are by no means unworthy of notice. He wrote verses when only seven years old.

*De Thou*, a Frenchman, and excellent historian, born at Paris, 1553; died 1617. He served the state faithfully as a magistrate, and published a "History of the Affairs of Europe," from the latter part of the reign of Francis I. to the conclusion of the reign of Henry the Great.

*Toricelli*, an Italian mathematician and philosophical writer, born at Faenza, 1608; died in 1647. He improved the microscope and telescope, and invented the barometer.

*Teniers*, a famous Flemish painter, born 1582; died 1649. The pupil of Rubens: he excelled in representing rural fairs, merry-makings, &c.

*Admiral Van Tromp*, a Dutchman, and most gallant officer, born at the Brill; died 1653. He defeated the Spaniards in two engagements, and ruined their naval power: he engaged the English Blake, when both sides claimed the victory; but was, in a third battle with the English fleet, killed, and the Dutch defeated. A noble monument of him adorns one of the churches at Delft.

*Turenne*, marshal of France, born at Sedan, 1611; died 1675. He was a renowned general under Louis XIV.; in compliance with the orders he received, he desolated the most fruitful part of Germany, and carried fire and sword into the Palatinate. Turenne was killed by a cannon-ball, while making preparation for a battle.

*Tyssens*, an eminent Flemish painter, born 1625; died in 1692. His portraits and historical pieces are highly esteemed by judges of the art.

*Tournefort*, a French botanist, born at Aix, 1656; died 1708. At an early age he evinced the future bent of his genius, by making little collections of such plants and flowers as particularly attracted his eye; he visited Greece and Asia to make botanical and geographical observations, and published "Elements of Botany," and other works.

*Tissot*, an eminent physician, born in Switzerland, who died 1797. He was one of the most strenuous promoters of inoculation, and published his "Advice to the People concerning their Health," a most interesting book, written in the true spirit of humanity.

*Albert Thorwaldsen*, born at Copenhagen, 1770; died 1844. This celebrated sculptor, when eleven years of age, entered the school of art at Copenhagen, where his genius soon began to develope itself. In 1796 he went to Rome for the purpose of completing his studies, and there executed some of those noble works which have given him the position of the first sculptor of modern times.

## V.

*Verrochio*, a learned and most ingenious Italian, born at Florence, 1435; died 1488. He was a good mathematician, had a taste for music, painting, sculpture, and architecture, and discovered the art of moulding figures in plaster of Paris, or gypsum.

*Leonardo da Vinci*, an excellent Italian painter, born near Florence, 1445; died 1520. He was the pupil of Verrochio, but infinitely surpassed his master: he constructed the aqueduct at Milan, which conveys the river Adda to the city walls, and practised his art with the most distinguished reputation at Florence, protected by the house of Medici.

*Venetiano*, an Italian painter, lived about this time, and introduced painting in oil-colours into Italy, a secret which was communicated to him by Van Eyk, a Flemish painter; but Venetiano was treacherously assassinated at Florence in 1746, by another artist, to whom he had shown the method of mixing the colours.

*Vignole*, an Italian architect, born 1507; died 1573. He wrote a "Treatise on the Five Orders of Architecture," and erected many of the Italian structures.

*Paul Veronese*, or Cagliari, an Italian painter, born 1532; died 1588. His force of imagination and resources of genius were inexhaustible : "Holofernes and Judith," and the "Marriage of Cana," rank as his best pieces.

*Lopez de Vega*, a famous Spanish dramatist, born 1562; died 1635. He was secretary to the duke of Alva, at Madrid; pope Urban VII. made him a knight of Malta, and conferred a post in his treasury on him : he had the most brilliant genius and lively imagination, could compose a comedy in a day, and left behind him seventy volumes of dramatic and miscellaneous poetry.

*Vandyck*, a celebrated Flemish painter, born at Antwerp, 1599 ; died 1641. He was the pupil of Rubens, and copied Titian's manner of colouring so closely, that he nearly equalled it. Vandyck chiefly excelled in portraits, and resided some time in England, honoured by the patronage and liberality of Charles I., who was a great encourager of the fine arts.

*Vossius*, a German, born 1577 ; died 1649. He was professor of history at Amsterdam ; of eloquence and chronology at Leyden : his works are highly prized.

*Vauban*, a celebrated French engineer, born at Verdun, 1633 ; died 1707. He was made a marshal of France, and commissary-general of the French fortifications ; wrote a "Treatise on Fortification," and by his directions Lisle and Bergen-op-zoom were put in a complete state of defence: they were then thought the best fortified places in Europe.

*Verelst*, a native of Flanders, and good painter, died 1710. His designs are chiefly confined to fruit and flowers, in which he excelled, and he settled in England in queen Anne's reign.

The *Duke de Vendome*, a grandson of that duke of Vendome who was natural son of Henry the Great of France, died 1712. He was a French general, and defeated by the duke of Marlborough at Oudenarde; but he regained the laurels he lost there by a splendid victory over the English in Spain.

*Valsalva*, an Italian physician, born in 1666 ; died 1723. He was an excellent anatomist, and professed anatomy at Bologna : he published some medical works, and a treatise upon the human ear.

*Marshal Villars*, a peer of France, born 1653; died 1734: a distinguished French general under Louis XIV., and the opponent of the duke of Marlborough, who defeated him at the battle of Malplaquet.

*Volkof*, a comedian, born in Muscovy, 1729; died 1763. The Russian Garrick: he was patronised by the empress Elizabeth, and performed with the greatest applause. The Russian theatre, still in its infancy, was greatly improved by the laudable exertions of Volkof, who was at last ennobled, and had a considerable estate bestowed upon him by Catharine II.

*Vanloo* (Carlo), born in Italy, at Nice, 1705; died 1765. A good historical painter, and excellent designer; he settled at Paris, and became first painter to the king of France.

*Vattel*, an eminent civilian, born at Neufchatel, in Switzerland, 1714; died 1767: author of a treatise on Jurisprudence, in which the rights of nations, or the principles of natural law applied to the conduct of sovereigns and nations, is treated of at large. This work is of considerable authority with statesmen to this day.

*Voltaire*, a highly celebrated French writer, born 1694; died 1778. As a dramatist, wit, poet, satirist, and historian, his fame is great. Voltaire was hostile to the interests of religion in any shape, and infidelity claims him as her mightiest champion. His "Henriade" is the only epic poem of which the French can boast.

*Volney*, a French writer, born at Craon in 1757; died 1820. He suffered imprisonment during the reign of terror, and afterwards proceeded to America, where he had a controversy with Priestley on the origin of Christianity. His works are numerous, but the "Ruins and Revolutions of Empires" is that by which he is most known to the English reader.

## W.

*Waldo*, a French merchant, who flourished in the latter part of the twelfth century, and publicly renounced the Romish superstitions: many followed him, and being driven by the French government from Lyons, they spread over the southern provinces of France: a crusade was raised against them, which, as is generally the case, only increased their numbers; they assumed the name of Waldenses, in honour of their leader.

*De Witt*, Cornelius and John, two eminent Dutch statesmen: John was born 1625; they both died 1672. John was grand pensionary of Holland, and executed the business of the state with the greatest apparent ease, by doing one thing at a time, and that one well. The states were informed falsely that Cornelius de Witt had intentions to assassinate the prince of Orange; he was therefore com-

mitted to prison, notwithstanding his long and faithful services : the popular fury rose against him, and John having visited his brother in prison, the mob, urged by the surgeon who had accused Cornelius, surrounded the doors, and upon their appearance, barbarously murdered them.

*Winslow*, a Danish anatomist, born 1669 ; died 1760. He settled at Paris, under the patronage of Bossuet, bishop of Meaux, and published several excellent works on anatomy and medicine.

*George Washington*, an American, born at Washington, in Virginia, 1732 ; died 1799. One of the best men whom history records, and president of the American Congress : to inflexible justice, he joined the purest benevolence, and retired from public business early, satisfied with having promoted the happiness of his country, and totally uninfluenced by selfish or ambitious designs.

## X.

*Cardinal Ximenes*, a Spaniard, born in Castile, 1437 ; died 1517. A statesman, warrior, and patron of learning : he headed the Spanish troops in the war with the Moors, and entered Oran, in the state of Algiers, triumphantly. The nobles being highly offended by the reductions he made in some sinecure places, are said to have poisoned him : he was a man of ability and integrity.

## Z.

*Zisca*, a Bohemian patriot, who headed the Hussites in Germany after John Huss had suffered at the stake, and made himself formidable to his opponents : he defended his country against the emperor Sigismund, though with the loss of his eyes, and died of the plague, 1424, just when he had brought Sigismund to the most advantageous terms.

*Zwinglius*, a Swiss, and celebrated reformer, born 1487 ; died 1531. He published many tracts upon the grounds of his dissent from the Romish faith ; but Luther objecting to his opinions upon the Lord's Supper, a quarrel ensued, the friends of both parties armed, and Zwinglius was killed in the skirmish.

*Zelotti*, an Italian historical painter, born at Verona, 1552 ; died 1592. A pupil of Titian, and noted for his boldness in design, and brilliant colouring.

*Count Zinzendorf*, the reputed leader of the German Moravians, born in Germany, 1690 ; died 1760. He established this sect in England.

*Zimmerman*, a Swiss, born at Brug, 1728 ; died 1795. Physician to George III. at Hanover : he was well read in history, the Belles Lettres, and general literature ; his "Treatise on Solitude" is well known : he published several other works, among which is a "Treatise on Irritability."

## CHAPTER XII.

## Miscellaneous Questions on Scientific Subjects.

## SECTION I.

1. What is Science? The term science is derived from the Latin, and signifies *knowledge*: it embraces an acquaintance with every object which the boundless field of creation presents to the contemplation of man.

2. What is *Geography*? Geography is that science which regards the earth astronomically as a planet; the grand divisions of land and water; the winds and tides; including also the construction of globes, maps, and charts. It was regarded as a science by the Babylonians and Egyptians, from whom it passed to the Greeks, and from these to the Romans, the Arabians, and the western nations of Europe.

3. Who first attempted to reduce geography to a regular system? Eratosthenes; but his maps were very imperfect and inaccurate. He was followed by Hipparchus, who determined the latitudes and longitudes from celestial observations. Ptolemy composed his system about 130 years after Christ, and notwithstanding its many imperfections, it continued in vogue until the last three or four centuries, since which time the many discoveries of new countries, the progress of conquest, and the advance of knowledge, have contributed to bring geography to a very considerable degree of perfection.

4. What is *Botany*? Botany teaches the knowledge of the vegetable kingdom, including the systematic discrimination, arrangement, and naming of plants.

5. What is *Geology*? The term geology is used to signify a description of the structure of the earth: as a branch of science, however, it is of very modern date, being incompatible with any but a very advanced state of physical knowledge. Few studies, therefore, are attended with greater difficulty, none more complex, nor any where the operating causes are so remote from ordinary observation.

6. What is *Mineralogy*? It is the science which treats of the solid and inanimate materials of which our globe is composed.

7. What is understood by *Natural Philosophy*? This is a wide and exceedingly interesting portion of science. Its object is to observe and describe the phenomena of the material universe, with a view to learning their causes, and the laws by which their motions are regulated. What branches of science does it include? Mechanics, hydrostatics, hydraulics, pneumatics, acoustics, optics, electricity, galvanism, magnetism, chemistry, meteorology, astronomy, and physiology.

8. What is meant by *Mechanics*? Mechanics is a term used to denote that branch of science which treats of the laws of the equilibrium and motion of solid bodies; of the forces by which bodies may be made to act upon one another; and of the means by which they may be increased to almost any degree.

9. What are *Hydrostatics* and *Hydraulics*? Hydrostatics has for its object the examination of the mechanical laws which regulate the motions, pressure, gravitation, and equilibrium of inelastic fluids. Hydraulics is sometimes considered as forming a part of the preceding; but there are several points in which they essentially differ. The science of hydraulics teaches what relates to the *motion* of fluids, and how to determine their velocity and force. On its principles are constructed all machines worked by water, as steam-engines, water-mills, pumps, siphons, fountains, and fire-engines.

10. What is understood by *Pneumatics*? This term denotes that particular branch of science which treats of the mechanical properties of air. What is air? The air is a fluid in which we live, and which we breathe; it entirely envelopes our globe, extends to a considerable distance in all directions, and is commonly denominated the atmosphere.

11. What are *Acoustics* and *Optics*, respectively? Acoustics is that science which instructs us in the nature of sound. The term Optics is used to denote that branch of philosophy which treats of the nature and properties of light, and of the changes it undergoes either in its direction when transmitted through bodies, when reflected from their surfaces, or when passing by them at a small distance.

12. How is Sound produced? By the vibrations of elastic bodies, communicated to the ear through the medium of the air. A bell cannot be heard if struck under an exhausted receiver. The lowest sound which can be called musical, is produced by sixteen vibrations in a second of time; double the number produces a sound an octave higher. The note on the piano, known as the middle C, is produced by 256 vibrations of the string in one second of time.

13. What is *Electricity*? This term is applied to that science which investigates the attractions and repulsions, the emission of light and explosions which are produced, not only by the friction of vitreous, resinous, and metallic surfaces, but by the heating, cooling, evaporation, and mutual contact of numerous bodies.

14. What is understood by *Galvanism*? Galvanism, sometimes called Voltaism, is a species of electricity produced by connecting dissimilar metals, by means of an intervening and oxydating fluid. It derives the name from Galvani, a professor of anatomy at Bologna, who first noticed the effects of electricity on the muscles of frogs.

15. What is *Magnetism*? This branch of science treats on the attractive properties of the magnet, or loadstone, which is a hard mineral body, met with in various countries, and generally found in iron mines. The peculiar natural qualities of the magnet are what constitute the importance of the mariner's compass in navigation.

16. What is taught by *Chemistry*? This branch of science teaches us how to investigate the component parts of material substances, and the permanent changes which their mutual actions produce. In no science does modern improvement appear so prominent; and in none can it boast of such great utility as in chemistry.

17. What is *Meteorology*? The science of studying the variable phenomena of the atmosphere, considered in respect of the direction of the winds; the variations in its gravity or pressure; the changes in its temperature; its state of electricity; and the various visible phenomena dependent thereon;—a science, however, of so much difficulty, that the laws influencing the weather are still very imperfectly understood.

18. What is obtained from the study of *Astronomy*? Astronomy is the most sublime, useful, and interesting of all the sciences cultivated by man, and treats of the heavenly bodies and their various phenomena, by which we become acquainted with the magnitudes, motions, distances, eclipses, &c. of the celestial luminaries. Astronomy is a science of very great antiquity, if not indeed coeval with the human race itself, since we can hardly suppose that the exhibition of the Divine glory, as manifested in the heavenly bodies, could have been disregarded by those who first beheld them.

19. It is generally admitted that the foundation of a regular system of this science was laid by Hipparchus, B. C. 162. The ancient philosophers who followed him entertained the idea of the immobility of the earth. This is called the Ptolemaic system, and places the earth in the centre, the several planets round about her, and the fixed stars beyond. But it was not until the sixteenth century that astronomy began to assume a more rational appearance, when the discoveries of Copernicus, Kepler, and Galileo, aided in establishing a system which is now universally received. The interest and importance attending the cultivation of this science will be easily perceived, and the subject has consequently been further treated of and illustrated in a separate section.

20. What is *Physiology*? A contemplation of the nature, structure, and organization of Man as the head of all animated creation. The study of such a being affords ample scope for the exercise of the highest powers with which we are endowed, embracing as it does a knowledge of sensation, digestion, absorption, circulation, secretion, nutrition, respi-

ration, the organs of sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch, and the curious and complicated structure and functions of the brain and nervous system.

21. What is taught by the *Mathematics*? Originally the term signified any discipline or learning; at present it denotes the science which teaches or contemplates whatever is capable of being numbered or measured, and accordingly is subdivided into arithmetic, which has numbers for its object, and geometry, which treats of magnitude. Mathematics may be further viewed as pure and speculative, which consider quantity abstractedly; and mixed, which treat of magnitude as subsisting in material bodies, consequently interwoven every where with physical considerations. Mixed mathematics are very comprehensive, since to them may be referred astronomy, geography, hydrography, mechanics, navigation, fortification, &c.

22. What is understood by *Metaphysics*? Metaphysics may be considered as the science of mind. It treats of beings as separated from all matter, particularly beings purely spiritual, as God, angels, spirits, the human soul, and embraces the principles and causes of all things existing.

23. Name the elements of the antients. Earth, air, fire, and water. Are they still considered elementary? No: air has been discovered to be a compound of two gases, oxygen and nitrogen; water of oxygen and hydrogen; the earths are compounds of various substances; whilst fire is the mere effect of the union of oxygen, hydrogen, and carbon.

24. How many substances are considered simple, or elementary, by chemists in the present day? Fifty-four. Name some of them. The metals, forty-two in number; four gases; and several non-metallic bodies, among which are carbon, sulphur, and phosphorus.

25. What are the characteristics of a metal? The peculiar lustre produced when it is rubbed or scratched, and its power of conducting heat and the electric fluid.

26. What are the properties of the gases nitrogen, oxygen, and hydrogen? Nitrogen by itself will not support life; but combined with oxygen, which it serves to dilute, in the proportion of 79 of nitrogen to 21 of oxygen, it forms the air we breathe. Were it not for this, oxygen would quickly destroy life; and, from its power of increasing and supporting combustion, even the iron itself of our stoves, as well as the coals, would burn with brilliance and rapidity. This gas, combined in the proportion of 8 to 1 of hydrogen, constitutes water. Hydrogen is the lightest body known, being twelve or thirteen times rarer than atmospheric air.

27. What is Chlorine, and what are its uses? A powerful gas, so called because it is of a greenish colour: it is much used for bleaching in paper-making and other manufactures, and is also employed as an agent for disinfection.

What is it obtained from? From common salt, which is a compound of chlorine with a metal termed sodium.

28. Are there any other gases besides those already named? Several: one of the most important is carbonic acid gas, or fixed air, a compound of carbon and oxygen, called also choke-damp. It often accumulates in cellars and wells, and persons who have inadvertently ventured into such situations have been frequently suffocated by it. It is much heavier than common air, and may be poured like water from one vessel to another: it is evolved largely during fermentation, and occasions the sparkling and effervescence of beer, champagne, and soda-water. United with lime it forms chalk and marble, termed chemically carbonate of lime: water can hold considerable quantities of it in solution, and in this state will dissolve chalk and marble, which are again deposited as carbonate of lime when the water evaporates, occasioning stalactites. The petrifying wells of Derbyshire owe their properties to this circumstance; the water they contain being charged with carbonate of lime, it is deposited on any article immersed. In this way, wigs, baskets, birds, &c., are coated, and appear to be converted into stone.



29. What is Coal-gas? A compound of hydrogen and carbon; it is very inflammable, and being extremely light is used for inflating air-balloons. How is it commonly pro-

cured? Coals are put into close vessels in a furnace, where they soon become decomposed by the heat; the gas, with some other substances, is then evolved, and having been purified by passing through lime and water, is received into large tanks or gasometers, whence it is conveyed by pipes to illuminate our buildings and streets.

30. How are balloons made? Of silk, rendered air-tight by a coating of elastic varnish. A car is attached by a network of cords passing over the top, and aerial voyages are thus frequently performed with ease and safety.



31. What is Carbon, and what are its uses? Carbon, or charcoal, is well known as a fuel, in the form of wood, coal, peat, &c. Diamond is pure charcoal in a crystallized state; combined with iron it forms cast-iron and steel; black-lead, or plumbago, is a peculiar form of it, containing a very minute portion of iron.

32. What is Fire-damp? An inflammable gas, evolved spontaneously in coal-mines. When mixed with atmospheric air it is very explosive. In working coal-mines, what precautions are taken to prevent the ignition of fire-damp? Lamps closely surrounded with wire gauze are used, called safety or Davy lamps, from their inventor sir Humphry Davy. Large quantities of air are also forced constantly through the workings, to clear them as much as possible from accumulations of gas.

33. What are the uses of Sulphur, and where is it found? Sulphur is one of the principal ingredients in gunpowder and fireworks; the low heat at which it ignites causes the gunpowder to inflame rapidly, and for this reason it is also employed in making matches. It is found in ores of metals, and in most volcanic regions. Our principal supplies are obtained from Sicily.

34. What is Phosphorus? A highly inflammable substance resembling wax: at a common temperature it emits a white smoke, which appears luminous in the dark.

35. What is the difference between Sodium and Soda? Soda is a combination of the metal sodium with oxygen gas; potash is also a compound of a peculiar metal, potassium, with this gas.

36. What are the uses of Potash and Soda? Boiled with oils, they form soaps; and when melted with flint or sand, glass is produced.

37. What is Silica, and what are its uses? Silica, or Silex, is one of the primitive earths, and forms an essential ingredient in the manufacture of glass. For plate, crown, and crystal glass, silver sand and ground flints are used, but coarser materials are employed for bottle and inferior glass.

---

## SECTION II.

### *The Elements of Astronomy.*

- |                                                                  |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. Quies'cent, <i>a.</i> at rest; not changing<br>place; repose. | 11. Demon'strate, <i>v.</i> to prove clearly.<br>12. Rotun'dity, <i>s.</i> roundness. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. What is Astronomy? That science which treats of the heavenly bodies, their motions, periods, eclipses, magnitudes, &c.; and of the causes on which these depend.

2. What is meant by the universe? The whole frame of nature, to the utmost bounds of creation, and comprising all things.

3. What is our Sun, and of what the centre? Our sun is a star among the other stars, and has sixteen worlds revolving round him, viz. Mercury, the nearest; Venus, the next; our Earth (with its Moon), the next; then Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, and Uranus: and, lastly, Neptune, which has been recently discovered.

4. To these eight may be added the planets Ceres, Juno, Pallas, Vesta, Flora, Iris, Hebe, and Astrea, which, being comparatively small, are considered of minor importance.

5. All these are called primary planets; the satellites or moons revolving round them, are termed secondary planets.

6. Describe ancient and modern astronomy. Ancient astronomy is that which was taught by Ptolemy and his followers, who supposed the earth quiescent in the centre, and that all the heavenly bodies performed their revolutions round it.

7. Modern astronomy is that which has been cultivated since the time of Copernicus, who revived the opinions of Pythagoras, and laid the foundation of the "Solar System," or "True System of the World."

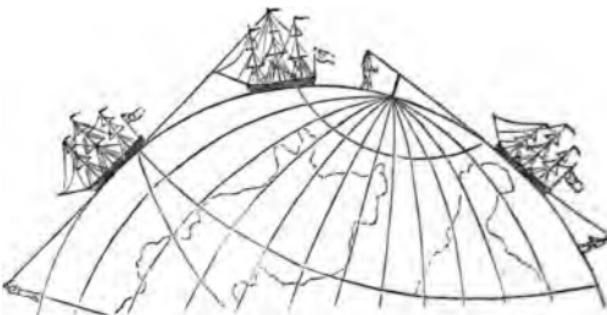
8. The most known systems of the world are, the Ptolemaic, the Copernican or Pythagorean, and the Tychonic.

9. The Copernican or Pythagorean system, which is now universally adopted by all the learned in Europe, supposes the sun to be the centre of the system, and the earth and planets to revolve round him in their orbits.

10. Copernicus was a native of Thorn, in Prussia. He was hailed as the author of a system of which, properly speaking, he was only the reviver, inasmuch as it had been taught in the early ages by Pythagoras, a celebrated Greek philosopher.

11. What contributed to its revival was, the circumstance of Magellan's sailing round the globe, after a voyage of 1124 days, apparently without altering the grand direction of his course, being westward, which demonstrated the rotundity of the earth, and paved the way to a discovery of its motion.

12. What other proofs are there of the earth's rotundity? One; its shadow, in eclipses of the moon, is always circular. Again: if we view a ship departing from port, we gradually lose sight, first of the bottom or hull of the vessel, while we can still see the rigging and flags at the top; but as the ship goes on we lose sight of these also, as if the whole were really sunk into the deep. The reverse happens when a ship is making to land: the sails are seen first, and then the hull gradually rises to the view. This can only take place from the roundness of the earth. The subjoined engraving will help to illustrate it.



13. Galileo did much to confirm the Copernican theory. In 1610 he introduced the use of telescopes; which, by facilitating astronomical observations, greatly tended to the discovery of fresh proofs of the earth's motion.

14. Another name that has been given to this theory is the Newtonian, from sir Isaac Newton, who, near the beginning of the last century, explained the motions of the heavenly bodies, and the general law of nature, according to which they move.

15. What is this law called? This law is called gravity, or attraction; which operates universally through all the

regions of matter, retains the sea within its shores, and the rivers within their banks ; keeps the planets within their orbits, and preserves the whole fabric of nature in perfect harmony and order.

16. The following circumstance suggested this theory to Newton. In 1665, when a student at Cambridge, being seated in a garden he saw an apple fall from a tree, and



speculating on the cause, conceived it arose from the earth's attraction. This led him to imagine that the earth kept the moon in its orbit by the same power as the sun did the planets, and he called it gravity,—universal gravitation, or weight.

17. The Ptolemaic system is so called from the celebrated astronomer Ptolemy, a native of Egypt, who died A. D. 147. In this system the earth is supposed to be at rest in the centre of the universe, while the heavens are considered as revolving about it, from east to west ; and with them, every twenty-four hours, all the heavenly bodies, the stars, and the planets.

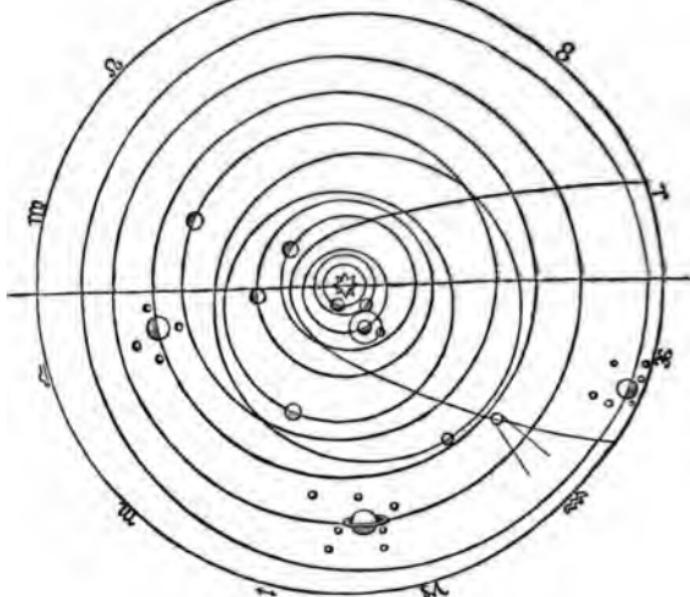
18. The Tychonic system was taught by the celebrated Tycho Brahe, a native of Denmark, who was born in 1546. This system supposes that the stars all move round the earth, as in the Ptolemaic system ; that all the planets, except the earth, move round the sun as in the Copernican system ; and that the sun and the imaginary orbits in which the planets are moving, are carried round the earth.

19. This system owed its origin to the sensible appearances of the celestial motions. Imagining the apparent motions of celestial bodies to be absolute, instead of relative, and being unaware that the earth had motion also, naturally led to many erroneous conclusions.

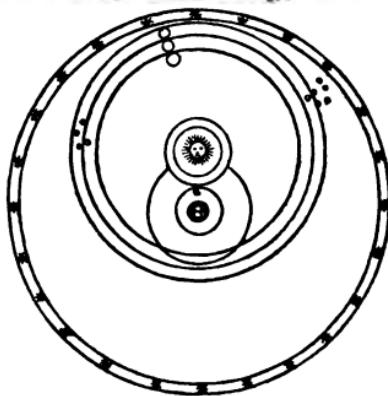
*The Ptolemaic System.*

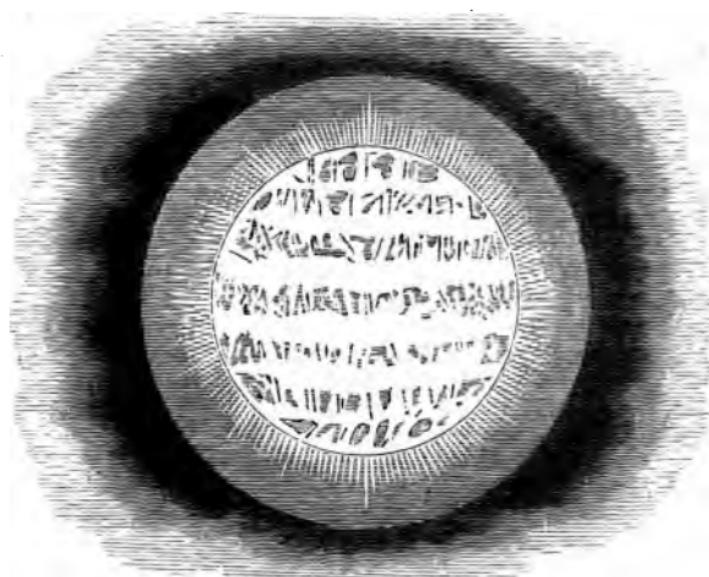


*The COPERNICAN SYSTEM.*



*The TYCHONIC SYSTEM.*





TELESCOPIC VIEW OF THE SUN, exhibiting the daily appearance of several remarkable spots which have, at different periods, appeared upon its surface. Each line indicates the appearance of a spot for one day; and so on successively.

### SECTION III.

#### *Astronomy, continued.*

#### THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

1. THE Solar System is contained within that part of universal space called the "Visible World," and consists of the sun, the planets, satellites or moons, the asteroids, and an uncertain number of comets.

2. All the planets, satellites, asteroids, and comets are solid, opaque, globular bodies, of different magnitudes, and receive their light and heat from the sun, which they reflect upon each other in the same manner as a polished body does that of a candle; and by which means they become visible to us.

3. That immense and magnificent luminary is a globe or ball, a million times larger than the earth, and five hundred times larger than all the planets put together. It is the centre of the system round which the planetary worlds revolve.

4. Its diameter is 890,000 miles, and its distance from the earth is 95,000,000 miles.

5. The sun is the fountain of light and heat, the parent of the seasons, and the cause of day and night.

6. The only motion of the sun is that round its axis, which it performs in twenty-five days, six hours.

7. This revolution was discovered by the spots on its surface, which are seen only at certain periods, according to the sun's motion.

8. All the planets, and their several moons or satellites, revolve round the sun as their common centre.

9. The names of the eight planets, with their signs, in their order from the Sun (○) are, Mercury (☿), Venus (♀), the Earth (⊕) with its moon (●), Mars (♂), Jupiter (♃) with its four moons, Saturn (♄) with its seven moons, Uranus, or the Georgium Sidus, (♅) with its moons, and Neptune with its moons.

10. Mercury (☿) and Venus (♀) move within the orbit of the Earth (⊕), and are in consequence called "inferior planets;" the others move on the outside of its orbit, and are called "superior planets."

11. There are eight minor planets that have been discovered in the present century, namely, Flora, Iris, Vesta, Hebe, Astrea, Juno, Ceres, and Pallas; but from their inconsiderable size, the largest being much less than our moon, they have been esteemed but of inferior importance, and have consequently received the name of asteroids, which term is derived from two Greek words, *aster*, a star, and *eido*, I see; and signifies appearing like a star. To be seen distinctly, these planets require glasses of a highly magnifying power.

12. Besides these, there is yet an inconceivable number of suns, systems, and worlds dispersed throughout the universe; insomuch, that our "Solar System," compared with the whole creation, is a mere speck or atom, and almost lost in the immensity of space.

### MERCURY, (☿).

13. The planet Mercury is the nearest body to the sun with which we are acquainted.

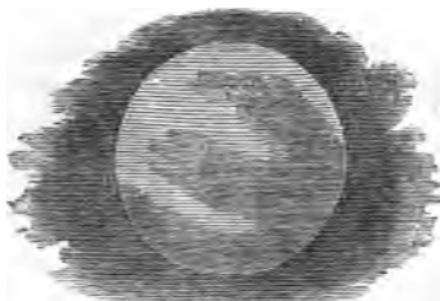
14. Its mean distance from the sun is about 37,000,000 miles, round which it revolves in about three months, at the rate of 110,000 miles per hour.

15. Mercury is the smallest of all the planets, being only 3,260 miles in diameter.

16. The time of its diurnal revolution has not been ascertained; which arises from its being lost in the splendour of the sun.

14. MEAN, in astronomy, when applied to the motion of the sun, moon, or planets, signifies that which would take place if they moved in a perfect circle, and equally every day.

15. DIAMETER is the imaginary line which passes through the centre of a circle, &c. and divides it into two equal parts.



17. Mercury is seldom to be seen with the naked eye; but with glasses it appears extremely brilliant, and has all the phases or appearances common to the moon.

18. When Mercury comes between the earth and sun, it appears like a black spot passing over the sun's disc.

19. This planet is never to be seen more than two hours before the sun rises, and two hours after he sets.

20. Mercury can never be seen entirely round, or at its full; because its enlightened side is never turned directly towards us, except when it is so near the sun as to be hidden in his beams.

#### VENUS, (♀).

21. Venus is the next planet to Mercury in order from the sun.

22. The mean distance of Venus from the sun is about 69,000,000 miles, and she moves at the rate of 80,000 miles per hour.

23. She is something less than the earth, being only 7,600 miles in diameter; and revolves on her axis in twenty-three hours, twenty-two minutes.

24. When she appears on the west side of the sun, she rises before him in the morning, and is called Phosphorus, or the Morning Star; and when she appears on the east side of that luminary, she shines in the evening, and is then called Vesper, or the Evening Star.

17. PHASES are the several appearances observed in the planets.

18. DISC, in *astronomy*, is the face of the sun, moon, or any planet, as it appears to the eye. In *optics*, it is the magnitude of the glass of a telescope, or the width of its aperture. In *botany*, it is the central or middle part of radiated flowers, composed of several florets placed perpendicularly, and sometimes called the *pelvis*, or *basin*.

24. PHOSPHORUS, also PHOSPHOR, is derived from two Greek words,—*phos*, light, and *phero*, I bring: hence is the term applied to Venus when she goes before the sun. It is the name also of a chemical substance, which, when rubbed or exposed to the air, takes fire.

VESPER is the Latin word for evening; and, in consequence, it is applied to Venus when she sets after the sun.



25. Venus, as well as Mercury, when viewed through a telescope, does not appear round. This is owing to her enlightened side never being wholly turned towards us, except when she is directly on the other side of the sun, and then she cannot be seen.

26. When this planet is viewed through a telescope, she appears to have all the phases common to the moon.

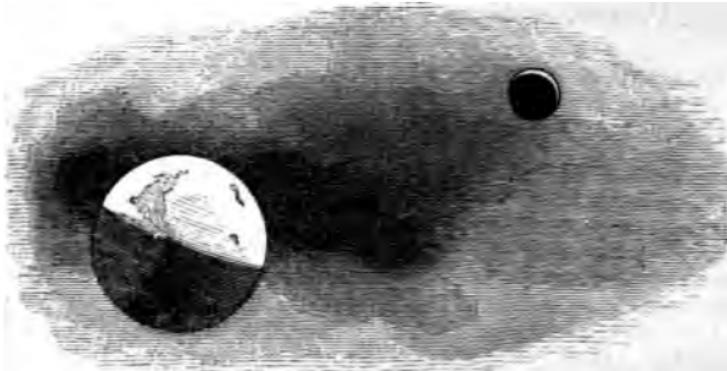
27. Venus can never be seen more than three hours and a quarter, either before the sun rises or after he sets.

#### THE EARTH, (⊕).

28. The next planet to Venus from the sun is the Earth, which moves round the sun in three hundred and sixty-five days, five hours, and forty-eight minutes.

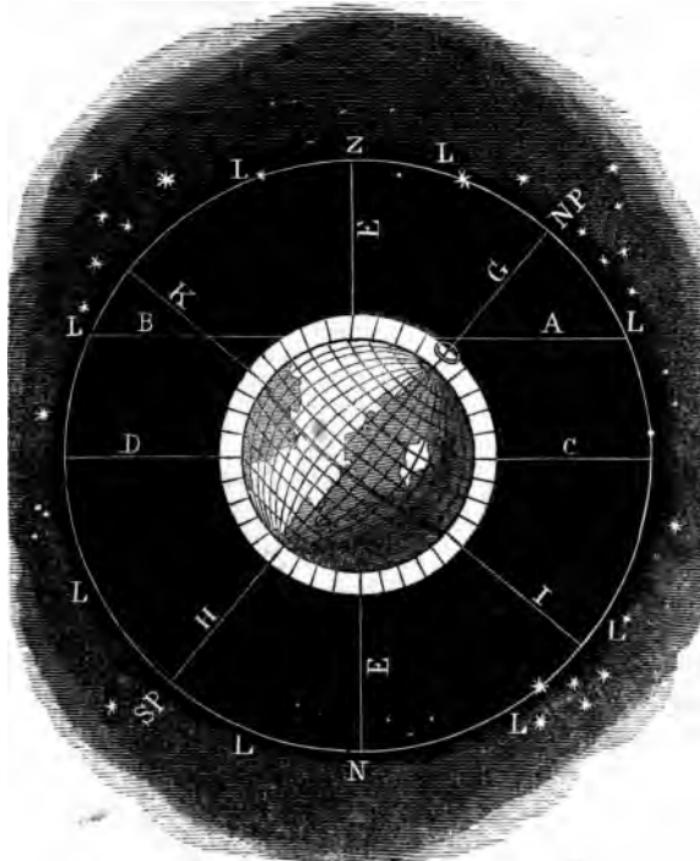
29. Its mean distance from the sun is 95,000,000 miles, and it moves at the rate of 68,000 miles an hour.

30. The earth is encompassed with a thin, transparent, invisible fluid, called the atmosphere or air, which partakes of its annual and diurnal motions; this is capable of being expanded by heat, condensed by cold, and compressed by force. It extends about fifty miles in height.



31. This planet is attended by one satellite or secondary planet, called the Moon. The earth's diameter is 7,970 miles. It turns round its axis once in twenty three hours, fifty-six minutes, and four seconds.

32. As the earth turns round in the space of nearly twenty-four hours, a line has been imagined to pass through it, on which it turns; this is called the earth's axis; and is shown at G H in the following engraving.



THE EARTH IN RELATION TO THE HEAVENS.

33. The two extremities of this line, carried to the heavens, are the poles; one is called the north or arctic pole, N P; the other the south or antarctic pole, S P.

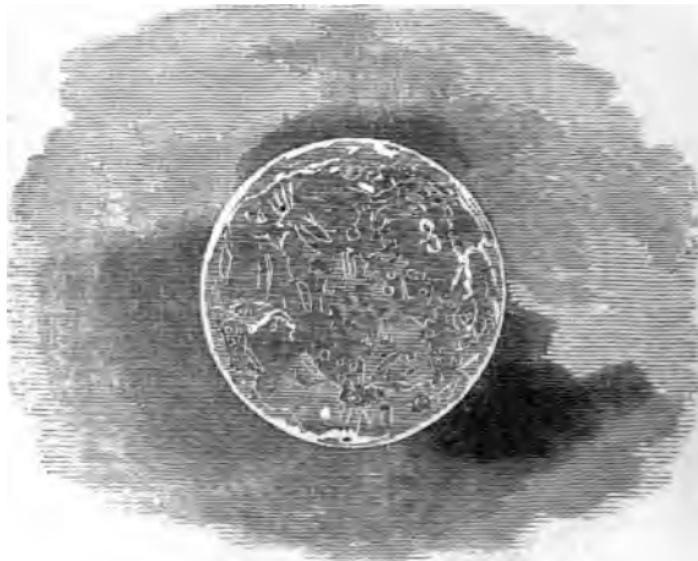
34. In observing the heavens, an apparent circle bounds our view, and appears to touch the surface of the earth: this astronomers call the horizon; and from its dividing the visible part of the heavens from the invisible, it is called the sensible horizon, represented by the line B A.

35. The rational horizon is a circle parallel to the sensible ; it passes through the centre of the earth, dividing it and the heavens into two equal parts, or hemispheres. It is called the rational, to distinguish it from the sensible, and is used to indicate the rising and setting of the sun, moon, and stars : it is represented by D C.

36. The axis of the horizon is an imaginary line, passing perpendicular to the plane of both, as E E.

37. The extremes of this axis are called the poles of the horizon : the one over the head of the spectator is called the zenith, Z ; and the other, which is under his feet, is called the nadir, N.

38. The great circle which passes round the centre of the earth, perpendicular to its axis, and at an equal distance from either pole, is called the equator. It is represented in the engraving I K, is extended to the starry firmament, L, and is called the celestial equator.



THE MOON, (G).

39. The Moon is a constant attendant on the earth, which she regards as her centre, and in whose vicinity she incessantly remains.

40. Her mean distance from the earth is two hundred and forty thousand miles ; her diameter is about two thousand one hundred and eighty, and she moves at the rate of two thousand three hundred miles an hour.

41. Next to the sun, the moon appears to us the most splendid and shining globe in the heavens.

42. She is not only a pleasing, but a very welcome object;

and is of great use to the navigator, the traveller, and the husbandman.

43. When the moon is viewed through a telescope, her surface appears rough, and full of mountains and valleys.

44. She appears much larger to us than any of the other planets, on account of her being much nearer to us.

45. The earth may be considered a satellite to the moon.

46. The Tides are two periodical motions of the sea; called also the *flux* and *reflux*, or the ebb and flow. They are caused by the attraction of the sun and moon. The moon has the greater power of attraction, because she is so much nearer the earth.

47. As the earth revolves round her axis, portions of her surface successively pass under the moon and create the tides, which happen about twelve hours and three quarters apart. The moon has the greatest influence when on the meridian.

48. The tides are greater than ordinary twice every month, that is, about the times of new and full moons; these are called Spring tides. They are less than ordinary twice every month, that is, about the first and last quarters of the moon; and these are called Neap tides.

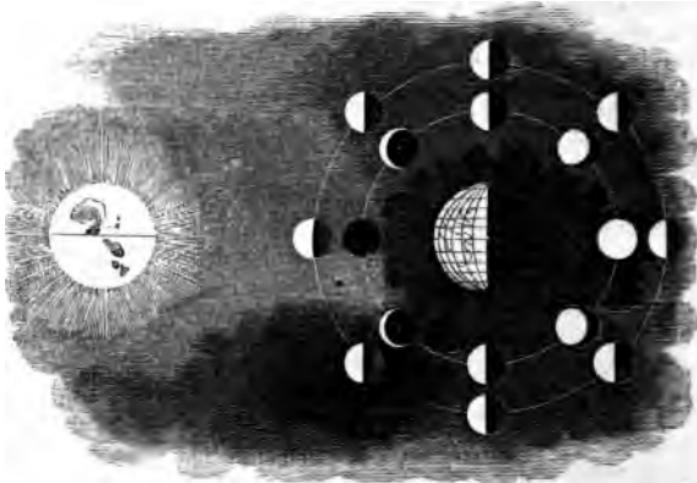


49. In the season of harvest, when the husbandmen are actively engaged in gathering in the fruits of the earth, this friendly planet rises at full about the same time for three or more nights successively. They are thus enabled to continue their labour after the heat of the day, and thereby advance the completion of the *joy of harvest*.

50. The phenomenon may be thus explained: as a spectator is carried by the earth's rotation, his horizon will continually change its situation, and will therefore continually

cut the moon's orbit at different points. Now the difference between the times of the moon's rising on two successive nights, depends on the angle which the moon's orbit makes with the horizon ; the less the angle is, the less the moon, in the next twenty-four hours, will have descended below the horizon. As that angle recurs about the 22nd of September, the full moon nearest that period will rise about the same time for several nights together, and happening in the time of harvest, it is called the *harvest moon*.

51. The different phases of the moon are exemplified in the annexed figure ; in which are represented the sun, the earth, the moon in different parts of her orbit, and her several phases or appearances as seen by us.



#### *Questions for Examination.*

1. What is the solar system ? 3. What is the sun ? 12. What is the solar system compared with the whole universe ? 28. How long is the earth moving round the sun ? 29. What its distance from the sun ? At what rate does it move ? 30. With what is the earth encompassed ? 33. What are the poles ? 34. What is the horizon ? 46. What are the tides ? 47. How are they caused ? 49. What is the harvest moon ?
- 

#### SECTION IV.

##### *Astronomy, continued.*

###### MARS, ( $\delta$ ).

1. MARS is the first of what is called the superior planets, because he is situated higher in the system than is the earth. His orbit lies between that of the Earth and Jupiter, but very distant from both ; he is next in order from the earth.



2. The mean distance of Mars from the sun is about one hundred and forty-five millions of miles.

3. He travels through his orbit in little less than two years, at the rate of 55,000 miles per hour.

4. His diameter is 4,200 miles, which is but little more than half the diameter of the earth.

5. He has a red and fiery appearance, which is supposed to arise from a thick atmosphere by which he is surrounded.

6. It was from his fiery or sanguinary appearance that the antients called him Mars, who by them was considered the *god of war*. He was allegorically represented riding on a high chariot, drawn by two furious horses, Fear and Terror, driven by his sister Bellona, the goddess of war: he was covered with armour, and held a spear in one hand, and brandished a sword in the other, threatening ruin and desolation to the world.

7. To this planet the earth and moon appear like two moons. He revolves on his axis in twenty-four hours, thirty-nine minutes.

8. Mars increases and decreases like the moon, except that he never forms a crescent, as do the inferior planets. The atmosphere of Mars is supposed to be denser than that of the earth.

#### JUPITER, (24).

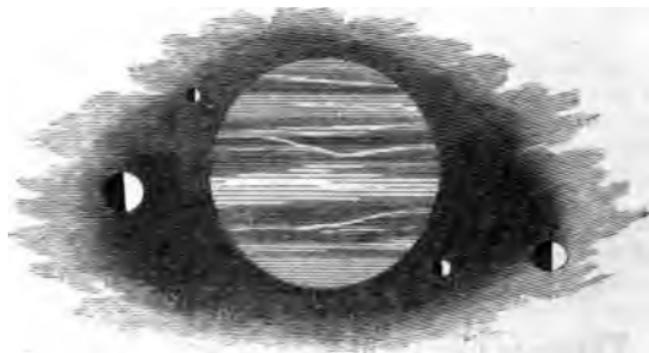
9. Jupiter lies beyond the orbit of Mars, and is the largest of all the planets, being a thousand times larger than the earth.

10. His diameter is about 90,000 miles. He revolves on his axis in about ten hours.

11. The mean distance of Jupiter from the sun is about 500,000,000 miles, and he travels at the rate of thirty thousand miles per hour.

12. He is attended by four moons, which are constantly revolving round him. The ancient poets styled Jupiter the father and king of gods and men.

13. The swiftness of his diurnal motion is supposed to draw his atmosphere into lines or streaks, and form those



appearances on his face which we call belts. Sometimes several of these are seen across the body of the planet; sometimes they coalesce into one broad belt; sometimes, but rarely, the belts are diagonal. The axis of Jupiter is nearly perpendicular to the plane of his orbit, so that he has no variety of seasons.

14. Jupiter's four moons were discovered by Galileo in 1610, soon after the invention of the telescope; but the belts were not observed till twenty years after.

15. The first of these satellites, which is rather more distant from Jupiter than the moon from the earth, performs its revolutions in one day, eighteen hours, and twenty-seven minutes and a half; the second, about 420,000 miles distant, revolves in three days, thirteen hours, thirteen minutes and three quarters; the third, about 676,000 miles distant, in seven days, three hours, and forty-two minutes and a half; and the fourth, about 1,200,000, in sixteen days, sixteen hours, and thirty-two minutes.

#### SATURN, (S).

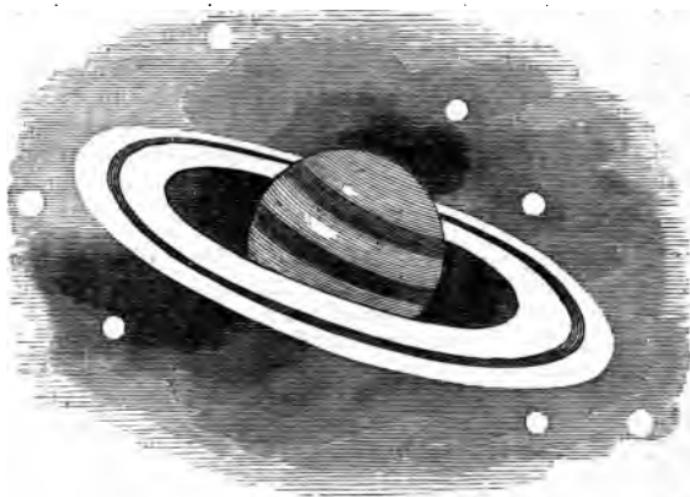
16. The next planet in the system is Saturn. In consequence of his great distance, he shines with a pale feeble light, yet not one of the heavenly bodies presents more interesting phenomena when viewed through a good telescope.

17. He moves round the sun in about thirty years, at the mean distance of about nine hundred millions of miles, and at the rate of 22,000 miles per hour.

18. His diameter is about 80,000 miles, and he revolves round his axis in about ten hours, fifteen minutes.

19. This planet is surrounded with a magnificent luminous ring, which is about 22,000 miles in breadth. This ring is found to be double.

20. It has been further discovered that Saturn's ring is opaque, for it occasionally exhibits the appearance of a dark belt upon the planet; which shows that both derive their light from the sun.

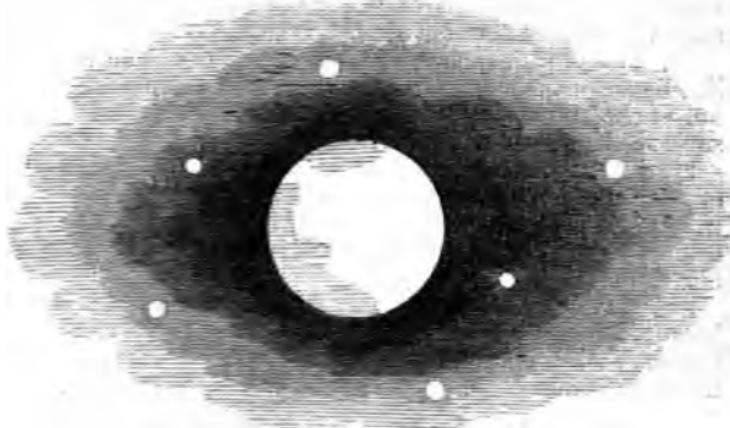


21. Saturn is attended by seven moons, which are constantly moving round him on the outside of the ring. He was called by the antients the *god of time*.

22. The sixth moon was discovered on the 28th of August, 1789; the same day that Dr. Herschel completed his forty-feet telescope, which was the largest instrument, and possessed the highest magnifying power of any that had ever been constructed.

#### URANUS, (H).

23. This planet was discovered by Sir William Herschel, a German, in the night of March 13, 1781, and by him named the Georgium Sidus. It has also been called Herschel by foreign astronomers, in honour of the discoverer.



24. It is about eighty times larger than the earth, and moves round the sun in about eighty-three years.

25. This was long considered the remotest planet of any in the system: his mean distance from the sun is about twice that of Saturn's, and he is attended by six moons.

26. His diameter is about 35,000 miles, and he revolves round the sun at the rate of 7,000 miles per hour.

### NEPTUNE.

27. Neptune, so named by the Academy of Sciences at Paris, was discovered September 23, 1846, by Dr. Galle of Berlin, in the exact position of the heavens which had been assigned to it by the mathematical deductions of M. Le Verrier. Mr. Adams, fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, had entered fully into observations, and also pointed out where a planet would be observed.

28. The diameter of Neptune is about 45,000 miles, consequently it is about 200 times larger than our earth, and is about 3,000,000,000 miles distant from the sun. Two moons, and also a ring like that surrounding Saturn, have already been discovered.

### ECLIPSES.

29. An Eclipse is the privation of light in any of the heavenly bodies, of which the most common to us are those of the sun and moon.

30. Among the numerous and extraordinary phenomena of nature, none are more sublime and useful than eclipses; and though we live in an age so greatly enlightened, how few are there who contemplate and comprehend them! Many superstitious notions have originated from the eclipses of the sun and moon, and in former ages they were beheld with terror and amazement, being considered to portend some great calamity and misery to mankind; but since the advancement of science, we are delivered from such vague fears and idle apprehensions.

31. The sun is eclipsed when the moon passes in a direct line between the earth and the sun, which can never happen but at the time of a new moon: the eclipse begins on the sun's western side, and goes off on his eastern.

32. The moon is eclipsed when she is opposite to the sun, or has the earth in a straight line between her and the sun, which can never happen but at the time of full moon: this eclipse begins on the moon's eastern side, and goes off on her western.

33. Lunar\* eclipses do not happen every full moon, because of the obliquity of the moon's path with respect to the sun's; but only in such full moons as happen either at the intersection of those two paths, or very near them.

\* From the Latin word *luna*, moon.

34. The greatest number of eclipses of both luminaries which can happen in a year, is seven, and the least, two; but the most usual number is four, and it is very rare to have more than six, of which one half are seldom visible at all places.

35. Eclipses of the sun are more frequent than those of the moon, but not so many of them are visible.

36. The several phases and eclipses of the moon will be more easily understood from the engraving, where the candle is supposed to represent the sun; the ball held by the principal figure, the moon; and his face the earth. The ball, now in full shadow, may be considered as the moon presenting her dark side towards the earth, and being invisible, is then called the new moon: if the operator turn himself round, moving the ball forward at the same time, the light will fall partially on it, and represent the moon in its first quarter: when he presents his back to the candle, it will be at the full; and so on, till the several phases, by the return to his original position, have been respectively indicated.



37. But if the candle, ball, and head of the observer be in a line, when the ball is between him and the light a shadow will be thrown on his face, and this may be termed an eclipse of the sun,—the moon passing between the earth and the sun. When he has his back to the light, the moon will then be dark, his head placing the ball in shadow; this will represent an eclipse of the moon, that is, when the earth passes between the sun and the moon, depriving it of the sun's light.

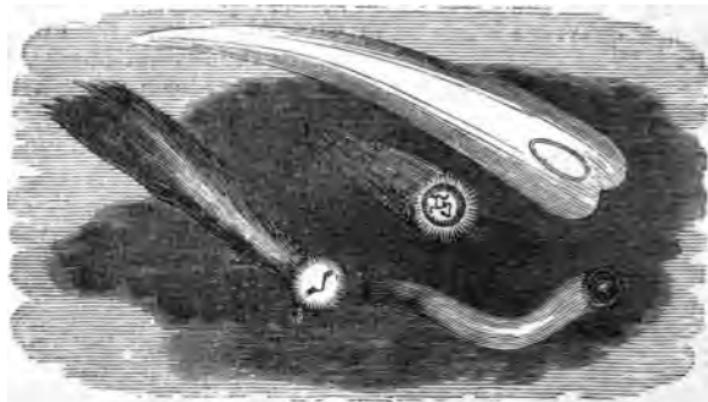
38. Eclipses are of great use in astronomy.

39. Eclipses of the moon determine the spherical figure of the earth; they also show that the sun is larger than the earth, and the earth than the moon.

40. In geography, eclipses discover the longitude of different places; for which purpose those of the moon are the more useful, because more often visible.

Questions for Examination.

29. What is an eclipse? 30. How were eclipses formerly regarded? 34. What number of eclipses can happen in a year? 38. Are eclipses useful? 39. What do eclipses of the moon determine? 40. What do they discover in geography?



SECTION V.

*Astronomy, continued.*

COMETS.

1. HAVING thus, with as much clearness and perspicuity as the nature of the subject will admit, described the planetary system, we proceed to notice the comets, which revolve round the sun in orbits extremely eccentric.

2. Although the comets revolve round the sun in such very oblique orbits, their periodical times and motions are as certain and invariable as those of the planets.

3. The comets, like the planets, are solid, opaque bodies, of different magnitudes, but most of those which have been observed are less than the moon.

4. The number of comets belonging to the solar system is unknown; but it is supposed to be very great, as the orbits of eighty have been already calculated.

5. They are all found to move round the sun, and to cross the orbits of the planets in various directions.

6. They are principally distinguished from the planets by a long transparent train or tail of light, which extends from the side that is opposite the sun.

7. This sort of transparent tail is nothing more than a very slender vapour accompanying the comet, which increases as the comet approaches the sun, decreases as it leaves that luminary, and then gradually disappears.

8. Comets generally appear suddenly; and after being visible for a few days or weeks, again pursue their devious course through immense fields of ether, in regions very far beyond the limits of our system.

9. These heterogenous bodies are commonly distinguished into three kinds,—viz. bearded, tailed, and hairy; though, in fact, this division relates rather to the several situations of the same comet, than to the phenomena of several.

10. When the comet is eastward of the sun, and recedes from it, the light before it occasions the appearance of a beard: when it is to the west of the sun, and is approaching him, it exhibits the appearance of a tail.

11. But when the comet and the sun are diametrically opposite, (the earth intervening,) the train is hidden behind the body of the comet, excepting a little that appears on its verge, resembling a border of hair.

12. Comets were imagined, in ancient times, to be prodigies hung out by the immediate hand of God in the heavens, and intended to alarm the world.

13. Their nature being now better understood, they are no longer terrible to the generality of people.

#### THE FIXED STARS

14. Form no part of the Solar System; nor should it be imagined that they are placed in one concave surface, so as to be all equally distant from us; but they are dispersed through unlimited space in such a manner, that there may be as great a distance between any two neighbouring stars, as there is between our sun and that which is nearest to him.

15. The difference in the apparent magnitude of the stars is such as to admit of their being distinguished into different classes: the largest being called stars of the first magnitude; those that appear something less, of the second magnitude; and so on to the sixth, which include all the stars that are visible to the naked eye. Those which cannot be seen without the aid of glasses are called telescopic stars.

16. In order that the stars may be distinguished and pointed out according to their true positions and situations, they have long been classed under the outlines of certain imaginary figures of beasts, birds, and other animals, which are called Constellations, each containing such stars as are situated near each other.

17. The division of the Zodiac into twelve signs has a

relation to the twelve months in the year; and the animals by which they are represented are emblematic of the different productions of nature in those seasons over which they preside.

18. The northern signs are Aries, the ram; Taurus, the bull; Gemini, the twins; Cancer, the crab; Leo, the lion; and Virgo, the virgin. The southern signs are Libra, the balance; Scorpio, the scorpion; Sagittarius, the archer; Aquarius, the waterman; and Pisces, the fishes.

19. Many of the other constellations, which range without the Zodiac, appear to have been formed in honour of certain heroes and celebrated personages, whose memory they were meant to perpetuate.

20. Besides the names of these constellations, particular appellations are given to smaller collections of stars, and even to some of the most remarkable single ones.

21. Thus, the cluster of small stars in the neck of Taurus is called the Pleiades; the seven stars in the Great Bear, Charles's Wain; and the star in the extremity of the tail of the Little Bear, the North Pole star.

22. The star in the mouth of Canis Major, the Great Dog, is called Sirius; it is supposed to be eighteen billions of miles from the earth, and is reckoned the nearest to it.

23. The number of the fixed stars discovered by the telescope is very great; but their amount can never be ascertained, as every improvement in that instrument serves but to increase the number known.

24. The Milky Way, called the Galaxy, may be considered as a constellation, since it is but a very large collection of fixed stars, and which, from their immense distance, require telescopes of great power to be observed.

25. So prodigious, indeed, is the magnitude of the universe, that were it possible we could move whichever way we pleased, and as fast as we could wish, and were to launch out in a direct line from the earth into infinite space, we might fly for thousands of years without meeting with any boundary or limit.

26. The "System of the Universe" (the work of an ALMIGHTY ARCHITECT) is, in truth, vast, stupendous, and full of wonders. Man, when he gazes upon it with attention, must confess his own insignificance, and be lost in admiration, wonder, and amazement.

---

#### Questions for Examination.

3. What are comets?
6. How are they distinguished from the planets?
8. When, and how long, do comets appear?
12. How were they regarded by the ancients?
14. What are fixed stars?
16. Under what outlines have the stars been classed?
17. Of what are the signs of the Zodiac emblematic?
24. What is the milky way?

## SECTION VI.

*Questions on Familiar Subjects.*

1. WHICH are the most useful metals? Platinum, gold, silver, copper, iron, lead, tin, zinc, and the liquid metal—mercury or quicksilver.

2. Are not brass and pewter metals? No: they are compounds of other metals, and are termed alloys,—brass being formed of copper and zinc, pewter of lead and tin. Many other alloys are of great use in the arts; copper and tin, in different proportions, form bronze, bell-metal, and gun-metal; lead, tin, and antimony compose the metal of which printing-type is made; gold, for the purposes of coinage, is alloyed with a small quantity of silver and copper, to give it hardness; and nickel combined with copper, furnishes a substitute for silver in albata, or British plate. Chromium, arsenic, and cobalt are employed in the preparation of colours for dyeing and painting.

3. What are the uses of mercury? With tin it is used for silverying the backs of looking-glasses; also, in large quantities, for extracting silver from its native ores. Various preparations of it are much used in medicine, particularly calomel,—a combination of mercury with chlorine. Where is it found? At Idria, in Carniola, in Spain, and in China.

4. Whence is platinum procured? It occurs, along with gold and silver, in South America, and in the Ural mountains: it is the heaviest substance known, and is very little affected by heat, or the action of other bodies.

5. Whence do we obtain gold and silver? Gold from Africa and India: it has been found also in Ireland; in the county of Wicklow a mass of native gold was discovered, weighing twenty-two ounces. Silver occurs in the largest quantities in South America: sufficient silver is found combined with the lead ores of Derbyshire, and of Strontian in Scotland, to be worth the labour of extraction.

6. Name the principal sources of the other metals,—copper, iron, tin, and zinc. Copper from Cornwall, Wales, and Ireland; iron from Wales, Scotland, and some of the Midland counties; lead, Derbyshire and Scotland; tin, Cornwall, Peru, and China; and zinc from England and Germany.

7. What is Vermilion? A compound of sulphur and mercury, of a brilliant red colour.

8. What is White Lead? It is a combination of lead and carbonic acid,—therefore, chemically, a carbonate of lead. It is usually prepared by exposing sheets of lead to the steam of vinegar, together with common air: it is used in painting.

9. Where are Diamonds found? The mines of Golconda

in India are the most celebrated; but those of Brazil furnish considerable numbers.

10. Whence are Pearls procured? From the Persian Gulf and Indian Ocean. They are found in the bodies, and adhering to the shells, of certain fish, resembling our common oysters. The shells afford mother-of-pearl, and it is the deposition of this pearly matter on some wound, or when the fish has been irritated by a foreign substance enclosed within its shell, that occasions the formation of the pearl. Other species of shell-fish frequently produce pearls, the common oyster for instance; and the fresh water mussels of our rivers yield them abundantly. The pearl fishery, particularly in Wales, was formerly considered of much importance.

11. What is Ivory? The tusk of the elephant, procured from Ceylon, India, and Africa. The Russians use large quantities of tusks found on the coasts of Siberia, the remains of elephants once inhabiting that quarter of the globe, of a different species to those now known. The ivory obtained from the tusks of the Walrus, being very hard, is used in making artificial teeth. Ivory shavings boiled down, form a nutritive jelly.

12. What is Vegetable Ivory? The nuts of a species of palm growing on the banks of the river Magdelena, in the republic of Columbia.

13. What is common or Train Oil? The fat of whales. What is Spermaceti? A peculiar fatty substance, found in the head of the South-Sea whale. What is Ambergris? A resinous substance, found in the intestines of the South-Sea whale.

14. What are Sponges? Marine substances found growing on rocks and shells: they are the habitation of animals, allied to those which produce coral. Sponges are brought from the Mediterranean, principally Turkey.

15. Whence have we Olives? From Italy, Portugal, and the South of France: the oil extracted from them is used in cooking, under the name of Florence or Salad oil.

16. Where is Rice chiefly grown? In China, Egypt, the East Indies, and Africa: it forms the principal food of the inhabitants of those countries.

17. Whence have we Tea? From China: it is the leaf of a tree growing in that country, and was introduced into England in the reign of Charles II. Tea has also been recently cultivated at Assam, in British India.

18. What is Coffee? The berry of a tree, the leaves of which resemble the laurel; it is cultivated in Turkey and the West Indies: the Turks are passionately fond of it.

19. What is Chocolate? A composition made from the cacao-tree: its fruit resembles a cucumber, and contains twenty or thirty seeds or nuts rather larger than beans.

These nuts are beaten into a paste with cinnamon and spices, and made up into little cakes called chocolate. Ground and boiled with milk, or water, the nuts make a very wholesome and palatable beverage called cocoa.

20. Whence are Cocoa-nuts procured? Large forests of the cocoa-nut tree grow in India, America, and most of the Oriental islands. The leaves of the tree, which is a species of palm, are used to cover the roofs of the Indian huts; sails and cordage are made from the husks. The kernel is very delicious, and contains in its cavity a large quantity of milk. Bowls, spoons, &c., are frequently made of the shells.

21. Where is Saffron grown? In Essex: this plant is used both in medicine and food.

22. What is Rhubarb? The root of a plant growing in Asiatic Turkey, and Arabia: it is used for medicinal purposes. The leaf-stalk of the same plant, grown in this country, is used in pies as a substitute for fruit.

23. What is Ipecacuanha? The root of a tree found only in Brazil: it is used in medicine. What is Peruvian Bark? This valuable medicine is the bark of the cinchona tree, found only in Peru.

24. What is Camphor? A resin found in the wood of several trees, from which it is separated by sublimation: Ceylon furnishes this substance. What is Opium? Opium is the juice of the white poppy, thickened and made into cakes. It is a narcotic poison: from it laudanum is prepared. Turkey, Egypt, and India furnish the chief supplies.

25. What is Castor Oil? An oil extracted from the beans of a tree growing in the East and West Indies. It is of great value in medicine.

26. What are Capers? The caper is a small prickly shrub, cultivated in Italy, Spain, and the southern provinces of France, bearing large flowers of a showy appearance, but the flower-buds are the only object of cultivation. They are plucked before they open, and thrown into a strong pickle of vinegar slightly salted.

27. What is Gum Arabic? A gum which flows from the acacia in Egypt, Arabia, and Senegal: other trees produce gum, but inferior to this in quality. In France, large quantities of gum are collected from plum and other fruit-trees.

28. Whence have we Ginger? Both from the West and East Indies, where it grows without cultivation: the root is the part we use.

29. Whence have we Pepper? Chiefly from the islands of Java, Sumatra, and the coast of Malabar: it grows upon a shrub, and the difference between the black and white pepper is caused by stripping off the outside skin of the berries, which are then of a pale colour.

30. Where are Hops chiefly cultivated? In Sussex, Kent, Worcestershire, and Herefordshire. The bitter principle

with which they abound, preserves beer from becoming acid: they grow to a considerable height, and are allowed to climb round long poles.

31. What is Malt? Malt is made of barley, by steeping it in water; it is kept at an uniform warm temperature until the grains begin to sprout, and finally dried in a kiln. Pearl Barley is barley freed from the shell or husk.

32. What is Indigo? A plant grown in the warm regions of Asia, Africa, and America: the blue extracted from it is used by painters and by dyers.

33. What is Flax? A beautiful plant, cultivated only in rich ground, with slender stalks, small leaves, and very delicate light-blue flowers; it is sown in April, and is valuable both for its seed, called linseed (from which excellent oil is made), and for the fibres of its stalks, which are manufactured into linen.

34. What is Hemp? A useful plant, somewhat resembling in appearance the common nettle: it is sown in April, and, like flax, will flourish best in rich ground; the outward covering, or peeling of the stalk, is the part made into cloth and cordage. What is Tow? The refuse of hemp or flax after it has been dressed; this thick gross part, when separated from the stem, is frequently spun into a kind of yarn, of which packing-cloths are made: it is useful in stopping the effusion of blood, and in making matches for cannon.

35. What is Mohair? A stuff made from the hair of the Angora goat. What are Teasels? A species of thistle, used for raising the nap on cloth.

36. Whence comes Cork? From an evergreen species of oak, growing in Italy, Spain, and Gascony. The bark is the part we find so useful: it is stripped in broad pieces, soaked in water, and then packed in bales. The cork brought over from Spain is slightly burnt, which causes it to swell, and become closer.

37. What is Cotton? A down procured from the inside of the fruit of a tree growing in the East and West Indies. When the fruit, which is about the size of a walnut, is ripe, it bursts; the cotton is then gathered and picked for use: it is employed in different manufactures, particularly those of muslin and calico. Our chief supplies come from America, where the trees are extensively cultivated.

38. What are Resins? Thick juices oozing from several trees, particularly pines and firs; they are distinguishable from gums by being soluble in spirit, and not in water.

39. What is Turpentine? A resin flowing from the larch, and other pines and firs: by distilling turpentine, an oil of great use in the arts and in medicine is obtained.

40. What is Copal? A resin, the produce of a tree growing in New Spain: dissolved in turpentine it forms the well-known varnish.

41. What is Gamboge? A vegetable resin of a brilliant yellow colour, brought from Cambodia in the East Indies: it is used in medicine, and as a colour. What is Guaiacum? A resin exuding from the guaiacum tree, a native of the West Indies.

42. What is Dragon's-blood? A resinous substance of a red colour, used in dyeing, colouring, varnishes, &c., brought from the East Indies, South America, and Africa.

43. What is Caoutchouc, or Indian Rubber? A very elastic resin brought from Asia and America; this substance oozes in a liquid state from the tree in which it is found, and, as it dries, becomes hard, resembling leather. The natives catch the juice, and mould it into bottles, cups, &c. How are these various articles made? By forming moulds of clay in the shape desired, and covering them with thin coats of caoutchouc, one upon another; when thick enough, and well dried, the moulds are wetted and picked out, and the resin appears in the same state the Europeans receive it.

44. What is Gutta Percha? A vegetable substance resembling Indian rubber, the produce of a tree recently discovered in the island of Borneo. It possesses very singular properties, which have been applied with much ingenuity to many useful purposes. At the ordinary temperature it is hard, and less elastic than Indian rubber; but if immersed in boiling water it can be moulded into shapes, which will be permanently retained. As a substitute for harness leather and for the soles of shoes, it is found very serviceable.

45. How is Bird-lime made? By boiling the inner bark of the holly seven or eight hours in water, and then allowing it to ferment in pits for two or three weeks. It may also be made from the gluten of wheat, the berries of the mistletoe, and other vegetable substances.

46. What is Sepia? A pigment prepared from a black juice secreted by the cuttle-fish; this the fish ejects when pursued, to conceal it from its enemies. What is Bistre? A brown colour prepared from wood-soot.

47. What is Madder? The root of a plant, used for dyeing red. What is Fustic? The wood of a species of mulberry: it is used for dyeing yellow.

48. Whence is Mahogany procured? Chiefly from the island of Jamaica. What is Brazil-wood? A wood of a red colour brought from Brazil for the use of dyers.

49. What is Logwood? A tree, originally a native of Honduras, in America, and many parts of the Spanish West Indies: it is much used in dyeing black and purple.

50. Where does the Tamarind-tree grow? In both Indies. What is Pounce? Gum Sandarach powdered; used to prevent ink sinking into the paper after the erasure of writing.

51. How is Macaroni made? By squeezing a dough of wheat-flour through a plate perforated with small holes.

What is Millet? A grain used for puddings, which grows spontaneously in India, and is cultivated in Europe very successfully.

52. What is Cassava? The root of a plant growing in the West Indies, South America, and on the coast of Africa. It is made into bread.

53. What is Vermicelli? A composition made of flour, cheese, eggs, sugar, and saffron. What is Sago? The pith of a tree growing in the Moluccas.

54. Where do Nutmegs grow? In the Banda Isles: the harvest for them is in June. They are found in the middle of a pear-shaped fruit: immediately surrounding the nutmeg is a husk, known in this country by the name of Mace.

55. Whence comes Cinnamon? From the islands of Java, Sumatra, Ceylon, &c. It is the inner bark of a handsome-looking tree, growing to the height of fifteen or twenty feet.

56. What are Cloves? A spice growing in the Moluccas. What is Manna? A kind of sugar, that exudes from a species of ash growing in Sicily.

57. How are Raisins made? By allowing bunches of grapes to ripen, and dry upon the vines.

58. Where is Sugar procured? From the sugar-cane, which is a beautiful plant, cultivated chiefly in the West Indies; it has long green leaves, and a bunch of silver-coloured flowers on the top. The juice contained in the pith of the cane is squeezed out, by passing them between powerful rollers, and is then boiled; it afterwards undergoes many processes before we see it in the state in which it is brought to table. What are the different uses of the sugar-cane? From the dregs of the sugar, called molasses, rum is distilled; from the scummings of the sugar, when boiling, an inferior kind of spirit is made; the tops of the canes, and the leaves, serve as food for cattle; and the remaining parts, when the sugar has been extracted, are used for firewood.

59. How is Soda obtained? By burning large quantities of sea-weed, in most species of which it is found in considerable quantities; for making soap and glass it is very valuable.

60. What is meant by Flowers of Sulphur? A fine powder into which sulphur is reduced: it is heated until it rises in vapour; after which it condenses into very minute particles.

61. How is Starch made? By steeping wheat in water: the starch being insoluble in cold water, settles as a sediment. It was first used for stiffening linen in the reign of Mary: hair-powder is made from starch.

62. What is Shagreen? Leather prepared in a peculiar manner, brought chiefly from Bombay, Constantinople,

Poland, and Siberia. It is coloured red, green, black, or yellow, and used for spectacle and instrument cases.

63. What is Tortoiseshell? The horny plates found on the back of a species of turtle.

64. What is Musk? A peculiar secretion of an animal about the size of a goat, a native of Tonquin. China and Thibet musk is used in medicine, and as a perfume.

65. Of what is Gunpowder composed? Saltpetre, sulphur, and charcoal.

66. How is Putty made? Whitening, linseed-oil, with, sometimes, white or red lead. It is used by painters to stop holes and inequalities in wood-work previous to painting, and for fixing glass in window sashes.

67. What is Cinnabar? A mineral of a red colour, brought from Borneo.

68. What is Meerschaum? A white mineral, of an earthy appearance. When first dug up, it is soft, and lathers like soap, on which account it is used by the Tartars in washing their linen. The well-known Turkey tobacco-pipes are made of this substance.

69. What is Cream of Tartar? A salt deposited from wine, and afterwards purified.

70. Whence do we get Salt? It is either dug from mines, or sea-water is evaporated, and the salt thus obtained purified. There are mines of rock-salt in Cheshire, Sweden, and Russia, and large plains of clear salt in California.

71. What is Cat-gut? A cord made from the entrails of sheep, principally used for the strings of musical instruments.

72. What is Parchment? The skin of sheep or goats. Vellum is the skin of young calves.

73. How do we make Glue? By boiling down sinews and feet of animals, and drying the jelly thus obtained.

74. What is Isinglass? A glue made from the sound or swimbladder of fish.

75. What is Guano? A substance brought from Ichaboe, a rocky island on the west coast of Africa, and likewise from Peru; the supposed deposit of myriads of sea-birds, which have frequented these places probably for centuries. Large quantities have been imported into this country, and used for manure in agriculture.

76. What are Kermes and Cochineal? Small insects, whose bodies are filled with a red powder, which furnishes a beautiful pigment and dye.

77. How is common Ink made? With gall-nuts and copperas; a little gum is usually added. What are Gall-nuts? They are excrescences produced by insects on the leaves and stalks of a species of oak growing in the Levant.

78. What is Indian Ink? A substance brought from China in cakes: it is used by the Chinese for writing, and in this country in drawing.

79. What is Spirits of Wine? Spirit from which nearly all the water has been separated by repeated distillation: it is called also alcohol. What is *Æther*? A light volatile spirit, made by distilling alcohol with acids.

80. How are Gin and Brandy made? The latter by distilling wine, or the lees of wine: gin by distilling malt, with juniper-berries to flavour it.

81. How are Candles made? Common candles are made by dipping cotton wicks into the melted fat of animals. Moulds, as the name implies, are made in moulds, into which the melted fat is poured.

82. What is Sealing-wax? A mixture of shellac and resin, variously coloured: the red by vermillion, the black by lamp-black. Sealing-wax was first prepared by the Portuguese, and the Dutch were for a considerable time famous for the manufacture.

83. How is Paper made? Paper is made from rags, which are sorted and cleaned, and then taken to the mill. They are thrown into a trough of water in which an engine is placed, with long spikes of iron fixed in it, and made to revolve with great rapidity. The rags are soon torn to pieces, and reduced to a fine pulp. Wire moulds or sieves are then dipped into this pulp, a small quantity of which is taken up, and the water left behind. The sheet of pulp is then passed between felt and dried on lines; when dry, the pulp or paper is taken off the lines, rubbed smooth, and sized. How is the size made? Of clean parchment and vellum shavings: the size is strained through a fine cloth, which is strewed with powdered white vitriol and alum; the paper is dipped in this, and after being pressed a third time, it is separated sheet by sheet to dry, and then made up into quires and reams. Blotting-paper is the sheet of paper unsized.

84. What is the Load-stone? A kind of iron ore, which is magnetic.

85. What are the uses of Emery? It is largely employed for polishing and grinding glass and metals. This mineral is procured chiefly from the island of Naxos: it occurs also in Guernsey and Jersey.

86. What is Asphaltum, or Asphalte? A mineral pitch found in volcanic districts. In certain parts of France where volcanoes formerly existed, limestone is found strongly impregnated with asphaltum. By grinding this limestone, and melting and casting it in slabs, a useful substitute for stone paving has been obtained, which has been much used in Paris and London.

87. What is Jet? A species of coal found in France, and made into snuff-boxes and articles of jewellery.

88. Name the principal Gems. Diamond, ruby, emerald, hyacinth, sapphire, garnet, topaz, and carbuncle.

A N O U T L I N E  
O F  
H E A T H E N M Y T H O L O G Y .

---

1. THE word *Mythology* signifies an account or relation of fables; particularly of such things as regard false gods, and their idolatrous worship.

2. Idolatry signifies the worship of images as the representations of some god, or gods.

3. This practice, so abhorrent in the eyes of the One only living and true God, and also contrary to human reason, began at a very early period. The ancestors of Abraham are said in Scripture to have *served other gods*.

4. Its cause was the depravity and pride of the human heart. Different nations worshipped different gods. A knowledge of the Mythology of the Greeks and Romans is most important, because without it we can neither fully understand the ancient classic authors, nor many of the modern, from the frequent allusions made to it in their writings. It is also necessary to enable us to appreciate works of art, particularly sculpture and painting.

5. The Greeks and Romans had many deities in common: these were distinguished into three classes, viz. the *superior gods*, the *inferior gods*, and the *demigods*.

6. The superior gods of Rome were twelve in number. The first was Jupiter, the supreme deity, or, as he was called, "the king of gods and men:" the others were Juno, Vesta, Minerva, Ceres, Diana, Neptune, Apollo, Mars, Vulcan, Mercury, and Pluto.

7. There were, however, other gods anterior to these. Chaos (confusion) was the oldest of the gods.

8. His children were Tellus (the earth), Titæa, Vesta, Tartarus (hell), Amor (love), Erebus (gloom), and Nox (night).

9. Tellus had a son named Cœlus (heaven), and many others. Erebus and Nox were the parents of Ether (the upper air), and He'mera (day).

10. Vesta married Cœlus, and from them sprang Titan, Saturn, Oce'anus, Ceres, Tethys, and Ops, called also Rhea and Cybe'le.

11. Titan gave up the crown to his brother Saturn, on condition that he should not bring up any male children. Saturn married Rhea, who contrived by an artifice to preserve her sons Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto, unknown to him. Titan having discovered this, made war on his brother, and defeated him; but Jupiter conquered Titan and

his sons, and released his father and mother, who had been confined in Tartarus.



12. Saturn was afterwards deposed by his sons, and obliged to flee to Italy, where he was hospitably received by Janus, with whom he reigned conjointly : his reign was the period called the *golden age*. Festivals were instituted to his memory called the *Saturnalia*; at which slaves were, for the time, placed on a footing with their masters, and revelry of all kinds indulged. Wax tapers were placed on his altars, to signify that he had enlightened mankind. He was also the god of time and of husbandry. He is usually represented as an old man, with a scythe in one hand, and in the other a rounded serpent, having its tail in its mouth, or a key: sometimes also an hour-glass stands beside him, and he is often furnished with wings.

13. Cybele, the mother of the gods, is variously represented : sometimes seated in a chariot drawn, or attended, by two tame lions, holding in her right hand a key, or the horn of plenty, and in her left a ball; her head is seen encircled with a chaplet of oak-leaves, surmounted by turrets.

14. Auro'ra, the goddess of morning, is sometimes described as rising out of the ocean in a saffron robe, seated in a chariot of gold drawn by two horses, opening the gates of light, and scattering the dew. She was the mother of the four winds.



15. Jupiter divided the universe by lot between himself and his brothers. The infernal regions fell to Pluto, the sea to Neptune, and the celestial regions to Jupiter, who thus became supreme. He is variously represented, but generally as a majestic human form, seated on a throne, with a sceptre in one hand and a thunder-bolt in the other. An eagle often sits on the sceptre, formed, it is said, of cypress, to denote the eternity of his empire, because that wood is free from corruption.



16. Juno was the wife of Jupiter, and queen of heaven. Mars, the god of war; Vulcan, the god of fire; Hebe, the goddess of youth, were her children. The queen of the gods is generally represented either as a matron in a plain modest dress, or in state, with a sceptre in her hand, riding in a golden chariot, drawn by peacocks. Iris, the rainbow, was her messenger.

17. Vulcan, the son of Jupiter and Juno, was the god of fire. He is described as lame and ugly; yet had for his wife Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses.

18. Hebe, for her extraordinary beauty, was made the goddess of youth, and had the office of cup-bearer to Jupiter.

bestowed on her. She is represented as a young virgin crowned with flowers, and arrayed in a variegated garment.

19. Mars, the son of Juno, and the god of war, has a fierce aspect, is covered with armour, and brandishes a spear in his right hand. His chariot, drawn by two horses, is driven by Bellona, his sister, the goddess of war. Discord flies before, and Terror, Fear, Anger, and Clamour surround him; or he is drawn more simply as in the engraving.

20. Ceres was the goddess of corn and harvests, and is said to have taught mankind agriculture. She is frequently described with a garland of ears of corn on her head, holding a lighted torch in one hand, and a poppy in the other.



21. Mercury, the son of Jupiter and Maia, was commonly styled the messenger of the gods. He was also the god of merchants and thieves, and guide of departed spirits to the realms of Pluto. By the Greeks he was called Hermes, i. e. the god of eloquence. He is represented as a young man, wearing on his head a winged cap, and on his feet winged sandals; he carries in his right hand a wand entwined with two serpents, and sometimes, as god of traffic, he holds a purse in his left.



22. Pluto, a son of Saturn, and god of the infernal regions, is usually drawn as seated on a throne, holding a sceptre which has two teeth, and the three-headed dog, Cerberus, at his feet: sometimes also with a key, to denote that those who enter his kingdom are locked in for ever. His wife was Proserpine, the daughter of Ceres, whom he forcibly abducted whilst gathering flowers in the plains of Euna.

23. Venus, the daughter of Jupiter and Dio'ne, was the goddess of love and beauty. Cupid, the god of love, was her son and attendant.



24. Neptune is generally represented sitting or standing in a chariot made of a shell, drawn by sea-horses or dolphins, holding a trident in his hand, with which he rules the waves; while sea-nymphs and tritons, with their trumpets made of shells, sport around him. Amphitrite was his favourite wife.

25. Latona, the daughter of Saturn, was the mother of Apollo and Diana, and Jupiter their father.

26. Diana, the sister of Apollo, was the goddess of hunting; she had a threefold divinity, and was called Luna, or the moon, in heaven; Diana on earth; and Hecate in the lower regions. Her temple at Ephesus was most renowned, and one of the seven wonders of the world. She is usually

drawn with a bent bow and quiver, attended by dogs, and having a crescent on her forehead.

27. Apollo was the god of the sun, divination, healing, music, and archery: the most distinguished of his children were, 1. *Aesculapius*, the god of physic and surgery: 2. *Orpheus*, who excelled in music, so as to be able to move by the sweetness of his strains not only men, but also the lower animals, and even inanimate nature; 3. *Circe*, a famous sorceress; and 4. *Phäeton*, who attempted to drive his father's chariot for a day, and not being able to manage the horses, set both heaven and earth on fire. Apollo is represented as a beautiful beardless young man, with long hair, crowned with laurel, and a quiver full of arrows behind his back,—his garments and sandals shining with gold. His most famous oracles were at Delphi and Delos.



28. Minerva, the goddess of wisdom and war, was said to have sprung from the head of Jupiter, a goddess armed from head to foot. She was also called Pallas, and by the Greeks Athē'na. She is generally represented with a helmet on her head, on the crest of which is a nodding plume, a spear in one hand, and in the other a shield with a Gorgon's head upon it.

29. Bacchus, the son of Jupiter and Sem'ele, was the god of wine, good cheer, and jollity; his festivals, called *Bacchanalia*, were celebrated with great excesses. He is variously represented, and much praised by the poets.



30. Vesta, the goddess of fire, was the daughter of Saturn and Cybele, (who was also called Vesta). She was worshipped by the Romans. In her sanctuary a fire was continually kept lighted by a certain number of virgins, who had devoted themselves to her service. On some medals she appears holding a drum in one hand, and a small figure of victory in the other.

*Astraea*, goddess of justice.

*Aeolus*, god of the winds.

*Autumnus*, the god of fruits.

*Ageno'ria*, the goddess of industry.

*Até*, goddess of revenge.

*Bapta*, goddess of shame.

*Celli'na*, the goddess of hills.

*Comus*, god of revelry and feasting.

*Concordia*, goddess of peace.

*Discordia*, the goddess of contention.

*Fama*, or *Fame*, the goddess of reputation.

*Fides*, goddess of faith and honesty.

- Flora**, the goddess of flowers.
- Fortune**, the goddess of riches and poverty, happiness and misery, blessings and pains ; said to be blind.
- Harpoc'rates**, the god of silence.
- Historia**, goddess of history.
- Hyge'ia**, goddess of health.
- Hymen**, god of marriage.
- Janus**, god of the year ; he was said to be endowed with the knowledge of the past and the future.
- Lares**, household gods among the Romans ; they were also called *Pena'tes*.
- Mnemos'yne**, goddess of memory.
- Momus**, god of mirth and raillery.
- Mors**, goddess of death.
- Morph'eus**, god of dreams.
- Pan**, the god of shepherds.
- Pitho**, goddess of eloquence.
- Proserpine**, wife to Pluto, queen of the infernal regions.
- Plutus**, god of riches.
- Pomo'na**, goddess of fruits and autumn.
- Priapus**, the god of gardens.
- Proteus**, a sea-god, said to have the power of changing himself into any shape he pleased.
- Psyche**, goddess of bliss.
- Somnus**, god of sleep.
- Sylva'nus**, god of the woods.
- Terminus**, god of boundaries.
- Thetis**, goddess of the sea.
- Vacu'na**, goddess of idle persons.
- Vertumnus**, god of the spring.
- Fates**, three sisters, entrusted with the lives of mortals ; their names were Clotho, La'chesis, and A'tropos.
- Furies**, three sisters, armed with snakes and lighted torches : their names were Alecto, Megaea, and Tisiph'one.
- Graces**, three sisters, daughters of Jupiter, and attendants upon Venus and the Muses : their names were Agla'i'a, Thali'a, and Euphros'yne.
- Gorgons**, three hideous women, who had but one eye in the middle of their foreheads ; their names were Eury'ale, Medu'sa, and Stheno.
- Muses**, the nine daughters of Jupiter, and Mnemos'yne the goddess of memory ; they presided over the sciences, and were called Calliope, Cli'o, Er'ato, Euter'pe, Melpom'ene, Polyhymnia, Terpsich'ore, Thali'a, and Urania. Calliope, was the muse of eloquence, and heroic poetry ; Clio, of history ; Erato, of amorous poetry ; Euterpe, of music ; Melpomene, of tragedy ; Polyhymnia, of rhetoric ; Terpsichore, of dancing ; Thalia, of comedy, and lyric poetry ; and Urania, of astronomy.

Harpies, three monsters, with the faces of women, the bodies of vultures, and hands and feet armed with claws; their names were Aëllo, Ocyp'ete, and Celæno.

Hesper'ides, three sisters, who kept golden apples in a garden, guarded by a dragon: Hercules slew the dragon, and carried off the apples.

Acco, an old woman, remarkable for talking to herself at the glass, and refusing what she most wished for.

Ach'erón, a river in hell.

Achil'les, a Grecian, who signalized himself at the siege of Troy; and is said to have been dipped by his mother in the river Styx, which rendered him invulnerable in every part except his right heel, by which she held him.

Acis, a Sicilian shepherd, extremely beautiful.

Actæ'on, a famous hunter, changed by Diana into a stag, for disturbing her while bathing.

Ado'nis, a youth said to be extremely beautiful, and beloved by Venus.

Æ'acus, one of the judges of hell.

Æ'gis, the shield of Minerva, who placed it upon the head of Medusa, which turned into stone all who looked at it.

Æge'ria, a beautiful nymph, worshipped by the Romans.

Ambrosia, the food of the gods.

Arachne, a woman turned into a spider, for contending with Minerva at spinning.

Argus, a man said to have had an hundred eyes, changed by Juno into a peacock.

Atalan'ta, a woman remarkable for her swift running.

Atlas, the son of Jupiter, said to have supported the heavens on his shoulders; afterwards turned into a mountain.

Aver'nus, a lake on the borders of hell.

Bria'reus, a giant, said to have had fifty heads, and one hundred hands.

Bruma'lia, feasts held in honour of Bacchus.

Cadu'ceus, the rod which Mercury carried, and the emblem of peace.

Castalides, a name given to the Muses.

Castor and Pollux, two brothers, who had immortality conferred upon them alternately by Jupiter: they form that constellation in the heavens called Gemini.

Centaurs, creatures half men, half horses, said to have inhabited Thessaly.

Cer'berus, a dog with three heads, which kept the gates of Orcus.

Charon, the ferry-man of the regions of departed spirits.

Charities, a name for the Graces.

Chi'ron, a centaur, who taught Æsculapius physic, and Hercules astronomy: he was afterwards made the constellation of Sagitta'rius.

- Circe, a famous enchantress.  
Cocytus, a river in hell, flowing from the river Styx.  
Cyclops, the workmen of Vulcan, who had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.  
Delos, the island where Apollo was born, and had a celebrated oracle.  
Dry'ades, nymphs of the woods.  
Daph'ne, a beautiful woman, changed into the laurel-tree as she fled from Apollo.  
Elysium, the paradise of the heathen.  
E'rebus, a river in hell, famed for its blackness.  
Ganymede, a beautiful boy, made cup-bearer to Jupiter.  
Genii, good and evil guardian angels.  
Gordius, a king of Phrygia, who was famed for fastening a knot of cords, on which the empire of Asia depended, in so intricate a manner, that Alexander the Great, not being able to untie it, cut it asunder.  
Gyges, a shepherd, who possessed a ring, which rendered him invisible when he turned the stone towards his body.  
Hamadry'ades, nymphs said to have lived in oak-trees.  
Hel'icon, a famous mountain in Bœotia, sacred to Apollo and the Muses.  
Hercules, the son of Jupiter, famed for his great strength and numerous exploits.  
Hes'perus, or Vesper, the poetic name for the evening star.  
Hydra, a serpent with seven heads, killed by Hercules.  
Ida, a famous mountain near Troy.  
Ixi'on, a man who for his crimes was fastened in Tartarus to a wheel perpetually turning round.  
Iris, the messenger of Juno, changed by her into the rainbow.  
Lethe, a river in hell, whose waters had the power of causing forgetfulness.  
Lucifer, the poetic name for the morning star.  
Mede'a, a famous sorceress.  
Midas, a king of Phrygia, who had the power given him by Bacchus of turning whatever he touched into gold.  
Minos, one of the judges of hell, famed for his justice: he was king of Crete.  
Nere'ides, sea nymphs: there were fifty of them.  
Nai'ades, nymphs of rivers and fountains.  
Ni'obe, a woman said to have wept herself into a statue, for the loss of her fourteen children.  
Nectar, the beverage of the gods.  
Olym'pus, a famous mountain in Thessaly, the resort of the gods.  
Pacto'lus, a river, said to have golden sands.  
Pando'ra, a woman made by Vulcan, and endowed with gifts by all the gods and goddesses: she had a box given her containing all kinds of evils, with Hope at the bottom.  
Pe'gasus, a winged horse, belonging to Apollo and the Muses.

Phäeton, the son of Apollo, who asked the guidance of his father's chariot, as a proof of his divine descent; but managed it so ill, that he set the world on fire.

Phleg'ethon, a boiling river in hell.

Prome'theus, a man, who, assisted by Minerva, stole fire from heaven, with which he is said to have animated a figure formed of clay: Jupiter, as a punishment for his audacity, condemned him to be chained to Mount Caucasus, with a vulture perpetually gnawing his liver.

Pigmies, a people only a span high, inhabitants of Lybia.

Python, a serpent which Apollo killed; and in memory of it, instituted Pythian games.

Pyr'amus and Thisbe, two fond lovers, who killed themselves with the same sword, and turned the berries of the mulberry-tree, under which they died, from white to brown.

Pindus, a mountain in Thessaly, sacred to the Muses.

Phile'mon and Baucis, a poor old man and woman, who entertained Jupiter and Mercury in their travels through Phrygia.

Polyphé'mus, the son of Neptune, a cruel monster, whom Ulysses destroyed.

Rhadaman'thus, one of the judges of hell.

Saturna'lia, feasts sacred to Saturn.

Satyrs, priests of Bacchus, half men, half goats.

Stentor, a Grecian, whose voice was as strong and loud as that of fifty men together.

Syrens, sea monsters, who charmed people with the sweetness of their music, and then devoured them.

Sis'yphus, a man doomed to roll a large stone up a mountain in Tartarus, which continually rolled back, as a punishment for his perfidy and numerous robberies.

Styx, a river in hell, by which the gods swore; and their oaths when thus taken were always kept sacred.

Tempé, a beautiful vale in Thessaly, the resort of the gods.

Tar'tarus, the abode of the wicked in hell.

Triton, Neptune's son, and his trumpeter.

Trophó'nus, the son of Apollo, who gave oracles in a gloomy cave, and was greatly honoured by the Greeks.

Tan'talus, the son of Jupiter, who serving up the limbs of his son Pelops in a dish, to try the divinity of the gods, was plunged up to the chin in a lake of hell, and doomed to perpetual hunger and thirst, as a punishment for his barbarity.

Ulysses, a celebrated leader of the Greeks in the Trojan war, to whose eminent services the capture of the city is mainly ascribed.

Zeph'yrus, the poetic name for the west wind.

---

## LATIN TERMS AND PHRASES

IN FREQUENT USE.

|                                                                                     |                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ad absurdum.</i> Showing the absurdity of a contrary opinion.                    | <i>Fas est et ab hoste doceri.</i> It is allowable to derive instruction even from an enemy. |
| <i>Ad captandum vulgus.</i> To catch the rabble.                                    | <i>Felo de se.</i> A self-murderer.                                                          |
| <i>Ad honores.</i> For decency's sake.                                              | <i>Ferae naturæ.</i> Of a wild nature.                                                       |
| <i>Ad patres.</i> Death; or the abode of the just.                                  | <i>Fiat justitia, ruet cælum.</i> Let justice be done, though the heavens should fall.       |
| <i>Ad valorem.</i> In proportion to the value.                                      | <i>Fortes fortuna juvat.</i> Fortune favours the bold.                                       |
| <i>Alias.</i> Otherwise.                                                            | <i>Genus irritabile vatum.</i> The irritable tribe of poets.                                 |
| <i>Alibi.</i> Elsewhere; or being in another place.                                 | <i>Haud passibus æquis.</i> With unequal steps.                                              |
| <i>Alma mater.</i> A benign mother.                                                 | <i>Hinc illæ lachrymæ.</i> Hence these tears.                                                |
| <i>Alternis horis.</i> Every other hour.                                            | <i>Hortus siccus.</i> A dry garden: a collection of the leaves of plants in a dried state.   |
| <i>Ana.</i> Of each ingredient an equal quantity.                                   | <i>Id genus omne.</i> All persons of that description.                                       |
| <i>A.M. Anno mundi.</i> In the year of the world.                                   | <i>Inter nos.</i> Between ourselves.                                                         |
| <i>Ante Christum.</i> Before Christ.                                                | <i>In vacuo.</i> In empty space.                                                             |
| <i>Argumentum ad hominem.</i> An argument to the man.                               | <i>In statu quo.</i> As it was before.                                                       |
| <i>Anguis in herba.</i> A snake in the grass.                                       | <i>In commendam.</i> In trust or recommendation.                                             |
| <i>A priori.</i> From cause to effect.                                              | <i>In esse; in posse.</i> In being; possible.                                                |
| <i>Audi alteram partem.</i> Hear the other party.                                   | <i>In forma pauperis.</i> As a pauper.                                                       |
| <i>Bond fide.</i> Without fraud or deceit.                                          | <i>In propria personâ.</i> In person.                                                        |
| <i>Brutum fulmen.</i> A harmless thunderbolt.                                       | <i>In vino veritas.</i> There is truth in wine.                                              |
| <i>Cacothœthes scribendi.</i> An eager desire for writing.                          | <i>Ipse dixit.</i> He said it; or an assertion without proof.                                |
| <i>Cæteris paribus.</i> The rest, or other things being alike.                      | <i>Ipso facto.</i> In the fact itself.                                                       |
| <i>Contra bonos mores.</i> Against good morals.                                     | <i>Labor omnia vincit.</i> Labour conquers all things.                                       |
| <i>Credenda.</i> Things to be believed.                                             | <i>Lapsus lingue.</i> Slip of the tongue.                                                    |
| <i>Cura et valeas.</i> Take care of thy health.                                     | <i>Locum tenens.</i> One who officiates for another.                                         |
| <i>De facto.</i> From the fact.                                                     | <i>L.S. Locus sigilli.</i> The place of the seal.                                            |
| <i>Delenda est Carthago.</i> Carthage must be destroyed.                            | <i>Major domo.</i> One who lays in provision for a family.                                   |
| <i>De mortuis nil nisi bonum.</i> Speak nothing but good of the dead.               | <i>Malum in se; malum prohibitum.</i> An evil in itself—a thing evil, because forbidden.     |
| <i>D.O.M. Deo optimo maximo.</i> Dedicated to the Almighty; or God is all-powerful. | <i>Mens sibi conscientia recti.</i> A mind conscious of rectitude.                           |
| <i>Ergo.</i> Therefore.                                                             | <i>Multum in parvo.</i> Much in little.                                                      |
| <i>Ex cathedrâ.</i> From the chair.                                                 | <i>Mutatis mutandis.</i> Changing of words that require it.                                  |
| <i>Exempli gratia, or e. g.</i> For example.                                        |                                                                                              |
| <i>Ex officio.</i> By virtue of his office.                                         |                                                                                              |
| <i>Ex parte.</i> On one side.                                                       |                                                                                              |

|                                                                         |                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ne plus ultra.</i> To the utmost.                                    | <i>Res angusta domi.</i> Narrow circumstances at home.                                                              |
| <i>Nem. con.</i> Without opposition.                                    | <i>Risum teneatis, amici!</i> Can you refrain from laughter, friends?                                               |
| <i>Necessitas non habet leges.</i> Necessity has no law.                | <i>Scripsit.</i> Wrote it.                                                                                          |
| <i>Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.</i> No man is wise at all times. | <i>Sculpsit.</i> Engraved it.                                                                                       |
| <i>Ne sutor ultra crepidam.</i> Let not the cobbler go beyond his last. | <i>Seriatim.</i> In regular order.                                                                                  |
| <i>Nolens volens.</i> Without consent, not willing.                     | <i>Sic transit gloria mundi.</i> Thus the glory of the world passes away.                                           |
| <i>Non compos mentis.</i> Not sound in mind.                            | <i>Sine qua non.</i> An indispensable condition.                                                                    |
| <i>Nil desperandum.</i> Never despair.                                  | <i>Sine die.</i> Without naming any particular day.                                                                 |
| <i>Non constat.</i> It does not appear.                                 | <i>Suaviter in modo, fortiter in re.</i> Gentle in the manner, but vigorous in the deed.                            |
| <i>Non sequitur.</i> Nothing follows.                                   | <i>Sui generis.</i> Of its own kind.                                                                                |
| <i>Noscitur a sociis.</i> He is known by his companions.                | <i>Summum bonum.</i> The chief good.                                                                                |
| <i>Onus probandi.</i> Weight of proof.                                  | <i>Subpœna.</i> A summons to attend a court.                                                                        |
| <i>Otium cum dignitate.</i> Ease with dignity.                          | <i>Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis.</i> The times are perpetually changing, and we change with the times. |
| <i>Pari passu.</i> By similar gradation.                                | <i>Toties quoties.</i> As often as.                                                                                 |
| <i>Par nobile fratrum</i> (ironically). A noble pair of brothers.       | <i>Tempus fugit.</i> Time flies.                                                                                    |
| <i>Parvum parva decent.</i> Little things become a little man.          | <i>Ubi supra.</i> Where above-mentioned.                                                                            |
| <i>Passim.</i> Every where.                                             | <i>Ultima ratio regum.</i> The last reasoning of kings (arms).                                                      |
| <i>Pendente lite.</i> While the suit is pending.                        | <i>Ultimatum.</i> A final answer.                                                                                   |
| <i>Per fas et nefas.</i> Through right and wrong.                       | <i>Vade mecum.</i> Go with me : a constant companion.                                                               |
| <i>Poeta nascitur, non fit.</i> Nature, not study, must form a poet.    | <i>Veluti in speculum.</i> As in a mirror.                                                                          |
| <i>Poss comitatus.</i> The collective force of a county, or shire.      | <i>Verbatim.</i> Word for word, literally.                                                                          |
| <i>Post meridiem.</i> Afternoon.                                        | <i>Veritatis simplex oratio est.</i> The language of truth is simple.                                               |
| <i>Pro aris et focis.</i> For civil and religious rights.               | <i>Vice.</i> In the room of.                                                                                        |
| <i>Probatum est.</i> It is tried, and proved.                           | <i>Vice versa.</i> On the contrary.                                                                                 |
| <i>Pro rata.</i> In proportion, or according to what one can afford.    | <i>Videlicet.</i> Namely.                                                                                           |
| <i>Pro hac vice.</i> For this turn.                                     | <i>Vi et armis.</i> By main force.                                                                                  |
| <i>Quantum sufficit.</i> Enough, sufficient.                            | <i>Vis inertiae.</i> A property of matter.                                                                          |
| <i>Quasi dicas.</i> As if you should say.                               | <i>Vivù voce.</i> By word of mouth.                                                                                 |
| <i>Quid pro quo.</i> Tit for tat.                                       | <i>Vox et præterea nihil.</i> A voice and nothing more.                                                             |
| <i>Requiescat in pace.</i> May he rest in peace.                        | <i>Vox populi.</i> Voice of the people.                                                                             |
|                                                                         | <i>Vox Dei.</i> The voice of God.                                                                                   |
|                                                                         | <i>&amp;c. Et cetera.</i> And others.                                                                               |

THE END.

